

a













200  
b-

TRAVELS IN EASTERN HIGH ASIA

VOL. I.



LONDON: PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
AND PARLIAMENT STREET





COL. NICHOLAS MICHAILOVITCH PREJEVALSKY

M O N G O L I A,  
THE TANGUT COUNTRY,  
AND THE  
SOLITUDES OF NORTHERN TIBET.

BEING A  
Narrative of Three Years' Travel in Eastern High Asia.

BY  
LIEUT.-COLONEL N. PREJEVALSKY,

OF THE RUSSIAN STAFF CORPS : MEM. OF THE IMP. RUSS. GEOG. SOC.

TRANSLATED BY  
E. DELMAR MORGAN, F.R.G.S.

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES BY  
COLONEL HENRY YULE, C.B.  
LATE OF THE ROYAL ENGINEERS (BENGAL).

IN TWO VOLUMES—VOL. I.

With Maps and Illustrations.

LONDON :  
SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON, SEARLE, & RIVINGTON,  
CROWN BUILDINGS, 188 FLEET STREET.

1876.

All rights reserved





DS

709

P95 mE

v. 1

## TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.



IT WAS at one of the meetings of the Russian Geographical Society in the winter of 1873-74 that Colonel Prejevalsky, then recently returned from his travels, first gave an account of his adventures and experiences in the heart of Asia.

Being personally acquainted with him, and hearing that he was seeking a publisher for an English version of his work, the idea suggested itself to me of becoming the means of making known to English readers these Russian explorations in countries of daily growing interest. The task, however, would have been a difficult one had I not succeeded in securing the all-valuable co-operation of Colonel Yule, who from beginning to end has assisted me by his ready advice, suggestions, and amendments. To Dr. Hooker, President of the Royal Society, my warmest thanks are also due for his kindness in revising the names of plants.

Most of the illustrations are from photographs lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken, late President of the physical section of the Imp. Geog. Soc., and well known in Europe as geographer, explorer, and botanist. He has also furnished the plates 'Ovis

425077

Number 4 Plate 2-9 43 - Author's name, 2 V. 1. 1873-74

Poli' and 'Gyps Nivicola' from his copy of Severtsoff's work on the Fauna of Turkestan. Of the remaining illustrations I am indebted for that of the Rhubarb Plant to Professor Maximovitch, of the Imperial Botanical Gardens of St. Petersburg; three are from photographs by Mr. J. Thomson, whose splendid photographic albums of China and its people are deservedly admired, and the remainder are borrowed from the 'Tour du Monde.'

In the following translation, while preserving the Author's meaning, I have endeavoured to remove from the path of the reader those stumbling-blocks which might arise from following too closely the original idiom; in this way Russian versts are rendered into English miles, Russian fathoms into feet or yards, degrees of Centigrade into Fahrenheit, old style dates into new style, &c.

I take this opportunity of expressing my thanks to Mr. Clements Markham, C.B., Hon. Sec. R.G.S., for an introduction to the publishers of this work; to Mr. Henry Dresser, F.Z.S.; to Dr. Günther, of the British Museum; to Mr. Robert Harrison, of the London Library; to Mr. Edward Weller, for the care and pains he has bestowed on the accompanying map; and to Mr. Cooper, who has executed the engravings.

It only remains to say a few words about the Author.

Lieut.-Col. Prejevalsky was born in the government of Smolensk of parents belonging to the class of landed gentry. He received his education at the gym-

nasium or public school of Smolensk, finishing his studies at the Academy of the Staff Corps. From early life he displayed a strong love for natural science, and it was to gratify these tastes that he applied for and obtained permission to serve in Eastern Siberia. Thither he proceeded in 1867, and there he remained two years, occupying all the time he could spare from his official duties in hunting, shooting, and collecting objects of natural history. On his return to St. Petersburg in 1869 he published his 'Notes on the Ussuri,' containing a great deal of information on the eastern boundaries of Russia in Asia. Soon after its appearance in 1870 Lieut.-Col. Prejevalsky prepared for his second greater expedition, for which his previous travels and studies had served as a preparation. His companion and helpmate throughout this arduous undertaking was Lieut. Pyltseff. I have only to add that, from a letter recently received from him, I learn that he is preparing for a third expedition, and that he hopes this time to penetrate to Lob-nor, and possibly from that quarter into Tibet.

E. DELMAR MORGAN.

LONDON : *January 1, 1876.*



## INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

BY COLONEL H. YULE.

---

WITHIN the last ten years the exploration of High Asia which, on our side at least, had long been languid, has revived and advanced with ample strides. So rapid, indeed, has been the aggression upon the limits of the Unknown that in the contemplation of a future historian of geographical discovery it may easily seem that the contraction of those limits in our age might fitly be compared to the rapid evaporation of the cloud with which the breath has tinged a plate of polished steel.

It is hardly a dozen years since our mapmakers had to rely for the most important positions in Chinese Turkestan on the observations of the Jesuit surveyors of the eighteenth century; and as late as the publication of that well-known work of the Messrs. Michell, 'The Russians in Central Asia,' the issue, in the appendix to that book, of a new and corrected transcript of those data, was regarded as of some geographical moment. The incidental notices contained in fragmentary extracts or translations from medieval Persian writers, and the details given in Chinese geographical works, often hard to understand, often themselves (like Ptolemy's Tables) only a conversion into written statement of the graphic representations of loose and inaccurate maps, were painfully studied by those who desired to enlarge or recompile the geography of the great Central basin which lies between the Himalya and the Thian Shan. Indeed, from Samarkand eastward to the caravan-track which leads from the Russian frontier at Kiakhta to the gate of the Great Wall at Kalgan, a space of 47 degrees of longitude, we were entirely dependent on



such imperfect criticism of fragmentary sources as we have indicated. Almost the only scientific inroad on this immense territory, and that but trifling in its extent though high indeed in interest, was the excursion of Lieut. John Wood of the Indian Navy to the Great Pamir, in the winter of 1838. The scientific exploration and surveys of the Russians were indeed slowly though surely advancing the march of accurate knowledge from the north; but it was confined within the limits, vast indeed, of their own territory, and touched the Thian Shan only near the western extremity of that mountain region.

With ourselves, exploration, in any extensive sense, beyond our Indian frontier had almost ceased for a great many years after the calamities of Kabul; the only notable exceptions that I can call to mind being the advance of that accomplished botanist Dr. T. Thomson to the Karakorum Pass, and the journey of his colleague Capt. Henry Strachey, of the Bengal Army, across the western angle of Tibet Proper, from Ladak to Kumaon, in 1846. But like the Russians on their side, our survey officers had been gradually mastering the ground up to the limits of the states actually held by our feudatory the Maharaja of Jamu and Kashmir, and to those of the small Tibetan provinces near the Sutlej which fell to us as part of the Sikh dominions at the end of the first Punjab war. And so on both sides a base was secured for ulterior raids upon the Terra Incognita.

This Incognita was not indeed unknown in the sense in which Southern Central Africa was unknown before David Livingstone's first journey; such sources as those to which we have referred above gave some general idea of what the region contained. But even where the Jesuit surveyors left maps, they had left, so far as we know, no narrative or description of the regions in question. And of Tibet in particular we had so little accurate knowledge that the latitude of its capital, the 'Eternal Sanctuary,' the Vatican and holy city of half Asia, was uncertain almost to the extent of sixty minutes.

The first memorable incursion into the territory in question was the journey of Huc and Gabet in 1845-46.

The later writings of Huc, pieces of pretentious and untrustworthy bookmaking, have thrown some shadow upon the original narrative; some of his own countrymen have been disposed to look on his work as half a fiction; and stories have even reached me from Russian sources which professed to recount confessions made by Huc of his having invented his own share in the narrative, and of his having received from Gabet on his deathbed, 'on board a boat in the Canton river,' or taken from his luggage after his death, the true journals on which the popular story of the Journey to Lhasa was founded. These stories are imaginative fabrications, as will be seen from the facts we are about to recapitulate. I confess, however, that, judging from the rubbish of Huc's later writings, my own impression long was that Gabet had been the chief author of the *Souvenirs*, and this was confirmed to me by a conversation with which the lamented M. Jules Mohl honoured me during his last visit to England.<sup>1</sup> But his recollection, I now feel satisfied, had deceived him.

In the end of 1846, as Sir John Davis tells us, Mr. A. Johnston, his own secretary as Plenipotentiary in China, in proceeding from Hong Kong to Ceylon, found Père Joseph Gabet, then on his way to France, a fellow-passenger with him, and heard from him many particulars of the journey. Mr. Johnston found these so curious and interesting that he noted down the principal circumstances, and on rejoining his chief presented him with the MS., and Sir John sent it on to Lord Palmerston. 'Nothing more,' adds Sir John Davies, 'was heard of the matter till the appearance of Huc's two volumes' (i.e. in 1851). This is, however, a mistake, as I find by an examination, as careful as my time

<sup>1</sup> M. Mohl told me an anecdote of his visiting, about the time of Huc's publication, one of the vicars apostolic from the Eastern Missions,—I think Monseigneur Pallegoix from Siam. The new book was lying on the table, and the bishop apologised, saying he ought to have left it in his bedroom; 'a bishop ought not to be caught reading romances.'

has allowed, of the volumes of the *Annales de la Propagation de la Foi*.

The first notice of the journey that I find in this periodical is in vol. xix. pp. 265 *seqq.* (1847). This, after some introductory matter regarding the origin of the Mission in Mongolia, gives a letter from Huc to M. Etienne, the Supt.-General of the Congregation of the Mission, dated Macao, December 20th, 1846, presenting a sketch of the journey up to their arrival at Lhasa, January 29th, 1846.<sup>1</sup>

The next paper bearing on the subject is in the same volume, and is a *Notice sur la Prière Bouddhique*, by M. Gabet, 'qui vient de rentrer pour quelques mois en France.'

Vol. xx. (p. 5) contains a letter from Gabet to M. Etienne, dated Tarlané, June 1842. It had been mislaid, and thus was not published till 1848. It describes a journey to the Suniút country and the Great Kuren, i.e. Urga. This is the basis of the passages on that subject in the *Souvenirs* (vol. i. pp. 133 *seqq.*).

In the same volume, p. 118, we have an extract from a report by Gabet, which continues the narrative of Huc's letter in vol. xix. down to their exit from Tibet. It is vague and dull, and presents a great contrast to his comrade's vivacity. At p. 223 there is a fuller account by Gabet of their residence at Lhasa. It is curious that it does not contain a word of their swaggering conduct in presence of the mandarins, as described in the *Souvenirs*. Vol. xxi. (1849), and xxii. (1850), contain supplementary

<sup>1</sup> Among many other passages the following is unmistakably in the style of the *Souvenirs*: 'Tolon-noor est comme une monstrueuse pompe pneumatique à faire le vide dans les bourses Mongoles.' It is characteristic, too, of the clever but pretentious abbé that he says the name *Djao-naiman-soumé*, applied to the town of Tolon-noor on the maps (since D'Anville's), is 'également inconnu et incompris des Tatares et des Chinois.' Huc professes familiarity with Mongol, yet he is unable to interpret this name (applied, indeed, not properly to Tolon-noor, but to the site of Kublai's summer palace at Shangtu, twenty-six miles to the north of it). The words mean simply 'the hundred and eight temples.'

letters or papers by Huc, and this finishes the series. The *Souvenirs* were published in 1851.

Gabet had then apparently already been sent to the Brazils, where he died;<sup>1</sup> and I have no doubt the *Souvenirs* were, as they purport to be, the work of Huc himself, based on the papers by both, of which extracts had been published in the *Annales*. I doubt whether even any extraneous aid of Parisian *littérateurs* was called in; Huc himself was an adept in that vein, as his letters show.

Colonel Prejevalsky several times finds fault with Huc's inaccuracy in details, a subject which will be briefly noticed presently. And in one of the letters which was sent to Russia during his journey, he even seems to imply a doubt of the genuine character of the narrative.<sup>2</sup> Of this he has probably thought better, as the expression of suspicion is not repeated in the present work. Indeed, Colonel Prejevalsky's own plain tale is the best refutation of such suspicions. For it is wonderful, to the extent of the coincidence

<sup>1</sup> Huc's manner of mentioning the fact is vague, and names no date. It is in the Preface to his second work, *The Chinese Empire*, which is itself dated in May 1854.

<sup>2</sup> 'In Koko-nor and Tsaidam the great caravan which Huc professes to have accompanied to Lhasa is perfectly well remembered, and it is somewhat astonishing that nobody has any recollection of the presence of foreigners among its members. Huc further asserts that he passed eight months at Gumbum [*Kounbom* of Huc; properly *sKu-bum*, v. p. xxxiv. *infra*]; but I saw many lamas who had resided in that temple for thirty or forty years, and all solemnly assured me that there had never been a foreigner amongst them. On the other hand, in the Ala-shan country, the presence of two Frenchmen at Ninghia twenty-five years ago was distinctly remembered.' (In *Pr. R. G. S.*, xviii. 83.) It is to be recollected that Huc and Gabet were disguised as lamas, and probably their real character was known to few.

And on the other hand, Prejevalsky himself (i. p. 135) mentions having seen, at one of the R. C. missions in Mongolia, Samdadchiemba, the servant of Huc and Gabet, whom their readers remember as well as we remember Sancho or Sam Weller. 'He is of mixed Mongol and Tangutan race. He is fifty-five years of age, and enjoys excellent health; he related some of his adventures to us, and described the different places on the road.' Here there is no insinuation that Samdadchiemba's stories were inconsistent with Huc's. Mr. Ney Elias was also acquainted with Samdadchiemba.

of their routes, how the representations of the glib French priest and the Russian soldier agree. Only Prejevalsky's picture of the scene before him is a photograph, careful in accuracy, but not displaying much power of selection as to light or point of view; Huc's is the painting of a clever, perhaps too clever, artist, but still coloured from nature. Artist he is indeed, and as far as may be from science, but, after reading Prejevalsky's narrative, I have felt, more than ever before, the charm of Huc's vivacious touches; more than ever, because the perusal of the Russian work convinced me that his pictures (I do not refer to the braggadocio, probably imaginary, of his conduct before Chinese officials) are true as well as clever. Who that has read the book,—though probably the generations that have risen since 1851, and that have had so much else to read may not have read them,—who can forget that inimitable picture of the yaks of the caravan, after fording the freezing waters of the Pouhain-gol, staggering under the load of icicles that depended from their shaggy flanks?<sup>1</sup> or that other of the wild company of the same species, nipt by the frost in swimming across the head-waters of the mighty Yangtse, and there frozen hard in cold death, the whole hairy herd of them?<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'Les bœufs à longs poils étaient de véritables caricatures; impossible de figurer rien de plus drôle; ils marchaient les jambes écartées, et portaient péniblement un énorme système de stalactites qui leur pendaient sous le ventre jusqu'à terre. Ces pauvres bêtes étaient si informes et tellement recouvertes de glaçons qu'il semblait qu'on les eût mis confire dans du sucre candi' (ii. 201).

<sup>2</sup> 'Au moment où nous passâmes le Mouroui Oussou sur la glace, un spectacle assez bizarre s'offrit à nos yeux. Déjà nous avions remarqué de loin, pendant que nous étions au campement, des objets informes et noirâtres, rangés en file en travers de ce grand fleuve. Nous avions beau nous rapprocher de ces îlots fantastiques, leur forme ne se dessinait pas d'une manière plus nette et plus claire. Ce fut seulement quand nous fûmes tout près, que nous pûmes reconnaître plus de 50 bœufs sauvages incrustés dans la glace. Ils avaient voulu, sans doute, traverser le fleuve à la nage, au moment de la concrétion des eaux, et ils s'étaient trouvés pris par les glaçons, sans avoir la force de s'en débarrasser, et de continuer leur route. Leur belle tête, surmontée de grandes cornes, était encore à découvert; mais le reste



The specific charges which Prejevalsky brings against Huc's narrative are the following :—

1. His description of the ford of the Pouhain-gol, a river flowing into the Koko-nor Lake from the westward, as an extremely difficult passage of a stream broken up into twelve branches ; whereas it forms but a single stream where the Lhassa road crosses it, and that only 105 feet wide, with a depth of one or two feet. (See this work, vol. ii. p. 158, and Huc, ii. p. 200.)

2. His entire omission to mention the high chain south of the Koko-nor.

3. His depicting the Tsaidam country as an arid steppe, whereas it is a salt-marsh, covered with high reeds.

4. His omitting to mention the Tsaidam river, though it is twenty-two times as wide as the Pouhain-gol.

5. What he says regarding the gas on the Burkhan Bota mountain 'is very doubtful,' says Col. Prejevalsky.

6. His representing the Shuga chain as very steep, whereas its gradients would, even as they are, bear a railway.

7. The chain of the Baian-kara-ula, 'about which Huc relates marvellous stories,' is only a succession of low elevations, never exceeding 1,000 feet above the plains that lie to the north, and only a little steeper towards the Murui-ussu. 'There is here no pass' (i.e. I presume no *col* to be crossed), 'and the road follows a stream down to the Murui-ussu.'

8. Huc speaks only of *crossing* the Murui-ussu (or Upper Yangtse), after passing the Baian Kara ; but the Lhassa road lies along its banks the whole way up to its source in the Tang-la mountains, a distance of some 200 miles.

Now, Nos. 4 and 6 are, as Mr. Ney Elias has already pointed out, mistakes of Col. Prejevalsky's own. Huc *does* mention the Tsaidam river ; he does *not* represent

du corps était pris dans la glace, qui était si transparente, qu'on pouvait distinguer facilement la position de ces imprudentes bêtes ; on eût dit qu'elles étaient encore à nager. Les aigles, et les corbeaux leur avaient arraché les yeux' (ii. 219).

the Shuga range as very steep: 'Le mont Chuga était peu escarpé du côté que nous gravissions' (ii. 213). The great trouble in passing it was owing to a strong icy wind and deep drifts of snow, in which they had to pitch their tent and dig for *argols*.

As regards No. 7 I can find in Huc no marvellous stories. He speaks, indeed, of the terrors of avalanches, though probably meaning only the perils of snow-drifts. The snow lay very deep when he passed, and it is conceivable, *pace* Col. Prejevalsky, that the course of a ravine may not have been the path adopted under such circumstances.

As regards No. 8 there is nothing I think in Huc absolutely inconsistent with his having followed up the great river after crossing it. But Prejevalsky himself is, according to his countryman Palladius, not quite correct in saying that the road in question follows the river to its source. And moreover there are *three roads* on towards Lhasa from the point where the river is crossed.<sup>1</sup>

In cases 1 and 2 it is probable that Huc was filling up a mere skeleton diary from memory, and the experience of many will recognise that in such a process natural features will sometimes exchange characteristics in the recollection. This has, possibly, been the case with the Pouhain-gol and the Tsaidam river in Huc's narrative; whilst it is by no means made certain that there are not routes, more or less diverse, and parallel to one another, which are adopted according to circumstances.<sup>2</sup> Altogether Col. Prejevalsky's criticisms are a little too much in the vein of Huc's countryman: *Je ne crois pas aux tigres, moi, parceque je n'en ai pas vu!*

As for No. 5, 'the gas on the Burkhan Bota,' it is absurd to make even the suggestion of bad faith in regard to this;

<sup>1</sup> I derive these particulars from a Chinese Itinerary published by Father Palladius in Russian, and kindly translated for me by Mr. Morgan.

<sup>2</sup> Huc, after quitting the shores of Koko-nor, travelled for six days to the westward, with very little southing, before reaching the Pouhain-gol. This indicates quite a different part of the river from that crossed by Col. Prejevalsky close to the lake.

it is only an instance of Huc's exceeding ignorance of nature, with all his cleverness. The passage is so curious in this light as to be worth quotation. At the foot of the mountain he says:—

‘The whole caravan halted awhile, as if to question its own strength. . . A subtle and light gas was anxiously indicated, which they called *pestilential vapour*, and all the world seemed to be downcast and discouraged. After having taken the prophylactics which tradition enjoins, and which consist in munching two or three cloves of garlick, at last we began to clamber up the flanks of the mountain. Soon the horses refused to carry their riders ; we began to go afoot with short steps ; insensibly all faces grew pale ; the action of the heart was felt to be waning ; the legs would no longer do their duty ; presently we lay down, got up, and made a few steps in advance, then lay down again ; and in this deplorable fashion it was that the famous Burkhan Bota was crossed.’

All this is a vigorous description of the occasional effects of rarefied atmosphere on a person using bodily exertion. The very phrase used, *les vapeurs pestilentielles*, is a translation of the term *Bish ka hawa*, or ‘poison-air,’ by which the pains of attenuated atmosphere are indicated on the Indian side of the Himalya. Even the cloves of garlick, mentioned by Huc, are the ancient Asiatic antidote used in such circumstances. Benedict Goës, in describing the passage of Pamir, speaks of the custom of using garlick, leeks, and dried fruits as ‘an antidote to the cold,’ which was so severe that animals could scarcely breathe it. Faiz Bakhsh and the Mirza both mention the use of dried fruits ; and Mr. Matthew Arnold refers to a variety of the same, I have no doubt with good authority.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ‘But as a troop of pedlars, from Cabool,  
Cross underneath the Indian Caucasus,  
That vast sky-neighbouring mountain of milk-snow ;  
Winding so high, that, as they mount, they pass  
Long flocks of travelling birds dead on the snow,  
Chok'd by the air, and scarce can they themselves

But then Huc goes on to talk foolishness about 'the carbonic acid gas which we know is heavier than atmospheric air'—and so forth, and to tell how this carbonic acid gas caused a difficulty about lighting a fire. Marco Polo mentions the latter fact, but, belonging to the pre-scientific age, he attributes it to the great cold.<sup>1</sup>

In a Chinese Itinerary through Tangut and Tibet, already cited, I find a perfect explanation of Huc's strange talk. At a great many stations on both sides of the Murui-ussu (or Upper Yangtse), it is noted that there are 'noxious vapours' at the camping-ground; so no doubt Huc merely accepted and embellished the phrase of his travelling companions.

A more amusing illustration of this notion is given in Dr. Bellew's recent book, 'Kashmir and Kashgar,' where an Afghan follower, to whom he had given chlorate of potash, says: 'Yes! I'll take this, and please God it will

Slake their parch'd throats with sugar'd mulberries—  
In single file they move.' . . .

*Sohrab and Rustum.*

The authority for the 'sugar'd mulberries' is, as Mr. Arnold himself has kindly informed me, Alex. Burnes. It is a pity that this vivid and accurate picture is a little marred to an Anglo-Indian ear by the misplaced accent of Kābūl (as it ought to be). It was told characteristically of the late Lord Ellenborough that, after his arrival in India, though for months he heard the name correctly spoken by his councillors and his staff, he persisted in calling it *Cābōol* till he met Dost Mahommed Khan. After the interview the Governor-General announced as a new discovery, from the Amir's pronunciation, that *Cābūl* was the correct form.

<sup>1</sup> Another medieval antidote to the effects of attenuated atmosphere at great heights seems to have been the application of a wet sponge to the mouth. It is mentioned by Sir John Maundevile in speaking of Mount Athos; and by a contemporary of his, John de' Marignolli, in reference to a lofty mountain in 'Saba,' probably Java. His accuracy of expression is remarkable: 'From the middle of the mountain upwards the air is said to be so thin and pure that none, or at least very few, have been able to ascend it, and that only by keeping a sponge filled with water over the mouth.' Drs. Henderson and Bellew, in crossing the high plateau to Kashgar, found chlorate of potash to be of great value in mitigating the symptoms of distress.

cure me. But this *dam* is a poisonous air, and rises out of the ground everywhere. If you walk ten paces it makes you sick, and if you picket your horse on it, it spurts from the hole you drive your peg into, and knocks you senseless at his heels.'

Huc, whatever his cleverness as a painter of striking scenes, was not only without science, but without that geographical sense which sometimes enables a traveller to bring back valuable contributions to geographical knowledge, even when without the means of making instrumental observations.

A succession of political events during the last twenty years has greatly changed the state of things in Upper Asia, and has tended to the rapid widening of geographical knowledge. The chief of these events have been the revolt of the Mahomedan subjects of China in Eastern Turkestan and Dzungaria, followed by the advance of Russian authority into the basin of Ili, and by our own communications with the new authorities in the Kashgar Basin; the results of war with China in the establishment of Europeans at Peking, and the gradual abatement of the barriers that excluded them from the exploration of the interior provinces of China Proper; and, lastly, the rapid spread of Russian power over Western Turkestan.

The journey of the unfortunate Adolphus Schlagintweit to Kashgar, where he was barbarously murdered in 1857, was the first achieved from the Indian side.

In the last twelve years Col. Montgomerie has been indefatigable in his organisation of expeditions into the Unknown region by trained *Pundits*. First Yarkand was reached; then Lhasa; and a variety of other geographic raids were made upon Tibetan territory by this kind of scientific light-horse. But much as they have done to fill up blanks upon our maps, and to amend their accuracy, it is impossible for us to regard these vicarious achievements with the same satisfaction that we derive from geography conquered by the daring and toil of Euro-

pean travellers of the old stamp. These, however, have not been lacking either on the Russian side or on our own, nor, as we shall see, have France and Germany failed to contribute to the series of modern explorations in High Asia. Shaw and Hayward and Johnson were the pioneers of British exploration in Eastern Turkestan; and these have been followed by the less perilous journeys of Sir D. Forsyth and his companions, by the ride of the latter across Pamir, and by their success in connecting, at least by preliminary survey, our own scientific frontier with that of Russia. Cooper's two daring attempts to traverse the formidable barriers which man, even more than nature, has set between India and China, are hardly within the field that we are contemplating.

Since 1865-66 Armand David, like Huc and Gabet a Lazarist priest, but very unlike them in his zeal for natural science, has made a variety of adventurous journeys within the eastern borders of this little-known region. On one of these expeditions (1866) he devoted ten months to the study of the natural history of the Mongolian plateau in the vicinity and to the westward of Kwei-hwa-cheng or Kuku Khoto. In 1868 he visited the province of Szechwan, and advanced into the independent and hitherto entirely unknown Tibetan highlands on its NW. frontier, and thence into the eastern part of the Koko-nor territory. On this and previous journeys he claims to have discovered *forty* new species of mammals, and more than fifty of birds. Among the former are two new monkeys, living in very cold forest regions of the hill country just mentioned, and a new white bear. There has as yet been no publication *in extenso* of the journeys of this ardent and meritorious traveller.

Baron Richthofen, whose explorations of China have been at once the most extensive and the most scientific of our age, has traversed only a small part of the Mongolian plateau; but from his remarkable power of apprehending, and of indicating in a few words, the most characteristic features of structure and geography, he has



thrown more light on the physical character of the region, so far as he saw it, than any other traveller.

Our countryman, Mr. Ney Elias, who has shown a remarkable combination of a traveller's best gifts with singular modesty in their display, has carried a new line of observations along the vast diagonal of Mongolia from the Gate at Kalgan to the Russian frontier on the Altai, through Uliassutai and Kobdo, a distance of upwards of 2,000 miles. To him these remarks are often indebted.

Dr. Bushell and Mr. Grosvenor have also passed the Wall at Kalgan to visit Dolon-nor, and Shangtu, the desolate site of the summer-palace of the great Kublaï.

We cannot attempt to recall even the chief names in the history of exploration from the Russian side, though I should be loath to leave unspecified the successful journey of that accomplished couple, Alexis and Olga Fedchenko, to the Alai Steppe, which is in fact a northern analogue of Pamir, separated from the southern plateaux, so called, by the mighty chain to which Fedchenko gave the name of Trans-Alai, the Kizil-yurt of our own Anglo-Indian travellers. But of all modern Russian incursions on the tracts that we have designated as the Unknown, Lieut.-Col. Prejevalsky's has been the boldest, the most persevering, and the most extensive.

The scene of his explorations was that plateau of Mongolia of which we have so often spoken, and that region which rises so far above it, the terraced plains, and lofty deserts of Northern Tibet, which spread out at a level equal to that of the highest summits of the Bernese Oberland, whilst the ranges which buttress the steps of the ascent rise considerably higher.

Captain (now Lieut.-Col.) Prejevalsky was already known as an able explorer, when, in 1870, he was deputed by the Imperial Geographical Society of St. Petersburg, under the sanction of the War Department, to conduct an exploration into Southern Mongolia. With his companion he left Kiakhta on November 29, 1870, for Peking, where they remained till the spring.

The time was unfavourable for such a journey as was proposed; for the Mahomedan rebellion in NW. China and the adjoining regions was in full blaze. Singanfu, the capital of Shensi, and famous capital of China in ancient times, had in the spring of 1870 been invested, and an invasion of Shansi, perhaps of Pechihli itself, had only just been barred by a timely check of the rebels at Tung-kwan, on the great south-west elbow of the Yellow River, a point often, and in all ages of Chinese history, the key of important campaigns. About midsummer the strong frontier town of Kuku Khoto (or Kwei-hwa-cheng), in the border-land north of the Great Wall, was entirely blockaded from the side of Mongolia, whilst raids were frequently made into its suburbs. In October Uliassutai had been attacked, and the open part of the town burnt, and so greatly were the Chinese alarmed for Urga itself that they allowed it to be protected by a Russian garrison.

Prejevalsky himself does not (in this work at least) state these sufficient reasons for delaying his expedition; he rather seems to leave us to infer that the delay was part of the programme; but we borrow the details from a notice by Mr. Ney Elias, who was himself in North China and cognisant of the circumstances.<sup>1</sup>

It was impracticable, however, in such a state of things to carry out the journey projected, and in the meantime Colonel Prejevalsky determined on undertaking a preliminary and experimental journey to the busy town of Dolon-nor and the salt lake of Dalai-nor in Eastern Mongolia. Returning to Kalgan, he reorganised his little caravan, and on May 15 again ascended the Mongol table-land, and travelled westward parallel to its southern margin, and through the Tumet country,<sup>2</sup> till they struck the western

<sup>1</sup> *Pro. R. Geog. Soc.*, vol. xviii. p. 76.

<sup>2</sup> Regarding this country of the Tumet, Mr. Ney Elias affords an interesting anecdote:—‘While at Tientsin last spring, one J—G—, a tide-waiter in the Customs service, and formerly a sailor, told me that every winter, when the river was closed by ice, he was in the habit of going on a shooting excursion into Mongolia, beyond the Kou-pe-Ko pass, “but last winter,” he coolly added, “I went to



extremity of the Inshan mountains on the northern bank of the Hoang-ho. Thence they descended to Bautu, on the left bank of the river, and crossed into the dreary plains of the Ordos.

Their course lay now for nearly 300 miles westward, and parallel to the southern bank of the river, where it forms that great northern bend, familiar to all who have been in the habit of consulting maps of China. In all our maps the river is here represented as forming a variety of branches, but the main stream as constituting the most northerly of these. This bed still remains, but the river now flows in the most southerly of the channels, some thirty or forty miles farther south than it did in former times.

At the town of Ding-hu (called on former maps by the Mongol name Chaghan-subar-khan), the travellers crossed to the left bank of the Yellow River, and here they were in the province of Ala-shan, of which we have from Prejevalsky for the first time some distinct account. It forms a part of

TIBET." This assertion somewhat surprised me, and led to a cross-examination, by means of which I elicited, among other matters relating to his excursion, the following:—He had passed the Great Wall at Kalgan, and had ridden a seven or eight days' journey towards the west, when he arrived in a mountainous country, where there were yaks. He had "read in books" that yaks were found in Tibet. The natives called the country *Tibet*, and so did his Chinese coxswain, who accompanied him. The people were "something like the Mongols," but spoke differently. Thinking he was mixing up his reading and experience for my special benefit and instruction, I left him, and thought no more of his story until some two months afterwards, at Kwei-hwa-cheng, I remarked that the Chinese pronounced the name of the Mongol tribe in that district *Tümet* or *Timet*, instead of *Toumet*, and the truth of G——'s story at once flashed across my mind . . . and that he saw yaks there I have not the slightest doubt, for I have seen them in the same neighbourhood . . . though of course not indigenou, as he apparently supposed.

'Having read of *Tibet*, and never having either read or heard of the *Toumet* Mongols, he easily picked up the Chinese pronunciation of the latter, and confusing the *m* and the *b*, told a story that would have earned for a preaching friar of the fourteenth century some very hard names.'—(*Letter dated Sept. 29, 1873.*)

Marco Polo's *Tangut*, and probably a part, at least, of Ala-shan is identical with his district of *Egrigaia*, of which the chief town was called *Calashan*.

Twelve days' journey to the south-east brought the party to Din-yuan-ing (Wei-ching-pu of maps), the present capital of the principality, where they were well received by the Prince and his family, who has a deep impression of the greatness of the White Khan, i.e. of the Czar. This reception Col. Prejevalsky notes as the only hospitable welcome that they had met with; and he hardly records any recurrence of the like.

From this place they made an excursion into the mountainous region of Ala-shan, which rises boldly from the valley of the Hoang-ho; its highest summit, which they visited, reaching to 10,650 feet above the sea.

These wooded mountains afforded the traveller ample booty in his especial pursuit as a sportsman and zoologist. On returning from their excursion to the capital of Ala-shan, they found their means all but exhausted, and were compelled reluctantly to turn their faces Peking-wards; on this journey keeping entirely to the left bank of the river, and of its old deserted bed, and following in great part, I have no doubt, the route of Marco Polo on his first approach to the Court of the Great Khan.

Prejevalsky, benefiting by the experience acquired on these journeys, employed himself for two months in preparing for a third expedition; and himself acquiring at the same time, by practice at the Russian Observatory, some acquaintance with practical astronomy. A third start from Kalgan was made in March 1872.

They reached Din-yuan-ing on May 26, and some days later having joined a Chinese caravan travelled with it through Kansuh to the Lama monastery of Chobsen, about forty miles north of Sining-fu, a month's journey in all. From this point the Russians diverged to the mountains bordering on the Tatung river for the sake of collections in natural history; and these were very abundant, affording 46 new species of birds, 10 species of mammalia, and 431

plants. They also investigated *de visu*, for the first time it is believed in modern days, the famous rhubarb plant in its native region. With a view to its cultivation in Russian territory, a quantity of seed was collected.

The traveller had, even at this point, become sensible that his means were inadequate to carry the party to Lhasa, and had, with a sore heart, to accept the inevitable. But he determined not the less to explore the basin of the great lake Koko-nor, and the Tsaidam region to the SW. of it.

At this time Sining-fu, Tatung, and Suhchau were in the hands of the Tungani or Chinese Mahommedan insurgents. Kanchau and Lanchau, with several other cities, were held by the Imperialists. The whole country between the two parties was continually scoured by bands of freebooters, who carried on their devastations beneath the very noses of the Chinese troops.

The fame of the rifles and skill of the Russians kept the Tungani from all attempts to meddle with them; and on September 23 they left Chobsen for the Koko-nor, passing right across the country haunted by the rebels. On the march they came on a large body of Tungani, but by putting a bold face on the encounter the little body of Russians utterly discomfited the robbers, who turned tail and fled ignominiously. At last on October 14 they arrived in the basin of the Koko-nor, and pitched their tents on its shores, at some 10,000 feet above the sea. The steppe here is fertile and well peopled with both men and cattle. The people are both Mongol and *Tangutans*, respecting whom a few words will be found in the Supplementary Notes to Volume II.

After purchasing some camels there remained but some forty pounds in pocket. But sure of maintenance from their guns, Prejevalsky resolved to push on.

A high range of mountains was crossed in quitting the basin of the lake; and the travellers then entered the region of Tsaidam, which he describes as a vast salt-marsh, covered with reeds, as if recently the bed of a great lake.

This marshy hollow is said by the Chinese to stretch W. and N. to Lake Lob. Here a sore temptation presented itself to Prejevalsky, as at once traveller, zoologist, and sportsman, to diverge to the westward for a new species of game,—the WILD CAMEL.

This is a somewhat interesting subject ; for disbelief in the existence of the Wild Camel has been strongly expressed, —and indeed not long since by one of the greatest of scholars as well as geographical authorities on Central Asia. It is worth while, therefore, to observe that its existence by no means rests on the rumour heard by Prejevalsky. There is much other evidence ; none of it, perhaps, very strong taken alone, but altogether forming a body of testimony which I have long regarded, even without recent additions, as irresistible.

The following are the testimonies of which I have retained memoranda, but I believe there are several others in existence :—

I. Shah Rukh's ambassadors to China (A.D. 1420) midway in the Great Desert between Kamul and Shachau, or thereabouts, fell in with a wild camel.<sup>1</sup>—II. The Persian geography called *Haft Iklim* ('The Seven Climates'), probably quoting from Haidar Rázi, says of the Desert of Lob: 'This Desert contains wild camels, which are hunted.'<sup>2</sup>—III. In Duhalde we find the following from Chinese sources: 'Both wild and tame camels are found in the countries bordering on the north of China . . . at present wild camels are only to be met with in the countries north-west of China.'<sup>3</sup>—IV. In the Journal of the 'As. Soc. of Bengal,' ix. 623, I see that Sir Proby Cautley quotes Pallas as arguing, on Tartar evidence, that the wild camel is found in Central Asia. Cuvier ascribes this to the Buddhist custom of giving liberty to domestic animals. This may have been the *origin* of the breed, as of the wild horses of S. America and Queensland. But we see above

<sup>1</sup> See *Cathay and the Way Thither*, i. cc.

<sup>2</sup> *Notices et Extraits*, &c., xiv. pt. i. 474.

<sup>3</sup> English folio ed. ii. 225.

that they have been known for at least 450 years.—V. 'Izzat Ullah, who travelled as a 'Pundit' in the employment of Moorcroft, mentions that Khotan is said to abound in wild asses, *wild camels*, cattle, and musk-deer.<sup>1</sup>—VI. Mr. R. Shaw, in his 'High Tartary': 'The Yoozbashee says they (lyre-horned antelopes), go in large herds, as do also *wild camels* (?) in the great desert eastward' (p. 168).—VII. Sir Douglas Forsyth, in a letter which he wrote to me from Shahidullah, on his last mission to Kashgar, mentioned that the officer who met them there had shot the wild camel in the Desert of Turfàn. It was a good deal smaller than the tame camel.—VIII. The same gentleman in the printed report of his mission gives more detailed evidence, apparently from another native informant, which I quote below.<sup>2</sup> IX. Mr. Ney Elias also received strong and repeated evidence of the existence of wild camels north of the Thian Shan 'from intelligent Chinese travellers, as well as from the native Mongols . . . Many of the former, who declared they had seen these animals between Kobdo and Ili, Uliassutai and Kuchen, I questioned as to their being really wild, or having become so subsequent to domestication; but the answers were always emphatically that they had never been tame . . . Moreover, the wild camels were always

<sup>1</sup> *J. R. As. Soc.*, vii. 319.

<sup>2</sup> 'The wild animals of Lob are the wild camel. . . . I have seen one which was killed. . . . It is a small animal, not much bigger than a horse, and has two humps. It is not like a tame camel; its limbs are very thin, and it is altogether slim built. I have seen them in the desert together with herds of wild horses. They are not timid, and do not run away at the sight of a man. They do nothing unless attacked; they then run away, or else they turn and attack the huntsman; they are very fierce, and swift in their action as an arrow shot from the bow; they kill by biting and trampling under foot, and they kick too like a cow. They are hunted for the sake of their wool, which is very highly prized, and sold to the Turfàn merchants.'—*Rep. on Mission to Yarkand in 1873*, p. 53.

The word applied to the wild horse mentioned here is *Kulan*, which is the Turki name of the Tibetan *Kyang*, more properly a species of wild ass. 'This *équivoque* is probably at the bottom of the many mentions of wild horses; but I would not say so positively.

described to me as smaller in size and much darker in colour than tame ones,'<sup>1</sup>—X. Dr. Bellew says: 'The deserts on the east of this territory, in the vicinity of Lob . . . are the home of the wild camel. It is still, as of old, hunted there, and is described as a very vicious and fleet animal, and of small size, not much larger than a large horse. A Kirghiz shepherd, who had resided for some years at Lob, told me that he had frequently seen them at graze, and had himself joined in many hunting expeditions against them for the sake of their wool, which is very highly prized for the manufacture of a superior kind of camlet.'<sup>2</sup>—XI. The Russian Father Hyacinthe, in his memoirs on Mongolia, speaking of Middle Mongolia, says that there are found *wild camels*, wild mules, wild asses, wild horses, and wild goats, especially on the more westerly steppes.<sup>3</sup>—XII. Captain Valikhanoff says that Chinese works *very often* speak of wild camel hunts, which formed one of the amusements of the rulers of the cities of Eastern Turkestan in past ages, though he could not get information regarding the animals.<sup>4</sup>—XIII. Several additional testimonies will be found cited by Ritter (iii. 341, 342).<sup>5</sup>

We have indulged in that digression after wild camels, which Prejevalsky denied himself. He passed on into the lofty and uninhabited desert of Northern Tibet, which extends for a width in latitude of some 500 miles, at an altitude of 14,000 to 15,000 feet above the sea, and reached

<sup>1</sup> *Proc. R. Geog. Soc.*, xviii. 80.

<sup>2</sup> *Kashmir and Kashgar*, p. 348.

<sup>3</sup> *Denkwürdigkeiten über die Mongolei*, p. 110.

<sup>4</sup> *Russians in Central Asia*, p. 141.

<sup>5</sup> Ritter (ii. 241), speaking of the ancient Turks of the Gobi, says :—'Their prisoners of war were compelled, like the Roman prisoners among the Germans, to act as their herdsmen. Sheep, oxen, asses, horses, and camels constituted their wealth. These last have also existed in those tracts *from the most ancient times in a wild state*, so that we must believe this to be their natural *habitat*, and in all probability they were first tamed by the Turk nomads.' I cannot find that Ritter has authority for the words which I have italicised; perhaps they only represent his own impression.



the upper stream of the Great Yangtse, known there to the Mongols as the Murui-ussu or Winding Water. In this region, uninhabited by man, wild animals abound; wolves, argali or wild sheep, antelopes of various sorts, and above all the wild yak, are found in vast numbers. These last our traveller estimates to exist in millions; strange, if it be true, that such a vast amount of flesh can derive nourishment and growth from those bleak and scanty pastures. For the individual animal also is of enormous bulk, an old male reaching to a weight of 1,600 lbs., measuring six feet to the hump, and eleven feet in length without the tail.

Their guns thus provided them with animal food in abundance, supplemented only with barley-meal and brick-tea. But their camels were utterly worn out and their funds exhausted, and thus within less than a month's journey of Lhasa they were compelled, with bitter regret, to turn their backs on that almost unvisited city. And the same causes compelled the travellers to leave unattempted an expedition to the mysterious Lob-nor, though the way was open, and a guide procurable.<sup>1</sup>

Retracing their steps over the plains of Tsaidam and the Koko-nor, they again devoted some weeks of spring to extending their zoological collections in the moist region of the Kansuh mountains; and then, after much toil and suffering in crossing the desert tract of Ala-shan, they again reached Din-yuan-ing, where their pockets, not too soon, were replenished by a remittance from General Vlangali, at Peking. So worn and ragged were they, that as they entered the town the Mongols bestowed on them what Prejevalsky evidently regards as one of the most opprobrious of epithets; they called them 'the very image of Mongols'!

Whilst sending out their camels for three weeks' grazing, they renewed their zoological explorations of the

<sup>1</sup> The true position of this lake, as well as its character, is very doubtful. See remarks in *Marco Polo* (2nd ed. i. 204), and by Mr. Ney Elias in the *Proc. R. Geog. Soc.* xviii. 83.

adjoining mountain region ; and then started on a journey never before attempted by any European, the direct route from Ala-shan across the Gobi to Urga.

This arduous journey had to be accomplished in the height of summer, and occupied from July 26 to September 17. 'This desert,' the author says, speaking of the depressed basin on their route called the Galpin Gobi (3,200 feet), 'is so terrible that in comparison with it the deserts of Northern Tibet may be called fruitful. There, at all events, you may often find water and good pasture-land in the valleys ; here there is neither the one nor the other, not even a single oasis ; everywhere the silence of the Valley of Death.' Finally, after a week's repose at Urga, the travellers re-entered their country's frontier at Kiakhta, on October 1, 1873.

Their toil had extended over three years, during which they had travelled upwards of 7,000 miles, of which they had laid down about half in routes surveyed for the first time, and accompanied by very numerous observations for altitude by the aneroid first, and afterwards by boiling point. The route surveys were checked by eighteen determinations of latitude ; and a meteorological record was kept throughout the journey. The plants collected amounted to 5,000 specimens, representing upwards of 500 species, of which a fifth are new. But especially important was the booty in zoology, which is Prejevalsky's own specialty, for this included 37 large and 90 smaller mammals, 1,000 specimens of birds, embracing 300 species, 80 specimens of reptiles and fish, and 3,500 of insects. The journey and its acquisitions form a remarkable example of resolution and persistence amid long-continued toil, hardship, and difficulty of every kind, of which Russia may well be proud.

A defect in the constitution of the expedition which forces itself on the observation of a reader was evidently the want, not only of any sufficient knowledge of the languages in use, but of any competent interpreter,—indeed, on a large part of the journey,<sup>1</sup> it would seem, of anyone

<sup>1</sup> See vol. ii. p. 111.



whatever worthy to be called an interpreter,—combined, as Mr. Elias has remarked, with a ‘general inexperience of Chinese human nature.’ The traveller himself is inclined to indulge somewhat strongly in contemptuous and inimical judgments of the people among whom he found himself; but this very contempt and hostility, with its sure reaction in ill-will from the other side, was certain to be aggravated by the difficulties of communication. The absence also, of a good interpreter renders it necessary to reject or doubt a good many of Col. Prejevalsky’s interpretations of names.

Before closing these remarks it may be well to notice one or two points on which comment may be made more conveniently here than in the Notes appended to these two volumes.

One of the most novel and remarkable circumstances that come out in this narrative is the existence of an intensely moist mountain region in Kansu, to the north of the Hoang-ho, and on the immediate east of Koko-nor. This tract<sup>1</sup> constitutes there what Prejevalsky calls the ‘marginal range,’ a feature everywhere characteristic of the plateau of Mongolia, i.e. a belt of mountain following and forming the rim of the plateau and the descent from it, but also rising considerably above the level of the plateau itself. In this range, after a short and easy ascent from the side of the table-land, at a distance of only twenty-seven miles from the arid desert of Ala-shan, the travellers found themselves on a fertile soil, abounding in water, where rich grass clothed the valleys, dense forests darkened the steep slopes of the mountains, and animal life appeared in great abundance and variety.<sup>2</sup> The rains, during their stay of some weeks in these mountains, in June and July, were incessant, and the humidity in their tents excessive. The facts are not very clearly brought out in the narrative, and the scientific records of the journey have not yet

<sup>1</sup> See vol. ii. ch. iii.

<sup>2</sup> Here Col. Prejevalsky was able to study the real rhubarb plant on its native soil,—the first European who had seen it there, I believe, since Marco Polo.

been published. But we are told (ii. 102) that the most southerly chain of these mountains, viz. that which rises directly from the plain of Sining-fu, is without forest, at least on its southern slopes, and its alpine zone almost without a flora,—expressions which seem to indicate the humid and fertile mountain region as isolated between two arid tracts. Our information as to the mountain regions still further south is very scanty indeed; but the brief account of Père Armand David's visit to the highlands on the south-east of the Koko-nor region, and nearly in the same meridian as that of which we have been speaking, describes a similar, but even moister climate. 'The atmosphere was so charged with moisture that it sufficed to precipitate this in rain, if several men joined in making a loud noise and firing off their guns.'<sup>1</sup> The mountains were perpetually clothed in mist, which favoured the growth of conifers and rhododendrons; of the last no less than sixteen species were collected. Further south, again, on the same meridian, we have Mr. Cooper's account of his journey from Ching-tu-fu into Eastern Tibet; and here also we have a picture of heavy rains between July and September (see pp. 219, 367, 395). We are here approaching the Irawadi valley and the mountains that bound Bengal on the east, where the summer rain is so heavy and regular. So that these Kansuh Alps, with their heavy rains and abundant vegetation, seem to fall within the north-western limit of a vast area over which the heavy summer rains, which in India accompany what we call the south-west monsoon, are the rule, presenting so strong a contrast to the dry summers and wet winters of the sub-tropical zone of Europe.'<sup>2</sup>

Another subject which seems to require notice here consists of those characteristics of Tibetan Buddhism to which allusions frequently occur in Prejevalsky's narrative,

<sup>1</sup> *Bull. de la Soc. Géog.* for 1871, pt. i., p. 465.

<sup>2</sup> Indeed, it would seem, of the western shores of both continents. The area affected by these summer monsoons, or sea-winds precipitating moisture, appears to embrace Manchuria, the coast of the Gulf of Okhotsk, and the Amur region up to the Baikal. (See Dr. Wojeikoff, in *Petermann's Mittheilungen* for 1870.)

especially that of the so-called 'incarnate Buddhas.' Prejevalsky's allusions to the subject are somewhat crude and loose, insomuch that, hard matter as it is to grasp, and especially to put briefly, I must make the attempt, by aid of Koeppen's admirable book.

'Lamaism,' says Koeppen, 'is the *Romanism* of the Buddhist Church. The thorough-going development of the priestly power, both in itself and in its relations towards the laity, and, closely bound up with that, the erection of an outward, visible, and sovereign Church and ecclesiastical State, exercising rule over people and provinces;—these form the essential character by which Romanism is distinguished from the older Christianity, and by which Lamaism is distinguished from the old Buddhism of India. Wherever these have in other respects departed from the earlier forms, whether in religious practice, in discipline, or in worship, these departures have been, in the one case as in the other, but as means to an end.'

The similarities between Lamaism and Roman Catholicism, moreover, extend so far beyond general characteristics of this kind, run into so many particulars, are often so striking, and sometimes so grotesque, that they have been contemplated with some dismay and perplexity by zealous missionaries of the Roman Church, from the Middle Ages downwards to our own. Indeed, it has been alleged,—but, be it said, it is an allegation which I have endeavoured to verify without success,—that Père Huc himself, who had noted some of the superficial resemblances with his usual neatness of expression, was, on his return to Europe, astonished to find his book in consequence registered in the *Index Prohibitorum* of an ungrateful Congregation.

The details of resemblance between those peculiarities of Roman Catholicism which seem to persons outside of its pale to have so little in common with the spirit of the New Testament, and the peculiarities of this other system, which, perhaps under analogous influences,

has deviated so far from the original form of Sâkya's doctrine, would be worthy of more careful study than they have yet received. And this study might, possibly, suggest wholesome considerations to some well-meaning persons among our countrymen just now.

In its older forms Lamaism was a kind of Buddhism corrupted, on the one hand by the aboriginal Shamanism, and on the other hand by Sivaite magic and mysticism. It also allowed, at least in certain cases, of the marriage of priests, under varying conditions and limitations, kindred to those which strictly belonged to the character of the pure Brahman. Thus, certain of the hierarchy were allowed to live in the married state until an heir was born; others until the son also had an heir. And the sacred dignities were thus often hereditary in the literal sense.

In the middle of the fourteenth century arose the great reformer of Lamaism in the person of Tsongkaba, born in the province of Amdo, at the spot now marked with consequent sanctity by the great monastery of Kunbum.<sup>1</sup> Tsongkaba was a reformer, manifestly, not in the spirit of Luther or Calvin, but rather in that of Francis or Dominic; but we are not in a position to indicate very clearly the scope of his reforms. He did, however, evidently make some considerable effort to revert to the original practices of Buddhism. And the most visible and external of his reforms, the substitution of the yellow cap and robe for the red which had characterized the older Lamas, was an instance of this. Such also was the more important measure of recalling the priesthood to a strict and universal profession of celibacy. The old Indian Buddhism did recognise wedded persons under certain secondary vows as lay brothers and lay sisters, but knew no such persons as married *sramanas*, or full members of the Church. Tsongkaba also greatly checked, or strove to check, the intervention of magical practices among the faithful. These were excessively prevalent among the older Lamas,—as,

<sup>1</sup> *sKu-bum* (pronounced *Ku-bum*, or *Kun-bum*), 'the 100,000 images,' some thirty or forty miles south of Sining.

indeed, we may see from Marco Polo's repeated allusions to the diabolical arts of the sorcerer *Bakshis* of *Tebet* and *Keshemur*. The reform did not, apparently, prohibit *all* magic, but only its grosser arts, distinguishing, as Koeppen felicitously expresses it, between white magic and black; forbidding necromantic incantations, with regular sorcery and witch-broth-cookery, as well as vulgar tricks like fire-breathing, knife-swallowing, and the pretended amputation of the limbs,—or even the head,—of the performer by his own hand. These were all pet practices of the old red unreformed Lamas, and still remain so. Tsongkaba's reform had great swing, and has long been predominant in numbers and power.

He was, of course, canonized among his followers, and is generally regarded as having been an incarnation of the Dhyâni Buddha<sup>1</sup> of the present world-period, Amitâbha, though sometimes also of the Bodhisatvas,—or Buddhas designate,—Manjusri and Vajrapâni. His image is found in all the temples of his Yellow Church, often between those of its two Pontiffs, the Dalai Lama of Lhassa, and the Lama Panchhan Rinbochhi of Tashilunpo.

The reforms of Tsongkaba led to, or at least culminated in, a new development of Lama doctrine and order; from one point of view, in the establishment of a regular papacy,—though dual or bicephalous; from another point of view, in that of a peculiar system of succession such as has, probably, no parallel on earth.

Thus there exist since his time two chief prelates and pontiffs of the Yellow Church, exercising both spiritual and temporal power,—two popes, in fact, each within his own dominion; the one at Lhassa, the *Dalai* Lama, as he is best

<sup>1</sup> The Dhyâni Buddhas (or Buddhas of contemplation) belong to the complex subtleties of northern Buddhism. The human Buddha performing his work upon the earth has a celestial reflexion, or representative, in the world of forms, who is a *Dhyâni* Buddha. A *Bodhisatva* is one who has fulfilled all the conditions necessary to the attainment of Buddhahood (and its consequent Nirvâna), but from charity continues voluntarily subject to reincorporation for the benefit of mankind.

known to us, by a Mongol term, signifying 'The Ocean ;' the other at Tashilunpo ('The Hill of Grace') or Digarchi, styled in Tibetan the Panchhan Rinbochhi, or 'Most Excellent Jewel.' In rank, sanctity, and spiritual dignity these may be regarded as equal; but in extent of temporal dominion the Lhasa Pontiff vastly surpasses his colleague.

These two Princes of the Church are in a manner indefeasible. Whenever one or other shuffles off this mortal coil he proceeds to resume it again under the form of a child born to succeed to the dignity, and indicated by miraculous signs as the reincarnation of the departed Pontiff. This is the system of supernatural succession of those reborn saints whom the Mongols term *Khubilghân*.

The history of its institution is buried in obscurity ; but the old Red-cap hierarchy, at least in some of its sects, had established the hereditary character of the higher ecclesiastical dignities. To preserve this was impossible under the celibate enforced by Tsongkaba ; and the system of succession by pretended reincarnation may have been a scheme artfully devised to preserve union among the Yellow sect, who might easily have been split by the discords and intrigues of an elective papacy, as those causes again and again split the Catholic world, until it came under the compressive force exercised upon it by the existence of seceding Churches. However that may be, it came to pass, sooner or later, that not only those two chief pontiffs, but also the secondary and tertiary dignitaries of the hierarchy came to hand on their succession in the same supernatural manner.

The transmigration of souls, or what is most simply described by that expression, is well known to be a prominent doctrine of all Buddhism. Among the northern Buddhists also, after many centuries, had arisen a doctrine (derived probably from the Hindu Avatâras) which represented the Bodhisatvas (i.e. potential or designate Buddhas, awaiting in a celestial repose the time of their accomplished Buddhahood) as occasionally and voluntarily assuming human form. Thence by a third step Lamaism evolved its



climax in this doctrine of *continuous* incarnations, maintaining the succession to high spiritual dignity on earth.

The *Buddhas* of the past,—those culminations of spiritual progress who have attained and accomplished their day in that supreme position, vanish in Nirvâṇa and return no more. But the Bodhisatvas, for the weal of mankind, become thus repeatedly embodied on earth. This voluntary incarnation is a different thing from the ordinary re-birth of metempsychosis. The latter is a fate incumbent on every living soul till it be freed from all impurity. But voluntary incarnation is the peculiar privilege of those sin-free souls alone which have wrought their way out of the toils of transmigratiōṇ. Transmigration, in short, from a Buddhist point of view, is a *natural*, whilst reincarnation is a *supernatural* process.

This doctrine, no doubt, had early seeds, but it expanded to its full development only in the fifteenth century, and in the Yellow Church of Tsongkaba.

The Dalai Lama of Lhasa is always looked on as the incarnation of the Bodhisatva Avalokiteçvara, the special guardian of Tibet. The Panchhan Rinbochhi is regarded immediately as the re-born Tsongkaba, but therefore ultimately as the Dhyâni Buddha Amitâbha. So that, as regards the spiritual rank and doctrinal authority that he represents, the latter would, perhaps, stand highest; but he of Lhasa preponderates in temporal dominion, and consequently in ecclesiastical influence.

It is very obscure how this double popedom arose; but the most probable deduction from the fragmentary facts accessible is that the Lhasa pontificate is somewhat the oldest, going back to very near the age of Tsongkaba, and that the Panchhan Rinbochhi dates from the foundation of the great monastery of Tashilunpo, *circa* 1445-47. We know that in 1470 both existed, for both in that year received seals and diplomas from the Chinese Emperor.

For a considerable time the two were only the arch-priests of the Yellow sect, and were so regarded by the chiefs of the Reds, who held an analogous position. But

since the invasion of Tibet in 1643, by the Mongol Gushi Khan, who depressed the Reds, and established the Dalai Lama as temporal sovereign of the greater part of Tibet, no such equality exists. The chief prelates of the Red sects in Tibet Proper, in Bhotan, and in Ladak, have now long been in a kind of dependence on the Yellow papacy, and are, both in Lhassa and in Peking, counted among the *Khutukhtus* or *Monsignori* of the Lamaitic hierarchy. I have no doubt that Rome, so fertile in analogies with Lamaism, could furnish a perfect parallel; but the nearest that occurs to my scanty knowledge is the position of the priests of the Greek rite in Sicily, or that which a high Catholic prelate was recently alleged to have desired to recognise in certain would-be deserters of the Church of England.

The *Khutukhtus*,—*Monsignori*, as I have just called them, or perhaps *Cardinals*, as Père Huc himself calls them,—form the second order in the hierarchy, and in Tibet Proper, like the Roman cardinals up to 1870, they hold the civil administration of the provinces in their hands. They also are counted among reincarnate saints. The best known of them is that patriarch of Mongolia who, since 1604, dwells at Urga, the most powerful and revered of all the Lama hierarchy after the Two Jewels of Central Tibet.<sup>1</sup> Next to him is the second Mongolian patriarch, dwelling at Kuku Khoto; whilst a third represents Lamaism at the Court of Peking.

After these come the commoner herd of re-incarnates, who are numerous, insomuch that a great many monasteries in Mongolia and Tibet have an incarnate saint, or 'Living Buddha,' as they are sometimes called by travellers, for their abbot. These are the *Chaberons* of Huc; the *Gigens* of Prejevalsky. And the Red-caps themselves, who in former times admitted of succession by natural descent, have now adopted this supernatural system.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Prejevalsky, i. pp. 11-13. This is the personage whom Huc calls *Guison Tamba*.

<sup>2</sup> P. Armand David tells a curious story of the 'living Buddha' of



Till the end of last century the designation of the successor to all posts in the hierarchy, by this alleged reincarnation, lay in the hands of the ecclesiastics, who pulled the wires, however varied the manner in which the play of identification was played. But for many years past the Court of Peking has been the practical determiner of this mystic succession.

Enough of introduction. I add but one word more. In looking back to the cursory review of recent exploration with which these remarks were commenced, I cannot but note, with some feeling of self-vindication in regard to time and labour heretofore spent in the elucidation of the great Venetian traveller of the Middle Ages, that all the explorers whom I have named have been, it may be said with hardly a jot of hyperbole, only travelling in his footsteps,—most certainly illustrating his geographical notices.

If Wood and Gordon and Trotter have explored Pamir, so did Messer Marco before them. Shaw, Hayward, and Forsyth in Kashgar; Johnson in Khotan; Cooper and Armand David on the eastern frontier of Tibet; Richthofen in Northern and Western China; Ney

a monastery in the Urat country, north of the Hoang-ho. This abbot was rich, and having amassed 30,000 taels he devoutly determined to make an offering of it to the Grand Lama at Lhasa. He set out, accordingly, with a great retinue of monks. But these were excessively averse to the idea of carrying all their silver to Lhasa; probably they chanted in Mongol something like the medieval Latin rhymes Rome :—

‘O vos bursæ turgidæ *Lassam* veniatis,  
*Lassæ* viget physica bursis constipatis !’

So, in crossing a river, they pitched in their own living Buddha and carried back the treasure. The abbot was, however, cast up on the shore, and continued his journey to Lhasa, whence he had returned, two or three years before P. David’s visit, to his ancient convent. The brethren, in the belief that their superior had quitted his former shell, had duly selected a young Mongol as his re-incarnation. Their disgust, therefore, was great to see their old chief reappear. The popular feeling was in favour of the old abbot; but the monks, with their ill-gotten gear, were too strong, and the unlucky *Gigen* was obliged to retire to a remote monastery, where he lived as a simple Lania.

Elias and Bushell in Mongolia ; Paderin at Karakorum ; Prejevalsky in Tangut ; all have been tracking his steps and throwing light, consciously or unconsciously, on his Herodotean chapters. And yet what a vast area that he has described from personal knowledge remains beyond and outside of the explorations and narratives of these meritorious travellers !

There remains but to add that the engagement to assist Mr. Morgan in the production of this work was made, some eighteen months ago, under circumstances which afforded leisure for the task. The promise has had to be kept under very different circumstances of place and occupation ; and this must be the apology for some oversights, and perhaps some repetitions, in the Notes and Introduction.<sup>1</sup>

H. YULE.

LONDON : *February 23, 1876.*

<sup>1</sup> Almost along with the revised proofs of these pages I have received Mr. Markham's publication of the journeys of Bogle and Manning ; not in time to benefit by it, unless by a few minor insertions in the Supplementary Notes.

## AUTHOR'S PREFACE.



FOUR YEARS AGO, thanks to the suggestion of the Imperial Geographical Society, warmly seconded by the Minister of War, whose intelligent co-operation in all scientific matters is so well known, I was appointed commander of an expedition to Northern China, with the view of exploring those remote regions of the Celestial Empire, about which our knowledge is of the most limited and fragmentary kind, derived for the most part from Chinese literature, from the descriptions of the great thirteenth-century traveller—Marco Polo, and from the narratives of the few missionaries who have from time to time gained access to these countries. But such facts as are supplied by all these sources of information are so vague and inaccurate that the whole of Eastern High Asia, from the mountains of Siberia on the north to the Himalyas on the south, and from the Pamir to China Proper, is as little explored as Central Africa or the interior of New Holland. Even the orography of this vast plateau is most imperfectly known, and as to its physical nature—i.e. its geology, climate, flora, and fauna—we are almost entirely ignorant.

Nevertheless this terra incognita, exceeding in extent the whole of Eastern Europe, situated in the centre of the greatest of all the continents, at a higher elevation above the level of the sea than any other country on the face of the globe, with its gigantic mountain ranges and boundless deserts, presents from a scientific point of view grand and varied fields of research. Here the naturalist and the geographer may pursue their respective studies over a wide area. But great as are the attractions of this unknown region to the traveller, its difficulties may well appal him. On the one hand, the deserts, with all their accompanying terrors—hurricanes, lack of water, burning heat and piercing cold, must be encountered; on the other, a suspicious and barbarous people, either covertly or openly hostile to Europeans.

For three consecutive years we faced the difficulties of travel in the wild countries of Asia, and only owing to unusual good fortune attained our object of penetrating to Lake Koko-nor and to the upper course of the Blue River (Yang-tse-Kiang) in Northern Tibet.

Good fortune, I repeat, never forsook me throughout my journey, from beginning to end. In my young companion, Michail Alexandrovitch Pyltseff, I had an active and zealous assistant, whose energy never failed in the most adverse circumstances; whilst the two Trans-Baikal Cossacks, Pamphile Chebayeff and Dondok Irinchinoff, who accompanied us in the second and third years of our travels, were brave

and indefatigable men, who served the expedition faithfully and loyally. I should also mention with equal gratitude the name of our late envoy at Peking—Major-General Alexander Gregorievitch Vlangali; for he was chiefly instrumental in organising the expedition, and he was its warmest supporter from first to last.

But although fortunate in the moral support I received, on the other hand the material resources of our expedition were extremely inadequate, and this circumstance impaired its efficiency. To say nothing of the privations which we experienced on the journey, entirely owing to the want of money, we were unable to provide ourselves even with the requisite good instruments for taking observations. For instance, we had only one mountain barometer, which soon broke, and I was obliged to have recourse to the ordinary Réaumur thermometer to determine heights by boiling water,<sup>1</sup> obtaining less accurate results; for magnetic observations we had nothing but a common compass adapted for this purpose at the observatory of Peking. In fact, our outfit, even of the most necessary instruments for scientific observations, was of the most meagre description.

In the course of nearly three years,<sup>2</sup> in traversing

<sup>1</sup> Parrot's thermometer, which I took with me from St. Petersburg for measuring altitudes, broke during the journey through Siberia; however, in such a journey as ours, this instrument would have been too troublesome, and almost impossible to protect from breakage.

<sup>2</sup> From November 29, 1870, to October 1, 1873, i.e. from the day of our departure from Kiakhtha to the day of our return to that place.

Mongolia, Kan-su, Koko-nor, and Northern Tibet, we travelled 11,100 versts (7,400 miles), 5,300 (3,530 miles) of which, i.e. the whole distance out, were sketched by means of the compass. This map, which is appended on the reduced scale of 40 versts (or about  $26\frac{2}{3}$  miles) to the inch,<sup>1</sup> has been based on 18 astronomical observations for latitude, which I determined by means of a small universal instrument.<sup>2</sup>

The magnetic declination was ascertained at nine places, and at seven the horizontal influence of the earth's magnetism. Four times a week we took meteorological observations, frequently noting the temperature of the earth and water, and the moisture of the atmosphere with the psychrometer. We determined the altitudes with the aneroid and boiling water. Our researches were chiefly directed to physical geography and the special study of mammalia and birds; we made ethnological observations whenever circumstances would permit. We also collected and brought home 1,000 specimens of birds belonging to 238 different genera, 130 skins of mammalia, large and small, comprising 42 kinds; about 70 specimens of reptiles; 11 descriptions of fish; and more than 3,000 specimens of insects.

Our botanical collection includes the flora of all

<sup>1</sup> Reduced again, in the English version accompanying this translation, to a scale of slightly more than one-half that amount per inch.

<sup>2</sup> The longitude of these points, which unfortunately could not be determined, was found approximately by projecting my route survey between the latitudes fixed, and by taking into account the declination of the needle.

the places we visited—500 to 600 kinds of plants represented by 4,000 specimens. Our small mineralogical collection contains samples of the minerals of all the mountain ranges we visited.

Such are the scientific results of our journey; and these met with warm approbation, not only from the Geographical Society, but from the different men of science who volunteered their services to classify them.

The academician K. T. Maximovitch kindly undertook the description of the flora, which will form the third volume of the present edition of our travels. The second volume will comprise our special studies on the climate of those parts of Inner Asia that we visited, and notes on the zoology and mineralogy will be contributed by A. A. Inostrantseff and K. T. Kessler, professors at the St. Petersburg University; A. T. Moravitz, the entomologist; N. A. Severtsoff, W. K. Tachanoffsky, the zoologists; and A. A. Strauch, academician. All these *savants* have generously assisted me in classifying the different kinds of animals, plants, and minerals mentioned in the pages of this book.

Lastly, I must express my earnest gratitude to Colonel Stubendorff of the Staff Corps, and Colonel Bolsheff of the Topographical Department, who have taken a keen interest in compiling the map from my route survey; and also to Fritsche, director of the Peking Observatory, who gave me hints as to the astronomical and magnetic observations, and kindly undertook to work these out. This first volume of

our travels comprises descriptions of the physical geography and ethnography of the country we visited, and also a narrative of the progress of the expedition. The two following volumes will treat of special subjects, and will appear—the second in December of the present year, and the third a year later, i.e. at the end of 1876.

N. PREJEVALSKY.

ST. PETERSBURG : *January 1, 1875.*



# CONTENTS

OF

## THE FIRST VOLUME.



### CHAPTER I.

#### FROM KIAKHTA TO PEKING.

	PAGE
Eve of departure—Post across Mongolia—Mode of conveyance	
—Departure from Kiakhta—Physical features of the country north of Urga—Temples there—Brick-tea—The Kutukhtu and Chinese Policy towards Lamaism—Description of the town—Disposal of the dead—Government—The Dungans—The Gobi—Its character—Its vegetation and inhabitants—The post-road—Argols—Rapacity of crows—The Sand-grouse ( <i>Syrrhaptes</i> )—The Mongol lark—The Alpine hare—The Steppe antelope ( <i>Dzeren</i> )—Antelope-shooting—The native methods of hunting—Pastures of the Chakhar Mongols—Characteristics of people—Border-land of the Mongolian Plateau—Town of Kalgan or Chang-kia-kau—Tea caravans—Chinese Impositions on Mongols—The Great Wall—Compradors and their Dialect—‘Pigeon-Russian’—Road to Peking—Chinese inns and cuisine—Descent into great plain of China—Arrival at Peking	I

### CHAPTER II.

#### THE MONGOLS.

The Mongols—Physical characteristics—Modification of character on the Chinese border—Pigtail introduced—Costume—The *Yurta* or Felt Tent—Uncleanliness—Tea-drinking—Food and beverages—Gluttony—Animal food—Cattle—Importance of their herds—Indolent habits—Physical capabilities and defects—Cowardice—Sagacity and obtuseness—Curiosity—Points of the compass—Estimation of distance—Calendar and Year-

Cycle—Language and diversities—Literature—Love of gossip—Songs—Mongol women—Marriage customs and domestic relations—Hospitality and polite customs—Freedom of manners—Lamaism—Religious service—‘*Om mani padmi hom*’—The Dalai Lama—Pilgrimages—The Clergy—Monasticism—Superstitions—Masses for the dead—The Author’s view of Missions—Administrative organisation of the Mongol tribes—Grades of rank among chiefs, and their salaries—Population—Laws, punishment, and taxation—Military force—Decay of martial spirit . . . . . 47

CHAPTER III.

THE SOUTH-EASTERN BORDER OF THE MONGOLIAN PLATEAU.

Peking—First impressions—The streets and walls—European establishments—Preparations for the journey—Fire-arms and outfit—Insufficiency of funds and its consequence—Financial Arrangements—Chinese Currency—Inconvenience of the Copper Currency—Passport—Departure from Peking—Preliminary tour to the North—Ku-pe-kau gate in wall—Migration of wild-fowl—Road to Dolon-nor—Wood on the way—Jehol—Fauna of the route—Goitre—Khingian Range—Dolon-nor—Idol foundry—Shandu River—Tsagan Balgas—Sandhills called *Guchin, gurbu* or ‘the 33’—A Steppe-fire on the Dalai-nor—The Lake Dalai—Birds on the lake—Mocking-bird—Surveying difficulties—Mode of surveying—Suspicious of the Natives—The Route plotted daily—Road back to Kalgan—Steppe horses—Imperial pasture lands—Climate of South-Eastern Mongolia—The two-humped camel—Its habits, uses, &c.—Arrival at Kalgan . . . . . 90

CHAPTER IV.

THE SOUTH-EASTERN BORDER OF THE MONGOLIAN PLATEAU—(continued).

Reorganisation of the Party—Fresh start from Kalgan—R. C. Missions—Samdadchiemba, Huc’s companion—Dishonest convert—Vigilance needed against thieves—Shara-hada Range—Suma-hada Range—The Argali; its habits and incidents of chase—Late spring—Lifeless aspects—The Urute country and Western Tumites—Tedious purchase of sheep—Dumb bargaining—Difficulties in purchase of milk—Our traffic with the Mongols—Throw off the trading character with advantage—

	PAGE
Rude treatment from Chinese—The strong hand necessary—Difficulties about change—The In-shan mountain system—First sight of Hoang-ho—Tent flooded—Bathar Sheilun temple—The mountain antelope—Its extraordinary jumps—Chinese soldiers—Munni-ula mountains—Their flora, fauna, and avi-fauna—Legends regarding them—Ascent of the range—Chinese demand for stags' horns—Vicissitudes of mountain sport—Impressive scenery—Pass across range—Valley of the Hoang-ho—City of Bautu—Interview with Commandant—Search for lodging—Mob rudeness—We are made a show of—Departure from Bautu—Passage of the Hoang-ho—Military opium smokers . . . . .	132

CHAPTER V.

ORDOS.

Definition of Ordos—Nomads contrasted with settlers—Historical sketch—Divisions—The Hoang-ho and its floods—Route up the Valley—Depth, width, and navigation of river—Old channels; deviation of its course—Disputes about boundaries—Flora of the valley—Scanty vegetation—Liquorice root—Aspect of valley changes—Kuzupchi sands—Terrors of the desert—Legends—Oases and their vegetation—Sterility of the valley—Birds and animals—Traces of Dungan insurrection—A stray camel—Intense heat—Lake Tsaideming-nor—Opium cultivation—Bathing—Superstition about the tortoise—Flight of Chinghiz-Khan's wife—Tradition of Chinghiz-Khan—The White Banner—Tomb of Chinghiz-Khan—The Kara-sulta, or Black-tailed antelope—Shooting these antelope—Their haunts in the desert—Ruined temple of Shara-tsu—Scarce population—Wild cattle—Their origin and habits—Two bulls shot—Fishing; Mosquitoes—Salt lake; Ruins of city—Order of march; sweltering heat—Water! the halt—Wolfish appetites; evening—Loss of a horse; Djuldjig—Arbus-ula range; Ding-hu—Crossing Hoang-ho—Interview with Mandarin—Showing our guns—Baggage examined—Mandarin robs us—Embar-rassing situation—Under arrest—Explanations—We take our departure . . . . . 180

CHAPTER VI.

ALA-SHAN.

The Eleuths—Extent and character of Ala-shan—Sandy tracts of Ala-shan—Flour of the Sulhir grass—Flora and Fauna of Ala-shan—Birds of Ala-shan—Population of Ala-shan—Mongols of

	PAGE
Ala-shan—Lake Tsagan-nor—Route to Din-yuan-ing—Arrival there—Din-yuan-ing and the Prince—The Prince of Ala-shan and his family—The Gigen—Lama Baldin-Sordji—Curiosity of the people—Intercourse with the younger Princes—Questions about Europe—Openings for trade—Stories about the Dalai Lama—‘Shambaling,’ the Promised Land—State visit to the Prince—Interview with Prince Ala-shan—Views of the Anglo-French war—We proceed to the mountains—Mountains of Ala-shan—Birds of Ala-shan mountains—Mammals of Ala-shan—The kuku-yamans or mountain sheep—Shooting them in the mountains—A frightened herd—Desperate leap—Return to Din-yuan-ing—Obliged to retrace our steps . . . . .	231

---

### TABLE OF NOTES TO VOLUME I.

---

#### NOTES BY MR. MORGAN.

Great Floods in China . . . . .	271
The Gandjur or Kanjur : the Sacred Literature of Tibet . . . . .	272

#### SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES BY COL. YULE.

On the meaning of the word <i>Dábán</i> . . . . .	274
On the word ‘Gigen’ . . . . .	275
On the terms ‘Pehling’ and ‘Fanqui’ . . . . .	276
On Kumiz and Darásun . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Tartar Manners at Food . . . . .	277
Mongol Orientation . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
The Chinese Year . . . . .	278
The Mongol Alphabet . . . . .	280
The Khata ( <i>Khadak</i> ), or Ceremonial Scarf. . . . .	281
Om Mane Padme Hum ! . . . . .	282
The Obo . . . . .	283
Tsagan Balgas . . . . .	284
Dumb Bargaining . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Shambaling . . . . .	285

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

TO

## THE FIRST VOLUME.



Map of Eastern Asia, showing Col. Prejevalsky's and Huc's Routes.  
Col. Prejevalsky's Route Survey Map.

1. Portrait of Author . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
2. Chinese Cart in front of the Russian Consul's House at Urga, being a Facsimile of that in which the Author travelled from Kiakhta to Kalgan (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken, Hon. Corr. Mem. R.G.S.) . . . . .	<i>to face page 4</i>
3. General View of Ta-kuren (Urga) (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. von der Osten Sacken). „ „	8
4. Street in Urga (borrowed from the <i>Tour du Monde</i> ) „ „	14
5. The Yurta, or Felt Tent (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . .	50
6. Mongol Girl (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . .	69
7. Group of Khalkas Mongols (borrowed from the <i>Tour du Monde</i> ) . . . . .	84
8. Ruins of Emperor's Summer Palace (from a Photograph by J. Thomson, Esq., F.R.G.S.) . . . . .	102
9. Mongol Cavalry (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . .	<i>page 182</i>
10. Mongol Soldier (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . .	225
11. Ruins of Chapel of Sisters of Mercy at Tien-tsin, destroyed by Chinese Rioters (from a Photograph by J. Thomson, Esq., F.R.G.S.) . . . . .	254



# TRAVELS IN MONGOLIA.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### FROM KIAKHTA TO PEKING.

Eve of departure—Post across Mongolia—Mode of conveyance—Departure from Kiakhta—Physical features of the country north of Urga—Temples there—Brick-tea—The Kutukhtu and Chinese y towards Lamaism—Description of the town—Disposal of the dead—Government—The Dungsans—The Gobi—Its character—Its vegetation and inhabitants—The post-road—Argols—Rapacity of crows—The sand-grouse (*Syrrhaptes*)—The Mongol lark—The Alpine hare—the Steppe antelope (*Dzeren*)—Antelope-shooting—The native methods of hunting—Pastures of the Chakhar Mongols—Characteristics of people—Border-land of the Mongolian Plateau—Town of Kalgan or Chang-kia-kau—Tea caravans—Chinese Impositions on Mongols—The Great Wall—Compradors and their Dialect—‘Pigeon-Russian’—Road to Peking—Chinese inns and cuisine—Descent into great Plain of China—Arrival at Peking.

EARLY in November 1870, after posting through Siberia, I arrived with my young companion, Michail Alexandrovitch Pyltseff, at Kiakhta, where our journey through Mongolia and the adjacent countries of Inner Asia was to begin. At Kiakhta we were at once sensible of our approach to foreign countries. The strings of camels in the streets of the town, the sunburnt faces and prominent cheekbones of the



Mongols, the long pigtails of the Chinese, the strange and unintelligible language, all plainly told us we were about to bid a long farewell to our country and all dear to us there. Hard as it was to reconcile ourselves to the thought, we were somewhat cheered by the prospect of soon commencing a journey which had been the dream of my early childhood. Entirely in the dark as we were in regard to our future wanderings, we resolved first of all to go to Peking, there to obtain a passport from the Chinese Government, and then to start for the remoter regions of the Celestial Empire. This advice was given us by General Vlangali, at that time our Ambassador in China, who from first to last assisted the expedition by every means in his power, and whose generous forethought contributed more than anything to its ultimate success. Afterwards, on our first march from Peking, we saw the advantage of having a passport direct from the Chinese Foreign Office, instead of one from the Frontier Commissioner at Kiakhta. Such a passport gave us far greater importance in the eyes of the local population, a very material consideration in China, and (it must be confessed) in other countries also.

Europeans have the choice of two modes of conveyance from Kiakhta to Peking; either by post-horses, or by caravan camels engaged by special bargain with their owners.

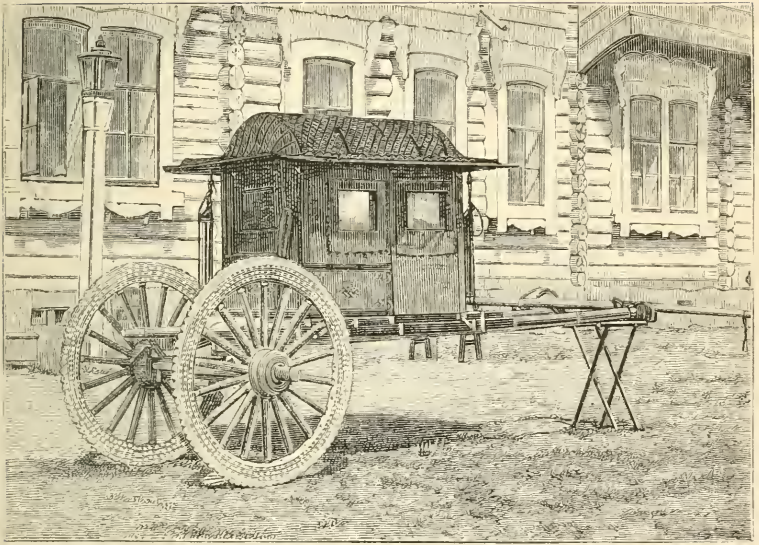
Postal communications through Mongolia were established by the treaties of Tien-tsin (1858) and

Peking (1860). By these conventions the Russian Government acquired the right of organising at its own expense a regular transmission of both light and heavy mails between Kiakhtha, Peking, and Tien-tsin. The Mongols contract to carry the post as far as Kalgan, the Chinese, the rest of the way. We have opened post-offices at four places : Urga, Kalgan, Peking, and Tien-tsin. At each of these a Russian official is stationed, who superintends the post-office, and attends to the regular despatch of the post. The light mails leave Kiakhtha and Tien-tsin three times a month : the heavy mails only once a month. The latter are carried on camels escorted by two Cossacks from Kiakhtha, while the former are accompanied only by Mongols, and are carried on horses. They are usually taken from Kiakhtha to Peking in two weeks ; while the heavy mails take from twenty to twenty-four days. The cost to our Government of maintaining the post through Mongolia is about 17,000 rubles (2,400*l.*) ; the receipts at all the four offices amounting altogether to 3,000 rubles (about 430*l.*).<sup>1</sup>

The Chinese Government has also undertaken to transport, from Kiakhtha to Peking and back, every three months, at its own cost, for the convenience of our clerical and diplomatic Missions at Peking, a heavy post not exceeding 26 cwts. in weight each time.

<sup>1</sup> There is another post-road between Urga and Kalgan, established by the Chinese for themselves. From this road another one to Ulias-sutai branches off on the border of the Khalkas country, near the station of Sair-ussu.

On extraordinary occasions when papers of great importance have to be transmitted to our Ambassador at Peking, or by him to his Government, it is arranged that Russian officers may be despatched as couriers, notice being given a day before the despatch of the messenger to the Chinese governor at Kiakhta and the Ministry of War at Peking. Horses are then prepared at all the Chinese and Mongolian stations, and the entire distance of 1,000 miles may in this way be accomplished in a two-wheeled Chinese government cart in nine or ten days. No charge is made for this special service, but according to established custom, the Russian officer presents a gratuity of three silver rubles (about 8s.) at each station. Another mode of communication across Mongolia is by hiring a Mongol who undertakes to transport the traveller by camel caravan across the Gobi. This is the way in which all our merchants travel on their way to China for business purposes, or on their way back to Russia. The traveller usually disposes himself in a Chinese cart, which presents the appearance of a great square wooden box, set on two wheels, and closed on all sides. In the fore part of this machine there are openings at the sides, closed with small doors. These holes serve the traveller as a means of ingress and egress to his vehicle, in which he must preserve a recumbent position head foremost, in order that his legs may not be on a higher level than his head. The shaking in this kind of car baffles description. The smallest stone or lump of earth over which one



CHINESE CART.

The vehicle represented in the above woodcut belonged to the Amban or Governor of Urga, and was photographed in front of the house of the Russian Consul, where this functionary happened to be paying an unofficial visit. The cart in which our author travelled, and which is described in the text, resembled the one shown on this page.



of the wheels may chance to roll produces a violent jolting of the whole vehicle and consequently of its unfortunate occupant. It may easily be imagined how his sufferings may be aggravated when travelling with post horses at a trot.

In a conveyance of this kind, hired from a Kiakhta merchant, we determined to proceed with camels through Mongolia to Kalgan. Our contractor was a Mongol who had brought a quantity of tea to Kiakhta and was returning for a fresh load. After some negotiations, we finally agreed with him for the transport of ourselves, one Cossack, and all our baggage, to Kalgan for 70 lans (140 rubles, 20*l.*).<sup>1</sup>

The journey was not to take more than forty days, a comparatively long time, as the Mongols usually convey travellers from Kiakhta to Peking in twenty-five days, but the price charged for this accelerated speed is proportionately higher. I wished to acquaint myself as far as I could with the nature of the country through which I was about to travel, and, therefore, a slow rate of progress was rather an advantage to me than otherwise. A Cossack of the Buriat tribe belonging to the Trans-Baikal force was ordered to accompany us as interpreter of the Mongol language. He proved to be an excellent dragoman; but being the son of a rich man, and disliking the hardships of travel, he soon became so

<sup>1</sup> *Lan* appears to be the Russian way of representing the word which French and English sinologues write usually as *liang*, viz. the taël, or Chinese 'ounce of silver.'—Y.

home-sick that I was obliged to send him back, and received two new Cossacks in his stead.

At length, towards the evening of November 29, new style,<sup>1</sup> we started on our journey. The harnessed camel set in motion the cart which contained myself and companion and our common friend, a setter, 'Faust,' brought with us from Russia. Soon we left Kiakhta behind, and entered Mongolia. Farewell my country, a long farewell! shall we ever see thee again, or shall we never return from that distant foreign land?

For the whole distance of about 200 miles<sup>2</sup> from Kiakhta to Urga the appearance of the country quite equals that of the best parts of our Trans-Baikalia; here we see the same abundance of trees and water, the same luxuriant pasturage on the gentler slopes of the hills; in fact, there is nothing to remind the traveller of his proximity to the desert. The absolute height of the region between Kiakhta and the river<sup>3</sup> Kara-gol averages 2,500 feet; then the country rises till it attains at Urga an elevation of 4,200 feet above the level of the sea. This ascent forms the outer northern border of the vast plateau of the Gobi.

<sup>1</sup> All the dates in this translation have been reduced to the new style.—M.

<sup>2</sup> According to a recent traveller, the distance from Urga to Kiakhta is 176 miles. See 'Rough Notes of a Journey made in the Years 1868-73,' p. 19. Trübner, 1874.—M.

<sup>3</sup> The word *gol* is the Mongol for river, and is always added to the name of a river, in the same way as *nor* (more correctly *nur*, lake) to the name of a lake, and *daban* (range) or *ula* (mountain) to the name of a range or a mountain. [See Supplementary Note.]



The district between Kiakhtha and Urga may be generally described as hilly, but the elevations are not great, and most of the hills are round. The ranges have an easterly and westerly direction, and are totally devoid of lofty peaks and steep bluffs ; the passes are, therefore, not high, and the ascents and descents are gradual.

Three of these ranges following the road to Urga are distinguished from the rest by their greater elevation : one on the north bank of the river Iro ; a second, the Manhadaï, in the centre ; and third, the Mukhur, close to Urga. The only steep and lofty pass across these mountains is the Manhadaï, which may be avoided by taking a more circuitous road to the east.

The district we are describing is plentifully watered ; its chief rivers are the Iro and Kara-gol, flowing into the Orkhon, a tributary of the Selenga. The soil is mostly black earth or loam, well adapted for tillage ; but agriculture has not yet been introduced into this region, and only a few acres, about 100 miles from Kiakhtha, have been cultivated by Chinese settlers.

The hilly belt of country between Kiakhtha and Urga is well wooded. But the trees, which chiefly grow on the northern slopes of the hills, are far inferior in size, shape, and variety to the Siberian timber. The prevailing kinds are fir, larch, and white birch, interspersed with a few cedars, ash, and black birch. The hill-sides are occasionally dotted with sparse clumps of wild peach and acacia, and the

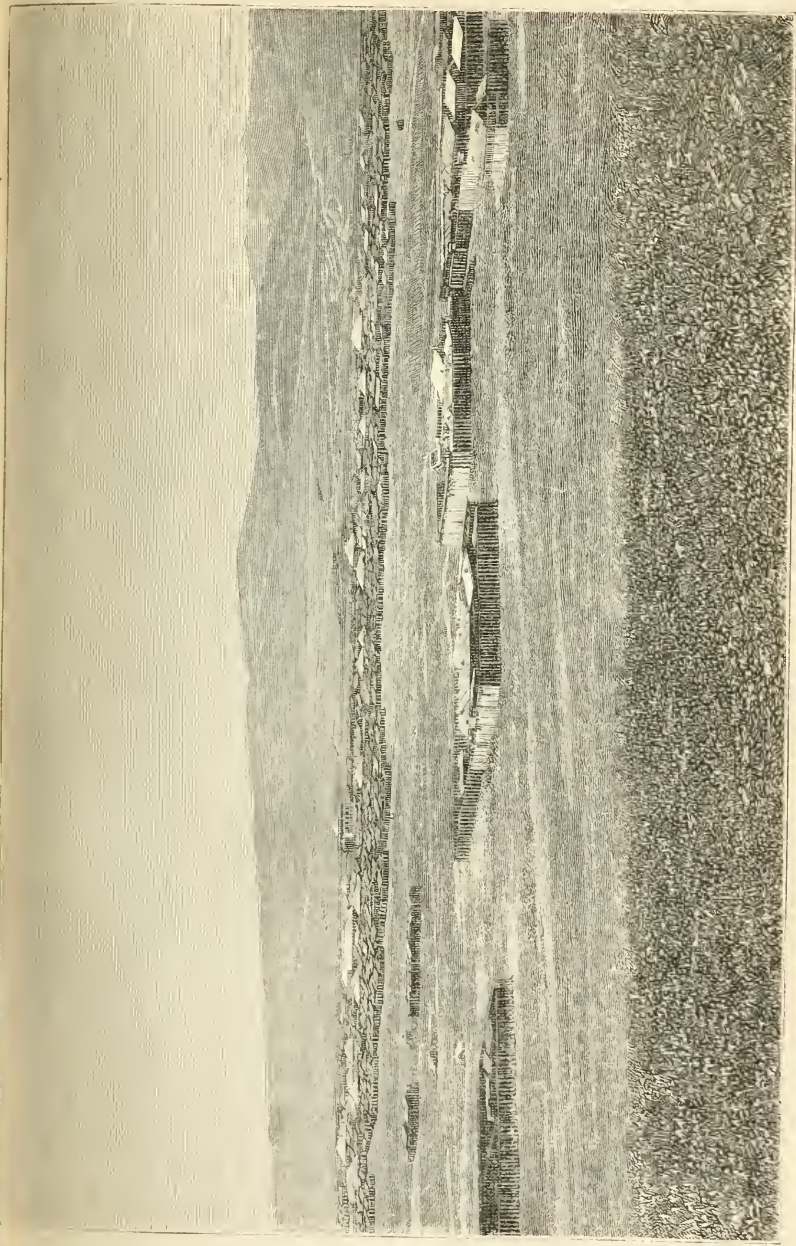
rich grass supplies abundant food for the cattle of the Mongols all the year round.

Of the animal kingdom we found few varieties in winter. The most common kinds were the grey partridge (*Perdix barbata*), hare (*Lepus Tolai*), and Alpine hare (*Lagomys Ogotono*); wintering larks (*Otocoris albigula*), and linnets (*Fringilla linota*), along the road-side in large flocks. Handsome red-billed jackdaws (*Fregillus graculus*) became more numerous as we approached Urga, where they actually build their nests in the house occupied by our Consul. The natives told us there were numbers of roe in the woods, as well as wild swine and bears. In fact, the fauna of this district, as well as its flora, is quite of a Siberian character.

After a week's journey, we arrived at the town of Urga, where we passed four delightful days with the family of the Russian Consul, J. P. Shishmareff.

The town of Urga, the chief place of Northern Mongolia, is situated on the river Tola, an affluent of the Orkhon, and is well known to all the nomads under the name of Bogdo-Kuren or Ta-Kuren, i.e. sacred encampment; its name of Urga, derived from the word *Urgo* (palace), was given it by the Russians.

The town is divided into two halves—the Mongolian and Chinese. The former is called Bogdo-Kuren, and the latter, not quite three miles to the east of it, bears the name of Mai-mai-cheng, i.e. place of trade. In the centre, half-way between the two parts of Urga, well situated on rising ground near



GENERAL VIEW OF THE TOWN OF URGA.



the bank of the Tola, is the two-storied house of the Russian Consul, with its wings and outbuildings.

The population of Urga is estimated at 30,000. The inhabitants of the Chinese town are all Chinese officials or traders. Both these classes are forbidden by law to live with their families, or lead a thoroughly settled life. But the Chinese generally evade the law by keeping Mongol concubines. The Manchu officials, however, bring their families with them.

The most striking features in the Mongolian town are the temples, with their gilt cupolas, and the palace of the *Kutukhtu*, or living representative of the Divinity.

The exterior of this palace differs but slightly from the temples, the chief of which in size and architectural pretensions is the shrine of *Maidari*, the future ruler of the world.<sup>1</sup> This is a lofty, square building, with flat roof and battlemented walls. The image of *Maidari*, raised on a pedestal, occupies a central position in the interior; he is represented in a sitting posture with a *beaming* expression of face. This image measures 33 feet in height, and is said to weigh about 125 tons: it is of gilt brass, manufactured at the town of Dolon-nor,<sup>2</sup> and brought in pieces to Urga.

Before the image of *Maidari* is placed a table

<sup>1</sup> *Maidari* is the Mongol form of the Indian *Maitreya*, the name of the Buddha that is next to come, the fifth of the World-period in which we live.—Y.

<sup>2</sup> This town is on the south-east border of Mongolia, and is the chief place for the manufacture of Mongol idols.



covered with votive offerings, amongst which I noticed a common glass stopper. Numbers of other lesser deities (burkhans) are ranged round the walls, which are also adorned with a variety of pictures of sacred subjects.

Besides the temples and a few Chinese houses, the remaining habitations of the Mongolian town consist of felt tents (yurtas) and little Chinese houses, each standing in its own plot of land, surrounded by a light fence. Some of these small enclosures stand in rows, so as to form a kind of street, others are grouped together without any apparent order or regularity. The market square occupies a central position; here four or five Russian merchants have opened shops and ply a retail trade, and are also engaged in the transport of tea.

The standard of value most current in Urga, as well as throughout Northern Mongolia, is brick-tea, which, for this purpose, is often sawn up into small lumps. The value of goods sold in the market and shops is reckoned by the number of bricks of tea: for instance, a sheep is worth from 12 to 15 bricks; a camel 120 to 150; a Chinese pipe from 2 to 5, and so on. Russian banknotes and silver rubles are accepted in payment by the people of Urga, and usually by all the natives of Northern Mongolia; but Chinese lans are preferred, and brick-tea is by far the most acceptable, especially among the poorer classes. Anyone, therefore, desirous of making purchases in the market, must lug about with him a sackful or cartload of heavy tea-bricks.

The population of the Mongolian part of Urga is chiefly composed of lamas,—i.e. of the clergy. At Bogdo-Kuren they number as many as 10,000. This statement may appear an exaggeration, but if the reader take into consideration the fact that a third of the whole male population of Mongolia belongs to the lama class, he will not doubt its accuracy. There is a large training-school at Urga for boys destined to become lamas; it is divided into three faculties, viz. Divinity, Medicine, and Astrology.

Urga ranks in the estimation of the Mongols next to Lhasa,<sup>1</sup> in Tibet, for sanctity.

In these two towns the principal religious dignitaries of the Buddhist world reside. In Lhasa, the Dalai Lama, with his assistant Pan-tsin-Erdeni;<sup>2</sup> in Urga, the Kutukhtu, or third person in the Tibetan patriarchate.

According to the Lama doctrine these dignitaries are the terrestrial impersonations of the God-head, and never die, but are renewed by death. They believe that after death their souls pass into the bodies of newly-born boys, and thus re-appear to men under fresher and more youthful forms. Search is made in Tibet for the new-born Dalai Lama,

<sup>1</sup> Lhasa, the capital of Tibet, is called by the Mongols Munhu-tsu (the ever sacred).

<sup>2</sup> Pan-tsin-Erdeni does not reside in Lhasa itself, but at the monastery of Chesi-Lumbo [i.e. at the place which is variously called in our maps Teshu-lumbo, Jachi-lunpo, and Shiggatzi, at least 120 miles from Lhasa. It is scarcely correct to call the Panjan Irdeni or Panjan Rimbochi, the personage whom Lieut. Samuel Turner visited as envoy from Warren Hastings in 1783, and whom he calls the *Teshoo Lama*, the 'assistant' of the Dalai-Lama.—Y.]



according to the instructions of his predecessor. In the same way the Kutukhtu of Urga is generally sought for in Tibet, in accordance with the prophetic indications of the Dalai Lama. When the newly-born saint is discovered, an immense caravan is sent from Urga to convey him to Bogdo-Kuren; and a thank-offering for his discovery, amounting to 30,000 lans in money, and sometimes even more, is presented to the Dalai Lama.

During our stay at Urga the throne of the Kutukhtu remained unoccupied, the holy potentate having died a year or two before; and although his successor had been discovered in Tibet, the Mongol embassy could not make their way thither, owing to the Mahomedan (Dungan) insurrection, which had extended to Kan-su, through which lies the road from Urga to Lhasa.

Besides the Kutukhtu of Urga, there are other Kutukhtus or Gigenes in other temples in Mongolia and at Peking itself, but they are all inferior in rank to their brother of Bogdo-Kuren, and when they appear before him they must prostrate themselves like other mortals.

The Chinese Government fully appreciates the extraordinary influence which these Gigenes and Lamas exercise over the ignorant nomads, and on this account protects the whole religious hierarchy in Mongolia. In this way the power of the Chinese is perpetuated, and the hatred generally entertained by the Mongols for their oppressors somewhat abated. The Gigenes, individually and as a class,

are, with very few exceptions, of very limited understanding. Brought up under the watchful guardianship of the neighbouring lamas, they have no opportunity of cultivating their intellects even in the ordinary affairs of life, and exist in a little world of their own. The whole education even of the most important among them consists of elementary instruction in the Tibetan language and the Lamaist books, and even this knowledge is often most superficial. Accustomed from infancy to be looked on as living deities, they seriously believe in their own divine origin and renewed birth<sup>1</sup> after death. Their intellectual inferiority ensures the ascendancy of the attendant lamas, who do not scruple to poison clever boys whose lot it has been to belong to this sacred class. Such a fate is said not unfrequently to befall the Kutukhtus of Urga through the connivance of the Chinese Government, which dreads the rivalry of any independent personage at the head of the Mongol hierarchy.

The Kutukhtu of Urga is very wealthy, and besides the offerings of enthusiastic devotees he owns 150,000 slaves, who inhabit the environs of Urga, and other parts of Northern Mongolia. All these slaves are under his immediate authority, and form the so-called *Shabin* class.

Outwardly the Mongol part of Urga is disgustingly dirty. All the filth is thrown into the streets, and the habits of the people are loathsome.

<sup>1</sup> The Gigenes whom we met during our journey never made use of the expression 'at my death,' but always 'at my renewed birth.'

To add to all this, crowds of starving beggars assemble on the market-place; some of them (mostly poor old women) make it their final resting place. It would be difficult to picture to oneself anything more revolting. The decrepid or crippled hag lies on the ground in the centre of the bazaar with a covering of old pieces of felt thrown to her by way of charity. Here she will remain, too weak to move, covered with vermin and filth, imploring alms from the passer-by. In winter the cold winds cover her den with the snowdrift, beneath which she drags out her miserable existence. Her very death is of an awful nature; eye-witnesses have told us how, when her last moments are approaching, a pack of dogs gather round and wait patiently for their victim to breathe her last, when they devour her corpse, and the vacant den soon finds another such occupant. In the cold winter nights the stronger beggars drag the feeble old women out into the snow, where they are frozen to death, crawling themselves into their holes to avoid that fate.

But these sights are not the only ones of the sacred city. More sickening scenes await the traveller if he resort to the cemetery, which is situated close to Urga. Here the dead bodies, instead of being interred, are flung to the dogs and birds of prey. An awful impression is produced on the mind by such a place as this, littered with heaps of bones, through which packs of dogs prowl, like ghosts, to seek their daily repast of human flesh.

No sooner is a fresh corpse thrown in than the



STREET IN URGA





dogs tear it to pieces, and in a couple of hours nothing remains of the dead man. The Buddhists consider it a good sign if the body be quickly devoured; in the contrary event they believe that the departed led an ungodly life. The dogs are so accustomed to feed in this way that when a corpse is being carried through the streets of the town to the cemetery the relations of the deceased are invariably followed by dogs, sometimes belonging to his own encampment (*yurta*).

The government of Urga, together with the two eastern aimaks (khanates) of the Khalkas, or of Northern Mongolia, viz. those of Tushetu-khan, and Tsitseng-khan, is in the hands of two ambans or governors. One of them is always a Manchu sent from Peking, the other, one of the local Mongol princes. The two remaining aimaks of the Khalkas, those of the Djasaktu-khan and Sain-noin, are under the Tsiang-tsiun (commander-in-chief) of Uliassutai.

Although the Mongol Khans who govern these aimaks are absolute masters in all that concerns the internal affairs of their khanates as sovereign princes, they, nevertheless, own allegiance to their Chinese rulers, who are the jealous guardians of Chinese ascendancy over the nomads.

During our stay at Bogdo-Kuren we heard terrible reports of the Dungans, i.e. the Mahomedan insurgents, who had just plundered Uliassutai, and threatened Urga with a similar fate. Their apprehensions for this city, which is of such importance in

the eyes of the nomads, induced the Chinese to march hither 2,000 of their own soldiers, and to assemble 1,000 Mongol troops. But the notorious cowardice of these fighting men afforded a very insufficient safeguard to Urga, and the Russian Government was obliged to send a considerable force (600 infantry and Cossacks, with two guns) to protect the consulate and the tea trade. This detachment remained at Urga more than a year, and thanks were due entirely to it if the insurgents relinquished their attack on Bogdo-Kuren.

At Urga the Siberian character of Northern Mongolia ceases. On crossing the Tola the traveller leaves behind him the last remaining stream; and here too, on Mount Khan-ola, considered sacred ever since the Emperor Kang-hi hunted there,<sup>1</sup> he must take his last look at forest scenery. Southwards, as far as the borders of China Proper, lies the same desert of Gobi,<sup>2</sup> which extends like an enormous girdle across the plateau of Eastern Asia, from the western spurs of the Kuen-lun to the Khingan mountains, which divide Mongolia from Manchuria.

The western part of this desert, especially between the Thian-shan and Kuen-lun, is entirely unexplored even at the present day. The eastern half is best known along the Kiakhta and Kalgan

<sup>1</sup> It is probable that the sacredness of Khan-ola is due to a more ancient and notable circumstance, viz. that the great Chinghiz-Khan was buried there; see 'Quatremère, H. des Mongols,' p. 117 *seqq.*; and 'Marco Polo,' bk. i. ch. li. note 3.—Y.

<sup>2</sup> The word *Gobi* in Mongol literally means a waterless barren plain almost devoid of grass. The word for steppe is *Tula*.



road, which crosses it diagonally. Here the barometrical levels of Fuss and Bunge in 1832, the journeys of Timkowski, Kowalevsky, and other savants, some of whom have generally accompanied our ecclesiastical missions to China, have enlightened us on the topography and physical character of this part of Asia. Lastly, the recent journey of the astronomer Fritsche on the Eastern Gobi, and my own observations in its south-eastern, southern, and central parts, have supplied, not merely conjectural but most accurate data concerning the topography, climate, flora, and fauna of the eastern half of the great desert of Central Asia.

The barometrical levelling of Fuss and Bunge first exploded the theory, till then prevalent among geographers, of the great height (8,000 feet) of the whole Gobi, reducing it to 4,000 feet. Further observations by the same savants proved that in the direction of the Kiakhta-Kalgan caravan road the absolute height of the plateau in the middle part sinks to 2,400 feet, or as Fritsche will have it, even to 2,000 feet; and this depression continues for about sixty-five miles, but does not extend far to the east, as Fritsche's journey showed, nor to the west, as we found on our march from Ala-shan to Urga, through the centre of the desert. It should also be mentioned that the Eastern Gobi is not so thoroughly desert in character as it becomes towards the south and west. Thus, the plains in Ala-shan, and in the vicinity of Lake Lob, are sterile and desolate in the extreme.

As we have before stated, the Siberian character of the country, with its mountains, forests, and abundant supply of water irrigation, ceases near Urga, and from hence southwards nature assumes the true Mongolian aspect. After the first day's journey the traveller finds everything changed.

A boundless steppe, slightly undulating in some parts, in others furrowed with low rocky ridges, fades away in the bluish misty distance of the horizon without any break in its sameness. Here and there may be seen numerous herds and flocks of Mongols grazing, and their encampments frequently stand near the roadside. The road is so good as to be perfectly practicable for a tarantass.

The Gobi Proper has not yet begun, and the belt of steppe we are describing, with its soil of mingled clay and sand, clothed with excellent grass, serves as a prelude to it. This belt extends from Urga to the south-west along the Kalgan road for about 130 miles, and then imperceptibly shades off into the sterile plains of the Gobi Proper.

Even the Gobi is rather undulating than flat, although you sometimes come on tracts of perfectly level plain, extending unbroken for many miles together. These level tracts are particularly frequent in the central part of the plateau, whereas in the north and south there are plenty of low hills either in detached groups or in prolonged ridges, rising only a few hundred feet above the surrounding plains, and for the most part consisting of bare rocks. Their ravines and valleys are all marked by dry water-

courses, which only contain water after heavy rains, and even then for not more than a few hours. Along these water courses the inhabitants dig wells to supply themselves with water. No running streams are met with the whole way from the River Tola to the borders of China Proper, i.e. for about 600 miles ; the rains in summer forming temporary lakes in the loamy hollows which soon dry up during the severe heat.

The soil of the Gobi Proper is composed of coarse reddish gravel and small pebbles interspersed with different stones such as occasional agates. Drifts of yellow shifting sand also occur, although of a less formidable character than those in the southern part of the desert.

Vegetation finds no sustenance here, and the Gobi produces even grass but scantily. Completely barren spots are certainly rare along the Kalgan road, but such grass as grows is less than a foot high, and hardly conceals the reddish-grey surface ; only in those places where the gravel is replaced by clay, or in the hollows where the summer moisture is longer retained, a kind of grass called by the Mongols *Dirisun* (*Lasiagrostis splendens*), grows in clumps four to five feet high, and as tough as wire. Here and there too some solitary little flower finds an asylum, or if the soil is saline the *budarhana* (*Kalidium gracile*), the favourite food of camels, may be seen. Everywhere else the wild onion, scrub wormwood, and a few other kinds of *Compositæ* and *Gramineæ*, are the prevailing vegetation of the desert. Of trees and

bushes there are absolutely none ; indeed, how could there be, in such a region ? Putting out of question the natural impediments to vegetation, the winds of winter and spring blow day after day with such violence that you see even the humble shrubs of wormwood uprooted by them, rolled into bundles, and driven across the barren plain !

The population in the Gobi Proper is far more scanty than in the steppe country which precedes it. Indeed, none but the Mongol and his constant companion the camel, could inhabit these regions, destitute alike of water and timber, scorched by an almost tropical heat in summer, and chilled in winter to an icy cold.

The barrenness and monotony of the Gobi produce on the traveller a sense of weariness and depression. For weeks together the same objects are constantly before his eyes : cheerless plains, covered in winter with the yellowish withered grass of the preceding year, from time to time broken by dark rocky ridges, or by smooth hills, on the summit of which the swift-footed antelope (*Antilope gutturosa*) occasionally casts a light shadow. With heavy measured tread the laden camels advance ; tens, hundreds, of miles are passed, but the changeless desert remains sombre and unattractive as ever. . . . The sun sets, the dark canopy of night descends, the cloudless sky glitters with myriads of stars, and the caravan, after proceeding a little further, halts for the night. The camels show unmistakable satisfaction at being freed from their burdens, and lie down

at once near the tents of their drivers, who busy themselves in preparing their unsavoury meal. In another hour men and beasts are asleep, and all around reigns the deathlike silence of the steppe, as though no living creature existed in it. . . . Besides the post road, which is farmed by Mongols, there are other routes across the Gobi from Urga to Kalgan which are usually followed by the caravans. At certain distances<sup>1</sup> along the post road wells are dug and tents pitched which serve as stations, but along the caravan-routes the number and size of the Mongol encampments depend on the quality and quantity of pasturage. These roads, however, are only frequented by the poorer inhabitants, who earn a livelihood from passing caravans either by begging, pasturing camels, or by the sale of dried *argols* (dung of animals), which is an article of great value both for the domestic use of the nomads and for travellers, as it is the only fuel in the whole Gobi.

Our days dragged on with tedious monotony. Following the central caravan-route we generally started at midday and marched till midnight, averaging twenty-seven to thirty-three miles per diem. During the daytime my companion and I generally went on foot a-head of the caravan and shot any birds we saw.

The crows soon came to be looked on as our bitter enemies, on account of their unbearable rapacity. Soon after we started I noticed some of these

<sup>1</sup> There are forty-seven post stations between Urga and Kalgan, along a distance of about 660 miles.

birds pursuing the baggage camels which followed our cart, and after perching on the packs fly away with something in their beaks. On a closer investigation, I discovered that they had torn a hole in one of the provision bags, and were purloining our rusks. They would hide their plunder somewhere on one side of the road, and then return again for more. After this discovery, all such thieves were summarily shot; but others soon appeared in their stead, to share a like fate.

This went on every day till we reached Kalgan. The rapacity of the crows in Mongolia surpasses belief. These birds, so shy with us, are there so impudent as to steal provisions almost out of the tents of the Mongols. Nay, they will actually perch on the backs of the grazing camels, and tear their humps with their beaks. The foolish, timid animal only cries at the top of its voice, and spits at its tormentor, who returns again and again to the back of the camel until it has inflicted a large wound by means of its powerful beak. The Mongols consider it wrong to kill birds, and so they cannot rid themselves of the crows, which accompany every caravan across the desert. It is impossible to leave any food outside the tent without its being instantly stolen by these audacious birds, who, if they can find nothing better, will tear the undressed hides off the boxes of tea. These crows and the kites in summer were our inveterate foes throughout the expedition. Many a time they robbed us of small skins which we had prepared for our collection, to say nothing



of the meat they stole; but many hundreds of them paid the penalty of their lives for their unceremonious effrontery.

The only other members of the feathered tribe which we saw in the Gobi were the sand-grouse and Mongol larks. Both these kinds are peculiarly characteristic of Mongolia.

The sand-grouse (*Syrrhaptes paradoxus*),<sup>1</sup> discovered and described at the end of the last century by the celebrated Pallas, is distributed over the whole of Central Asia as far as the Caspian Sea, and is occasionally met with as far south as Tibet. This bird, called *Boilduru* by the Mongols, and *Sadji* by the Chinese, only inhabits the desert, where it feeds on the seeds of different grasses (dwarf wormwood, *sulhir*, &c.), upon which it entirely depends for food in winter. In the cold season vast numbers flock together in the desert of Ala-shan, attracted by the seeds of the *sulhir* (*Agriophyllum Gobicum*), of which they are very fond. In summer some of them appear in Trans-Baikalia, where they breed. Their eggs, three in number, are laid on the bare ground, where the hen bird sits staunchly, although the bird in ordinary circumstances timid. In winter they are often compelled by the cold and

<sup>1</sup> Or *Syrrhaptes Pallasii*, allied to the *Pterodes* to which the name sand-grouse is, I believe, more usually applied, but with some curious peculiarities. This bird, whose proper home is in the steppes of North-Eastern Asia, and which is described by Marco Polo under the name of *Barguerlac* (*Turki Baghirlak*), visited England in considerable numbers between 1859 and 1863, but has not since, I believe, renewed its immigration, so far from its natural habitat (see *Marco Polo*, 2nd ed., i. 265, and the references there).—Y.



snowstorms to take refuge in the plains of Northern China, where they may be seen in large packs; but as soon as the weather moderates they return to their native deserts. Their flight is remarkably rapid, and when in large numbers the whirring sound made by their wings is heard a long way, resembling the noise of an approaching storm.<sup>1</sup> They are very awkward runners on the ground, probably owing to the peculiar formation of their feet, the toes almost growing together, and the sole being covered with a horny substance like the hoof of a camel.

After their morning meal, the sand-grouse always resort to some spring, well, or salt-lake to drink. Here they will not alight till they have first described two circles in the air to assure themselves of safety, and after hurriedly satisfying their thirst they fly off again. They will sometimes fly long distances to the water.

The Mongol lark (*Melanocorypha Mongolica*) is only met with occasionally on the desert tract; its habitat is in the grassy portions of the Gobi, and there in winter it is found by hundreds and thousands. Those we saw were mostly in the Southern Gobi; they are also not uncommon in China, at all events during winter.

The Mongol lark is the best songster of the Central Asian desert. In his music he rivals his European congener. He has also a remarkable

<sup>1</sup> Marco Polo's recollection of this characteristic is condensed into the words '*moult volant*.'—Y.

power of imitating the notes of other birds, introducing them into his own melody. Like our lark, he sings as he soars up to the sky, or when perched on a stone or stump of a tree. The Chinese call him *bai-ling*, and delight in his song, often keeping him as a cage-bird.

Like the sand-grouse, the Mongol lark visits the north, and breeds in Trans-Baikalia, although it prefers remaining in Mongolia, where it makes its nest on the ground like the European species, depositing three or four eggs in a little hole. In the desert of Mongolia, where the cold weather lasts all the spring, these larks form their nests late in the year, and we found their fresh-laid eggs in the beginning, and even the end, of June. Wintering in those parts of the Gobi where little, if any, snow falls, they withstand the severest cold (as much as  $-34^{\circ}$  Fahr.),<sup>1</sup> finding shelter in the tufts of *dirisun*, the small seeds of which are at this season their chief food. This, and similar observations we have made, lead to the opinion that many of the feathered tribe are driven southwards in winter by want of food, and not by cold.

The Mongol lark is found as far south as the northern bend of the Yellow River, and then avoiding Ordos, Ala-shan, and the mountains of Kan-su, it re-appears in the steppe near Lake Koko-nor. Two other kinds of larks also winter in the Gobi in very large numbers (*Otocoris albigula*, *Alauda pis-poletta*), and the Lapland ortolan (*Plectrophanes Lap-*

<sup>1</sup> A lower temperature even than this was recorded at Urga.

*ponica*); the latter, however, is mostly seen in the country of the Chakhars, i.e. on the south-eastern border of the Gobi.

Of mammalia peculiar to this desert only two characteristic kinds can be mentioned: the Alpine hare and antelope.

The Alpine hare (*Lagomys Ogotono*), or, as the Mongols call it, the *Ogotono*, belongs to the order of rodents, and is from the form of its teeth regarded as closely allied to the hare. It is about the size of the common rat and burrows in the earth, invariably choosing for its habitat the grass steppes, particularly where the ground is uneven, and the valleys in the mountains of Trans-Baikalia and the north of Mongolia. It is never found in the barren desert, and, therefore, does not inhabit the central and southern Gobi.<sup>1</sup>

The ogotono is a curious little animal of a sociable disposition, and where one of its burrows is found some tens, hundreds, or even thousands more will invariably be near it. In winter, when the cold is intense, they never leave their holes,<sup>2</sup> but as soon as the temperature becomes warmer they come out and sit at the entrance sunning themselves, or scamper from one burrow to another. The poor ogotono has so many enemies that it must be constantly on the look-out for danger. It will sometimes only venture half-way out of its hole, raising

<sup>1</sup> The ogotono is very numerous in the grass plains of South-eastern Mongolia.

<sup>2</sup> These little animals are never dormant in winter.

its head to assure itself of the absence of danger. Steppe-foxes, wolves, but especially buzzards, hawks, kites, and even eagles, daily destroy countless numbers of these little animals. The skill with which the winged assailants seize their prey is remarkable. I have often seen a buzzard descend so rapidly on its victim as not to give it time to retreat into its burrow, and an eagle on one such occasion swooped down from a height of at least 200 feet. The buzzard (*Buteo ferox*) feeds entirely on the ogotono; but such is the rapidity with which they breed that this wholesale destruction is probably the only way of checking their excessive increase. Curiosity is a distinctive trait of this animal; it will allow a man or dog to approach within ten paces of it, then suddenly disappear in its hole; but, in a few minutes its head may be seen at the entrance, and, if the object of its fears has removed a little further away, it will venture out and resume its former position. Another of its habits, peculiar also to other kinds of this tribe, is to lay in a store of hay for winter use, stacking it at the entrance of its home. The hay is collected towards the end of summer, carefully dried and made into little stacks weighing from four to five or even ten pounds. This serves for its couch underground and for food during the winter; but very often the labour is in vain and cattle devour its store. In such case the unfortunate little creature is reduced to feed on the withered grass which grows near its burrow.

The ogotono can exist a long time without water. In winter it can quench its thirst with snow, and in

summer with rain, or if there be no rainfall, with dew, which, however, is rare; but the question is what does it find to drink in spring and autumn, when for months together no rain or snow falls on the plateau and the atmosphere is excessively dry?

This little animal is found as far south as the northern bend of the Hoang-ho, beyond which it is replaced by other kinds.

The *dzeren* (*Antilope gutturosa*) is a species of antelope, about the size of the common goat, characteristic of the Gobi desert, especially of its eastern or less barren part. It is also met with in Western Mongolia,<sup>1</sup> and in the environs of Lake Koko-nor, which is the southern limit of its distribution.

These antelopes are gregarious, their herds sometimes numbering several hundred or even thousand head in those parts where food is plentiful, but they are most frequently seen in smaller numbers of fifteen to thirty or forty head; although they avoid the neighbourhood of man, they always select the best pasturage of the desert, and, like the Mongols, migrate from place to place in search of food, sometimes travelling great distances, especially in summer, when the drought drives them to the rich pasture lands of Northern Mongolia, and as far as the confines of Trans-Baikalia. The deep snows of winter often compel them to travel several hundred miles in search of places almost or entirely free from snow. They belong exclusively to the plains, and

<sup>1</sup> There are no dzerens in Ala-shan on account of the utterly desert and barren character of that country.

carefully avoid the hilly country, but sometimes appear in the undulating parts of the steppe, particularly in spring, attracted by the young grass, which shoots up under the influence of the sun's warmth. They shun thickets and high grass, excepting at the time of parturition, which is in May, when the doe seeks the covert to conceal her newborn offspring. But a few days after their birth the fawns follow their mothers about everywhere, and soon rival the fleet-footedness of their sires. They very seldom utter any sound, though the males occasionally give a short loud bleat. Nature has endowed them with excellent sight, hearing, and smell; their swiftness is marvellous, and their intelligence well developed, qualities which prevent their falling so easy a prey, as they otherwise would, to their enemies—man and the wolf.

Antelope-shooting is a difficult business, both because the animal is so shy, and because even when hit mortally it will often get away. In the open steppe a man cannot approach within 500 paces of them, and if they are once startled you may say twice that distance. Their careful avoidance of any cover makes it next to impossible to stalk them in the open plain. It is only in those parts of the steppe that abound in hillocks that a man can get within 300 yards, or sometimes, but rarely, within 200 yards, and even then he cannot be certain of his quarry. Granted that at 200 yards, with a good rifle, you are sure of your aim, on the other hand, your bullet does not kill unless it chance to hit the



head, heart, or lungs. In any other case the dzeren escapes, although perhaps mortally wounded, and is often lost to the hunter, for it runs faster with a broken leg than a good horse can gallop. For this sport you must have a rifle with a long point-blank range, because it is almost impossible to judge distances accurately in the steppe. You must have a rest for your rifle, such as the native sportsmen of Siberia use, otherwise you will be apt to find that, after having walked quickly for a considerable distance, your hand is shaky just when you want to take your aim! In fact on entering the deserts of Asia the sportsman must lay aside his European experiences and learn a great deal from the native hunters.

The Mongols, armed with their poor matchlocks, hunt the dzerens in the following way. In those parts of the steppe where antelope abound they dig small pits at certain distances apart. These holes at first excite mistrust, so the animals are left alone for some weeks to get used to them. The hunters then repair to their allotted stations, and conceal themselves in the pits, while others make a wide circuit to windward driving the herd towards the ambush, and no gun is fired till they are within a distance of fifty paces or even less. The drivers must know their business and be thoroughly familiar with the habits of the animal, otherwise their labour will be lost. They must never gallop suddenly up to the herd, because if they do the antelope almost always escape. The usual plan is to make a circuit



round the herd, slowly narrowing the circle with repeated halts, or else to ride on one flank at a foot's pace, gradually edging the herd towards the ambush.

The natives have another mode of hunting dzerens. A Mongol, mounted on a quiet and well-trained camel, rides over the steppe. On seeing antelope he dismounts, and leading his camel by the bridle quietly approaches the herd, concealing himself as much as possible by keeping step with the camel. At first the antelope are startled, but seeing only a camel quietly browsing, they allow the hunter to approach within a hundred paces, or even nearer. Towards the end of summer the dzerens are very fat, and are eagerly hunted by the Mongols for the sake of their delicate flesh, and also for their skins, which are made into winter clothing. The nomads, however, rarely wear the skins themselves, but sell them to Russian merchants at Urga or Kiakhta. Dzerens are also snared in traps made in the shape of a shoe, of tough grass (*dirisun*). When caught by the leg in one of these, the animal lames itself in its struggles to get free, and is unable to move.

The dzeren have even a more deadly enemy than man in the wolves. Whole herds, according to Mongol description, meet their death from these. And they are also subject at certain periods to epidemics, which, as I myself witnessed in the winter of 1871, commit great ravages among them.

It was on our way to Kalgan, some 230 miles from Urga, that we first saw the dzeren. I need not dwell on the impression produced by the first sight

of a herd of these antelope on myself and companion. We went after them day after day, to the extreme dissatisfaction of our Mongols, who had to wait hours for us, and at length became so discontented that we could only appease them by giving them a share of the spoil.

Notwithstanding the barrenness and desolate appearance of the Gobi, the road to Kalgan was kept amply alive by the tea-caravans which passed us by the dozen daily. I will presently describe one of these caravans, but now let us go back to the plateau of Mongolia.

After leaving the Khalka country, we passed through the land of the Sunni Mongols, and left behind the most barren part of the Gobi, entering a more fertile belt, which forms a fringe on the south-east, as a like belt does on the north, to the wild and barren centre of the plateau. The surface of the country now becomes more uneven, and is covered with excellent grass, on which the Chakhar Mongols pasture their numerous herds. These people are the frontier police of China Proper, having been enrolled in the government service, and divided into eight banners. Their country is about 130 miles in width, but its length from east to west is nearly three times as much.

Owing to their constant intercourse with the Chinese, the Chakhars of the present day have lost not only the character, but also the type, of pure Mongols. Preserving the native idleness of their past existence, they have adopted from the Chinese

only the worst features of their character, and are degenerate mongrels, without either the honesty of the Mongol or the industry of the Chinaman. The dress of the Chakhars is the same as that worn by the Chinese, whom they resemble in features, having generally a drawn or angular, rather than a flat or round face. This change of type is produced by frequent intermarriages between the Chakhar men and Chinese women; the offspring of this union of race is called *Erlidzi*. Other Mongols, particularly the Khalkas, detest them as much as they do the Chinese, and our drivers always kept watch at night while travelling through this country, because they said that all its inhabitants were the greatest thieves.

The Chakhar country is badly watered, but a few lakes may now and again be seen, the largest of which is Lake Anguli-nor. It is only when you get near the border of the plateau, and after you have passed some small streams, that the first signs of cultivation and settled life appear. The Chinese villages and cultivated fields plainly tell the traveller that he has at last left the wild desert behind him, and has entered a country more congenial to man.

At length, far away on the horizon, can be discerned the dim outlines of that range which forms so distinct a definition between the high chilly plateau of Mongolia and the warm plains of China Proper. This range is thoroughly Alpine. Steep hill-sides, deep valleys, lofty precipices, sharp peaks often crowned with overhanging rocks and an ap-

pearance of savage grandeur, are the chief characteristics of the mountains, along the axis of which is carried the Great Wall. Like many other ranges of Inner Asia, which have a lofty plateau on one side and low plains on the other, this presents no ascent from the side of the plateau. To the very last the traveller makes his way through undulating hills, until a marvellous panorama is suddenly disclosed to his view. Beneath his feet are rows upon rows of lofty mountains, precipices, chasms, and ravines, intermingled in the wildest confusion; beyond lie thickly populated valleys, through which glide winding rivers. The contrast between that which has been passed and that which lies before is wonderful. The change of climate is not less remarkable. Hitherto, during the whole of our march, frosts were of daily occurrence, sometimes exceeding  $-34^{\circ}$  Fahr., and always accompanied by strong north-west winds without snow. Now, as we descended, the temperature grew warmer at every step, and on arriving at Kalgan the weather was spring-like, although it was yet early in January; so marked was the change in a distance of about seventeen miles, separating this town from the commencement of the descent. The high land has a height of some 5,400 feet, whereas the town of Kalgan, at the entrance to the plains, is only 2,800 feet above the level of the sea.<sup>1</sup>

This town, called by the Chinese Chang-kia-kau, commands the pass through the Great Wall,

<sup>1</sup> Kalgan is derived from the Mongol word *Khalga*, i.e. a barrier.

and is an important place for the Chinese trade with Mongolia.<sup>1</sup> Kalgan numbers 70,000 inhabitants, who are entirely Chinese, but include a great many Mahomedans, known throughout China by the name of *Hwei Hwei*. Two Protestant missionaries, and several Russian merchants engaged in the tea-carrying trade, reside here. Notwithstanding the increased importation of tea by sea, and the consequent diminution of the land transport, 200,000 chests are still annually sent from Kalgan to Urga and Kiakhta, each weighing 108 lbs. This tea is brought to Kalgan from the plantations near Hankau,<sup>2</sup> partly by land and partly by steamers, to Tien-tsin; one-half is then delivered to Russian merchants for further transport, and the remainder is forwarded to Kiakhta or Urga<sup>3</sup> by the Chinese themselves. The Mongols are the carriers, and earn large sums from this business, which only lasts during the autumn, winter, and early spring (up to April). In summer all the camels are turned out to grass on the steppe, where they shed their coats and recruit their strength for fresh work.

The caravans of tea form a very characteristic feature in Eastern Mongolia. In early autumn, i.e. towards the middle of September, long strings of camels may be seen converging on Kalgan from all quarters, saddled, and ready to carry a burden of

<sup>1</sup> Russian cloth, plush and furs are also sent hither.

<sup>2</sup> This town is on the lower Yangtze-Kiang, or Blue River; in it are the establishments of the Russians and other Europeans engaged in the tea-trade.

<sup>3</sup> Some of the tea is left here for the consumption of the Mongols.

four chests of tea (a little under 4 cwts.) on their backs across the desert. This is the usual load of a Mongol camel, but the stronger ones bear an additional fifth chest. The Mongols contract to carry tea either direct to Kiakhta or only to Urga, beyond which place the mountains and frequent deep snows are formidable obstacles to the progress of camels. The tea is only transported in this manner as far as Urga; it is conveyed the rest of the way in two-wheeled bullock-carts.

The average cost of the transport of one chest from Kalgan to Kiakhta is equivalent to three lans (or taëls); each camel can therefore earn twelve lans (or about 3*l.* 10*s.*). The caravan generally accomplishes two journeys from Kalgan to Kiakhta during the winter, the owner earning about 7*l.* by each of his animals. Two drivers are usually placed in charge of twenty-five camels and their loads; the cost of transport is therefore very small, and the contractor realises a large profit, after deducting for losses by the death of camels from fatigue and starvation. The caravan camels are often rendered unfit for service by sore feet, lameness, or galled backs, occasioned by careless loading. If the lameness be caused by worn-out hoofs, the Mongols bind the animal, throw him on the ground, and sew a piece of leather over the injured hoof, which answers the purpose of a sole, and generally effects a cure; a sore-backed camel is unfit for further use that season, and is let loose on the steppe to recover. Taking into account the percentage of lost and damaged



camels, the owner of some dozens of these animals may gain a large profit; but many carriers have several hundred camels, and of course their earnings are proportionately greater. One would suppose that the Mongols would grow rich in this way, but in fact it is otherwise,—hardly one of them taking home a few hundred rubles, and almost all the money passes into the hands of the Chinese.

The latter impose upon the simple-minded Mongols in the most scandalous way. On the arrival of the autumn caravans, the Chinese ride out to meet them, and invite the owners to stay with them. Lodgings are given gratis, and every attention is shown. The unkempt Mongol, to whom the Chinese at any other time does not deign to speak, now lounges on the couches of his host, the rich merchant, who generally waits upon his guest in person, and anticipates his slightest wish. The Mongol accepts all this hospitality as genuine, and authorises his host to settle accounts for him with the merchant whose tea he contracts to carry. This is exactly what is required by the Chinaman. On receiving the money, always paid in advance, he swindles his client in the most unconscionable way, and then offers him first one and then another article, charging double price for all. Part of the money is then kept back for taxation and fees to officials, and more is expended on entertainment, until the Mongol takes his departure from Kalgan with a mere fraction left of his large earnings. Some of this, too, he is compelled to devote to religious uses,



so that he returns home in spring nearly empty-handed.<sup>1</sup>

The land transport is so expensive that the price of brick-tea, which is exclusively consumed by the Mongols and inhabitants of Siberia, is increased by three times the cost of its production. A caravan takes from thirty to forty days on the road from Kalgan to Kiakhta, according to agreement with the contractor.

The tea chests are first covered with thick woollen cloths, which are afterwards stripped off, and the boxes sewn up in undressed hides, and despatched to European Russia, on carts or on sledges, according to the season of the year. Kalgan, as we have said, commands one of the passes through the Great Wall, which we beheld for the first time. It is built of large stones, cemented together with mortar. The wall itself is tapering, 21 feet high, and about 28 feet wide at the foundation. At the most important points, less than a mile apart, square towers are erected, built of bricks laid in mortar, as headers and stretchers. The size of the towers varies considerably, the largest measuring 42 feet on each side at the base, and the same in height.

The wall winds over the crest of the dividing range, crossing the valleys at right angles, and blocking them with fortifications. At such places alone could this barrier be of any advantage for defensive

<sup>1</sup> See in Huc a clever description of the way in which the Mongol is swindled. Huc's '*Souvenirs d'un Voyage dans la Tartarie, le Thibet, et la Chine,*' vol. i. 173.—Y.

purposes. The mountains, inaccessible by nature, are nevertheless crowned by a wall as formidable as that which bars the valleys.

What could have been the object of this gigantic work? How many millions of human hands must have laboured at it! What a vain expenditure of national strength! History records that this wall was built, upwards of two centuries before the birth of Christ, by the Chinese sovereigns, to protect their empire from the inroads of the neighbouring nomads; but we also read that the periodical irruptions of the barbarians were never checked by this artificial barrier, behind which China ever lacked, and even now lacks, that sure defence of a nation—moral strength.

The Great Wall, however, which the Chinese estimate to be about 3,300 miles long, and which is continued on one side into the heart of Manchuria, and on the other a long way beyond the upper course of the Yellow River, is very inferior in those parts more remote from Peking. Here it was built under the eyes of the Emperor and his chief officers of state, and is therefore a gigantic work; but in those distant localities, far removed from the supervision of the superior government, the celebrated Great Wall, which Europeans are wont to regard as a characteristic feature of China, is nothing but a dilapidated mud rampart, 21 feet high. The missionaries Huc and Gabet mention this fact<sup>1</sup> in the

<sup>1</sup> See Huc's 'Souvenirs d'un Voyage dans la Tartarie,' &c. Paris, 1850, vol. ii. p. 28.

description of their journey through Mongolia and Tibet ; and we ourselves, in 1872, saw a wall of this kind on the borders of Ala-shan and Kan-su.

We passed five days at Kalgan, where we met with the greatest kindness from M. Matrenitsky and some others of our countrymen, who, in their mercantile capacity, manage the tea-carrying trade for the Russian firms at Hankau. Their residences are outside the town of Kalgan, near the entrance of the beautiful valley by which we descended : a situation which has the advantage of escaping the dirt and smells,—those inseparable adjuncts of every town in the Celestial Empire.

Like other foreigners in China, the Russians at Kalgan transact business through the medium of *compradors*, i.e. Chinese who are entrusted to conduct negotiations with their countrymen ; but some of the Kalgan merchants know enough Chinese to do business for themselves, and others are brought into direct intercourse with the Mongol carriers. At Tien-tsin, however, and all the other ports of China open to Europeans, every mercantile house must have its *compradors*. They transact all the business, and rob their employers so outrageously that in a few years a *comprador* is generally able to set up a business establishment of his own.

The *compradors* living with foreigners learn to speak the language of their master, whatever may be his nationality. The Russian language is less easily acquired than any other, on account of the difficulty of pronouncing the words and mastering

the construction of the sentences. '*Quickly thy master shoots,*' once said a comprador at Kalgan to me on seeing me shoot rock-pigeons on the wing. '*Thy food will not will?*' enquired the same individual, offering me at the same time something to eat. We met several such grammarians at Urga. One of them had the reputation of having formerly manufactured false Russian bank-notes, which he circulated among the Mongols. On asking him if he still continued this occupation, he replied: '*How is that possible now thy paper bad is? write write—*(i.e. the text on the bank-note)—*few few our people do can, but the face* (i.e. the portrait) *very wonderful is.*' The Mongols, however, are not particular about the artistic merit of the bank-note; and we saw several false notes at Urga, the portraits on which were simply drawn by hand.

Another comprador thus expressed his opinion to me of foreigners residing in China: '*Thy people same as Pehling-Fanqui*<sup>1</sup> *not; thy people our people odali*<sup>2</sup> *good; Pehling-Fanqui bad are.*' I could not help being flattered at hearing such praise from a Chinaman, who thus assured me 'that we were not at all like the French and English, but the same as the Chinese who good are.'

However, this opinion, which may have been only that of the individual, does not free the Russian from the general hatred which the Chinese entertain

<sup>1</sup> Pehling is the Chinese for Englishmen; Fanqui for Frenchmen.

<sup>2</sup> *Odali* means 'same as' in the dialect of Trans-Baikalia.

for all Europeans, and from the nickname applied to all of us of *Yang-kwei-tsz*, i.e. 'foreign devil.'

The European will hear himself called by no other name; and on our first entrance into China Proper we experienced all the miseries which await the traveller from the West within the limits of the Celestial Empire. But of this later. I will now continue my narrative.

With the assistance of our countrymen at Kalgan we hired two riding-horses for the journey to Peking, and some mules for the baggage. Europeans usually travel in litters carried between two mules, but we preferred riding, because we could see the country better in this way than in closed litters.

The distance from Kalgan to Peking is about 140 miles, usually performed in four days. Several halts are made on the road at inns, most of which are kept by Mahomedan emigrants from Eastern Turkestan. Good inns are very difficult of access for the European, who is shown into mean caravan-serais, where he is charged double, triple, and even ten times the usual price. But after sitting for six or seven consecutive hours in the saddle, chilled with the night air, one is glad of any shelter. In spite of the well-known liberality of Europeans, such is the hatred to the 'foreign devils' that we were sometimes refused a night's lodging, notwithstanding the intervention of our Chinese mule-drivers. This befell us at the town of Sha-chang, where we were obliged to ride for an hour from one inn to another, offering ten times the usual charge, before obtaining shelter in a dirty, cold room.

Our ignorance of the language was another great hindrance to us, especially at the stations where we wanted something to eat. Fortunately, I had written down at Kalgan the names of some Chinese dishes which served as our *menu* to Peking. I do not know how others may like the taste of Chinese cookery, with its flavour of sesamum oil and garlic; but, as for us, the messes in the inns were simply disgusting—the more so because we saw haunches of asses' meat in the butchers' shops, and always had well-grounded suspicions that we were fed on the same. The Chinese themselves show no repugnance to any kind of nastiness, and will even eat dogs' flesh. On our second visit to Kalgan we saw some Chinese butchers buy a camel suffering from the mange so badly that its whole body was one mass of sores, and then and there cut it up and sell the meat. Any animal that has died is eaten, as a matter of course, and the asses sold in the meat shops have never come by their death in a violent manner, for such is the meanness of this people that they will never willingly kill a beast of burden for the sake of its meat, if it has any work left in it. The reader can now form an idea of the relish with which Europeans, fully aware of the coarse gastronomical tastes of their hosts, partake of the dishes served in Chinese inns.

On leaving Kalgan, and turning his back on the border range, a wide, thickly-populated, and highly cultivated plain lies before the traveller. The cleanly appearance of the villages affords a striking contrast to the towns. The road is very animated;



—strings of asses laden with coal, mule-carts, litter-bearers, and scavengers pass along. In all the villages and towns full-grown men may be seen all day long on the roads, with a basket in one hand and a spade in the other, collecting animal dung, which is used for manuring the fields and for fuel.

Twenty miles from Kalgan, on the edge of the plain, stands the large town of Siuen-hwa-fu, surrounded, like all the Chinese towns, with a battlemented mud wall, like the Kitai-gorod at Moscow. After leaving it, the road enters the mountains, following a gorge through which flows the rapid and wide stream of the Yang-ho. In the narrower and more intricate parts of the defile the road is hewn out of the rocks, and it is altogether well adapted for wheeled conveyances. After passing the town of Tsi-ming, we again enter a plain, about nine miles wide, extending towards the west between two chains of mountains, one of which we have just crossed; the other, higher and far grander, forms the outer barrier of the second descent by which the table-land of Eastern Asia subsides into the plain which extends eastward to the Yellow Sea.

The elevation of the country between Kalgan and Chadau, which stands at the entrance to the last range of mountains, is very even, and the journey is continued over high land.<sup>1</sup> At Chadau the descent of the second range, called Si-shan by the Chinese, begins. Like the Kalgan mountains, this

<sup>1</sup> Kalgan is 2,800 feet, Chadau (Chatow or Chatao of our maps) 1,600 feet, above the sea.



range is only developed fully on the further side, i.e. towards the plain at its base.

The road follows the pass of Gwan-kau the whole way from Chadau as far as the town of Nan-kau, situated at the egress from the mountains. The pass is only 70 to 80 feet wide at first, and is shut in by stupendous rocks of granite, porphyry, grey marble, and silicious slate. The road was once paved with stone-flags, but is now completely out of repair, and almost impassable for equestrians, although the Chinese drive their two-wheeled carts over it, as well as caravans of camels, laden with tea.

Along the crest of this range is built the second, so-called inner, Great Wall, far greater and more massively built than that of Kalgan. It is composed of great slabs of granite, with brick battlements on the summit; the loftiest points are crowned with watch-towers. Beyond it are three other walls, about two miles apart, all probably connected with the main barrier. These walls block the pass of Gwan-kau with double gates, but the last of all in the direction of Peking has triple gates. Here may be noticed two old cannon, said to have been cast for the Chinese by the Jesuits.

Immediately after passing through, the defile widens, although its wild, weird appearance continues for some distance further. Mountain torrents and cascades rush noisily down the rocks, and at the foot of overhanging cliffs Chinese houses appear everywhere, with their vineyards and small orchards of fruit-trees. At length the traveller arrives at the

town of Nan-kau, 1,000 feet below Chadau, from which it is only fifteen miles distant.

Thus the entire width of the border of the plateau, from the summit of the descent above Kalgan to the entrance into the plain of Peking at Nan-kau, is about 130 miles. Towards the west it probably widens, dividing into a number of parallel chains, abutting on the northern bend of the Hoang-ho, while to the east the distinct ranges unite in one broad belt of mountains, which continues to the Gulf of Pechihli in the Yellow Sea.

Peking<sup>1</sup> is only one day's journey, i.e. about 35 miles, from Nan-kau. The country is a plain, hardly above the sea level, with an alluvial soil, consisting of clay and sand, highly cultivated in all parts. The frequent villages, groves of cypress, tree-juniper, pine, poplar, and other trees marking the burial-places, lend variety and beauty to the landscape. The climate is warm; at a season when in Russia severe frosts are prevalent, the thermometer here at noon rises many degrees above freezing point in the shade. Snow is rare; if it fall occasionally at night, it generally thaws the next day. Wintering birds abound, and we saw thrushes, mountain finches, greenfinches, bustard, rooks, kites, pigeons, and wild ducks.

Nearer to Peking the population is so dense that villages grow into towns, through which the traveller is unconsciously approaching the wall of the city, until at last he finds himself to have entered the far-famed capital of the East.

<sup>1</sup> Peking is only 120 feet above the sea level.

## CHAPTER II.

## THE MONGOLS.

The Mongols—Physical characteristics—Modification of character on the Chinese border—Pigtail introduced—Costume—The *Yurta* or Felt Tent—Uncleanliness—Tea-drinking—Food and beverages—Gluttony—Animal food—Cattle—Importance of their herds—Indolent habits—Physical capabilities and defects—Cowardice—Sagacity and obtuseness—Curiosity—Points of the compass—Estimation of distance—Calendar and Year-Cycle—Language and diversities—Literature—Love of gossip—Songs—Mongol women—Marriage customs and domestic relations—Hospitality and polite customs—Freedom of manners—Lamaism—Religious service '*Om mani padmi hom*'—The Dalai Lama—Pilgrimages—The Clergy—Monasticism—Superstitions—Masses for the dead—The Author's view of Missions—Administrative organisation of the Mongol tribes—Grades of rank among chiefs, and their salaries—Population—Laws, punishment, and taxation—Military force—Decay of martial spirit.

THE present chapter is specially devoted to the Ethnology of Mongolia, in order that in continuing the narrative of our journey, anecdotes relating to the inhabitants may be mentioned incidentally and not dwelt on in detail. In describing the physical geography and nature of the country we visited, and the various episodes of our wanderings, the most noticeable traits of its inhabitants might have been scattered here and there through the volume, and thus have escaped the attention of the reader. To avoid this, I resolved to devote an entire chapter to a description of the people of Mongolia and the peculiar characteristics of their nomad life, merely making casual

mention of them afterwards. Let us begin with their external appearance, taking as our model the inhabitants of the Khalkas country, where the purity of the Mongol race is best preserved.

A broad flat face, with high cheek-bones, wide nostrils, small narrow eyes, large prominent ears, coarse black hair, scanty whiskers and beard, a dark sunburnt complexion, and, lastly, a stout thick-set figure, rather above the average height: such are the distinguishing features of this race. In other parts of Mongolia, but especially on the south-east, where for some distance it borders with China Proper, the original type is much less distinct; and, although the nomads reconcile themselves with difficulty to a settled life, still in some way their neighbours have exercised such influence over them that in those districts lying immediately outside the Great Wall they have almost become Chinese. With few exceptions, the Chinese Mongol still dwells in his *jurta* or felt tent, tending his herds; but in appearance and still more in character he is a decided contrast to his northern brethren, and bears a close resemblance to his adopted countrymen. He follows their fashions in his dress and domestic habits; and, owing to frequent intermarriages with their women, his coarse flat features are cast in the more regular mould of the Chinese face. His very character has undergone a remarkable change; the desert has become distasteful to him, and he prefers the populous towns of China, where he has learnt the advantages and pleasures of a more civilised existence. But, in thus gradually departing from his former life, the Chinese

Mongol adopts only the worst qualities of his neighbour, retaining his own inherent vices, until he has become a degenerate mongrel, demoralised, instead of rising to a higher social grade, under Chinese influence.

The Mongols, like the Chinese, shave the head, only leaving sufficient hair on the crown to plait into a long tail behind, whilst the heads of their lamas are left entirely bare.<sup>1</sup> Whiskers and beard, naturally of scanty growth, are worn by none.

The pigtail was introduced into China by the Manchus, after their conquest of the Celestial Empire about the middle of the seventeenth century. Since then it has been considered an external mark of submission to the reigning (Ta-tsin) dynasty, and all Chinese subjects are compelled to wear it.

The Mongol women allow the hair to grow, and plait it in two braids, decorated with ribbons, strings of coral, or glass beads, which hang down on either side of the bosom. Silver brooches, set with red coral, which is highly esteemed in Mongolia, are fastened in the hair. The poorer women substitute common beads for coral, but the brooches, which are secured above the forehead, are generally of silver, or as a rare exception, of brass. Large silver earrings and bracelets are also customary.

The dress of the Mongols consists of a kaftan or long robe made of blue daba,<sup>2</sup> Chinese boots, and

<sup>1</sup> They use Chinese knives in shaving, and soften the hair with warm water.

<sup>2</sup> Chinese cotton stuff.

a wide hat turned up at the brim. Shirts or under-clothing of any kind are unusual; warm trousers, sheepskin cloaks, and fur caps are worn in winter. In summer the dress, consisting of Chinese silk, is sometimes more elaborate; the robe or fur cloak is always fastened round the waist with a belt, to which are attached those invariable appendages of every Mongol, a tobacco pouch, pipe, and tinder-box. Besides these, the Khalka people carry a snuff-box, which they offer on first meeting an acquaintance. But the pride of the Mongol lies in the trappings of his horse, which are thickly set with silver.

The dress of the women differs from that of the men; their upper garment is a short sleeveless jacket without a belt. The dress, however, of the fair sex, and style of wearing the hair, varies in different parts of Mongolia.

The universal habitation of the Mongol is the felt tent or yurta, which is of one shape throughout the country. It is round, with a convex roof, through an opening in which smoke escapes and light is admitted. The sides are of wooden laths,<sup>1</sup> fastened together in such a way that, when extended, they resemble a lattice with meshes a foot square. This frame-work is in several lengths, which, when the yurta is pitched, are secured with rope, leaving room on one side for a wooden door three feet high, and about the same in width. The size of these dwellings varies, but the usual dimensions are from 12 to 15 feet

<sup>1</sup> The wood required for yurtas is mostly brought from the Khalka country, which abounds in forests.



in diameter, and about 10 feet high in the centre. The roof is formed of light poles attached to the sides and doorway by loops, the other ends being stuck into a hoop, which is raised over the centre, leaving an aperture 3 to 4 feet in diameter, which answers the double purpose of chimney and window.

When all is made fast, sheets of felt, of double thickness in winter, are drawn over the sides and door and round the chimney, and the habitation is ready. The hearth stands in the centre of the interior; facing the entrance are ranged the burkhans (gods), and on either side are the various domestic utensils. Round the hearth, where a fire is kept burning all day, felt is laid down; and in the yurtas of the wealthier classes even carpets for sitting and sleeping on. In these, too, the walls are lined with cotton or silk, and the floors are of wood.

This habitation is indispensable to the wild life of the nomad; it is quickly taken to pieces and removed from place to place, whilst it is an effectual protection against cold and bad weather. In the severest frost the temperature round the hearth is comfortable. At night the fire is put out, the felt covering drawn over the chimney, and even then, although not warm, the felt yurta is far more snug than an ordinary tent. In summer the felt is a good non-conductor of heat, and proof against the heaviest rain.

The first thing which strikes the traveller in the life of the Mongol is his excessive dirtiness: he never washes his body, and very seldom his face and hands. Owing to constant dirt, his clothing



swarms with parasites, which he amuses himself by killing in the most unceremonious way. It is a common sight to see a Mongol, even an official or lama of high rank, in the midst of a large circle of his acquaintances, open his sheepskin or kaftan to catch an offending insect and execute him on the spot between his front teeth. The uncleanliness and dirt amidst which they live is partly attributable to their dislike, almost amounting to dread, of water or damp. Nothing will induce a Mongol to cross the smallest marsh where he might possibly wet his feet, and he carefully avoids pitching his *yurta* anywhere near damp ground or in the vicinity of a spring, stream, or marsh. Moisture is as fatal to him as it is to the camel, so that it would seem as if his organism, like the camel's, were only adapted to a dry climate; he never drinks cold water, but always prefers brick-tea, a staple article of consumption with all the Asiatic nomads. It is procured from the Chinese, and the Mongols are so passionately fond of it that neither men nor women can do without it for many days. From morning till night the kettle is simmering on the hearth, and all members of the family constantly have recourse to it. It is the first refreshment offered to a guest. The mode of preparation is disgusting; the vessel<sup>1</sup> in which the tea is boiled is never cleansed, and is

<sup>1</sup> Their domestic utensils are anything but numerous. They are— an iron saucepan, for boiling their food in, teapot, a skimmer, a leathern skin or wooden tub to hold water or milk, a wooden trough for serving the meat in. To these must be added an iron fire-dog, tongs to hold the argols, and occasionally a Chinese axe.

occasionally scrubbed with argols, i.e. dried horse or cow dung. Salt water is generally used, but, if unobtainable, salt is added. The tea is then pared off with a knife or pounded in a mortar, and a handful of it thrown into the boiling water, to which a few cups of milk are added. To soften the brick-tea, which is sometimes as hard as a rock, it is placed for a few minutes among hot argols, which impart a flavour and aroma to the whole beverage. This is the first process, and in this form it answers the same purpose as chocolate or coffee with us. For a more substantial meal the Mongol mixes dry roasted millet in his cup, and, as a final relish, adds a lump of butter or raw sheep-tail fat (*kurdiuk*). The reader may now imagine what a revolting compound of nastiness is produced, and yet they consume any quantity of it! Ten to fifteen large cups is the daily allowance for a girl, but full-grown men take twice as much.<sup>1</sup> It should be mentioned that the cups, which are sometimes highly ornamented, are the exclusive property of each individual; they are never washed, but after every meal licked out by the owner; those belonging to the more wealthy Mongols are of pure silver, of Chinese manufacture; the lamas make them of human skulls cut in half, and mounted in silver. The food of the Mongols also consists of milk prepared in various ways, either as butter, curds, whey, or kumiss. The curds are made from the unskimmed milk, which is

<sup>1</sup> Mongols have no regular hours for meals: they eat and drink whenever they feel disposed, or have the opportunity.

gently simmered over a slow fire, and then allowed to stand for some time, after which the thick cream is skimmed off and dried, and roasted millet often added to it. The whey is prepared from sour skimmed milk, and is made into small dry lumps of cheese. Lastly, the kumiss (*tarasum*),<sup>1</sup> is prepared from mares' or sheep's milk; all through the summer it is considered the greatest luxury, and Mongols are in the habit of constantly riding to visit their friends and taste the tarasum till they generally become intoxicated. They are all inclined to indulge too freely, although drunkenness is not so rife among them as it is in some more civilised countries. They buy brandy from the Chinese when they themselves visit China with their caravans, or from itinerant Chinese merchants, who in summer visit all parts of Mongolia, exchanging their wares for wool, skins, and cattle. This trade is very profitable to the latter, as they generally sell their goods on credit, charging exorbitant interest, and receiving payment in kind, reckoned at prices far below the real value.

Tea and milk constitute the chief food of the Mongols all the year round, but they are equally fond of mutton. The highest praise they can bestow on any food is to say that it is 'as good as mutton.' Sheep, like camels, are sacred; indeed all their domestic animals are emblems of some good qualities. The favourite part is the tail which is pure fat. In autumn, when the grass is of the poorest description, the sheep fatten wonderfully, and the fatter the

<sup>1</sup> See Supplementary Note.

better for Mongol taste.<sup>1</sup> No part of the slaughtered animal is wasted, but everything is eaten up with the utmost relish.

The gluttony of this people exceeds all description. A Mongol will eat more than ten pounds of meat at one sitting, but some have been known to devour an average-sized sheep in the course of twenty-four hours! On a journey, when provisions are economised, a leg of mutton is the ordinary daily ration for one man, and although he can live for days without food, yet, when once he gets it, he will eat enough for seven.

They always boil their mutton, only roasting the breast as a delicacy. On a winter's journey, when the frozen meat requires extra time for cooking, they eat it half raw, slicing off pieces from the surface, and returning it again to the pot. When travelling and pressed for time, they take a piece of mutton and place it on the back of the camel, underneath the saddle, to preserve it from the frost, whence it is brought out during the journey and eaten, covered with camel's hair and reeking with sweat; but this is no test of a Mongol's appetite. Of the liquor in which he has boiled his meat he makes soup by adding millet or dough, drinking it like tea. Before eating, the lamas and the more religious among the laity, after filling their cups, throw a little into the fire or on the ground, as an offering; before drink-

<sup>1</sup> They have a remarkable way of killing their sheep: they slit up the creature's stomach, thrust their hand in, and seize hold of the heart, squeezing it till the animal dies.

ing, they dip the middle finger of the right hand into the cup and flick off the adhering drops.<sup>1</sup>

They eat with their fingers, which are always disgustingly dirty; raising a large piece of meat and seizing it in their teeth, they cut off with a knife, close to the mouth, the portion remaining in the hand. The bones are licked clean, and sometimes cracked for the sake of the marrow; the shoulder-blade of mutton is always broken and thrown aside, it being considered unlucky to leave it unbroken.

On special occasions they eat the flesh of goats and horses; beef rarely, and camels' flesh more rarely still. The lamas will touch none of this meat, but have no objection to carrion, particularly if the dead animal is at all fat. They do not habitually eat bread, but they will not refuse Chinese loaves, and sometimes bake wheaten cakes themselves. Near the Russian frontier they will even eat black bread, but further in the interior they do not know what it is, and those to whom we gave rusks, made of rye-flour, to taste, remarked that there was nothing nice about such food as that, which only jarred the teeth.

Fowl or fish they consider unclean, and their dislike to them is so great that one of our guides nearly turned sick on seeing us eat boiled duck at Koko-nor; this shows how relative are the ideas of people even in matters which apparently concern the senses. The very Mongol, born and bred amid

<sup>1</sup> This is one of the ancient Mongol practices. See 'Marco Polo,' and ed., i. p. 300.—V.

frightful squalor, who could relish carrion, shuddered when he saw us eat duck *à l'Européenne*.

Their only occupation and source of wealth is cattle-breeding, and their riches are counted by the number of their live stock, sheep, horses, camels, oxen, and a few goats—the proportion varying in different parts of Mongolia.<sup>1</sup> Thus, the best camels are bred among the Khalkas; the Chakhar country is famous for its horses, Ala-shan for its goats; and in Koko-nor the yak is a substitute for the cow.

The Khalka country ranks first in the wealth of its inhabitants, who are mostly well off; even after the cattle-plague had destroyed countless oxen and sheep, large herds were still owned by individuals, and there is hardly a native but possesses some hundred of the fat-tailed sheep. In Southern Mongolia, i.e. in Ordos and Ala-shan, the sheep are of a different breed, and at Koko-nor they have yet another kind with horns eighteen inches long. As all the requirements of life: milk and meat for food, skins for clothing, wool for felt, and ropes, are supplied by his cattle, which also earn him large sums by their sale, or by the transport of merchandise, so the nomad lives entirely for them. His personal wants, and those of his family, are a secondary consideration. His movements from place to place depend on

<sup>1</sup> The price of cattle varies in different parts of the country thus:

	In Khalka country.	In the Chakhar country.	In Koko-nor.	
Sheep . . .	2 to 3	2 to 3	1 to 1½	} Chinese lans= 5s. 6d. per head.
Oxen . . .	12 „ 15	15	7 „ 10	
Camels . . .	30 „ 35	40	25	
Horses . . .	12 „ 15	15	25	



the wants of his animals. If they are well supplied with food and water, the Mongol is content. His skill and patience in managing them are admirable. The stubborn camel becomes his docile carrier; the half-tamed steppe-horse his obedient and faithful steed. He loves and cherishes his animals; nothing will induce him to saddle a camel or a horse under a certain age; no money will buy his lambs or calves, which he considers it wrong to kill before they are full-grown. Cattle-breeding is the only occupation of this people; their industrial employment is limited to the preparation of a few articles for domestic use, such as skins, felt, saddles, bridles, and bows; a little tinder, and a few knives. They buy everything else, including their clothes, of the Chinese, and, in very small quantities, from the Russian merchants at Kiakhta and Urga. Mining is unknown to them. The inland trade is entirely one of barter; and the foreign trade is confined to Peking and the nearest towns of China, whither they drive their cattle for sale, and carry salt, hides, and wool to exchange for manufactured goods.

The most striking trait in their character is sloth. Their whole lives are passed in holiday making, which harmonizes with their pastoral pursuits. Their cattle are their only care, and even they do not cause them much trouble. The camels and horses graze on the steppe without any watch, only requiring to be watered once a day in summer at the neighbouring well. The women and children tend the flocks and herds. The rich hire shepherds, who are mostly



poor homeless vagrants. Milking the cows, churning butter, preparing the meals, and other domestic work, falls to the lot of the women. The men, as a rule, do nothing but gallop about all day long from *yurta* to *yurta*, drinking tea or *kumiss*, and gossiping with their neighbours. They are ardent lovers of the chase, which is some break to the tedious monotony of their lives, but they are, with few exceptions, bad shots, and their arms are most inferior, some having flint-and-steel muskets, while others have nothing but the bow and arrows. An occasional pilgrimage to some temple, and horse-racing, are their favourite diversions.

With the approach of autumn the Mongols throw off some of their laziness. The camels, which have been at pasture all the summer, are now collected together and driven to *Kalgan* or *Kuku-Khoto*<sup>1</sup> to prepare for the transport of tea and merchandise to and from *Kiakhta*, and to carry supplies from *Kuku-Khoto* to the Chinese forces stationed between *Uliassutai* and *Kobdo*. Some few are employed in carrying salt from the salt lakes of Mongolia to the nearest towns of China Proper. In this way, during the autumn and winter, all the camels of Northern and Eastern Mongolia are earning large profits for their owners. With the return of April, the transport ceases, the wearied animals are turned loose on the steppe, and their masters repose in complete idleness for five or six months.

The Mongol is so indolent that he will never

<sup>1</sup> *Kwei-hwa-cheng*.

walk any distance, no matter how short, if he can ride; his horse is always tethered outside the yurta, ready for use at any moment; he herds his cattle on horseback, and when on a caravan journey nothing but intense cold will oblige him to dismount and warm his limbs by walking a mile or two. His legs are bowed by constant equestrianism, and he grasps the saddle like a centaur. The wildest steppe-horse cannot unseat its Mōngol rider. He is in his element on horseback, going at full speed; seldom at a foot's pace, or at a trot, but scouring like the wind across the desert. He loves and understands horses; a fast galloper or a good ambler is his greatest delight, and he will not part with such a treasure, even in his direst need. His contempt for pedestrianism is so great that he considers it beneath his dignity to walk even as far as the next yurta.

Endowed by nature with a strong constitution, and trained from early childhood to endure hardships, the Mongols enjoy excellent health, notwithstanding all the discomforts of life in the desert. In the depth of winter, for a month at a time, they accompany the tea-caravans. Day by day the thermometer registers upwards of  $-20^{\circ}$  of Fahrenheit, with a constant wind from the north-west, intensifying the cold until it is almost unendurable. But in spite of it they keep their seat on their camels for fifteen hours at a stretch, with a keen wind blowing in their teeth. A man must be made of iron to stand this; but a Mongol performs the journey backwards and forwards four times during the

winter, making upwards of 3,000 miles. As soon as you set him to do other work, apparently much lighter, but to which he is unaccustomed, the result is very different. Although as hard as nails, he cannot walk fifteen or twenty miles without suffering great fatigue; if he pass the night on the damp ground he will catch cold as easily as any fine gentleman, and, deprived of his brick-tea, he will never cease grumbling.

The Mongol is a slave to habit. He has no energy to meet and overcome difficulties; he will try and avoid, but never conquer them. He wants the elastic, manly spirit of the European, ready for any emergency, and willing to struggle against adversity and gain the victory in the end. His is the stolid conservatism of the Asiatic, passive, apathetic and lifeless.

Cowardice is another striking trait of their character. Leaving out of the question the Chinese Mongols, whose martial spirit and energy has been completely stamped out, the Khalka people are vastly inferior to their ancestors of the times of Chinghiz and Okkodai.<sup>1</sup> Two centuries of Chinese sway,<sup>2</sup> during which their warlike disposition has been systematically extinguished and suffered to stagnate in the dull round of nomad existence, have

<sup>1</sup> Okkodai, the third son and successor of Chinghiz-Khan, established his capital at Karakorum, and founded the walls and palace in 1234. See 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed., i. p. 228.—M.

<sup>2</sup> That is to say, from the time when the Khalkas became subject to China in 1691, during the reign of Kanghi. Western Mongolia, the so-called Dzungaria, was conquered by the Chinese in 1756.

robbed them of every trace of prowess and bravery. The recent incursions of the Dungans into their territory proved how degenerate they had become. The very name of *Hwei, Hwei*, i.e. Mussulmans, created a panic and caused them to fly ignominiously without offering the least resistance to their foes. And yet every advantage was on their side; they were in their own country, and were of course well acquainted with the localities—a matter of some importance in warfare, particularly in an arid desert like the Gobi; they could always outnumber the Dungans, who were badly armed and undisciplined. But, despite all this, the latter ravaged Ordos and Ala-shan, captured Uliassutai and Kobdo, although defended by Chinese regulars, invaded the Khalka country several times, and would have taken Uрга had it not been for the presence of some Russian soldiers.

We cannot deny that, besides cunning, dissimulation and deceit,—qualities especially prevalent among the natives of the border-land of China,—the Mongols exhibit great sagacity. Among those of pure blood immorality is chiefly confined to the lamas; the common people, or, as they are called, the *Kara-Kung*, i.e. black folk, when uncontaminated by Chinese or lama teaching, are kind and simple-minded. But even their sagacity is very one-sided. The intimate knowledge they have of their native plains excites one's admiration; they will extricate themselves from the most desperate situation, foretell rain, storms, and other atmospheric changes;

follow the almost imperceptible tracks of a stray horse or camel, and are sensible of the proximity of a well; but when you try and explain to them the simplest thing which does not come within their daily routine, they will listen with staring eyes and repeat the same question without understanding your answer. The obtuseness of the Mongol is enough to exhaust one's patience; you are no longer talking to the same man you knew in his native state, you have now to do with a child, full of curiosity, but incapable of understanding what you tell him. Their inquisitiveness is often carried to an excess. When the caravan enters a populous district, the inhabitants appear from all sides, some of them from a distance, and after the usual salutation, '*mendu*,' i.e. 'How do you do?' they begin asking you 'Whither are you travelling?' 'What is the object of your journey?' 'Have you nothing to sell?' 'Where did you buy your camels?' and 'How much did you pay for them?' and so on. No sooner is one gone than another takes his place; sometimes a troop rides up, always with the same questions. At the halting-place your patience is sorely taxed. Hardly are the camels unloaded before they are upon you, examining and handling your property, and even entering your tent. The smallest article excites their curiosity; your arms, of course, but even such trifling objects as boots, scissors, padlocks, are all handled in turn, and they all ask you to give them first one thing, then another. There is no end to it. Every new-comer begins afresh, and the pre-

vious visitors explain and show him all your possessions, and, if they get the chance, make off with something by way of a keepsake.

One of their peculiarities cannot fail to arrest the attention of the stranger, and that is, their habit of moving from place to place without ever using the words *right* or *left*, as though the ideas they express were unknown to them. Even in the *Yurta* a Mongol will never say *to the right hand* or *to the left*, but always such or such a thing is *east* or *west* of him. It may be worth mentioning here that the points of their compass are the reverse of ours; their north is our south, and therefore the east is on the left, not on the right, of their horizon.<sup>1</sup>

They calculate distances by the time occupied in travelling with camels or horses, and have no other accurate scale of measurement. If you ask how far it is to any given place, the answer is always so many days' journey with camels, or so many days' ride on horseback. But as the rate of travelling and length of marches vary according to circumstances and the disposition of the rider, they never fail to add 'if you ride well,' or 'if you travel slowly.' A day's journey in *Khalkas* is twenty-eight miles with camels, and from forty to forty-seven on horses. About *Koko-nor* they travel more slowly with the former, not over twenty miles a day. A good camel will average about three miles an hour with a load on its back, or four without one.

The unit in the Mongol's scale of distances is a

<sup>1</sup> See Supplementary Note.



day and a night; he has no idea of dividing them into hours. Their almanac is the same as the Chinese, and is printed at Peking in Mongol characters. The months are all lunar, some containing twenty-nine, others thirty days. Hence there is a week over every year to complete the revolution of the earth in its solar orbit. Every fourth year the extra weeks make a month, which is added to the winter, summer, or one of the other seasons, according to the calculations of the Peking astronomers.<sup>1</sup> This month has no special name, but is called after one of the others, so that in Leap-year there are two Januaries or two Julys, &c. The new year commences on the first day of the white month, *Tsagan Sar*, corresponding with the middle of February; which marks the beginning of spring, and is kept as a great holiday in all Buddhist countries. The 1st, 8th, and 15th days of every month are also festivals, and are also called *Tserting*.<sup>2</sup>

Their cycle is twelve years, each year having the name of some animal, thus:—

The 1st year	<i>Kuluguna</i> (mouse).	The 7th year	<i>Mori</i> (horse).
„ 2nd „	<i>Ukyr</i> (cow).	„ 8th „	<i>Honi</i> (sheep).
„ 3rd „	<i>Bar</i> (tiger).	„ 9th „	<i>Meehit</i> (monkey).
„ 4th „	<i>Tolai</i> (hare).	„ 10th „	<i>Takia</i> (fowl).
„ 5th „	<i>Lu</i> (dragon).	„ 11th „	<i>Nohoi</i> (dog).
„ 6th „	<i>Mogo</i> (serpent).	„ 12th „	<i>Hakhai</i> (pig).

Five of these cycles make a larger one, answering to

<sup>1</sup> See Supplementary Note.

<sup>2</sup> On the New Year's Day, or White Feast of the Mongols, see 'Marco Polo,' 2nd. ed. i. p. 376-378, and ii. p. 543. The monthly festival days, properly for the Lamas days of *fasting* and worship, seem to differ locally. See note in same work, i. p. 224, and on the Year-cycle, i. p. 435.—Y.

our century. A man's age is computed by the lesser cycles; thus, if you are twenty-eight you are said to be in the year of the hare, i.e. two complete cycles of twelve years in each have elapsed since your birth, and you have entered the fourth year of your third cycle.

With regard to the language, I must confess that, with the multifarious occupations of the expedition, and in the absence of a good dragoman, we were unable to study it closely, or pay much attention to the different dialects. This was a serious omission, but it was chiefly caused by our want of funds; if we had been able to dispose of ample means, I could have hired a good interpreter thoroughly conversant with his business; but circumstanced as we were, ours could not spare a minute for days together for his proper duties; and his limited intelligence made him of very little use on occasions when tact and address were required.

The Mongolian language prevails throughout the country. It is rich in words, and has several forms and dialects, which, however, are not very distinct, except as between Northern and Southern Mongolia, where the difference is strongly marked.<sup>1</sup> Words in use among Southern Mongols are perfectly

<sup>1</sup> Thus—

		Among Khalkas.	In Ala-shan.			Among Khalkas.	In Ala-shan.
Night	is	Shuni	. . Su		Khalat (Tunic)	is	Zupsa Labishik
Sheep	„	Honi	. . Hoi		Bowl	is	Imbu . Haisa
Evening	„	Udishi	. . Ashin		Cloth	„	Tsimbu. Dahar
Teapot	„	Shahu	. . Debir		Gunpowder	„	Dari . Shoroi
Boots	„	Gutul	. . Gudusu		Milk	„	Su . . Yusu
Meat	„	Mahan	. . Ideh		Hither	„	Nasha . Naran
Cloak	„	Dehl	. . Dibil		Thither	„	In-shi . Tigehi

unintelligible to the Khalkas, and the pronunciation of the former is softer; thus, *k*, *ts*, *ch*, become respectively *kh*, *ch*; and *g*, e.g. *Tsagan* (white), becomes *Chagan*, Kuku-hoto becomes khuhu-khoto, and so on.

Even the construction of the sentence changes, and our interpreter sometimes could not understand expressions used by the Mongols of the South, although he could not explain why they were unintelligible. All he would say was, 'They talk nonsense.'

It appears to me that very few Chinese words have been introduced into the Mongol language, but that in the neighbourhood of Koko-nor a great deal is derived from the Tangutan. In South-Eastern and Southern Mongolia, Chinese influence prevails, and is evidenced in the character of the people as well as in their language, not so much from the number of foreign words introduced into it as by a general change, and a more monotonous and phlegmatic pronunciation than that of the true Khalka Mongols, who talk in loud, energetic accents.

The written characters, like the Chinese, are arranged in vertical columns, but are read from left to right.<sup>1</sup> There are a good many printed books, the Chinese Government having appointed a special commission, at the end of the last century, to trans-

<sup>1</sup> The present Mongol letters were acquired in the thirteenth century of our era, in the reign of Kublai-Khan. [See Supplementary Note.]

late into Mongol historical, educational, and religious works. The numerals are also peculiar to the people, and are used in business transactions equally with the Manchu. There are schools at Peking and Kalgan for teaching the language, and an almanac and some books are from time to time printed in it. The lettered classes are the princes, nobles, and lamas, the latter also learning Tibetan, the princes and nobles Mongol and Manchu. The common people are in general illiterate. All Mongols are fond of talking. Their greatest pleasure is to sit and chat over a cup of tea. On meeting them, their first question is, 'What's the news?' and they will ride twenty or thirty miles to communicate some bit of gossip to a friend. In this way rumours fly through the country with astounding celerity, almost equal to the telegraph. During our journey, the inhabitants, hundreds of miles ahead of us, knew all about us, down to the smallest details—of course with all sorts of exaggerations.

The first thing which strikes a stranger in talking to them is the frequent use of the words *tse* and *se*, both signifying 'very good,' and occurring in nearly every phrase. They are also used as affirmatives, 'yes,' 'it is so.' In receiving an order or listening to an anecdote from an official, the Mongol utters his invariable *tse* or *se*. If he wish to express a good or bad quality in anything, approval or censure, besides repeating these two syllables, and sometimes without, he holds up the thumb or forefinger of the right hand, as the case may be, the





MONGOL GIRL.

Madame de Bourboulon, who accompanied her husband across Northern Mongolia on their way from Shanghai to Moscow in 1862, describes the occupants of a Yurta as follows :

'They wore vests of green and red velvet, and over these a long robe of violet silk falling to the feet, which were shod with boots of purple leather decorated with glass beads. Their costume was in other respects the same as their father's, with the exception of their long and fine black hair divided into numberless small tresses, intermixed with ribbons and coral beads.'—*Le Tour du Monde*, xi, p. 248.



former for praise, the latter for blame. He addresses his equal as *nohor*, i.e. 'comrade,' as we should say 'sir.'

Their songs are always plaintive, and relate to their past life and exploits.<sup>1</sup> They usually sing on a caravan journey, and occasionally in the *yurta*, but the women's voices are not heard so often as the men's. Troubadours or wandering minstrels always secure an appreciative audience. Their musical instruments are the flute and guitar; we never saw them dance, and they are probably unskilled in the art.

The lot of the woman is most unenviable. The narrow sphere of nomad life is even more restricted for her. Entirely dependent on her husband, she passes her time in the *yurta* nursing the children and attending to domestic duties. In her spare time she works with the needle, stitching clothes or some piece of finery made of Chinese silk. Some of the handiwork is in good taste and beautifully finished.

A Mongol can only have one lawful wife, but he may keep concubines, who live with the real wife, the latter taking precedence in rank and ruling the household; her children enjoy all the rights of the father, while those of the concubines are illegitimate, and have no share in the inheritance. An illegitimate child can be legitimised by the sanction of government.

At the marriage festivals the relatives of the

<sup>1</sup> The most common song in Mongolia is 'Dagn-khara,' i.e. 'The Song of the Black Colt.'

husband are treated with respect; those of the wife are of no account. To ensure the happiness of the young couple an auspicious reading of the stars<sup>1</sup> under which they were born is indispensable. If the omens are unpropitious, the marriage does not take place.

The bridegroom pays the parents of the bride, according to agreement, sometimes a good sum as purchase-money, either in cattle, clothes, or, more rarely, in coin; the wife provides the yurta, with all its fittings, as her portion.<sup>2</sup> If the marriage turn out unhappily, or even to gratify some whim or caprice, the husband may put his wife away, but the latter may also desert a husband who is not affectionate. In the first case the purchase-money is not usually returned, and the man may only retain part of the dower; but if the wife desert her husband she must repay part of the ante-nuptial settlement. This custom often gives rise to little romantic episodes, enacted in the heart of the steppe, which never find their way into a novel.

The women are good mothers and housewives, but unfaithful wives. Immorality is most common, not only among the married women, but also among the girls. Adultery is not even concealed, and is not regarded as a vice. In the household the rights

<sup>1</sup> They reckon their period of twelve years by the signs of the Zodiac. [Surely the Author here means to refer to the *Cycle* signs (*supra*, p. 64), not the *Zodiac*.—Y.]

<sup>2</sup> A full description of a Mongol wedding will be found in 'Timkowsky's Travels,' vol. ii. pp. 303-311, and in Huc's 'Souvenirs d'un Voyage dans la Tartarie et le Thibet,' vol. i. pp. 297-301.

of the wife are nearly equal to those of the husband, but in all out-door arrangements, as in moving camp, paying debts, buying and selling, the authority of the men is supreme, and no reference even is made to the women; but, as there is no rule without an exception, so we have seen Mongol ladies who not only managed their household, but interfered in other affairs as well—in fact, completely henpecked their husbands.

The appearance of the women is not attractive. The typical features of their race, the flat face and high cheekbones, spoil their looks; and the rough life in the yurta, exposure to the weather and dirt, deprive them of any feminine grace and delicacy, and all attractiveness to European eyes. As a rare exception, but only in some princely families, a beautiful face may now and then be seen, its fortunate possessor being surrounded by a crowd of adorers, for the Mongols are very susceptible to the charms of the fair sex. The women are far less numerous than the men, a fact which is accounted for by the celibacy of the lamas. The Mongol is an excellent father, and passionately fond of his children. Whenever we gave them anything they always divided it equally among all the members of their family, were it a lump of sugar, and the portion of each individual only a crumb. The elders are always held in great respect, especially old men, whose opinions and commands are implicitly followed. They are very hospitable. Any one who enters the yurta is regaled with tea and milk, and, for old acquaintance sake, a

70  
201

Mongol will open a bottle of brandy or kumiss, and will even slaughter a sheep.

On meeting an acquaintance, or even a stranger, the Mongol salutes him with a '*mendu*' '*mendu-seh-beina*.' A pinch of snuff is interchanged, and the greeting is renewed '*mal-seh-beina*,' '*ta seh-beina*,' i.e. 'How are your cattle?' This is always one of the first questions, and they make no enquiry after your health until they have learned that your sheep, camels, and horses are fat and well to do. In Ordos and Ala-shan the usual greeting is '*Amur se*,' 'Are you well?' but in Koko-nor it is substituted by the Tangutan '*Tehmu*,' 'How do you do?' The friendly pinch of snuff is unusual in Southern Mongolia, and unknown in Koko-nor. Some amusing anecdotes are related, illustrating the custom of enquiring after cattle in the case of young travellers, journeying for the first time from Kiakhta to Peking. A young officer, bearing despatches for Peking, and happening to change horses at one of the Mongol stations, he was soon surrounded by natives, who began their respectful enquiries as to the health of his sheep, &c. Learning from the interpreter the meaning of their questions, he emphatically shook his head and denied possessing any; but they could not believe that a personage of his exalted rank could exist without sheep, cows, horses, or camels. We often had the most detailed questions asked us, such as: 'In whose care had we left our cattle before our departure on so long a journey?' 'What was the weight of the *kurdiuk* (fat tail) on each of our sheep?' 'Did we

enjoy the luxury of eating this delicacy at home?' How many good amblers did we possess, and how many fat camels?' In Southern Mongolia, as a mutual token of good-fellowship, *hadaki* (silk scarves) are interchanged by the host and his guest; these scarves are bought of the Chinese, the quality varying with the rank of the recipient.<sup>1</sup>

When these salutations are over, tea is offered, and, as a special mark of civility, lighted pipes are handed round. The visitor never wishes his host good-bye on taking his departure, but gets up and walks straight out of the *yurta*. The host always escorts his guest to his horse, which is tethered a few paces from the tent,—a sign of respect invariably shown to lamas of importance and government officials.

Although servility and despotism are so strongly developed among them that the will of the superior generally replaces every law, a strange anomaly is observable in the freedom of intercourse between rulers and the ruled. At the sight of an official the Mongol bends the knee and does reverence, but after this obsequious token of submission he takes his seat beside him, chats and smokes with him. Accustomed from childhood to perfect liberty, he cannot endure restraint for any length of time, but soon gives free rein to his habits. This freedom of manners and equality may surprise the inexperienced

<sup>1</sup> Among the Khalkas the scarves serve as currency, but are rarely used for presents. [The polite interchange of the scarf (*Khata* of the Tibetans) is noted again in one of the later chapters on Tangut.—Y.]

traveller, but, if he look more deeply into it, he will find it is nothing but the wild unbridled nature of the nomad, requiring liberty for his childish habits, and perfectly indifferent to the awful despotism of social life. The very official, who to-day sits beside his inferior and smokes a pipe with him on terms of good-fellowship, may to-morrow punish his companion, confiscate his sheep, or practise any injustice he likes with impunity.

Bribery and corruption are as prevalent here as in China; a bribe will work miracles, and nothing can be done without it. The worst crime may go unpunished if the perpetrator gives a good purse to the proper authorities; on the other hand, a good act has no merit without a certain offering, and this system pervades the whole administration, from the lowest to the highest.

Turning to their religion, we see how deeply Lamaism has struck root in their midst, more so perhaps than in any other Buddhist country.<sup>1</sup> Holding contemplation to be the ideal of all perfection, it exactly suits their indolent character, and has laid the foundation of that terrible asceticism which induces them to sever themselves from all desire for progress, and to seek, in obscure and abstract ideas of the Divinity and life beyond the tomb, the sum and end of man's earthly existence.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It is not known exactly when Buddhism was introduced into Mongolia; a few traces of Shamanism, one of the oldest religions of Asia, are still left in the country.

<sup>2</sup> We have nothing to do with the philosophy of Buddhism in this work; this subject has been treated in the Russian language by Professor Vassilieff, entitled 'Buddhism.'



Their religious service is performed in Tibetan,<sup>1</sup> which is also the language of their sacred books. The most famous is the *Ganjur*, comprising 108 vols., including, besides religion, such subjects as history, mathematics, astronomy, &c. Service in the temples is performed three times a day: at morning, midday, and in the evening. The call to prayers is by blowing trumpets made of large sea-shells; when the congregation are assembled, the lamas, seated on the floor or on benches, chant passages from the sacred books. From time to time this monotonous chanting is interrupted by exclamations from the presiding lama, repeated after him by the others, and at certain intervals cymbals or brass plates are clashed, which add to the general noise. The service continues for some hours; when the Kutukhtu is present in person, the ceremonial observed is of course more imposing. He always occupies a throne, robed in vestments, with his face towards the idols, while the attendant lamas swing censers in front of him and read the prayers.

The frequently repeated prayer, constantly on their lips, is '*Om mani padmi hom.*'<sup>2</sup> We tried in vain to discover its meaning. The lamas assured

<sup>1</sup> Which the lamas themselves do not always understand. The Tibetan letters are arranged in horizontal lines, not like the Chinese and Mongolian, which are in vertical columns.

<sup>2</sup> Klaproth's explanation of this prayer, which, he says, is composed of four Hindu words, meaning 'Oh! precious lotus,' is unsatisfactory. See Timkowski's 'Travels,' English edition, London, 1827, vol. ii. p. 349, note.

Mr. Wilson found these words beautifully inscribed on stones in some parts of the Himalayas, even high up the mountains. In refer-



us that it contained the whole mysticism of their religion, and was inscribed not only on the temples, but on other buildings. Besides the usual temples<sup>1</sup> in those localities far removed from them, *duguni*, i.e. oratories, are arranged in the huts. Lastly, on the passes and high mountains large heaps of stones, called *obo*, are piled up in honour of the guardian spirits. These 'obo' are held in superstitious reverence, and a Mongol never passes one without adding a stone, rag, or tuft of camels' hair, as an offering. In summer religious services are held at them, and the people meet here on holidays.

The Dalai Lama of Tibet, residing at Lhasa, is the head of the whole Buddhist hierarchy, and sovereign of Tibet, acknowledging fealty, however, to China; but this submission is merely nominal, and is only outwardly shown by gifts sent three times a year to the Emperor.<sup>2</sup>

Equal to the Dalai Lama in sanctity, but not in political importance, is another Tibetan saint, *Pan-tsin-Erdeni*;<sup>3</sup> the third and last personage in Buddhism is the *Kutukhtu* of Urga. Next in rank come the remaining *Kutukhtus* or *Gigens*, who live at the different temples dispersed throughout Mongolia or

ence to their meaning, he quotes Koeppen's remarks in the 'Lamaische Hierarchie und Kirche,' p. 59, which are most striking. See 'The Abode of Snow,' by Andrew Wilson. Blackwood, London, 1875. pp. 329-332.—M. (See Supplementary Note.)

<sup>1</sup> Called in Mongolia *sumo*, less frequently *kit* or *datsan*.

<sup>2</sup> The Chinese Government maintains a division of troops and an envoy plenipotentiary at Lhasa [which seems somewhat inconsistent with merely 'nominal' subjection.—Y.]

<sup>3</sup> See p. 11, supra.—Y.

in Peking ; there are upwards of a hundred of them <sup>1</sup> in Mongolia. They are all terrestrial saints, of highly-developed holiness, who never die, but pass from one body to another. A newly-born gigen is discovered by the lamas of the temple to which his predecessor belonged, and is confirmed in office by the Dalai Lama. It devolves upon the latter dignitary to appoint a successor to himself, but the Chinese Government secretly exercises great influence in the election, which usually falls on some poor unknown family. The personal insignificance of the Dalai Lama, in the absence of family ties in the country, is the best guarantee the Chinese can have of the submission of Tibet, or, at all events, of their own security from an unruly neighbour. They have indeed good cause to be watchful, for if a talented, energetic person were to appear on the throne of the Dalai Lama, he might with one word, like the voice of a god, cause a rising of the nomads from the Himalayas to Siberia. Deeply imbued with religious fanaticism and the bitterest hatred for their oppressors, the wild hordes would invade China and cause it great injury.

The influence of the gigen is unlimited ; a prayer offered up to one of them, the touch of his garments, his benediction, are regarded in the light of the greatest blessings humanity can enjoy ; but they are not to be had gratis. Every believer must bring his offering, which, in some cases, is very large. The

<sup>1</sup> 103 in all. Hyacinthe's 'Statistical Description of the Chinese Empire,' part ii. p. 60.

temples of Mongolia, especially the larger and more famous, attract wealthy pilgrims from far distances.

These pilgrimages, however, are, if we may so call them, private enterprises. Lhasa is the sacred city; hither large caravans of worshippers annually come, and, regardless of the difficulties of the long journey, esteem it a special mark of Divine favour to be allowed to fulfil their religious obligations. The Dungan insurrection put a stop to them for eleven years, but, as soon as the Chinese forces occupied Eastern Kan-su, they were renewed. Women sometimes take part in them, but, let it be said to their credit, are not such hypocrites as the men. This may be from the fact that all domestic work is done by them, and they have less time to spare for religion. The inhabitants of the border-land are also far less devout than those in the heart of the country.

The clergy, or so-called lamas,<sup>1</sup> are very numerous, and comprise a third, if not more, of the male population, who are thereby relieved from the payment of all taxes.<sup>2</sup> It is not difficult to become a lama. Parents must voluntarily dedicate their son to this profession while he is an infant, shave his head, and dress him in a red or yellow robe. This is an external mark of the future vocation of the

<sup>1</sup> Properly speaking, the word 'lama' is only applied by Mongols to their superior clergy; an ordinary member of that profession is called *Huvarak*. But the former name is much more generally used than the latter.

<sup>2</sup> Lamas holding important posts at the temples are entirely freed from imposts; those non-officiating are paid for by their families.

child, who is afterwards given over to the temple, where he is taught his letters and the Buddhist mysteries by the elder lamas.<sup>1</sup> In some of the most important of these establishments, for instance at Urga or Kumbum,<sup>2</sup> special schools are built for the purpose, and divided into faculties. On completing his studies, the lama is attached to some temple, or practises as a physician.

Promotion to the highest ranks is effected by an examination in the Buddhist books. The ranks of the clergy are as follow: *Kamba*, *Hehlung*, *Hehtsul*, and *Bandi*—each having a distinctive dress<sup>3</sup> and station during prayer-time, and separate rules for the regulation of their lives. The highest grade is the *Kambu* or *Kianbu*, ordained directly by the *Kutukhtu*, with the right of conferring ordination on the lower ranks. The *Kutukhtus* are also obliged to pass through the different degrees, but they reach them sooner than ordinary mortals.

The lamas discharge certain duties in the temple according to their rank. The *Tsiabartsi* is the sacristan; the *Piarba*, housekeeper; *Kesgui*, ecclesiastical superintendent; *Umzat*, precentor; *Duntsi*, treasurer; *Sordji*, superior or abbot.

Besides these, several hundred (sometimes a thousand or more) lamas are attached to every

<sup>1</sup> Lamas unattached to a temple, but who live in yurtas, also take pupils.

<sup>2</sup> The temple of Kumbum is in the province of Kan-su, near Si-ning.

<sup>3</sup> The dress of the lamas is invariably yellow, with a red belt or band over the left shoulder. At prayer-time, special yellow mantles and tall caps are worn, differing in appearance according to their rank.

temple, who do nothing but pray, subsisting on the alms of the faithful. Some have never been sent to school by their parents, and are, therefore, illiterate, but they wear the same red robes as the others, and bear the title of their office, which is considered honourable.

All lamas must be celibates, an abnormal state, which gives rise to every kind of immorality.

Women above a certain age may enter this profession, for which they are regularly ordained. Their heads are shaved, they are compelled to swear the observance of a strict life, and have the privilege of wearing yellow, like the lamas. They are often met with among aged widows, and are called *shab-gantsa*.

Lamaism is the most frightful curse of the country, because it attracts the best part of the male population, preys like a parasite on the remainder, and, by its unbounded influence, deprives the people of the power of rising from the depths of ignorance into which they are plunged.

But although this religion has taken so strong a hold on them, superstitions are equally prevalent. Evil spirits and witchcraft beset the Mongol's path. Every unfavourable phenomenon of nature is ascribed to the wicked spirit; every sickness is caused by him. Their everyday lives are full of superstitious observances. Thus, they will not give or sell milk in cloudy weather or after sunset, lest their cattle should die; it is considered unlucky to sit in the entrance of the yurta, or to eat seated on the heels,

some accident will surely happen afterwards; a journey must never be discussed beforehand, bad weather or a hail-storm will be certain to follow; the names of father or mother must not be mentioned; nothing should be sold or given away for three days after the recovery of one of the cattle, and so on.

But all these customs are a mere fraction of their superstitions. Soothsaying and sorcery are strangely developed among them, and are exercised not only by the shamans and lamas, but also by ordinary mortals, women excepted. The soothsayers carry rosaries or strings of Chinese copper money, and make use of sundry exorcisms. If a beast be lost, a pipe or tinder-box mislaid, recourse is always had to the prophet to learn where to look for the missing property; when a journey is about to be undertaken the auguries must be consulted; if a drought occur, the whole tribe must apply to a shaman, and large sums are paid to induce him to make the heavens send down to earth the life-giving moisture; if attacked by a sudden illness, the Mongol calls in a lama to drive away the devils which have entered his body. Time after time the impositions practised by sorcerers and magicians are exposed, yet the Mongol never loses his childish reliance on them. One fortunate result is sufficient to wipe out the recollection of all previous failures, and the reputation of the prophet stands as high as ever. Some are so artful that they discover beforehand all that is necessary to know for the successful practice of their profession, and after deceiving others so often they



at length themselves believe in their own supernatural powers.

The Mongols expose the bodies of their dead to be devoured by birds and beasts of prey, their lamas deciding in which direction the head should lie. Princes, gigns, and lamas of importance are interred or burnt after death. Masses are said for the departed for forty days on payment of a sum of money. The poor who cannot afford to pay are deprived of this honour, but the rich distribute cattle among the different temples where masses are said for their deceased relatives for the space of two or three years.

A Mongol, who might claim, apart from inevitable defects in intelligence and morality, to be called a good and religious man, will show himself to be a true barbarian in giving vent to his passions. It is only necessary to see the savage way in which they behave to the Dungans. The very man who would scruple to kill a lamb, because he considered it wrong, will cut off the head of his prisoner with the utmost *sangfroid*. Neither sex nor age is respected; the captives are slaughtered indiscriminately. The Dungans certainly retaliate in like manner; but I only mention this to prove how powerless is religion alone, without other civilising influences, to soften and transform the barbarous instincts of a nation. Buddhism inculcates principles of lofty morality, but it has not taught the Mongol to look upon every man as his brother and respect even an enemy.

Again, the custom of exposing the dead to be devoured by wild animals, a sight which may be seen by any traveller near Urga, where hundreds of corpses are annually devoured by dogs and crows, revolting to the rudest nature, but not so to the Mongol, who coolly drags his nearest and dearest relatives to this spot, and sees the dogs tear his father, mother, or brother to pieces as unconcernedly as though he were a senseless creature.

Let this be a lesson to Christian missionaries in these countries, not to teach the mere outward observance of religion, but to accompany their doctrines with refining influences of civilisation and the culture of a superior race. First wean the Mongol from his dirt; convince him that idleness and sloth are vices and not among life's pleasures; impress upon him that God requires of every man good works, and not merely a certain number of set prayers; and then, if you will, explain to him the forms of the Christian religion. The new doctrines must not only open his mind to a new spiritual and moral life, but must effect a radical change in his domestic and social state. Then only will Christianity bear fruit and throw out new shoots sowing good seed among the rude untutored inhabitants of Mongolia.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> [Col. Prejevalski's opinion seems to be that when the tree produces its fruits, then, and not till then, is the time to plant it.—Y.] Geographically Mongolia of to-day comprises the extent of country from the upper waters of the Irtysh on the west to Manchuria on the east, and from Siberia on the north to the Great Wall and the Mahomedan countries lying near the Thian Shan on the south.

At the end of the seventeenth century the Chinese, after subduing almost the whole of this country, allowed its separate organisation to remain unchanged; only introducing a more efficient system of administration; and while maintaining the independence of its princes in local affairs, they placed them under the strict supervision of the Government of Peking. All the business connected with Mongolia is transacted by the Foreign Office (*Li-fan-yuen*), matters of high importance being referred to the Emperor. It is governed on the basis of a military colony; its chief divisions or principalities are called *aimaks*,<sup>1</sup> each comprising one or more *koshungs*, i.e. banners which are subdivided into regiments, squadrons, and tens. The aimaks and koshungs are governed by hereditary princes, who acknowledge

Its southern boundary, however, is south of the Great Wall, in the basin of lake Koko-nor, where the frontier takes a deep bend to the south.

<sup>1</sup> Northern Mongolia, i.e. the Khalka country, is composed of 4 aimaks and 86 koshungs; Inner and Eastern Mongolia, with Ordos, of 25 aimaks, divided into 51 koshungs; the country of the Chakhars into 8 banners; Ala-shan forms 1 aimak, with 3 koshungs; Koko-nor and Tsaidam, 5 aimaks, and 29 koshungs. Western Mongolia, so-called Dzungaria, comprises 4 aimaks, and 32 koshungs; but as the numbers of its Mongol inhabitants were small in comparison with the Chinese immigrants before the insurrection, it was divided into seven military circuits. The aimak of Uriankhai includes 17 koshungs. Full details on the administrative divisions of Mongolia may be found in Hyacinthe's 'Statistical Description of the Chinese Empire,' part ii. p. 88-112; and in 'Timkowsky's Travels' (English translation, edited by Klaproth, London, 1827, vol. ii. p. 223-292). From these two sources I have derived my information on the territorial divisions and government of Mongolia. [*Aimak* is properly a division of persons, not of territory, though it may have acquired a localised sense. Originally all the organisation of Mongol authority had reference to *persons*, who might be on the Volga one year, on the Amur another.—Y.]





EMMERMAYER



the Emperor of China as their lord paramount, and may not enter into any relations with foreign powers without reference to Peking. The *tosalakchi*, whose office is also hereditary, rank next; each banner has one, two, or four of these officials; the prince, who is military chief of the banner, has two lieutenants (*meiren zanghin*); every regiment has its colonel (*chialan zanghin*), and captains of squadrons (*somun zanghin*).<sup>1</sup> The whole military force of the aimak is under a *tsiang-tsiun* (general), chosen from among the Mongol princes.

The princes of the koshungs or banners assemble once a year for the gathering<sup>2</sup> (*chulkan*), presided over by one of their number who must have been confirmed in his authority by the Emperor. These assemblies, at which local questions are decided, are under the control of the governors of the nearest provinces of China.<sup>3</sup>

Some parts of the country bordering with China Proper are modelled entirely after the Chinese system; such as the district of Cheng-ta-fu beyond the Great Wall, north of Peking, the aimak of Chakhar, north-west of Kalgan, and the district of Kuku-hoto (Kwei-hwa-cheng), still further to the west, near the northern bend of the Yellow River. Western

<sup>1</sup> Every squadron has two officers, six under-officers, and 150 rank and file.

<sup>2</sup> Assemblies are also summoned on extraordinary occasions.

<sup>3</sup> The governor of Kuku-hoto has the charge of Ordos, Western Tunit, and the nearest aimaks of Mongolia; Koko-nor and Tsaidam are placed under the governor of Si-ning (in Kan-su); the two westernmost aimaks of Khalkas are governed by the *tsiang-tsiun* of Uliassutai, and so on.



Mongolia (*Dzungaria*) until the recent insurrection was divided into seven military circuits<sup>1</sup> under a different form of government.

The princely caste has six grades ranking in the following order: *Khan*, *Tsin-wang*, *Tsiun-wang*, *Behleh*, *Behzeh*, and *Kung*. Besides these are the nobles owning land (*Tsagak-tai-tsi*),<sup>2</sup> the greater number tracing their descent from Chinghiz-Khan. The title descends to the eldest son by lawful marriage if he has attained the age of nineteen, Imperial permission having been first obtained. If there be no legitimate sons, the title may be transmitted to one of the natural children or to the nearest male relative, but not without the consent of the Emperor; the other children rank as nobles (*tai-tsi*) divided into four classes. In this way the princes never increase in number (there are 200 altogether), but the nobility are constantly becoming more numerous.

The princes, as we have said, enjoy no political rights, and are under the absolute authority of the Peking Government, which watches their actions with jealousy. Their salaries<sup>3</sup> are received direct from the Emperor, who promotes them at will from one class to another. Princesses of the Imperial family<sup>4</sup> are sometimes given in marriage to Mongol

<sup>1</sup> Two of these (Urumchi and Barkul) were included in the province of Kan-su.

<sup>2</sup> The name 'Tsagak' is given to every proprietary chief in Mongolia.

<sup>3</sup> The salaries of the princes alone amount to 120,000 lans of silver and 3,500 pieces of silk annually.

<sup>4</sup> These princesses also receive fixed salaries from the Emperor, and are only allowed to come to Peking once in ten years.

princes, in order to strengthen by family ties the power of China over their nomadic subjects. Every prince must appear at court once every three or four years to pay his respects to his sovereign; on these occasions they bring gifts, mostly camels or horses, receiving in return silver, silk, costly dresses, caps adorned with peacocks' feathers, &c., always of far greater value than those brought. Indeed Mongolia costs China a round sum every year;<sup>1</sup> on the other hand, the Middle Kingdom is secured from any possible invasion by the ruthless nomads.

The exact population of Mongolia is unknown. Père Hyacinthe estimates it at three millions, Timkowski at two; in any case the number is insignificant in proportion to the extent of country. This could hardly be otherwise if we consider the conditions of nomad life, and how barren the Mongolian deserts for the most part are. The increase of population is also very slow, owing to the celibacy of the lamas, and the diseases which at times cause great ravages.

The Mongols are divided into four classes:

<sup>1</sup> A prince of the 1st rank receives 2,000 lans of silver and 25 pieces of silk.

A prince of the 2nd rank receives 1,200 lans of silver and 15 pieces of silk.

A prince of the 3rd rank receives 800 lans of silver and 13 pieces of silk.

A prince of the 4th rank receives 500 lans of silver and 10 pieces of silk.

A prince of the 5th rank receives 300 lans of silver and 9 pieces of silk.

A prince of the 6th rank receives 200 lans of silver and 7 pieces of silk.

Tsasak tai-tsi (nobles), receive 100 lans of silver and 4 pieces of silk.

princes, nobles (*tai-tsi*), clergy, and common people. The first three enjoy all civil rights; the last are semi-independent military settlers, who are not liable to a land tax or to military service. Their laws are embodied in a separate code published by the Chinese Government, to which the princes must conform in their administration; proceedings of minor importance are, however, decided according to traditional usage. The punishments are fines and banishment, and for crimes and robberies with violence, in some instances, death. Corporal punishment is inflicted on the common people as well as on nobles and officials judicially degraded. Bribery, corruption, and every kind of abuse in the administration and judicial proceedings are most prevalent.

The people only pay a cattle tax to their princes; but on extraordinary occasions, such as when the latter travel to Peking or to the assembly, on the marriage of their children, or on removal of camp, special collections are levied. The Mongols pay no tax whatever to China, and are only liable to military service, from which, however, the clergy are exempt. The army is exclusively cavalry; one hundred and fifty families form a squadron; six squadrons a regiment, the regiments of one koshung a banner. The people defray the cost of military equipments, but government provides arms. If the whole nation were called out for military duty, Mongolia ought to supply 284,000 men,<sup>1</sup> but less than

<sup>1</sup> Men are liable to military duty from the age of eighteen to sixty; one man in three of a family is relieved from service. The arms are

one-tenth of that number would be available. The tsiang-tsiuns (generals) of the aimaks (districts) ought to inspect the forces and examine their arms, but it is usual for every koshung to avoid this by bribery. The indolent Mongol will rather pay his money than turn out for military service. The Chinese Government is in one sense content with this, because it proves that the ancient martial spirit of the nomads is year by year becoming extinct.

exceedingly bad, consisting of spears, swords, bows, and matchlock guns.

## CHAPTER III.

## THE SOUTH-EASTERN BORDER OF THE MONGOLIAN PLATEAU.

Peking—First Impressions—The Streets and Walls—European Establishments—Preparations for the Journey—Fire-arms and Outfit—Insufficiency of Funds and its Consequence—Financial Arrangements—Chinese Currency—Inconveniences of the Copper Currency—Passport—Departure from Peking—Preliminary Tour to the North—Ku-pe-kau Gate in Wall—Migration of Wild-fowl—Road to Dolon-nor—Wood on the Way—Jehol—Fauna of the Route—Goître—Khingán Range—Dolon-nor—Idol Foundry—Shandu River—Tsagan Balgas—Sandhills called *Guchin-gurbu* or ‘the 33’—A Steppe-fire on the Dalai-nor—The Lake Dalai—Birds on the Lake—Mocking-bird—Surveying Difficulties—Mode of Surveying—Suspensions of the Natives—The Route plotted daily—Road back to Kalgan—Steppe Horses—Imperial Pasture Lands—Climate of South-Eastern Mongolia—The two-humped Camel—Its habits, uses, &c.—Arrival at Kalgan.

PEKING, or, as the Chinese call it, *Pch-king*,<sup>1</sup> was the starting point of our expedition. Here we met with the most cordial hospitality from our countrymen, the members of the diplomatic and clerical missions, and here we abode nearly two months making preparations for the journey. My acquaintance with the city is very superficial. Its great extent and outlandish appearance to European eyes, the strange manners of the Chinese, and, lastly, ignorance of the language, prevented me from acquainting myself in detail with all its marvels. I may candidly

<sup>1</sup> *Pch-king*, i.e. ‘northern capital.’

confess, however, that the impression it left on my mind was far from agreeable; indeed, a new comer could hardly be pleased with a city in which cess-pools and crowds of naked beggars<sup>1</sup> are the adjuncts of even the best streets. If we add to this the insolent effrontery of the Chinese themselves and the nickname of *Kwei-tsz*, i.e. 'foreign devils,' with other opprobrious epithets, which they bestowed upon us, it may readily be imagined that Peking is not the pleasantest place in the world for a stroll. To complete the picture, collectors of manure are continually moving about plying their trade with baskets on their arms; the smells are beyond description, and the water used for laying the dust is taken from the sewers.

The principal streets are wide and straight, bordered with rows of shops decorated in every conceivable style, and with mud walls which conceal from view the dwellings of the inhabitants. The town is lighted with paper lanterns stuck on wooden tripods several hundred yards apart, in which are usually placed lighted tallow candles. There is no particular need, however, of nocturnal illumination, because the Chinese generally conclude their out-door business by sunset, so that with the approach of twilight hardly anyone is to be seen abroad even in the most populous quarters of the town.

Peking is divided into two parts, an inner town (*Nei-cheng*) in which the palace of the Emperor

<sup>1</sup> The beggars in Peking are said to number 40,000; they have a king or chief of their own, who exacts a certain tribute from all the shops in the town.



stands, and an outer (Wai-cheng), much smaller than the first,<sup>1</sup> each being surrounded by a battlemented mud wall (on which towers rise at intervals), that of the inner about fourteen miles in circumference,<sup>2</sup> 33 ft. in height and 60 ft. thick, with nine gates, which are closed at sunset and opened at sunrise; that of the outer only ten miles round with seven gates.

The five foreign embassies<sup>3</sup> are all together in the southern quarter of the inner town near the gate of Tsian-men. Our missionary establishment stands in the north-eastern angle of the so-called northern suburb (Peh-kwan<sup>4</sup>); this town also contains four Catholic churches,<sup>5</sup> several Protestant institutions, and a custom-house. These complete the list of European buildings in Peking, no foreign merchants, Russians included, having the right by treaty of trading here.

The task of preparing for our journey was not an easy one. We had no one to consult, for none of the Europeans resident at that time at Peking

<sup>1</sup> The terms 'inner' and 'outer' are incorrect inasmuch as both lie close together, but one does not include the other. The palace is situated in the Imperial town (Hwang-cheng), which occupies the centre of the inner. A detailed description of the capital of the Celestial Empire has been translated from the Chinese by Père Hyacinthe.

<sup>2</sup> The whole of Peking, exclusive of its suburbs, is about 20 miles (58 li) in circumference. The number of its population is uncertain, but cannot be very large, because there are so many ruins and empty spaces in the town.

<sup>3</sup> English, Russian, French, German, American.

<sup>4</sup> The southern suburb, in which the diplomatic mission-buildings are situated, is called 'Yuen-kwan.'

<sup>5</sup> *Peh-tang*, *Nan-tang*, *Si-tang*, and *Dum-tang*. [*Tung-tang*? i.e. North, South, West, and East.—Y.]

had travelled beyond the Great Wall in a westerly direction. Our object was to strike the northern bend of the Yellow River, visit the country of Ordos and Lake Koko-nor, and, in fact, explore regions almost entirely unknown to Europeans. We had, therefore, to be guided by our instincts in equipping ourselves with everything needful, and in deciding upon the best means of travelling.

Our winter journey from Kiakhta to Peking, followed by a prolonged residence in the latter city, convinced me that the only chance of success in travelling through the secluded dominions of China lay in entire independence of the inhabitants, who viewed with hostility every attempt of Europeans to penetrate into the more remote regions of their country. We tried in vain to find a Chinese or a Mongol who would accompany us on our proposed wanderings. The offer of liberal payment, the promise of a large reward if the journey were successful, and other tempting baits of this kind, failed to overcome their distrust and cowardice; some at first agreed to our proposals, but afterwards broke their word. Seeing how impossible it was to depend on such auxiliaries for a distant expedition like ours, we determined on buying camels and managing them ourselves, with the assistance of two Cossacks who were to accompany us.

Having procured seven pack-camels and two riding-horses, we proceeded to arrange the baggage and take necessary supplies for a twelvemonth, as this time we did not expect to reach Koko-nor, but

intended devoting a year to the exploration of the middle course of the Yellow River, and then returning to Peking. When everything was ready, our *impedimenta* consisted chiefly of guns and ammunition for the chase, both very ponderous but indispensable: first, as a means of collecting specimens of birds and animals; secondly, because we should have to depend on them for supplying us with food in the districts which had been entirely depopulated by the Dungans, as well as in those parts of China where the inhabitants might refuse to sell us provisions in the hopes of starving us out; lastly, our guns would protect us against robbers, by whom, at all events during the first year, we were unmolested, a circumstance which may be attributed to our being well-armed, and proving the force of the old maxim, '*Si vis pacem para bellum.*'

The rest of our baggage comprised the apparatus for preparing specimens and drying plants; such as blotting-paper, pressing-boards, tow for stuffing, plaster-of-Paris, alum, &c., &c. All this was packed into four large boxes which galled the backs of our camels, but, at the same time, were indispensable to contain the collections. Lastly, I purchased a quantity of small articles for the sum of about 40*l.* to assist me in my assumed character of merchant. This merchandise, however, proved to be a useless incumbrance; the time lost in trafficking interfered with our scientific pursuits, and did not serve to conceal the real object of our journey. The provisions for our immediate wants were a case of

French brandy, 36 lbs. of sugar, and two sacks of rice; we hoped to obtain as much meat as we required with our guns.

This meagre supply for our personal consumption was occasioned by the slenderness of our finances. The first year of our travels we received from the War Department, the Geographical Society, and the Botanical Gardens of St. Petersburg the aggregate sum of 350*l.*, including my salary; in the second and third the amount was increased to 500*l.*; my travelling companion, M. Pyltseff, received the first year 40*l.* and the two following 80*l.* I state the case plainly as to our monetary resources simply because the want of means was the greatest possible hindrance to us. In proof of this, I may remark that as each Cossack was entitled to 28*l.* a year salary, which I paid regularly in silver, I could not afford more than two men. My companion and I were, therefore, obliged to load the camels ourselves, to pasture them, to collect argols for fuel, &c., in fact, do all the drudgery; whereas, under other circumstances, the time thus spent might have been devoted to scientific observations. Again, I could not afford a good interpreter of the Mongol language, thoroughly conversant with his duties, who would have been of the greatest service on several occasions. My Cossack-dragoman was by turns labourer, herdsman, cook, constantly employed in one or other of these capacities, and only able now and then to spare a short time for his legitimate business. Lastly, our poverty was the cause of our actually suffer-

ing from hunger more than once, when no game was obtainable and we could not pay the extortionate price demanded for a sheep. On returning to Peking after the first year, I could not help smiling on hearing a member of one of the foreign embassies enquire how we managed to carry about with us so large a quantity of silver, gold not being current in Mongolia. What would this gentleman have thought of us if he had known that on starting from Peking we only took 65*l.* in cash?

To add still more to our embarrassment, the moneys assigned for our use were not even paid in full, but were remitted to Peking in half-yearly instalments by the War Department, and a year in advance by the Geographical Society and Botanical Gardens. The obliging assistance of General Vlangali rescued us from the critical position in which we should otherwise have found ourselves, and I received out of the Mission fund a loan of the annual amount payable to me, and, on starting for the second time, even more.

Silver rubles are exchanged at Peking at the rate of two for one liang (taël) of Chinese silver (5*s.* 6*d.*). I should also mention that, with the exception of the small cash, made of copper alloyed with zinc, there is no coinage in China. Silver is always paid and received by weight, and according to assay. The unit is the *liang*<sup>1</sup> (taël or ounce), its tenth part is a *kiang* (also pronounced tsiang);

<sup>1</sup> Twelve liangs average about a pound in weight. [Col. Prejevalski generally writes *lan*.]

the tenth of a *kiang* is a *feng*; 16 *liangs* make a *king* (or *hing*). The weight of the ounce varies according to the three different scales used, viz. government, market, and hand-balance. The purest silver is cast in wedge-shaped ingots, each weighing about 50 ounces and bearing the government mark, or the stamp of the private firm which has cast them. There is less alloy in this than in any other. In paying small sums you cut off bits from the ingot as you require them, weighing them in a hand-balance; for larger dealings a pair of scales and two bowls are used. In these transactions the experienced Chinaman invariably gets the better of you, by inclining the balance one way or the other, according as he has to pay or receive; he will also cheat you, in the quality, particularly when in small lumps, which are apt to contain a good deal of bad metal.

I should also mention that petty transactions are ordinarily settled with cash,<sup>1</sup> which are so heavy that a *ruble's* worth (about 2*s.* 8*d.*) weighs on an average 8 lbs. Of course you cannot take enough coins with you,<sup>2</sup> and are, therefore, obliged to exchange your silver as you find it necessary; your difficulties are further increased by the different rates of exchange in almost every town and in many of the villages in China. In some places, 30 cash count as a hundred, in others 50, 78, 80, 92, 98 are worth no more: an absurdity which could only be

<sup>1</sup> To facilitate calculations 500 cash are strung on a cord by means of a square hole in each.

<sup>2</sup> 15*l.* worth of copper cash weigh 6½ cwts., or about three camel-loads, whilst the cost of each camel is nearly 35*l.*!



met with in this country. But these local exchanges do not exclude the general rate which equalises the values of the coin. The latter is known to the Mongols under the name of '*manchan*,' the former as '*dzelen*.' Before buying anything you must always ask whether the price is according to the general or local rate ; otherwise, you may find yourself out in your calculations. If, in addition to all this, it be considered that weights and measures differ all over the Empire, you may form an idea of the fraud and dishonesty to which the traveller is exposed even in the most trifling purchases. In order to avoid disputes in weighing silver, and also for the sake of economy, I bought the medium or market scales ; but they seldom answered our purpose. We lost heavily by exchanging silver into copper, as we were often unable to ascertain the local rate, which varies every ten miles or so.<sup>1</sup> Indeed, from first to last we paid a large premium to the roguery and rascality of the natives, and were imposed upon in the most scandalous way.

Through the courteous intervention of our Ambassador we received a passport from the Chinese Government, permitting us to travel in South-eastern Mongolia and Kan-su ; and having completed our preparations, we started from Peking on March 9th,

<sup>1</sup> For instance, at Peking a liang (taël) of silver is worth 1,500 cash, at Dolon-nor 1,600, at Kalgan 1,800, at Ta-jing (in Kan-su) 2,900, and at Tonkir (also in Kan-su) 5,000. The enormous difference between the two latter towns is probably only temporary, and is caused by the excessive rise in price of every article of consumption in those districts after the Dungan desolation.

accompanied by every good wish for our happiness and success from our countrymen resident in that city, amongst whom we had passed our time so agreeably. Those pleasant days were now gone by, and in the bustle and anxiety of present arrangements we had little time even to think of the future, with all its hopes and fears.

In addition to the Cossack who had accompanied us from Kiakhta, another, attached to our embassy at Peking, was ordered to join our party. Both these men were only to remain with us temporarily, and were to be replaced by two others who had not yet arrived. Under these circumstances we could not at once enter the heart of Mongolia, and therefore determined to explore such parts of it as lie north of Peking in the direction of the town of Dolon-nor. Here I wished, in the first place, to acquaint myself with the nature of the hilly region which, just as at Kalgan, forms the border-land of the plateau, and secondly, to observe the spring flight of birds of passage. For the latter purpose, lake Dalai-nor was a convenient station, situated on the table-land itself, 100 miles north of Dolon-nor. From its shores we purposed again descending to Kalgan, changing our Cossacks for the newcomers whose arrival we expected about that time, and then turning westwards in the direction of the northern bend of the Hoang-ho. In order to burden ourselves as little as possible, we despatched part of our effects direct to Kalgan, only taking with us what was absolutely necessary for two months. Having been un-

successful in hiring a Mongol or Chinaman, even for so short a time, we started a party of four.

Our route first lay in the direction of *Ku-peh-kau*, which commands the pass through the Great Wall,<sup>1</sup> and is nearly seventy-seven miles north of the capital. At first the appearance of the country does not change; the level plain watered by the Peiho and its tributary the Cha-ho is thickly studded with villages, and small towns and hamlets recur frequently along the road-side; but on the second day the mountains, which had been hitherto hardly visible in the distance, appeared nearer, and thirteen miles from *Ku-peh-kau* we entered the outlying hills of this marginal range. It is somewhat different from that at *Kalgan*. The two chains, which we will call the *Kalgan* and *Nankau* ranges (after the towns at the foot of the passes by which they are respectively descended), unite towards *Ku-peh-kau* in a broad belt, which continues to form an outer barrier to the high plateau.

*Ku-peh-kau* is a small place enclosed on three sides by mud walls, while on the fourth it is shut in by the Great Wall. A little over a mile from the town stands a mud fort commanding the road to Peking through a small narrow defile. The mountains only really begin on the northern side of *Ku-peh-kau*.

Although early in March, the weather was warm and springlike in the plains; it was even hot during

<sup>1</sup> There is one other pass between *Kalgan* and *Ku-peh-kau*; it is closed by the fortress (if a square mud wall is deserving of that name) of *Tu-shu kau*.

the day, and the thermometer registered 59° Fahr. in the shade. The Peiho was free of ice, and flocks of wild duck (*Anas rutila*, *A. boschas*) and merganser (*Mergus merganser* and *M. serrator*) could be seen. These birds and other varieties of waterfowl and wading-birds make their appearance here in numerous flocks in the first half of the month, not only in the environs of Peking, but even near Kalgan where the climate is sensibly colder. Not venturing to continue their flight to the north where the breath of spring has not yet made itself felt, they keep to the flooded fields, which at this season are irrigated by the agricultural Chinese. One fine clear morning the impatient flocks essay a flight over the high lands, but if met by cold or bad weather they again return to the warm plains, where day by day their numbers increase, till at length the expected hour arrives; the deserts of Mongolia are slightly warmed, the ice-bound soil of Siberia has begun to thaw, and flock after flock hasten to leave their confined quarters in a foreign land and wing their way towards their haunts in the distant north.

Beyond Ku-peh-kau in the direction of Dolon-nor the mountains form a belt 100 miles in width, composed of a number of parallel chains running east and west, of no great elevation,<sup>1</sup> yet often

<sup>1</sup> There are no very remarkable peaks, and the snowy *Peh-cha*, mentioned by the missionaries Gerbillon and Verbiest as 15,000 feet high, and by Ritter following them, is certainly not here. The statement of its existence was, however, contradicted by MM. Vassilieff and Semenov as early as 1856. See the Russian edition of Ritter's 'Erdkunde von Asien,' translated by Semenov, i. 292-295.

alpine in character. The valleys are not wide (about half a mile) occasionally narrowing into ravines, hemmed in by lofty rocks of gneiss and granolite. The road is crossed by several small streams, none amounting to rivers, with the exception of the Shandu-gol<sup>1</sup> or Luan-ho, which takes its rise on the northern slope of the mountains nearest to the plateau; and after flowing past the town of Dolon-nor forces its way through the entire range and debouches in the plains of China Proper. The steep hillsides were thickly covered with grass, and as we penetrated farther into the range, by brush-wood and trees; the latter chiefly consisting of oak, black, or more rarely white birch, ash, pine, and an occasional spruce.<sup>2</sup> Elms and poplars grow in the valleys. The commonest bushes were the ever-green oak, rhododendron, wild peach, sweet briar, and hazel.

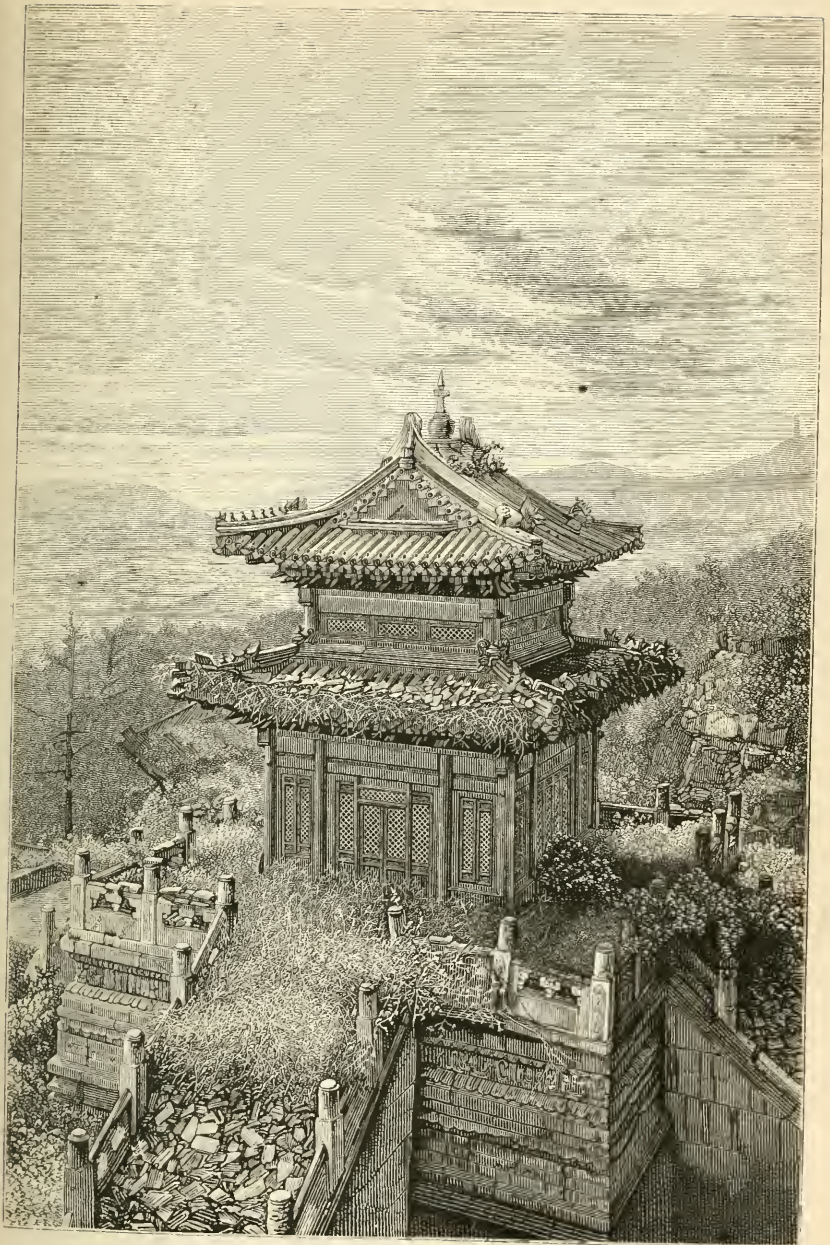
Woods are only met with on the northern bank of the Luan-ho as far east as the town of Jehol,<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Marked *Shangtu-gol* on D'Anville's map.—M.

<sup>2</sup> Dwarf limes are even more scarce.

<sup>3</sup> The name 'Jehol,' also pronounced 'Jehor' or 'Jeh-ho,' means 'hot-water,' after the springs in the neighbourhood. Ritter calls this place the Chinese 'Sans Souci,' probably on account of its delightful situation, salubrious climate, and for its being the favourite residence of the great Emperor Kien-Long. It was here that Lord Macartney's embassy was received in 1793. The town itself is large and imposing when you enter it, and contains about a quarter of a million inhabitants. It stands in a fruitful valley surrounded by mountains, on which are palaces, temples, and gardens. About a day's ride to the west are the Imperial hunting-grounds, set aside for the use of his dynasty by Kia-king, the grandfather of the late Emperor. The inscriptions on the gates of the walls and buildings are in four languages—Chinese, Manchu, Tibetan, and Mongol. ('Erdkunde von Asien,'





RUINS OF EMPEROR'S SUMMER PALACE.





the summer residence of the Emperor. These forests used formerly to be strictly preserved for the Imperial chase, but the death of Kia-king in 1820 while hunting put a stop to this amusement. Notwithstanding the foresters placed there to protect it, the timber is undergoing wholesale destruction and judging from what we saw, hardly a good-sized tree remained, the number of stumps evidencing recent and extensive fellings.

The only animal we found was the *pygarg* (*Cervus pygargus*); the natives, however, asserted that there were roe-deer and tigers. Pheasants (*Phasianus torquatus*), partridges (*Perdix barbata*, *P. chukar*), and rock-doves (*Columba rupestris*) were plentiful; woodpeckers (*Picus* sp.), buntings (*Emberiza ciodes*?) and *Pterorhinus Davidii* more scarce. The ornithology was not very varied, perhaps because the season was not far enough advanced for the migratory birds.

This border district forms part of the circuit of Chen-tu-fu, and belongs to the province of Chihli.<sup>1</sup> Although outside the Great Wall, i.e. beyond the boundary of China Proper, its inhabitants are exclusively Chinese, not a single Mongol being found among them. The valleys are covered with villages or detached farm-houses,<sup>2</sup> surrounded by cultivated

i. 132-138. See also 'A Month in Mongolia,' 'The Phœnix,' ii. 114, 120.)—M.

<sup>1</sup> According to the most recent changes Chihli or Peh-chihli, the northern province, extends about fifty miles to the north of Dolon-nor, and ten to the east of Kalgan. See 'A Month in Mongolia,' 'The Phœnix,' ii. 113.—M.

<sup>2</sup> There are no towns here like those in China Proper; and we only passed two settlements, *Pu-ning-sha* and *Gau-dji-tun*.

fields. But they are so confined as to be ill adapted for human habitation, and some of the inhabitants are dreadfully disfigured by goîtres.

We passed numerous trains of carts, asses, and a few camels on the road, employed in the transport of rice and millet to Peking; large droves of swine were also being driven to the capital, pork being the favourite food of the Celestials. As we left behind the plains of China the climate gradually became colder, the thermometer at sunrise only marked 7° Fahr., but during the day it was warm, and snow had entirely disappeared, except on the northern slopes of the higher mountains.

The ascents are very gradual. Ku-peh-kau on the southern side of the mountains is only 700 feet above sea-level; while Dolon-nor, situated on the elevated plain, which spread out before us on issuing from the mountains, is 4,000 feet high. On the Mongolian side this region is sharply defined by an alpine chain which, as the inhabitants told us, extends a long distance to the north, and is probably the great Khingan range, separating Manchuria from Mongolia. Where we crossed, only one side of the range—that towards the mountains, is fully developed; on the other the wild scenery is suddenly transformed into low, rounded hills; vegetation undergoes as marked a change in the absence of trees and bushes. No more bold cliffs and pointed peaks, but in their stead vast uneven plains surround the spectator, where the marmot, the antelope, and the Mongol lark reappear.

On March 29th, we arrived at the town of Dolon-nor, which, according to my observations of the Polar star, lies in  $42^{\circ} 16'$  north latitude.<sup>1</sup> Followed by a gaping crowd, we marched through the streets for a long while in search of a night's lodging, but were refused admittance at every inn on the pretext of there not being room for us. Exhausted by the length of our march, and chilled to the bones, we determined to follow the advice of a Mongol and seek shelter at a temple. Here they gladly received us, and placed at our disposal a house where we could warm ourselves and rest after our fatigues.

Dolon-nor, or, as the Chinese call it, Lama-miau,<sup>2</sup> like Kalgan and Kuku-khoto, is an important place of trade. Hither the Mongols drive their cattle, and bring wool and skins to barter for brick-tea, tobacco, cotton, and silk. The town is not walled, but stands in a barren sandy plain watered by the Urtin-gol, a tributary of the Shandu-gol. The Chinese quarter is rather over a mile in length by about half a mile in width; its population is large, but the streets are narrow and dirty. The Mongolian quarter, distant half-a-mile from the former, contains two large temples standing close together, surrounded by houses,

<sup>1</sup> According to the observations of the Jesuits, Dolon-nor is situated in  $0^{\circ} 11' 50''$  longitude, west of Peking, and  $42^{\circ} 25'$  north latitude. (See Klaproth's note in 'Timkowski's Travels,' i. 206); but Fritsche, director of the Peking Observatory, has calculated the latitude to be  $42^{\circ} 16' 48''$ . See Dr. Bushell's 'Notes of a Journey outside the Great Wall of China,' J.R.G.S., vol. xlv. p. 81.—M.

<sup>2</sup> The Chinese name, Lama-miau, means 'lama monastery;' the Mongol name, Dolon-nor, signifies 'seven lakes,' which actually existed at one time near the town, but are now covered with sand-drift.

inhabited by about 2,000 lamas, whose numbers in summer are greatly augmented by the arrival of pilgrims. Near these temples stands a school for boys destined to become lamas.

Dolon-nor is remarkable for its foundry of idols and other religious appurtenances, which are despatched hence all over Mongolia and Tibet. The images are of cast iron or bronze, of various shapes and sizes, and are wonderfully executed, considering that they are all made by artificers working in separate houses.

We remained here a day and then started for Lake *Dalai-nor*, 100 miles to the north. Our road soon crossed the Shandu-gol, near the ruins of an ancient town known to the Mongols under the name of *Tsagan-balgas*,<sup>1</sup> signifying 'White Walls.' Nothing remains except a half-ruined quadrilateral brick wall ten to fourteen feet high, inclosing an area about a quarter of a mile in length by about 200 yards wide, which has the appearance of a field without any visible trace of habitations. The Mongols could tell us nothing of its past history.

Twenty-seven miles beyond Dolon-nor we entered the aimak (principality) of Keshik-ten;<sup>2</sup> from

<sup>1</sup> This was a favourite resort of the Mongol emperors; Marco Polo relates that Kublai-khan had a summer residence here, which he used on his hunting excursions to the neighbouring plains and lakes. Gerbillon mentions that the Emperor Kang-hi, during his campaigns against the Oliuths in 1696, built a small square fortress here—*Tsagan Balgassu*—the ruins of which are perhaps those mentioned in the text. ('Erdkunde von Asien,' i. 124-141, and Yule's 'Marco Polo,' i. 260-269. See also, 'Timkowski,' i. 269.)—M. [See Supplementary Note.]

<sup>2</sup> Keshik-ten is the Mongol for 'happy,' a name which they told us

this point of the road a succession of sandy hillocks, called by the natives *Guchin-gurbu*, i.e. thirty-three, extends as far as Dalai-nor. This name probably denoted the countless number of the hills, which vary in height from thirty to fifty, and in some instances 100 feet, and lie in close proximity to each other without any regularity. They are chiefly sand, in some places quite bare, but more frequently covered with grass or willow bushes, interspersed with an occasional oak, lime, and black and white birch. Quantities of hares and partridges are found in the underwood; pygargs and wolves in smaller numbers. We passed an occasional valley suited to cultivation, but the Mongol encampments were rare owing to the scarcity of water, although an occasional Chinese village might be seen. The numerous cart-tracks of Chinese, who come here from Dolon-nor to obtain wood for fuel, cause one easily to lose one's road without a guide, which happened to us several times during our first day's journey among the *Guchin-gurbu*. There are no landmarks to steer by, one hill is exactly like another, and as soon as you have ascended one, dozens more, all as though cast in the same mould, rise up in front of you. The Mongols say that these hills begin at the sources of the *Shara-muren* and continue for upwards of 150 miles to the west of Dalai-nor.

No sooner had we reached the shores of this lake than we witnessed the magnificent sight of a

was given it because in dividing Eastern Mongolia into the present aimaks it was the last that remained.



steppe fire. Although we had seen many such conflagrations in the mountains on the border, purposely lighted by the inhabitants to consume last year's withered grass, this spectacle far surpassed any we had yet beheld.

Towards evening a small light was visible on the horizon, which in the course of two or three hours became a long line of fire advancing rapidly across the open plain. A solitary hill in the centre was soon enveloped in flames, and appeared like a great building burning above the rest. The heavens were cloaked with clouds refulgent with a purple glow, which threw a lurid glare far and wide over the steppe; columns of smoke rose in fantastic shapes till they were lost to the eye in a confused, indistinct mass. In the foreground lay the vast plain lighted up by the burning belt; behind, the darkness of night, which seemed blacker and more impenetrable than ever; the lake resounded with the loud cries of startled birds, while all was still and quiet on the plain.

Dalai-nor<sup>1</sup> lies to the north of the hills of Guchin-gurбу, and is the largest of the lakes of South-east Mongolia. In shape it is a flattened ellipse with an axis elongated from north-east to south-west. Its western shore is indented by several bays, but the remainder of its coast-line is almost unbroken. Its water is salt, and, according to the natives, very deep; but we could hardly believe this statement,

<sup>1</sup> The translation of its Mongol name is 'lake-sea.'

because at a distance of several hundred paces from the shore its depth is not more than two or three feet. It is about forty miles in circumference, and is joined by four small streams: the *Shara-gol*<sup>1</sup> and *Gungir-gol* on the east; the *Holeh-gol* and *Shurga-gol* on the west. The lake abounds in fish, of which we caught three kinds, *Diplophysa* sp., *Squalius* sp., and *Gasterosteus* sp.<sup>2</sup> In summer the fish enter the mouths of the streams in large numbers; and in early spring several hundred Chinese, mostly houseless vagrants, make their appearance on its shores for the purpose of fishing, and remain till late in the autumn.

On the north and east it is bordered by saline plains, and on the west by rolling steppes; the hills of Guchin-gurбу closely approach its southern shore. Here stands a small group of hills, at the foot of which is the temple of Darhan-ula and a Chinese village. The inhabitants of the latter trade with the Mongols, who come here in large numbers during the summer for religious worship, and sometimes buy live fish from the fishermen, returning them to the lake in order to atone for their sins.

Dalai-nor lies at an elevation of 4,200 feet above the sea, its climate is, therefore, as rigorous as the rest of Mongolia. In the middle of April its shores were still frozen, and the ice on the lake itself is

<sup>1</sup> According to the Mongols this river flows out of lake Hanga-nor, about thirteen miles to the east of Dalai-nor; at its mouth there is a good-sized marsh, the only one at Dalai-nor.

<sup>2</sup> We could not catch more because the lake was still frozen, and there were very few fish in the rivulets.

three feet thick. It does not entirely thaw till the first half of May.

Situated in the midst of the arid plains of Mongolia, Lake Dalai-nor serves as a great *rendezvous* for migratory birds belonging to the orders *Natatores* and *Grallatores*. In the beginning of April we found large numbers of ducks,<sup>1</sup> geese,<sup>2</sup> and swans<sup>3</sup> here; divers,<sup>4</sup> gulls,<sup>5</sup> cormorants,<sup>6</sup> less numerous, as were also cranes,<sup>7</sup> herons,<sup>8</sup> spoonbills<sup>9</sup> and *avosets*.<sup>10</sup> The two latter kinds and others belonging to the same order (*Waders*) first appeared in the second week of April; birds of prey and small birds were very scarce.<sup>11</sup>

For a detailed description of the flight and habits of these birds I must refer the reader to the second volume of this work,<sup>12</sup> which will be especially devoted to the Ornithology; for the present I will only add that all birds of passage hasten their flight across

<sup>1</sup> The most numerous of the ducks were *Anas boschas*, *A. crecca*, *A. glochitans*, *A. acuta*, *A. falcata*; less numerous were *Anas rutila*, *A. tadorna*, *A. clypeata*, *A. pæcilorhyncha*, *A. strepera*, and *Fuligula clangula*.

<sup>2</sup> *Anser segetum* was most common; *A. cinereus*, in sufficient numbers; *A. cygnoides* and *A. grandis*, rare.

<sup>3</sup> *Cygnus musicus* and *C. color*. The former were the most numerous, although the latter were also seen in considerable numbers.

<sup>4</sup> *Mergus merganser*, *M. albellus*, *M. serrator*—not many.

<sup>5</sup> *Larus ridibundus* and *L. occidentalis*?

<sup>6</sup> *Phalacrocorax carbo*.

<sup>7</sup> *Grus monachus* and *G. leucauchen*, the latter rare.

<sup>8</sup> *Ardea cinerea*.

<sup>9</sup> *Platalea leucorodia*.

<sup>10</sup> *Recurvirostra avocetta*.

<sup>11</sup> The most numerous of the birds of prey were *Milvus Govinda* and *Circus rufus*.

<sup>12</sup> This will not form part of the present translation.—M.

the deserts of Mongolia, for on cold, stormy days the lake was crammed with ducks and geese, but no sooner did the weather improve than it proceeded rapidly to empty, until a fresh flight took place.

The violent and cold winds prevalent on Dalai-nor were a great hindrance to our shooting excursions; however, we killed duck and geese enough to provide ourselves with food, sometimes more than sufficient for our wants, but we shot for the mere love of sport; for the swans, which were very shy, we almost always used the rifle.

After passing thirteen days on the shores of the lake, we retraced our road to Dolon-nor, in order to proceed thence to Kalgan. The hills of Guchingurubu appeared as uninteresting as ever, but their stillness was occasionally enlivened by the beautiful notes of the flesh-coloured stonechat (*Saxicola Isabellina*), met with throughout the whole of Central Asia; it not only utters its own notes, but borrows those of other birds, imitating them very sweetly. We have heard it mock the cry of the kite, chatter like a magpie, scream like a curlew, sing like a lark, and even try to mimic the neighing of a horse.

Surveying in a country where there are so few landmarks was most difficult, indeed, it was always very troublesome work to combine the accuracy and secrecy which were alike indispensable. Had the natives, particularly the Chinese, discovered that I was mapping their country, our difficulties would have been doubled, and we should have found it next to impossible to pass through the populous districts.

Fortunately I was never surprised with the map, and no one ever knew that I was sketching my route.<sup>1</sup> My surveying instrument was a Schmalkalder compass, which is usually fixed on a tripod stand; but as this would have excited suspicion and interfered with the success of the expedition, I determined to do without it, and steadied the compass in my hands. If the needle continued in motion for more time than I could conveniently spare, I read off the mean degrees between the extreme points of oscillation. In measuring distances I reckoned by the number of hours of travel and our rate of progress.<sup>2</sup> The scale of my map was 10 versts to the inch. I carried a small field-book for noting all conspicuous objects, as it is never safe to trust to one's memory in such work, where accuracy is of the highest importance. At the end of every day's journey I transferred the field survey to my diary, keeping the map on ruled sheets carefully stowed away in one of the boxes.

My plan was this: After taking bearings in the direction we were going and noting the time by my watch, I drew a line in my pocket-book corresponding as nearly as possible with that of our march; at the end of it I entered the degrees and marked off the intersections with figures in their regular order.

<sup>1</sup> The scale of the map accompanying this translation is reduced to one-eighth of the scale of the original sketch map.—M.

<sup>2</sup> A pack animal averages two and a-half to three miles per hour, according to the nature of the ground. The rate of travel varies so much in a mountainous country that one has often to measure distances by the eye.

Then as we advanced I sketched in the country on either side, taking bearings of the more important objects only. When we altered our course, I calculated the distance we had come, made an entry of it in my note-book, and took fresh bearings for the new direction. This was sometimes difficult to determine when we had no guide; in such case I took several bearings, and afterwards underlined the bearing that proved to be the one followed. It often happened that I was prevented making an entry at any given place owing to our being watched by Chinese or Mongols: in such case I deferred it to a more suitable opportunity, reckoning the distance we had come backwards to the point of deviation. When travelling in a thickly populated district, some one or other of the inhabitants would be constantly with us. To avoid observation I would then ride in advance or remain behind the caravan; if a guide<sup>1</sup> were with us, we had figuratively to 'throw dust in his eyes,' which we usually managed in the following way. On first making the acquaintance of the new travelling companion I would show him my field-glass, explaining to him that I was in the habit of looking for game with it. The unsophisticated Mongol did not distinguish between the field-glass and the compass, and as we often shot antelope and birds he was fully convinced that I could discover their presence by looking into 'the artful machine.' In this way, time after time, I

<sup>1</sup> Every guide we had was of course a spy, with whom we had to be more on our guard than with the local population.



succeeded in deceiving the officials. When they pestered me with questions and were curious to know why I carried a compass, I would speedily substitute the field-glass and place it before them, as I always had it with me during the march.

Sometimes it would be necessary to take compass bearings when a number of these inquisitive fellows were watching. My companion would then try and divert their attention whilst I was thus occupied. Numerous were the stratagems and artifices to which we were obliged to have recourse in fulfilling our task in the midst of a people who (in the case of the Chinese, at all events), were hostile to us.

On arriving at the halting place, after unloading the camels, pitching the tent, collecting argols, and doing other necessary work which we shared with the Cossacks, I would transfer to the ruled sheets of paper the survey of that day, taking the precaution of shutting myself in the tent and stationing a guard at its entrance to avoid interruption. But even then visitors would arrive and interfere with my work, which could not be resumed till they were got rid of, when I would finish and put it by till the following day.

I drew on the map the line of our march, marking all the settled habitations (towns, villages, houses, temples, but never nomad encampments), wells, lakes, rivers, and streams, however small, and lastly, mountains, hills, and the general outline of the country on both sides of our road. Important data

obtained by hearsay only were entered with an asterisk, to denote that they had not been verified by actual observation. To ensure accuracy in the map, I determined by means of a small universal instrument the latitude of eighteen important places.<sup>1</sup> The work of surveying, simple though it may seem, was one of our most arduous labours ; for, independent of every device to escape notice, the frequent necessity for dismounting added greatly to our fatigues, especially in the heat of summer. Even in the hottest weather, instead of taking advantage of the cool nights, we often had to travel by day for the sake of our survey, in this way exhausting our own strength as well as that of our camels.

We continued our journey from Dolon-nor, where I only stopped to make a few necessary purchases, to Kalgan, a distance of 150 miles by a good road all the way. The traffic is very large, and numerous Chinese two-wheeled bullock carts passed us laden with all kinds of merchandise ; salt is also transported by this road to Kalgan, from a salt lake (so the natives told us) 130 miles north of Lake Dalainor. Caravanserais stand by the road-side for the convenience of travellers ; but we never made use of them, preferring a clean tent and pure air to the dirt and smells of Chinese inns, besides avoiding the impertinent curiosity of the Mongols or Chinese, who invariably crowded round us whenever we stopped near their habitations.

<sup>1</sup> Unfortunately, I could not fix the longitudes of the same points, even by means of chronometers, for we had none.

There are Chinese villages and numerous Mongol yurtas on the Dolon-nor road, and countless herds of sheep, cows, and horses in every part of the steppe.

Topographically, this region may be described as a series of vast uneven plains with a sandy, and, in some places, saline soil, but covered everywhere with rich excellent grass. There is an utter absence of trees or bushes, but streams and small lakes are more numerous here than in other parts of Mongolia. The water, however, in the latter is filthy; to have an idea of it, take a tumbler of water mixed with a tea-spoonful of dirt, flavour with a pinch of salt, add a little lime for colour and goose droppings for smell, and you will then obtain a liquid similar to that in most of the Mongolian lakes. The natives, however, far from showing any repugnance to this nectar, boil their tea in it the whole year round, and even we were fain to drink it for want of better. The great steppe country through which we passed on our way from Dolon-nor is the pasture land of the Imperial horses. Every herd (called *dargu* by the Mongols) of these animals numbers 500, and is under the charge of an officer, a superior functionary being placed over all. They supply the cavalry remounts in time of war.

Let us now say a few words about the Mongol horses. They are rather under the average height, their legs and neck thick, their head large, and their coat long and shaggy. They possess wonderful powers of endurance, remaining out in the open

in the extreme cold, and contenting themselves with the scanty herbage, or, if there be none, with budarhana and bushes, the food of camels. In winter the snow serves them for water; in fact, they will live where other horses would perish in a month's time. They roam almost at liberty over the pasture lands of Northern Khalka and the country of the Chakhars. The larger herds are usually broken up into smaller troops of ten to thirty mares, led by a stallion who guards them with the greatest jealousy, and never lets them out of his sight. The leaders often have pitched battles with one another in spring.

Mongols are passionately fond of horses, and will tell you their good points at a glance; their favourite amusement is horse-racing, and every summer they meet at some of the principal temples to indulge in this sport. The great race-meeting is held at Urga, attracting competitors for many hundreds of miles. The prizes are distributed by the Kutukhtu in person; the winner of the first prize receiving a quantity of cattle, clothes, or money.

The Imperial pasture lands are mostly in the principality (aimak) of the Chakhars,<sup>1</sup> whose territory extends upwards of 330 miles to the west of Keshik-ten till it touches that of the Durbutes. The Chakhars or Chinese-Mongols are divided into eight  
take it in turn to do military service.  
We have already remarked how completely they have lost the character and appearance of the true Mongols.

<sup>1</sup> These pasture lands extend almost as far as Kuku-khoto.

It was fortunate for us that we had no need of their services, for a greater set of knaves and rogues does not exist. Our tent was our house, and we lived on what we shot. Antelope were plentiful, we had no lack of meat, and were never constrained to buy a sheep, for which we had to pay through the nose, if it were not, as often happened, absolutely refused. The fear inspired by our guns and revolvers was a protection against thieves; our skill in shooting birds on the wing, or bringing down antelope with the rifle at long distances, instilled into them a wholesome dread, and every robber knew that he would pay the penalty of his life if caught in the act of stealing.

The temperature in spring in South-eastern Mongolia was cold, with constant winds and a dry atmosphere.

The night frosts continued as late as the early part of May. On the 2nd of that month the surface of a small lake near which we were encamped was covered at sunrise with ice an inch thick, strong enough to bear a man's weight. Sudden changes in temperature occur even later, as we shall have occasion presently to remark.

North-westerly gales prevailed almost without intermission during spring. It was seldom, and only for a few hours, calm. The violence of the wind, generally accompanied by cold, was very trying, and we now fully realised the true nature of these steppes. Clouds of sand and dust, mixed with fine particles of salt from the marshes, filled the air, dark-

ening the sun's rays, which shone dimly as if through smoke ; sometimes they were entirely obscured, and it was twilight at noon. Hills half a mile off were invisible ; and large particles of sand were driven with such force by the wind, that even the camels accustomed to the desert would turn their backs to the storm and wait till its fury had abated. We could not keep our eyes open when facing it ; our heads ached, and there was a singing in our ears as though we were in the throes of suffocation. Everything in the tent was thickly covered with dust ; and when it had been blowing hard all night we could hardly open our eyes in the morning for the layer of dirt which covered them. Now and then, in the intervals between the squalls, hail and rain would come in buckets-full, driven into the finest sleet by the force of the gale. After a few minutes of this, there would be a lull for a quarter of an hour, succeeded by another hurricane and another downpour of rain. Although our tent was fastened to the ground with twelve iron pegs, each more than a foot long, it seemed about to be torn up every minute, and we were obliged to secure it to the packs with all the ropes we had.

The total quantity of rain and snowfall is, however, small ; very little, if any, occurring in March and April.

The constant frosts and winds on these high plains during the spring delay the flight of birds and retard vegetation. Towards the end of April the young grass certainly begins to shoot up under the



influence of the sun's warmth, and an occasional little flower bursts forth, but nature is in general still inanimate at this season. The appearance of the steppe is but slightly changed from what it was in winter, except that the withered grass is transformed by the spring conflagrations into a sable shroud. Spring in these regions is unaccompanied by any of those delights which herald its approach in more temperate climates. Birds of passage shun these cheerless plains, where they can find neither food, nor drink, nor shelter. If a flock now and then rest in its flight on the shore of some lake, it is only for a while, soon to depart on its way to more favoured haunts in the north.

I will conclude this chapter with a description of the Camel, the most characteristic and remarkable animal of Mongolia. The constant companion of the nomad, and often the source of his prosperity, it is invaluable to the traveller who crosses the desert. For three years we were never separated from our camels, watching them under all circumstances; we had therefore ample opportunity of studying their nature and habits.

The two-humped or Bactrian camel is characteristic of Mongolia, where the one-humped species common in Turkestan is unknown. The general Mongol name for it is *Timch*; the entire camel is called *Burun*; the gelding *Atan*; and the female *Inga*. Its good points are—a well-ribbed body, wide feet, and high upright humps<sup>1</sup> far apart. The

<sup>1</sup> A camel's hump is sometimes broken; in such case it will not stand erect but that does not matter, provided it be hard and large.

first two qualities denote strength; the last, i.e. the upright humps, show that the animal is fat, and can withstand a long journey in the desert. A very tall beast is not necessarily a good one; moderate size, with all the above points well developed, is better than great height. However, if it be well proportioned, the larger it is the better.

The largest and best camels, endowed with great powers of endurance, are bred among the Khalkas. Those of Ala-shan and Koko-nor are much smaller and weaker; the latter are also distinguished by their shorter and thicker muzzles, and the former by the darkness of their hair; peculiarities so marked as almost to form a distinct breed of the camels of Southern Mongolia.

The boundless steppe or desert is the home of the camel; here, like its master, the Mongol, it can be perfectly happy. Both the man and the beast shun fixed abodes. Confined in an enclosure, although supplied with an abundance of the best food, the camel will pine and die; excepting, perhaps, a few kept by the Chinese to transport coal, corn, or other loads. But they are poor, miserable creatures, compared with their fellows of the steppe; and even they will not bear confinement all the year round, and must be let loose in summer to pasture on the neighbouring plains and recruit their strength.

The habits of the camel are very peculiar. It is anything but dainty in its food, and may serve as a model of moderation; but this is only true on the desert: take it to pasturage such as we have at

home, and instead of becoming fat it grows leaner every day. We experienced this with ours in the rich meadows of Kan-su; and the merchants at Kiakhta, who had tried keeping them for the transport of tea, told us the same thing. In either case they deteriorated for want of the food to which they had been accustomed. The favourite food of the camel here consists of onions and budarhana (*Kalidium gracile*); in Ala-shan, dirisun, scrub wormwood, zak or saxaul (*Haloxylon* sp.) and kharmik (*Nitraria Scoberi*)—particularly when the sweet, brackish berries are ripe. It cannot thrive without salt, and eats with avidity the white saline efflorescence called *gudjir*, which covers all the marshes, and often exudes from the soil on the grass steppes of Mongolia. If there be none of this, it will eat pure salt, which, however, is not so beneficial, and should only be given twice or thrice a month. If kept without salt for any length of time camels will get out of condition, however plentiful food may be, and they have been known to take white stones in their mouths mistaking them for lumps of salt. The latter acts on them as an aperient, especially if they have been long without it. The absence of *gudjir* and saline plants probably explains the reason why they cannot live in good pasture lands in a hilly country, to say nothing of the want of a desert to roam over in summer.

We ought also to mention that some camels are omnivorous, and will eat almost anything; old bleached bones, their own pack saddles stuffed with

straw, straps, leather, &c., &c. Ours once ate up some gloves and a leathern saddle belonging to our Cossacks; and the Mongols told me of camels which had been without food for a long while, and which devoured an old tent of their master's in the coolest manner possible. They will even eat meat and fish; ours stole meat we had hung up to dry; one voracious brute actually made off with the birdskins ready for stuffing, and relished dried fish and the remains of the dogs' food; but this was a singular instance, and his eccentric tastes were not shared by the others.

Camels at pasture appease their hunger in two or three hours, after which they lie down and rest, or wander about the steppe. They cannot go without food for more than eight or ten days, nor can they go without water in spring and autumn for more than seven, requiring it in the height of summer every third or fourth day. Much, however, depends on the powers of endurance of the particular animal; the younger and fatter it is, the longer can it exist without nourishment. It only happened to us once during the whole course of the expedition, viz. in November 1870, to keep our camels without water for six consecutive days, notwithstanding which they went well; in summer they were never more than forty-eight hours without it. At this season they should be watered daily, but in spring and autumn every second or third day is quite sufficient, and in winter snow answers the same purpose.

The intelligence of camels is of a very low order;

they are stupid and timid. A hare starting from beneath their feet has been known to throw a whole caravan into confusion ; and a large stone or heap of bones to cause them to bolt altogether. If the saddle or load roll off its back the camel is terrified, and runs in any direction, followed by its companions ; and when attacked by a wolf it never attempts to defend itself, although one blow from its powerful foot would kill its enemy ; it only cries and spits, expectorating the chewed food with the saliva, a proof of the terror which takes possession of it. When angry it will also strike the ground with its hoof, and curl up its unsightly tail. Malice indeed is not in its nature, probably on account of its apathetic temperament ; but the males become vicious during the rutting season, which is in February, and they will then fight with one another, and sometimes attack mankind. The interference of man is needed to bring the sexes together. The period of gestation is thirteen months, at the expiration of which the dam gives birth to one, or as an exception two, foals.<sup>1</sup> Human assistance is also required at the time of parturition. The newborn camel is the most helpless creature imaginable ; it must be lifted by hand and placed under the mother's teats ; but as soon as it can walk, it follows her about everywhere, and the latter is so attached to her offspring that she cannot bear to be separated from it.

The young camel enjoys but a short period of

<sup>1</sup> The female camel is granted its liberty for a whole year after parturition, so that it only foals every other year.

liberty. When a few months old it is tied near the yurta to separate it from the mother, which is then regularly milked by the Mongols. In the second year of its existence, its nostrils are slit and a short wooden stick inserted, to which a rope (*burunduk*) is afterwards fastened which serves as a halter. It is then taught to lie down at the word of command, by being pulled by the *burunduk* while the word 'sok, sok, sok,' is repeated. In its third year it is taken with the caravan to accustom it to travel in the desert; at the age of three it may be ridden; at four it is strong enough to carry a small load; and at five it is quite fit for work.

A camel can bear a load till old age, i.e. to twenty-five and upwards; between five and fifteen it is considered in its prime. It will live upwards of thirty years, and under favourable circumstances to forty.

In loading it, the saddle is first fastened on its back, and afterwards the pack placed upon it. In the Khalka country six or eight pieces of felt are used to wrap round the back and humps underneath the saddle, a light wooden framework is then laid over these to take off the pressure of the packs.<sup>1</sup> In Northern Mongolia bags filled with straw (*bambai*) are used instead of felt, the woodwork being the same. Great care must always be taken in loading camels, otherwise they are apt to get sore backs and

<sup>1</sup> The pack is always securely fastened to the saddle with ropes; except in the case of tea chests, which are simply slung over the saddle.



become unfit for work. The Mongols wash the wounds with brine or the like, and sometimes let their dogs lick them. In summer when flies lay their eggs in the sore, the healing process becomes very tedious.

Before the departure of the caravan in autumn the camels which have been at grass all summer, and have put on too much flesh, are prepared for work by being fastened by their halters to a long rope stretched along the ground and secured at the ends to two poles driven firmly into the ground. In this way they are kept standing without any food for ten days, or even more,<sup>1</sup> only receiving a little water every third or fourth day: this hardens them and takes down their spare flesh.

The average load of a camel is about 4 cwts., or four chests of tea each weighing 1 cwt. Entire camels (*buruni*) can bear 5 cwts., and have to carry an additional fifth chest; but they are not numerous, and are mostly reserved for the stud, as they are less tractable, and therefore not so serviceable for transport, as either geldings or mares.

The size of the load is not less important than its weight. A large unwieldy pack offers too much resistance to the wind and retards the progress of the animal; while, on the other hand, a small heavy one injures its back, the pressure being too great in one part of the saddle; thus more than  $2\frac{1}{4}$  cwts. of silver

<sup>1</sup> One of our Kalgan merchants assured me that he has kept his camels in this way without food (only watering them every other day), for seventeen days.

is never put on a beast which carries with ease 4 cwts. of tea. Laden camels average twenty-eight miles a day, a rate of progress which can be kept up for a month. After ten days or a fortnight's rest the caravan is ready for another journey; working in this way all through the winter, i.e. for six or seven months. At the end of that period the camels grow very thin, and are given their liberty for the whole summer; this holiday and the run of the steppe restores their strength, but without it they would not last more than a year. The reason of our losing so many was the necessity for driving them continuously without ever resting them.

In March they begin shedding their coats, and at the end of June the hair has entirely disappeared, leaving the skin quite bare; at such times they are susceptible to cold, rain, and every change of weather; they are weak, and a small load soon galls their backs; but before long a fine, short, mouse-like hair begins to cover their whole bodies, and by the end of September the new coat is fully grown. The males, especially the stallions, then look their best, with long manes and tufts of hair underneath the neck, and below the knees of the fore legs.

On a winter journey the camels are hardly ever unsaddled; but on arriving at the halting place are at once let loose to graze. In summer and hot weather the saddles must be removed every day, yet with every care and precaution sore backs cannot be always avoided. Nothing will induce an experienced Mongol to undertake a journey on

camels in the hot season ; our objects were of course different, and we consequently injured many of our animals.

The camel is a sociable beast, and will not forsake a caravan as long as it has strength to keep up. If from exhaustion it stop and lie down no blows will make it rise again, and it is generally left to its fate. The Mongols, however, sometimes ride to the nearest yurta and give their tired-out animal in charge of its inhabitants ; when, if supplied with food and drink, it will in a few months regain sufficient strength to move about.

A camel which has fallen into a swamp is injured for life and soon grows thin ; but accidents of this kind are rare in Mongolia where there are so few marshes. After rain camels cannot keep their footing in clayey soil, slipping on the flat soles of their feet and sometimes falling ; but they are invaluable in a mountainous country, as we ourselves experienced in the highlands of Kan-su, where we accomplished 330 miles each way, including eight passes, all upwards of 12,000 feet above sea level ; the camels certainly suffered a great deal, but what we have said proves at least that they may be taken over any alps. The road to Lhasa across Northern Tibet ascends and descends passes 16,000 feet high, and even upwards, yet these beasts accomplish the journey, although they frequently perish from the rarefaction of the atmosphere. Camels which have been at such heights are considered spoilt for ever, and the Mongols say never recover on the lower pasture

lands of the Khalkas. On the other hand, the camels from the latter country thrive perfectly at Koko-nor, which is twice the elevation, and soon eat their fill on the saline meadows near the lake. In summer camels roam over the steppe unguarded, only coming once a day to their master's well for water. On a journey they are picketed for the night in a row near the tent; in winter when frost is very severe the drivers sleep with them to keep themselves warm; on the road they are tied to one another by their burunduks, and these must never be knotted, lest the animal should tear its nostrils by a sudden movement to one side, or by a step backwards.

Camels are also ridden or driven in carts. In riding the same kind of saddle as that used for horses is put on their backs; the rider mounts, and orders the animal to rise. In dismounting the camel is in general made to kneel down, but the rider may jump from the stirrup when in a hurry. Its paces are a walk or a trot, never a gallop or a canter; some will trot as fast as a good horse can gallop, and you may ride a camel seventy miles a day for a week.

Besides serving as a beast of burden and for riding, the camel supplies the Mongol with wool and milk; the latter is as thick as cream, but sweet and disagreeable; the butter made from it is far inferior to ordinary butter, and is more like boiled fat. The hair is spun into rope, which is mostly sold to the Chinese. The wool is obtained by shearing the animal when it begins to shed its coat, i.e. in March.

With a constitution as strong as iron, the camel is so accustomed to a dry atmosphere that it fears damp. After ours had lain a few nights on the moist ground in the Kan-su highlands, they caught cold and began coughing; their bodies too were covered with nasty boils; and if we had not gone on to Koko-nor, in a few months they would all have died, a misfortune that actually befell a lama who arrived in Kan-su with his camels at the same time as we did. The commonest form of illness to which they are subject is the mange, *homun* in Mongol. The sick beast is gradually covered with festering sores, loses its coat, and at length dies. Glanders is another malady from which they occasionally suffer. The treatment adopted by the Mongols in the former case is to pour a soup made from goats' flesh down the animal's throat, and to rub its sores with burnt vitriol, snuff, or gunpowder. At Koko-nor rhubarb is the universal remedy for camels as well as for all domestic animals, but the Mongols like to make a mystery of their medicines. In damp weather camels are very liable to coughs: the best remedy in such cases is to give them tamarisk bushes to eat, which grow abundantly in the valley of the Hoang-ho, and in other parts of Southern Mongolia.

On long journeys, particularly in those parts of the Gobi where there is a quantity of small shingle, they often become footsore, and in a little while quite unable to walk; the Mongols then cast the lame animal, and sew a piece of thick leather under the worn sole; a painful operation for the poor brute,

because holes must be bored right through its foot with a thick awl in order to sew the leather on firmly; but when once this has been done, it soon recovers from its lameness and is fit for use.

On May 6th we again stood on that point of the marginal range of Mongolia where the descent to Kalgan commences. Again the grand panorama of mountain scenery lay at our feet, the bright green plains of China sparkling like emeralds in the distance. There it was warm and springlike, here on the plateau Nature was only just waking from her long winter's sleep. At every step in the descent we became more sensible of the warmth of the plains; at Kalgan itself trees were in full leaf, and we gathered thirty kinds of flowering plants in the neighbouring hills.



## CHAPTER IV.

THE SOUTH-EASTERN BORDER OF THE PLATEAU  
OF MONGOLIA—(*continued*).

Reorganisation of the Party—Fresh start from Kalgan—R. C. Missions—Samdadchiemba, Huc's companion—Dishonest convert—Vigilance needed against thieves—Shara-hada Range—Suma-hada Range—The Argali; its habits and incidents of chase—Late spring—Lifeless aspects—The Urute country and Western Tumites—Tedious purchase of sheep—Dumb bargaining—Difficulties in purchase of milk—Our traffic with the Mongols—Throw off the trading character with advantage—Rude treatment from Chinese—The strong hand necessary—Difficulties about change—The Inshan mountain system—First sight of Hoang-ho—Tent flooded—Bathar Sheilun temple—The mountain antelope—Its extraordinary jumps—Chinese soldiers—Munni-ula mountains—Their flora, fauna, and avi-fauna—Legends regarding them—Ascent of the range—Chinese demand for stags' horns—Vicissitudes of mountain sport—Impressive scenery—Pass across range—Valley of the Hoang-ho—City of Bautu—Interview with commandant—Search for lodging—Mob rudeness—We are made a show of—Departure from Bautu—Passage of the Hoang-ho—Military opium smokers.

OUR two months' journey in South-eastern Mongolia accustomed us to the style of travel, and in some measure to the conditions, under which our future wanderings would be prosecuted. The hostility shown by the population towards us on more than one occasion precluded the hope of our finding friends, and taught us to rely entirely on ourselves. The magic effect which even the name of a European produced on the cowardly natives, hopes of ultimate success, and confidence inspired by courage, these

were the motives which impelled us onwards at all hazards, regardless of probabilities or possibilities.

At Kalgan we reformed our caravan. Two new Cossacks appointed to our expedition joined us here, and our former companions returned home. One of the new Cossacks was a Buriat, the other a Russian; the former was to act as interpreter, the latter as steward. They had also to assist us in loading and pasturing the camels, saddling the horses, pitching the tent, collecting argols for fuel, &c. &c., all which formed part of every day's work, and became the more burdensome as it encroached on the time available for scientific pursuits. However, it was impossible to arrange differently, because, as I have already explained, I could not afford to take more than two Cossacks, and the services of a Chinese or Mongol were unobtainable at any price.

The number of our pack-camels was increased by the purchase of a new one, making altogether eight camels, and two horses. Mr. Pyltseff and I rode the latter, the Cossacks bestrode two camels, and the remaining six carried our baggage, which, I should think, weighed about  $16\frac{1}{2}$  cwts. ; the setter dog, 'Faust,' completed our small caravan.

When all our preparations were concluded, my friend and I despatched our last letters home, and on the 15th May once more mounted the plateau of Mongolia. The following day we turned off the Kiakhta road to the left, taking a westerly direction by the post road to Kuku-khoto. For three days we travelled over an uneven plain occupied by encamp-

ments of Mongols, and further on by Chinese, who are scattered all over the south-eastern border of Mongolia. These settlers buy or hire arable land from the Mongols, and their numbers increase year by year in proportion as the cultivated soil encroaches more and more on the ancient domain of the inhabitants of the steppe,—the Mongol, his herds, and the swift-footed antelope.

At the Chinese village of Siyinsa, where the Roman Catholics have established a missionary station,<sup>1</sup> we unexpectedly met one of the priests in charge, who gave us a warm reception, and by his invitation we accompanied him the following day to visit his colleagues residing at El-shi-siang-fu, twenty-seven miles to the south, who were equally courteous. In some conversation we had with them, they complained that Christianity made very slow progress among the Mongols, who are fanatical Buddhists; they told us that they were more successful with the Chinese, although even among the latter, proselytes were mainly attracted by material advantages. The corruption and immorality of the people exceeded all description. These missionaries had built a school to train Chinese lads to assist them in their work, maintaining them at their own cost, as they found this to be the only way of inducing the parents to entrust their children to them. They had recently established themselves here, and intended

<sup>1</sup> There were three missionaries at this station—two Belgians and a Dutchman—at the time of our visit; a fourth was added to their number in the end of 1871.

building a church and house for themselves; ten months later, on our return, we actually found that a good-sized two-storied dwelling had been completed in our absence, and was inhabited by all three priests. There are four stations in South-eastern Mongolia, besides Siyinja, occupied by Roman Catholic Jesuit missionaries; one at the village of Sivanzi,<sup>1</sup> about thirty miles north-east of Kalgan, another at Jehol, a third to the north of Newchwang, and a fourth at the sources of the Shara-muren, near the 'Black Waters,'<sup>2</sup> whence Huc and Gabet started in 1844 on their journey to Tibet.

At El-shi-siang-fu we saw *Samdadchiemba*, the former companion of Huc. His real name is *Sengteng-chimta*, and he is of mixed Mongol and Tangutan race. He is fifty-five years of age, and enjoys excellent health; he related some of his adventures to us, and described the different places on the road, but he declined our invitation to accompany us to Tibet, excusing himself on the score of old age.

By the advice of the missionaries we hired at Siyinja, at five lans (27s. 6d.) a month, a Mongol Christian convert to attend to our camels and to help our Cossacks with their work; we also anticipated benefit from his services as interpreter of Chinese, with which language he was well acquainted. Our expectations regarding him, however, soon proved illusory, for after the first day's march

<sup>1</sup> This is probably the small village of Si-Wang mentioned by Huc as a Christian Chinese station, north of the Great Wall, one day's journey from Siuen-hwa-fu, i. 3.—M.

<sup>2</sup> In Chinese He-shui, i.e. Black Waters (*Ibid.*).

he deserted, carrying off one of our knives and a revolver. This happened during the night, and he had probably laid his plans beforehand, as he did not take his clothes off when he turned in to sleep with the Cossacks.

I determined to give the missionaries warning of their convert's behaviour, and accordingly rode back to Siyinsa and related the whole affair to them. They promised to exert their utmost to catch the thief, whose mother served them as cowkeeper; indeed, before we had gone much further, a Chinaman overtook us, bearing the revolver which had been found on the delinquent; who, reckoning upon our departure, had returned to his yurta a few days afterwards.

This was a salutary lesson and caused us to be more than ever distrustful of the inhabitants. Henceforward to guard against nocturnal robbers we resolved to keep watch in turns, my companion and I relieving one another every two hours till midnight, when the Cossacks took their turn till dawn. This was harassing work after the fatigues of the day, but it was necessary, at all events during the early part of our journey, surrounded as we often were by a hostile population. Our strength lay in watchfulness, for we knew that these cowards would never attack openly four well-armed 'foreign devils.'

We continued to post night-sentries for a fortnight longer, after which we contented ourselves with sleeping with our guns and ammunition ready to hand.

In consequence of the information derived from the missionaries at Siyinja, we determined, instead of passing through Kuku-khoto, to take a direction north of this town to the great wooded mountains overlooking the Hoang-ho. This change in our plans was the more agreeable as it enabled us to proceed at once to a country abounding in objects of the greatest value to the scientific observer, and to avoid visiting a Chinese town, where the rudeness of the people always caused us great annoyance.

After passing the small temple of Chorehi<sup>1</sup> mentioned by Huc, we skirted lake Kiri-nor,<sup>2</sup> and leaving the Kuku-khoto post-road,<sup>3</sup> turned to the right. On the opposite side of a vast plain which now lay before us, we could distinguish a range of mountains known to the Mongols under the name of Shara-hada, i.e. Yellow range, probably from the quantity of limestone rock of which their outer cliffs are formed. Their elevation above the adjacent valley of the Kiri-nor is not more than 1,000 feet, but their steep ascents on this side are in striking contrast with the table-land of the remainder of the range, which abounds in rich pasturage, where even the dzeren is found. The opposite (western) side is less precipitous, though some of its slopes are very steep. The breadth of the range in the part we

<sup>1</sup> Huc, i. 125.

<sup>2</sup> Lake Kiri-nor dries up in summer. Seven miles to the north-east of it the remains of some ancient walls may be seen; in the same valley nearer the Shara-hada mountains we saw another wall, probably once forming a boundary.

<sup>3</sup> The post stations are kept by Mongols.



crossed is about seventeen miles, and its general direction south-west and north-east.

In a narrow rocky belt extending along the south-eastern border of the Shara-hada mountains, bushes are plentiful; the prevailing kinds being the hazel (*Ostryopsis Davidiana*), the yellow briar (*Rosa pimpinellifolia*), the wild peach (*Prunus* sp.<sup>1</sup>), and the spiræa; the barberry (*Berberis* sp.), currant (*Ribes pulchellum*), cotoneaster, honeysuckle (*Lonicera* sp.), and juniper (*Juniperus communis*), are more rare. Here we found, for the first time in Mongolia, a number of insects, and my companion made some important additions to his entomological collection.

The Suma-hada,<sup>2</sup> another and a wilder range, about thirty miles distant, lies parallel with that just mentioned. But even here the precipitous cliffs and deep valleys are only developed on the margin of the range; the inner slopes being of softer and more gradual outline, with rich pasture and arable land partly cultivated by Chinese.

The height of the Suma-hada<sup>3</sup> above sea-level is greater than that of the Shara-hada, but their elevation above the plain is nearly the same. Their cliffs, exclusively composed of granite, are rounded and worn down by glacial action, of which there are unmistakable evidences on the surface. The wilder

<sup>1</sup> There must be some mistake here; the author probably means *plum.*—M.

<sup>2</sup> The Shara-hada and Suma-hada are probably spurs of the marginal range of the Mongolian plateau, and do not extend far to the north.

<sup>3</sup> The height above sea-level, of the foot of the Suma-hada, at its south-eastern extremity, is 5,600 feet.

parts are covered with the same kinds of bushes as those we had seen on the Shara-hada. We also found trees growing here, among which were the elm (*Ulmus* sp.), the alder (*Alnus* sp.), and the maple (*Acer Ginnalum*); the last-mentioned is, however, very rare. It is worthy of note that here, as in every other part of Mongolia without exception, the trees and bushes grow exclusively on the northern slopes of the mountains and valleys; even on all the insignificant hills of the Guchin-gurбу vegetation thrives better on the northern side.

It was in the Suma-hada mountains that we first saw the most remarkable animal of the highlands of Central Asia,—the mountain sheep or Argali (*Ovis Argali*<sup>1</sup>). This animal, which stands about as high as a hind, prefers the most rocky parts, but in spring, attracted by the fresh herbage, it descends to the valleys and may be seen grazing with antelopes.

The argali is peculiar in its habits; once having selected its ground, there it will remain; and a herd of them has been known to frequent one mountain for a succession of years, provided, of course, that they are undisturbed; as they are in the Suma-hada mountains, where the Mongol and Chinese inhabitants have very few guns, and are so little of sportsmen that they never kill one of these animals,—not from any feeling of compassion, but from sheer want of skill.

The argali have become so accustomed to the

<sup>1</sup> *Argali* is the Mongol name for this sheep; the Chinese call it *nan-yang*.

neighbourhood of man that they may be often seen browsing with the Mongol cattle, and drinking out of the same troughs with them. We could hardly believe our eyes when we saw, not half a mile from our tent, a herd of these handsome beasts quietly grazing on the side of a hill. They evidently have not yet learned to recognise our race as their enemy, and are ignorant of the terrible weapons of the European.

A violent storm, which lasted several days, prevented us from at once starting in pursuit, and obliged us to restrain our impatience for a while. The first day we went after them we killed nothing, owing to our ignorance of their habits, and our over-eagerness causing us to miss several shots at short distances. But on the following day we succeeded in bagging two fine full-grown males.

The argali is so keen-sighted, quick of hearing, and has such a delicate sense of smell, that were it less confiding, it would be very difficult to get within range of it in the Suma-hada mountains; but so tame is it that it will quietly gaze at the sportsman when only 500 paces off.

The best time for sport is the early morning and the evening. At dawn the argali seek the grassy hollows in the mountains, generally at a considerable elevation, or some spot sheltered from the wind. They are mostly seen in herds of ten to fifteen, rarely single. While feeding one of them mounts on the nearest rock to reconnoitre, but after remaining stationary for a short time it rejoins its companions

and begins grazing with them; in the Suma-hada mountains, however, they are so confident of security as not always to observe the precaution of posting sentinels, and they may be very easily stalked. After their morning meal they usually lie down among the rocks, where they remain till evening.

The report of a gun startles a herd, and they go off at full speed in an opposite direction, but after running a little way they stop to see where the danger lies, giving the sportsman ample time to reload. The Mongols told us that if they placed some conspicuous object, such as a piece of clothing, to attract their attention, they would remain motionless while the hunter stalked them without difficulty. I myself successfully tried the experiment by suspending a red shirt on the top of a ramrod, which I stuck into the ground, and in this way arrested the attention of a frightened herd for more than a quarter of an hour.

They are very tenacious of life, and I have known them run, with a bullet through the chest and protruding entrails, for several hundred yards, and then only drop down dead. If one of a herd fall lifeless, its companions remain beside it, regardless of the hunter's approach. I never heard them utter a sound. The Mongols told us that the coupling season began in August, but I do not know how long it continues. While it lasts the males fight furiously, making terrible use of their long horns, a pair of which weigh 36 lbs. and upwards. The period of gestation is about seven months, at the end of which

time the female bears one, or, as an exception, two young ones; they soon follow the mother about everywhere, skipping from rock to rock after her, and if she be killed, hide close by, not stirring from their place of concealment until compelled. When accompanied by their young the females are generally seen in pairs, or in small herds guarded by males, which at all other times except the breeding season live in peace and harmony with one another. They are preyed on by wolves, which pursue them, and occasionally catch an inexperienced youngster; but this rarely happens with the full-grown argali, because they are swift runners even on level ground, and once among the rocks they will distance their enemy in a few bounds.

I have seen the males jump from heights of twenty or thirty feet, always alighting on their feet, and even trying to lessen the shock by sliding down the rocks; but the stories told of argali throwing themselves down steep precipices, and alighting on their horns, are pure fiction.

Besides the Suma-hada range the argali is distributed over the mountains bordering the northern bend of the Hoang-ho and those of Ala-shan; in Kan-su and Tibet it is replaced by another closely allied species.

The month of May, the best of the spring months in other regions, is far from agreeable here. The incessant gales from the north-west and south-west continued with the same violence as in April; the morning frosts lasted till the end of the month,

and on the 5th and 6th June there were heavy hailstorms. But now and then the cold weather would give place to intense heat, reminding us that we were in  $41^{\circ}$  north latitude. Although the sky was often cloudy very little rain fell; a circumstance which, combined with the cold, checked vegetation. Even in the beginning of June the grass was barely above the ground, and hardly concealed the dirty yellowish mud and clay soil of the plain. The few bushes growing on the mountains were by this time mostly in flower, but they were so low and of such stunted growth, so choked with thorns and hidden by rocks, that they contributed very little towards enlivening the general aspect of the landscape. Neither were the fields cultivated by the Chinese as yet green, for in consequence of the late frosts the corn is not sown till the early part of June. In fact the face of Nature was lifeless and mournful; every thing was in a dull and dismal unison. Even singing birds were rare, and so incessant were the storms that such as there were had no chance to sing. Now and again, as you made your way through some valley or over some hill, you might hear the voice of the stonechat or the carol of a lark, the croak of a raven, the whistle of the marmot, or a chattering jackdaw; all else was silent, sad, and inanimate.

Near the eastern border of the Suma-hada mountains the country of the Chakhars terminates, and the aimak (principality) of the Urutes begins, extending a long way to the west of Ala-shan, and bordering on the south with the Tumites of Kuku-khoto and



Ordos, and on the north with the Sunites and Khalkas. For administrative purposes this aimak is divided into six koshungs, viz. Durbute, Nimgan, Barun-kung, Dundu-kung, Tsun-kung, and Darhanbil. The chief seat of government, and the headquarters of the prince, is at Ulan-sabo in the koshung of the Durbutes.

The Urutes are very distinct from the Chakhars in external appearance, resembling more closely the thoroughbred Mongols; but they also are demoralised by Chinese influence. Their nearest neighbours, the Western Tumites of Kuku-khoto, like the Chakhars, have become assimilated with the Chinese, and are intermixed with them, living either in yurtas or more rarely in houses. Here and there they cultivate the soil in imitation of the latter, but agriculture is in general very backward. A striking trait in their character, as in that of all the nomads, is an extraordinary thirst after money; in this respect they are not even surpassed by the Chinese; they will do anything for a lump of silver, and travellers who have sufficient means at their command can profit by their venality. But in dealing with them you must have the patience of an angel; in the most ordinary transactions the difficulties are innumerable. For instance, you want to buy a sheep, a thing one would suppose to be simple enough, but in reality quite the reverse. If you go straight to a Mongol and ask him to sell you a sheep, offering to pay him his own price, nine times out of ten you will be unsuccessful. Finding a ready compliance on your part, he imme-

diately suspects that you are trying to cheat him, and will frequently flatly refuse. You must on these occasions conform to a certain etiquette. First, sit down by the side of the vendor, drink tea with him, enquire after the health of his cattle, and listen to some long-winded story about the dearness of things in general and sheep in particular. The next stage in the proceedings is the inspection, or, literally, the *feeling* of the animal to be sold, which commands a higher value, according to Mongol ideas, in proportion to its fat. Act 3 : buyer and seller return to the *yurta*, sit down again, drink tea, and begin negotiating about the price. Of course, your offer must be much less than he asks ; in the meanwhile expressions of mutual regard and friendship are freely interchanged ; the owner extols the good qualities of his animal, which the buyer naturally depreciates.

Finally, the price is never fixed by word of mouth but by a pressure of the fingers,—one of the parties allowing the sleeve of his coat to hang down, whereupon the other thrusts his hand into it, so that the whole transaction is secret. This mode of concluding a bargain is also common in certain parts of China in ordinary commercial transactions. At length, after endless hand-shaking and interchange of compliments, the sheep is bought. The silver and the scales must then be scrutinised ; the vendor usually finding fault with the latter, and offering the use of his own, which are anything but irreproachable. A discussion ensues, which is settled somehow

or other, and the silver is weighed out. But even now the master of the sheep tries to make something more out of it, and asks for the entrails, which are usually peremptorily refused.

The whole process as we have described it occupies about two hours, and we always had to go through it whenever we had occasion to purchase a sheep during our three years' wanderings. The average price of one of these animals in South-eastern Mongolia is from two to three lans (11s. to 16s. 6d.); but their quality is excellent, especially in the Khalka country, where a full-grown fat sheep yields from fifty-five to seventy pounds of meat or even more, the rump fat (*kurdiuk*) alone weighing from eight to twelve pounds. The difficulties in buying milk are also very considerable, and nothing will induce them to sell it in cloudy weather. We were sometimes successful in overcoming the scruples of one of the fair sex by a present of needles or red beads, but in such case she always begged us to cover the vessel over when removing it from the yurta, in order that the heavens should not witness the wicked deed. I may add that Mongols keep milk in the dirtiest way imaginable. It frequently happened that one of them would ride up to our tent with a jugful for sale, the lid and spout of the vessel having been smeared with fresh cowdung to prevent the liquid splashing out on the road. Cows' teats are never washed before milking, nor are the vessels into which the milk is poured. The price is high; and we usually paid 1½d. or 3d. a bottle for it; butter averaged 1s. 6d. a pound.

Our troubles with the Mongols were not limited to the purchase of their sheep, which happened rarely, in the first place, because we had to economise our slender resources, and in the second, that they would be refused when we stood in need ; but this last usually happened with the Chinese, who wished to starve out of their country such unwelcome guests. We lived too on what we could shoot, and hares and partridges were so plentiful that we killed more than enough for our wants. Unfortunately meat would not keep at all in hot weather, and we sometimes fasted when game was not very abundant.

While we adhered to our resolution to keep aloof as much as possible from the inhabitants, we were generally obliged to pitch our tent near them in order to procure water, always preferring the neighbourhood of the Mongols. These people would come to our tent and ask who we were, whither we were going, and what we were selling. In my assumed character of merchant I was obliged to receive them whether I liked it or not, and to show them our wares, which they would examine and then begin bargaining. There was no end to their absurd questions. For instance, one would ask if we had a magnet for sale, another wanted bears' gall, a third children's toys, a fourth brass idols, and so on. Very often, after about an hour's chat our visitors would take their departure without having bought anything, declaring that it was all too dear. The Buriat Cossack, who was clever at this sort of thing, had charge of the trading ; but the trade did not advance very

briskly,<sup>1</sup> although it took up a good deal of our interpreter's time ; besides which those experienced in commercial affairs at once perceived that a retail trade was not the real object of our journey, as under the most favourable circumstances it would not defray the cost of our pack-animals ; and lastly, we could not rid ourselves of the constant visitors who, under the pretence of coming to buy, invaded our privacy and interfered with our scientific labours. Taking all this into consideration, I resolved one fine day to put an end to my profession of merchant. The goods were all packed up, the buyers driven away, and the shop closed.<sup>2</sup> I announced that I was an official (*noyon*), travelling without any special object except that of seeing new countries. The natives certainly put very little faith in this explanation, but we told them that it was no business of theirs, that their Emperor knew all about it, and had given us a passport to enable us to travel without let or hindrance in his country. We now felt much more at our ease, there was no longer any necessity for prevarication, and everything was straightforward. Henceforward all superfluous visitors were summarily ejected, and only those admitted who might be of use. Their visits always began with tea-drinking, and conversation followed ; the principal topics, taking them in their proper order, were cattle, medicine, and religion.

<sup>1</sup> These goods were subsequently all sold in one lot in Ala-shan.

<sup>2</sup> We only charged a profit of 25 or 30 per cent. on the prices we paid at Peking.

The first of these, cattle, is the most important of the three, because it is so intimately connected with their well-being; and on this account, when meeting one another the first enquiries are always after the health of the flocks and herds, that of the master and his family coming next.

Medicine is another everyday subject of conversation with them, and they delight in hearing of cures performed. At the sight of a European, who is regarded in the light of a demigod, or at least as a great magician, the Mongol at once endeavours to derive some benefit from so extraordinary a person, and to learn from him some secret cure for his ailments. My collection of plants and herbs persuaded the inhabitants still further that I was a doctor, and I afterwards actually established a reputation as such from some cures I made in bad cases of fever, by administering doses of quinine.

The religious persuasions which underlie the whole current of the nomad's life, but are quite incomprehensible in themselves, rank next in the order of his intellectual ideas. He will never lose an opportunity of talking about the ceremonies of his religion, the miracles performed by the gizens, &c. &c.; his fanaticism is apparent in all these discussions, and he never for a moment wavers in his faith.

My transformation from a merchant to an official was of great advantage to us, for we were now independent of the natives, whereas in our assumed character of traders this was impossible. With such



people as the Chinese or Mongols who only respect force, kindness and politeness are wasted or mistaken for weakness and cowardice. On the other hand, boldness sometimes produces a magic effect, and the traveller armed with this weapon will in the end be more successful. It must be understood that I am no advocate for bullying, but what I wish to say is that when a traveller makes his way into remote parts of Asia, he must discard many of his former opinions for others more adapted to the sphere in which he finds himself.

We now took the direction of the Yellow River, and, having no guide, trusted to our enquiries to direct us. We met with great difficulties from our ignorance of the language, and from the suspicion and hostility of the inhabitants, of the Chinese in particular, who would often refuse to show us the road or purposely mislead us. We lost our way nearly every march, and sometimes went a dozen of miles or more before discovering our mistake.

Occasionally we passed through a populous Chinese settlement, where our difficulties were always aggravated. A large crowd would assemble; all the inhabitants, young and old, ran out into the streets, or climbed up on the palisades or roofs of their houses, to stare at us with unmeaning curiosity; the dogs howled in concert and snapped at poor 'Faust'; startled horses neighed, cows lowed, pigs squeaked, fowls flew hither and thither; in short, all was noise and confusion. We would generally let the caravan advance, while one of us remained behind to ask the

way. The Chinese would then approach, but instead of answering our questions, they would handle and examine our saddles and boots, look with awe at our guns, enquire whither we were bound, whence and wherefore had we come, &c. As for the directions about our road, they were entirely omitted, and only as an exceptional piece of good luck would a Chinaman point in the direction we had to go. From the number of cross roads leading from village to village such directions as these were an insufficient guide, and we therefore went at hap-hazard till we came to another village, when the same experiences were repeated.

Once the Chinese took it into their heads to let loose one of their chained dogs at us, with the intention of killing 'Faust.' Fortunately he happened to be close to me at the time, and no sooner had the mastiff attacked him than I drew one of my revolvers from the holster and shot it dead on the spot. Upon this the Chinese at once dispersed to their homes, and we continued our journey without any further molestation. One must act promptly in these countries, for if you let them kill your dog one day, they may try and kill you the next, and then it becomes a much more serious affair; but if you make them feel that you will not put up with insults, they will treat you much better, although, of course, the hatred to foreigners always remains, and Europeans must endure it.

At Tsagan-chulutai,<sup>1</sup> one of the Chinese settle-

<sup>1</sup> Properly Tsagan-chulu, i.e. 'White Stones,' in Mongolian.

ments, we wanted to change some lans (taëls) of silver into copper coin, in order to make a few purchases, and knowing by experience the obstacles we should encounter, increased by ignorance of the Chinese language, I engaged a Mongol to help me. We were certainly beset by difficulties. On entering Tsagan-chulutai we were met by the usual uproar and tumult; I waited till the caravan had passed out of the place, and then directed my steps to a shop where they pronounced my silver (of the finest quality) to be bad; at another, we were told that it contained bits of iron; at a third, they flatly refused to change it, and it was not till we tried a fourth that we were successful. Here the shopman examined the metal for some time, sounded it, smelt it, and at last, as a favour, offered 1,400 cash for a taël of it, which was exactly 400 less than its local value. Bargaining then commenced; my Mongol argued with the shopman with great spirit, pressed his fingers inside the other's sleeve, and finally concluded the transaction for 1,500 cash, which we received as an equivalent for a taël of our silver at the *manchan* rate of exchange, i. e. counting each copper coin as worth its intrinsic value, the *dzelen* or local reckoning being at the rate of sixty for a hundred—this being the fourth difference in the value of money we had experienced since our departure from Dolon-nor.

The splendid pasturage we had noticed throughout the country of the Chakhars terminated at the Suma-hada mountains, and the further we went the more scanty the fodder, and the thinner grew our

horses and camels. The latter suffered too from the want of salt, as we had not passed any saline marshes since we left the Kiakhta road, and we were therefore well pleased at the sight of the small salt lake of Tabasun-nor, where our animals could indulge in their favourite brine.

The elevation of the country west of the Sumahada mountains continues to be very considerable, but the supply of water is very deficient, especially near those mountains which rise from the bank of the Yellow River, and are known to geographers under the name of *In-shan*.<sup>1</sup>

This range begins on the plateau of Mongolia near the town of Kuku-khoto,<sup>2</sup> and forms a lofty precipitous barrier along the northern bend of the Hoang-ho, terminating in the valley of the river 170 miles from its commencement with the rocky belt of Munni-ula. The wild alpine character of these mountains is preserved throughout their extent, and they are distinguished from the other mountains of South-eastern Mongolia by an abundance of wood and water. Two ranges constitute a further extension of the system to the westward, still parallel to the northern elbow of the river: the Sheiten-ula nearest to the In-shan, and beyond this, the Kara-narin-ula, from the river Haliutai to the confines of Northern Ala-shan. Both these groups

<sup>1</sup> The natives do not know this name, and have their own names for different parts of the range.

<sup>2</sup> In a wider sense, the term In-shan applies to all the mountains from the northern bend of the Hoang-ho through the Chakhar country to the sources of the Shara-muren and the confines of Manchuria.

of mountains are physically distinct from the In-shan proper, of which they are not, strictly speaking, a continuation, other and much smaller mountains supplying the connecting links of the chain; this interruption is particularly marked between the Sheiten-ula and Kara-narin-ula.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, the former is a much lower range than the In-shan, besides being less thickly wooded and not so plentifully watered. Again, the mountains which lie beyond the Haliutai river, although of considerable elevation and completely alpine in character, are also unwooded and form a marginal range, having on one side the valley of the Hoang-ho, on the other a lofty tableland.

We entered the In-shan by that part called by the Mongols *Sirun-bulik*, and I cannot describe the pleasure we felt, after marching for so long a time over bleak, cheerless plains, to see wooded mountains, and to rest under the shade of green trees. We started that day for the chase, and climbing to the summit of a high peak we caught our first glimpse of the Yellow River winding through the great plains of Ordos.

<sup>1</sup> In my letter (see Proc. Imp. Russ. Geog. Soc., viii. 5. 174), I said that the range on the left bank of the Hoang-ho from the Haliutai river to the borders of Ala-shan, 'was neither connected with the In-shan nor with the Ala-shan mountain systems.' On a closer investigation of these localities in the spring of 1872, I found that there actually is a connection between the Kara-narin-ula and the Sheiten-ula by means of a row of hillöcks. The Sheiten-ula are in their turn united with the In-shan proper by the *Shohoin-daban* (i.e. limestone range). But there cannot be the slightest doubt of the independence of all these groups of mountains from the Ala-shan system.

The next day our intention of penetrating still deeper into these mountains was thwarted by an accident which detained us unexpectedly in the same place. At ten in the morning a thunderstorm accompanied by heavy rain burst over our heads, and having carelessly pitched our tent in the dry bed of a mountain torrent fed by two ravines, in a few minutes streams of water were pouring straight down upon our humble dwelling. We were inundated by the torrent, and in a few moments some of our lighter articles might be seen floating down stream. By good luck half the tent stood on higher ground, to which the water did not immediately rise. Hither we carried some of our soaking things, damming the water out of the tent with felt to protect our baggage. Fortunately our disagreeable situation only lasted half an hour; as soon as the storm had passed and the rain ceased, the torrent speedily subsided and dried up, and the only traces left of the catastrophe were our damp things hung up to dry. The day after this occurrence we marched a short distance (ten miles) to the temple of Bathar Sheilun, called Udan-chau by the Chinese, picturesquely situated in the midst of wild, rocky scenery, and regarded as one of the most important in South-eastern Mongolia. The gorgeous shrine is four stories high, and surrounded by a cluster of houses inhabited by 2,000 lamas, whose numbers are increased in summer by the numerous pilgrims who visit the temple to 7,000, many coming from great distances. We ourselves saw, near Lake



Dalai-nor, a Mongol prince on his way to pray here. He had a large quantity of goods and chattels, and was followed by a train of several hundred sheep, to supply him with provisions on the road; they told us that he only ate the fat *kurdiuk*, leaving the remainder of the sheep to his suite.

The entire staff of lamas at Bathar Sheilun is supported by the voluntary contributions of devotees; an extensive tract of land is also reserved for the pasturage of the herds of cattle<sup>1</sup> which supply the monks with milk and butter. The lamas manufacture clay idols which are sold to the pilgrims, and there is a school for training boys for the religious profession.

The lofty cliffs which surround this temple are the favourite haunts of the mountain antelope (*Antelope caudata* ?); but it is forbidden to hunt them, it being considered wrong to destroy life within so short a distance of the sacred edifice.<sup>2</sup> However, the temptation of procuring a skin of one of these animals was too great to be resisted, and on the evening of the second day after our arrival, I went into the mountains, where I passed the night in the open air, and shot a young buck early the following morning. As we found this little animal nowhere else except in the In-shan, I will say a few words on its habits and mode of life.

Like other kinds of mountain antelopes, this

<sup>1</sup> All the large temples of Mongolia own such lands.

<sup>2</sup> We met with similar prohibitions to hunt near the temples in other parts of Mongolia.

species selects the wildest and most inaccessible crags of the alpine zones for its habitation. Here they may be found single or in pairs ; during the whole of the day they hide in the most secluded spots, from which they will not stir till the hunter is close to them.

Towards evening they emerge from their retreats and feed during the whole of the night and for an hour or two after sunrise, when they again repair to their coverts. Their favourite and almost exclusive grazing-places are the alpine meadows, especially the small grassy plots among the rocks. Before entering them and during the feeding time they will often climb to the summit of a hill or ledge of rock, and remain there for a long while to assure themselves of safety.

They return to the same place over and over again, as we could tell by the large heaps of their droppings collected in these spots. When stationary, as well as when on the move, they swing their long black tails from side to side, and while grazing utter a low, short cry. The mountain antelope is a most timid animal ; when alarmed it seeks safety in rapid flight, and will leap down deep ravines when hard pressed. I once saw one, on suddenly perceiving me, jump from a rock 100 feet high, and go away apparently unharmed. It was curious to see the swifts, which build their nests in the sides of the cliffs, pursue the animal in its descent. The sound of its hoofs as it alighted was like a dull heavy blow on the rocks. Its legs are thick in comparison with

the small size of the body: the inhabitants make warm clothing of its winter coat, each skin fetching about 2s. 6d.

The third day after we had pitched our camp in the vicinity of Bathar Sheilun, a small detachment of Chinese soldiers, commanded by an officer, suddenly presented themselves before us, and demanded our passports. It appeared that the lamas of the temple, apprehending that we were Dungan spies, had given notice of our arrival at the neighbouring Chinese town of Bautu, whence the soldiers had been sent. They approached us in order of battle, with lighted fuses and drawn swords. But this farce was soon played out. We invited the officer to our tent, and showed him our Peking passport, which at once produced an impression. While a copy was being taken of this document, I entertained the officer with tea and Russian sugar, and presented him with a penknife, and we parted the best of good friends. We only discovered after their departure that the soldiers had carried away with them some of our smaller articles. From Bathar Sheilun we marched towards the mountains of Munni-ula which, as we have stated, form the westernmost termination of the proper In-shan. As the latter range is in all probability of one character throughout, a more detailed description of its western ridge may suffice for the whole.

Extending for nearly seventy miles between two valleys, one on the north and the other on the south (towards the Hoang-ho), the Munni-ula rises as a

bold belt of mountains about seventeen miles wide. The highest peaks are upwards of 8,000,<sup>1</sup> perhaps as much as 9,000 feet, above sea-level, but nowhere attain the limit of perpetual snow. The main axis runs almost through the centre of the width, the descents on either side being steep, and indented with rugged gorges and narrow valleys. The whole range is rocky and of a bold alpine character, especially on its southern side. The rocks<sup>2</sup> are for the most part syenitic granite, common gneiss, hornblende, granolite, porphyry, and the later volcanic formations. The borders are devoid of trees, and only dotted with occasional clumps of wild peach, hazel, and yellow honeysuckle, the same as those we found in the Shara-hada and Suma-hada ranges. As we ascended, however, the bushes grew thicker, and single trees began to appear, as for instance the Scotch pine (*Pinus sylvestris*), and a low kind of elm (*Ulmus* sp.). About six miles from the outer edge of the range on the northern side (but not more than a mile-and-a-half on the southern side), at an elevation of nearly 5,300 feet, the forests begin,<sup>3</sup> increasing in size and density as you ascend. Here too the trees grow mostly in valleys having a

<sup>1</sup> The highest peak of the Munni-ula is considered to be Mount Shara-oroi, near the western extremity of the range; we could not measure its height, not having been in that part of the mountains. The peaks I measured in the centre of the Munni-ula were 7,400 feet above sea-level. Mount Shara-oroi is certainly 1,000 feet higher than any of them. It should be mentioned that there are two peaks of that name,—one not far from our route, but that also I could not measure.

<sup>2</sup> Of the Munni-ula as well as of the Sirun-bulik.

<sup>3</sup> Probably lower on the southern slopes.

northerly aspect, and the slopes facing the south are more often bare than wooded, and the same remark applies to the southern parts of the range where arboreal vegetation is most abundant.

The chief kinds of trees are the aspen (*Populus tremula* ?), black birch (*Betula daurica*),<sup>1</sup> and willow (*Salix* sp.), the last-named growing in bushes and trees twenty feet high ; the aspen attains a somewhat greater height, while the black birch is in general of lesser size. Among other trees we noticed in these forests the white birch (*Betula alba*), poplar (*Populus laurifolia*), alder (*Alnus* sp.), mountain ash (*Sorbus Aucuparia*), and apricot<sup>2</sup> (*Prunus* sp.) ; an occasional dwarf oak (*Quercus Mongolica*) may be seen with a trunk seven feet high, limes (*Tilia* sp.) of the same dimensions, juniper (*Juniperus communis*), and thujas (*Biota orientalis*), the last-named growing only in the lowest tree-belt on the southern slopes of the mountains. The absence of the spruce fir is a notable circumstance. The commonest of the bushes is the hazel (*Ostryopsis Davidiana*), attaining a height of three or four feet and frequently covering the exposed mountain sides with dense brushwood. We also noticed the wild rose (*Rosa acicularis*), wild raspberry (*Rubus Idæus*), wild currant (*Ribes pulchellum*), guelder rose (*Viburnum Opulus*), dogwood (*Cornus* sp.), buckthorn (*Rhamnus arguta*), *Spiræa* and *Lespedeza bicolor*, so common in the woods of the Southern Amur.

<sup>1</sup> According to Loudon, *Betula lenta* is the black birch.—M.

<sup>2</sup> The apricot mostly grows on the bare mountain sides.

The dry beds of the mountain torrents nearer the borders of the range were fringed with the yellow honeysuckle, wild peach, hawthorn (*Cratægus sanguinea*), and barberry (*Berberis* sp.). A climbing clematis might now and again be seen crowning the top of a bush with a garland of yellow flowers, and the open meadows were thickly covered with motherwort (*Iconurus Sibiricus*), and two varieties of wild onion (*Allium odorum*, *A. anisopodium*). The variety of herbaceous plants exceeds that of either trees or bushes. Here, as in Europe, the woods are adorned with the lily of the valley (*Convallaria majalis*), the Smilacina (*Maianthemum bifolium*), and anemone (*Anemone sylvestris*, *A. barbulata*); the familiar stone-bramble (*Rubus saxatilis*) and wild strawberry (*Fragaria* sp.) are also not uncommon; close beside them blossomed the spear-leaved Cacalia (*Cacalia hastata*), echinospermum (*Echinospermum* sp.), several kinds of peas (*Vicia*), *Polygonatum officinale*, *Phlomis umbrosa*, *Agrimonia* sp.; the spleenwort (*Asplenium* sp.), thickly covered patches of the forest ground.

In the woodland glades grow peonies (*Pæonia albiflora*), the yellow *Hemerocallis* and red lily *Lilium tenuifolium*, geraniums (*Geranium* sp.), the rose-bay willow herb (*Epilobium angustifolium*), &c. Valerians (*Valeriana officinalis*), and wild tansey or silver weed (*Potentilla anserina*).

In the swampy places and round the mountain springs, the herbaceous plants are still more varied. Here may be seen in profusion the *Ligularia*, the



lousewort (*Pedicularis resupinata*), the columbine (*Aquilegia viridiflora*), the nonsuch (*Medicago lupulina*), the speedwells (*Veronica Sibirica* and another), the elecampane (*Inula Britannica*), three or four varieties of Ranunculi, the avens (*Geum strictum*), the iris (*Adenophora* sp.), the milfoil (*Achillea Mongolica*), and in dry places the nightshade (*Solanum* sp.) and nettle (*Urtica angustifolia*).

Lastly, blossoming on the unwooded hillsides were the carnation (*Dianthus Seguieri*), the rocket (*Hesperis trichocephala*), the poppy (*Papaver Alpinum*), the yellow stonecrop (*Sedum aizoon*), the wolf's bane, or globe thistle (*Echinops Dauricus*), the onion (*Allium* sp.), *Kœleria cristata*, *Statice* sp. *Paradanthus*, and others.

In general the flora of the Munni-ula reminded me a good deal of that of Siberia, although these forests are very different to ours in the north. Here there is none of that luxuriant vegetation which excites the admiration of the traveller on the banks of the Amur and Ussuri. The trees are not high, and their trunks are slender, the bushes are low and stunted, and the withered branches of the willows protruding from the living trees are unsightly objects amid the prevailing verdure. The mountain brooks, which are almost all full of running water in the wooded ravines, no sooner enter the more open valleys, or issue from the margin of the range, than they entirely disappear beneath the soil, leaving dry beds in which the water only collects after heavy rain; the forests too have been ruthlessly destroyed

by the neighbouring Chinese, in spite of the forest guard; the larger trees have all been felled and only stumps remain to show that good-sized timber once grew here.

Above the tree-belt the highest parts of the mountains are occupied by the zone of alpine meadows. It is a refreshing sight, after the monotonous vegetation of the lower belts, consisting chiefly of a few crooked bushes, and after the damp undergrowth of deciduous trees, to feast one's eyes on the bright green variegated flowers which cover the rich meadow-land of the mountains; the slopes and hollows are clad with short thick grass, leaving bare only the crags and solitary rocks, the yellowish-grey tints of which contrast with the enchanting verdure and delightful variety of flowers. Shrubs of spiræa and cinquefoil (*Potentilla fruticosa*), the globe-flower (*Trollius* sp.), the great-burnet (*Sanguisorba alpina*), the corn-flower (*Polemonium caruleum*), ranunculi, and many others mentioned in our description of the flora of the woods, flood these meadows with their yellow, white, red, and blue hues, now intermingled in pleasing variety, now grouped in masses of colour.

But the sight is still more brilliant in the early morning when the first rays of the sun sparkle on the dew drops hanging on every petal, the surrounding stillness only broken by the notes of the stonechat or the pipit, and a splendid view disclosed of the Hoang-ho and the plains of Ordos stretching away far beyond it.

The wild animals of the Munni-ula are less plentiful than one would have expected. Of the larger mammalia the only representatives are the stag (*Cervus elaphus*), the pygarg (*Cervus pygargus*), the mountain antelope (*Antelope caudata*), the wolf (*Canis lupus*), and the fox (*Canis vulpes*), but not one of the feline race, although, as we heard from the inhabitants, there used to be panthers and even tigers.<sup>1</sup> Of the class of Rodents there are probably mice and weasels in the forest, hares (*Lepus Tolai*), common throughout Mongolia and marmots (*Spermophilus* sp.) in the valleys on the outskirts of the mountains. The last-mentioned animal is about the size of a rat, and at the sight of man, or merely from fright, it sits up on its hind legs near its burrow and whistles.

Birds are more plentiful, yet the ornithology of the Munni-ula is poor in comparison with the extent of its woods. The sudden changes of temperature, from calms to storms, from excessive dryness to great moisture, probably prevent many of the Chinese birds from penetrating to even the best parts of the plateau of Mongolia. In the wildest and most inaccessible cliffs of the alpine zone the vulture (*Vultur monachus*) and lammergeier (*Gypaetos barbatus*) build their nests, two enormous birds with a nine-foot stroke of wing. Side by side with them live the swifts (*Cypselus leucopyga*), the noisy red-legged crow (*Fregilus graculus*), and the rock dove (*Co-*

<sup>1</sup> The Mongols assured us that there were panthers in the In-shan even now, but nearer Kuku-khoto, and not in the Munni-ula.

*lumba rupestris*); the mountain pipit (*Anthus rosaceus*) inhabits the alpine meadows. In the tree belt several of the small warblers make their appearance; the redstart (*Ruticilla aurorea*), the bunting (*Emberiza* sp.), the nut-hatch (*Sitta sinensis*), the wren (*Troglodytes* sp.) the greater titmouse (*Pæcile cincta*<sup>1</sup>), *Phyllopneuste superciliosus*, *Phyllopneuste* sp., *Pterorhinus Davidii*, *Drymæca extensicauda*; woodpeckers (*Picus* sp., *Picus martius* rare) tap the trees, pheasants (*Phasianus torquatus*) call morning and evening, and at sunset the monotonous hooting of the Japanese owl (*Caprimulgus Jotaca*), called in Siberia 'the blacksmith,' resounds on all sides. Below the tree-belt in the dry ravines and among the rocks are found the stone-thrush (*Petrocincla saxatilis*), the stonechat (*Saxicola Isabellina*), the hoopoe (*Upupa epops*), the grey and rock partridge (*Perdix barbata*, *P. chukor*), the latter also inhabiting the alpine zone, and attracting attention by its noisy and almost incessant clucking.

The striking contrast between the Munni-ula and the other ranges of South-eastern Mongolia has given rise to a Mongol tradition concerning their origin, according to which in times long past, a thousand years ago or more, there lived a Kutukhtu at Peking, who in spite of his divine origin led such an ungodly life that he was arrested and put into prison by order of the Emperor. Indignant at such harsh treatment, the holy man caused an enormous bird to

<sup>1</sup> This is the Siberian tit. : the Latin name for the greater titmouse is *Parus major*.—M.

appear, ordering it to overturn the capital of his sovereign. Whereupon the Emperor in his fright set the Kutukhtu at liberty, and the latter countermanded his order to the bird, which had only time to raise one end of the city, accounting for the slightly inclined plane on which Peking is situated at the present day.

The miracle-working saint then resolved to quit the inhospitable city and settle in Tibet. Setting out on his journey, he arrived safely on the banks of the Hoang-ho ; but the Chinese here refused to ferry him across to the other side : his wrath was now rekindled, and he determined to revenge himself in good earnest this time. He forthwith started for Northern Mongolia and selected a large chain of mountains from the Altai range, which he fastened to his stirrups and dragged behind him on horseback to the bank of the Hoang-ho, intending to throw them into the river and by damming its current to inundate the surrounding country. Buddha now appeared in person to protect the unfortunate inhabitants, and entreated the Kutukhtu to abate his anger and show mercy to the innocent. The saint obeyed the voice of the god, and left the mountains on the bank of the river as a monument of his might ; he then unfastened his belt and flung it across the Hoang-ho to serve as a bridge, over which he passed to the opposite bank and continued his journey to Tibet.

In depositing the Munni-ula on the banks of the Hoang-ho the Kutukhtu reversed its position ; con-

sequently the side previously facing north was now turned towards the south, and *vice versa*. The Mongols declare that on this account more trees grow on the southern than on the northern slopes, unlike the other ranges in Mongolia, where it is just the contrary. These peculiarities they attribute to their strange northern origin.

According to another tradition Chinghiz-Khan once lived in the Munni-ula while waging war with China. He took up his abode on Mount Shara-oroi,<sup>1</sup> where the iron saucepan in which he cooked his food still exists, though hitherto no one has been able to discover it. During the summer religious services are performed here by the lamas of the neighbouring temple of Mirgin. The very name Munni-ula is said to have been given by Chinghiz-Khan, who liked the place on account of the quantity of game he found here.

The Mongols assert that on Mount Shara-oroi there is a fossil elephant, and that a quantity of ingot silver has been buried in some other part of the range, but that evil spirits guard the treasure and will not allow it to be removed. They say that the silver lies near the summit of a mountain in a great pit, the mouth of which is covered by an iron shutter, through an orifice in which the treasure may be espied, and that some daring fellows once tried to get hold of it by lowering into the pit in winter some pieces of raw meat and freezing the ingots to it; in

<sup>1</sup> The mountain of that name situated in the centre of the range, not that one at its western extremity.



this way they contrived to raise some nearly to the top, but before they could grasp the precious metal in their hands it fell back again, and no human power could extract it from the enchanted spot.

We spent three days in endeavouring to find a pass over the Munni-ula mountains (for neither Chinese nor Mongols would show us the road), first trying one valley, then another, without success; the valleys always narrowed into gorges, and perpendicular cliffs soon barred our further progress. At length on the third day we found a stream, the *Aramirgin-gol*, which we ascended almost to its source in the chief axis of the range, and here we pitched our tent in a small clearing in the forest.

Our appearance and stay in these mountains created a panic among the Chinese and Mongol inhabitants, who now saw Europeans for the first time,<sup>1</sup> and could not imagine what kind of people we were. The reports and conjectures on our arrival were endless. The lamas actually consulted the auguries, and prohibited the Mongols from selling us provisions; this order emanated from the superior of the temple of Himping, and caused us some inconvenience, for our supplies were nearly exhausted at that time. We hoped to have been able to provide ourselves with food by the chase, but in our ignorance of the localities we did not bag any game for some days, and consequently were obliged to

<sup>1</sup> Four years before our visit to these mountains the French missionary and naturalist *Armand David* was here on his way from Peking to Ordos.

live exclusively on millet porridge. At length I shot a pygarg, and when the Mongols saw they could not starve us out, they began selling us butter and milk.

We obtained very few specimens of birds; indeed since we left Kalgan, this branch of our researches had not made great progress, for besides the scarcity of the feathered tribe, it was their moulting time, and most of those we shot were unfit for preserving. With the insects, however, we were more fortunate, and still more so with the plants, many herbaceous varieties being in flower. The rains, usually accompanied by thunder, were incessant during the month of June, and the dryness of the previous month was succeeded by great moisture. But the violent storms which prevailed in May were now replaced by calm, sultry weather. Under such favourable conditions as these vegetation rapidly developed; early in June the plains and mountain sides were becoming green, and flowers appeared in great profusion and variety, although the steppes of South-east Mongolia<sup>1</sup> bear no comparison with our meadow-land in Europe. Here you never see that uninterrupted carpet of flowers, or that delicate green turf; these plains under the most favourable conditions have a melancholy aspect, and everything is as monotonous as though made to measure. The grass grows in clumps of even height, and not of a bright green, the flowers lack

<sup>1</sup> I refer to those plains due west of the Suma-hada, where we passed the summer: in the Chakhar country the meadow-land probably presents a more cheerful aspect at this season.

brilliancy of colouring, and it is only close to a spring that you see vegetation at its best.

During our fortnight's sojourn in the Munni-ula we went on several shooting excursions, often passing our nights in the mountains to take advantage of the early morning for sport. We were unsuccessful, however, in killing a stag, although they abound here, but just at this season they are eagerly sought after by the native hunters for the sake of their young antlers, which are highly esteemed in China. The most valuable are those with a third branch, containing the largest quantity of blood; they are worth from fifty to seventy lans each (14*l.* to 18*l.*); old horns of course are valueless.

The demand for deers' antlers is so great that thousands are annually imported from Siberia *viâ* Kiakhta, to which place they are sent by post from the most remote parts; a great many are also bought by the Chinese on the Amur, and sent to Peking through Manchuria.

During my residence on the Amur as well as on the present expedition I often enquired what use these young horns were put to, but never received any satisfactory answer. The Chinese keep it a profound secret; if report is to be believed, they undergo some preparation, and are used as a strong stimulant by the Celestials. I will not vouch for the veracity of this statement, but in any case young antlers take an important place in the Chinese pharmacopœia, or they would not be so extensively used or fetch such high prices.

We now for the first time in our lives experienced the difficulties of hunting in the mountains. I can confidently affirm that a man should have an iron constitution and a robust frame for such work. The dangers are often imminent, the hardships such as are unknown to the native of a plain country. You must climb over almost precipitous crags, stopping every ten minutes to recover your breath, and cling to narrow and sometimes treacherous ledges, now feeling your way along the brink of a deep gorge, now clambering over the loose *detritus* appropriately termed in Siberia 'the devil's stones.' A false footstep, a stone giving way under you, and you may be precipitated down some deep abyss, and your career as a sportsman brought to a sudden and untimely end.

Sport in these mountains hardly repays the trouble, and depends a good deal more on luck than skill. How often your quarry, bird or beast, escapes you, giving time only for a snap shot as it vanishes in the thick wood, scales the rocks, or, if a bird, disappears behind the projecting crags of yonder cliff.

The animals, too, are very wary and difficult to stalk; they generally see or scent you before you have caught sight of them. One occasionally gets up under your feet, but the forest is so dense that before you see it, it has disappeared like a flash behind a rock, and you hear nothing but the sound of its hoofs and the noise of rolling stones disturbed in its flight. Even when a fair shot presents itself, your hand is so unsteady from hard climbing that

you are liable to miss, or the game, mortally wounded, falls down some inaccessible chasm and is lost. But one fortunate shot rewards you for all the troubles and difficulties you have undergone.

Then, too, what happy moments the mountains bring with them, as after climbing a lofty peak you obtain a distant view, as you linger for an hour in the exhilarating air, and admire the panorama spread out at your feet! The great cliffs, which close the gloomy defiles or tower towards the sky, have a wild beauty all their own; many a time have I paused on such a spot, and sat down on a rock to enjoy the impressive stillness of the scene, unbroken by the voice of man or the ordinary bustle of life. Now and then you may hear the cooing of the rock doves, the shrill cry of the kite, or the noisy descent of the vulture from the clouds to its nest, and then all is again still.

Towards the end of our stay in the Munni-ula we hired the services of a Mongol, by name Djuldjig, and accompanied by him set out for the Chinese town of Bautu,<sup>1</sup> to replenish our supplies of rice and millet, and then to cross the Hoang-ho and continue our journey to Ordos.

In order to reach the other side of the Munni-ula we followed the pass near our encampment, over which the natives ride on mules and asses. The road is not difficult, and the gradients only become steeper on the southern side, descending by the

<sup>1</sup> Properly *Si-Bautu*, in contradistinction to *Ara-Bautu*, a small village not far from it.

valley of the *Ubir-mirgin-gol*,<sup>1</sup> a rivulet which flows for ten miles through the mountains before issuing into the valley of the Hoang-ho.

Here the scenery suddenly changes. The mountains descend precipitously into the valley ; forests, streams, and flowery meadows suddenly terminate, and in their stead appears a sandy waterless plain as level as a floor. The birds and animals of the mountains disappear ; the call of the deer, the cluck of the partridge, the woodpecker's noisy hammer, and the music of singing birds are no longer heard ; the antelope and larks reappear, and myriads of grasshoppers fill the sultry noonday air with their incessant chirruping.

After leaving the mountains, we took an easterly direction along the valley between the river and the In-shan range. The Chinese population is very dense, and their villages are nestled at the foot of the mountains, probably to escape the heavy floods of the Hoang-ho. The fields are large, well cultivated, and sown with millet, wheat, barley, buckwheat, oats, rice, maize, potatoes, hemp, peas and beans, and in some places with pumpkins, watermelons, common melons, and poppy. Owing to the lower level of the land and the shelter afforded by the mountains on the north, vegetation was very forward ; some of the corn was ripening, and the barley was ready to carry.

Our next day's march of twenty-seven miles

<sup>1</sup> This stream, as well as the *Ara-mirgin-gol*, on issuing out of the mountains disappears under ground.



brought us in the afternoon to Bautu, five miles from the bank of the river, and about thirty-four miles to the west of the town of Chagan-Kuren,<sup>1</sup> described by Huc. Bautu is a large town surrounded by a square wall measuring two miles each way. It has a large population, and maintains an important trade with the nearest parts of Mongolia, i.e. with the country of the Urutes, Ordos, and Ala-shan. It contains an iron foundry for the manufacture of the large saucepans in such universal use, but its streets, as in all Chinese towns, are disgustingly dirty.

Hardly had we entered one of the gates, at which there was a guard-house, when our passport was demanded. On delivering it, one of the soldiers led us to the *yamen*, or public court, where we were detained for the space of twenty minutes, a large crowd assembling to stare at the strange 'foreign devils.' At length some officers of police came out of the *yamen* and told us that the Commander-in-chief desired to see us. We turned down another street and soon stopped at the gate of the residence of the Chinese general, where they invited us to dismount and enter the court-yard on foot. Our guns were taken from us, and we were then led into the presence of the great Mandarin, who awaited us at the door of his house attired in a crimson robe. Our Mongol attendant at the sight of such an important functionary fell down on his knees; we bowed in the European fashion. The Mandarin

<sup>1</sup> Huc, i. 214.

invited us in, and motioning to my companion and myself to be seated (the Mongol and Cossack remained standing), ordered tea to be handed, and began questioning us on the object of our journey, whence we had come, and whither we were going. On my telling him of my wish to travel through Ordos into Ala-shan, he assured me that it was very dangerous, for the country was infested with robbers. Knowing that nothing can be done in China without a bribe, I turned the subject from our future journey, and told the Cossack to interpret to the Mandarin that I wished to give him a good Russian watch as a keepsake. This at once produced an impression. He pretended at first to decline the proffered gift, but afterwards thanked me, and offered to give us a safe conduct through Ordos. Overjoyed at this turn of affairs, we made our adieux to the general, and begged him to order assistance to be given us in finding a lodging.

Escorted by several policemen, and followed by a huge crowd which waited in front of the Mandarin's house for us, we started in search of accommodation.

The policemen entered one house after another, and on being refused admittance, or, more correctly speaking, on receiving a bribe from the owner, led us further. At length we reached the house of a merchant, where soldiers were billeted, and here after a long altercation we were shown into a small and inconceivably dirty apartment. In vain we offered double payment for better rooms; none were obtain-

able, and we were obliged to content ourselves with the den assigned for our use.

We unloaded our camels, dragged everything into the house, and hoped to get some rest; but the crowd of people who filled the court-yard and street would not give us a moment's peace. We tried to close the doors and windows, but they were broken, and we were beset by an impertinent mob, some ruffianly-looking soldiers making themselves particularly offensive; they actually began feeling our persons, until a few kicks caused them to desist and retire a few paces, when they began abusing us. The policemen, incited by the offer of a liberal reward, exerted their utmost to keep the crowd back, and several fights ensued; at last they succeeded in closing the gates, but the inquisitive rascals climbed on the roof and let themselves down into the yard. This continued till evening, when they dispersed; and we lay down to rest, worn out with the fatigues of the day. But the heat was so suffocating, and the soldiers lodging in the house kept so continually and unceremoniously entering our apartment, that we could not sleep, and we rose at daybreak with violent headaches, determined to purchase whatever we needed and take our departure as quickly as possible.

But no sooner did we venture into the streets than the experiences of the previous day were renewed. The mob surrounded us like a dense wall, despite the energy of the same policemen, who plied their long pig-tails like whips on either side to

clear a passage. We had hardly entered a shop before it was crammed with people, and its owner, frightened at the invasion of his premises, implored us to leave as soon as possible. At length with the assistance of our escort, we made our way into the yard of a merchant's house, and bought what we required in one of his back buildings.

On returning to our quarters we had the prospect of undergoing the same ordeal as on the previous day, but our police guard shut the gates and charged so much a head for admission. I must confess that it was not altogether pleasant to one's feelings to be made a public show of in this way, just as if we were some new kind of wild beasts; however, of two evils it was the lesser; at all events, sightseers now appeared in smaller numbers, and behaved in a more orderly way.

About mid-day the Mandarin sent a messenger to ask us to go and see him again. We accordingly started for his house, taking the watch with us. While awaiting our interview, we were shown into the soldiers' barracks, where we remained half-an-hour, and had an opportunity of inspecting the domestic arrangements of the Chinese soldiers. Five thousand military are quartered at Bautu, most of whom are from the south of China, the so-called '*Khotens*,' besides Manchus and a few Solones. All these men are armed with matchlocks, a few European muskets, swords, and long bamboo spears, with great red flags attached to the end of the shafts.

The demoralised and degraded state of the soldiery defies all description. They are the terror of the peaceable inhabitants, and are almost all opium-smokers. Lighted lamps are kept constantly burning in all the barracks, the smokers sit round in a circle, while others who have finished their pipes lie about the floor buried in lethargic sleep. The general, unable to cure his men of this vile practice, entreated us, on the occasion of our first interview, to tell him if there were not some antidote for opium, and offered a handsome reward if such could be found.

At this second visit we were ushered into the same apartment as before. After accepting the watch, the Mandarin asked us a great deal about Russia. 'Where was our capital?' 'What our system of agriculture?' and so on. He then examined our uniforms, down to the shirts and boots we wore. Tea was then handed round, and presents given us in exchange for those we brought, consisting of small silken bags in which Mongols carry their snuff-boxes attached to their belts. We thanked our host, and told him of our desire to depart immediately, requesting him to give orders that we should not be detained at the ferry across the Hoang-ho. The promise was duly given; we took our leave, and soon afterwards they brought us a pass ticket and our Peking passport, and we were then at liberty to continue our journey. We loaded our camels, and in the midst of a great crowd at length turned our backs on the town, and soon

arrived at the ferry of Lang-hwaisa, where we intended crossing the river.

Flat-bottomed barges, 28 feet long by 14 broad, serve to transport man and beast to the opposite bank. Their sides are three feet high, so that in the absence of a landing-stage all animals, including camels, have to climb over as best they may.

We had first to settle with the ferrymen about payment, and after a long dispute the price of 4,000 cash (about 12s.) was agreed upon. The camels were first unloaded, and all the baggage placed in the boat, the horses were then led on, and lastly the camels, but these brutes gave us great trouble from their timidity and natural aversion to water. Ten Chinese pushed from behind, while others pulled tackle attached to the fore-legs of the animals, and working through pulleys. At last, despite their resistance, they were forced on board, made to lie down, and tied to prevent their moving during the crossing.

After two hours' hard work our caravan was packed into the barge, and we were towed about a mile up the river with ropes, and then allowed to drift down with the current, as the rowers plied their oars towards the opposite bank. Here everything was very soon unloaded, and we entered Ordos.



## CHAPTER V.

## ORDOS.

Definition of Ordos—Nomads contrasted with settlers—Historical sketch—Divisions—The Hoang-ho and its floods—Route up the valley—Depth, width, and navigation of river—Old channels; deviation of its course—Disputes about boundaries—Flora of the valley—Scanty vegetation—Liquorice root—Aspect of valley changes—Kuzupchi sands—Terrors of the desert—Legends—Oases and their vegetation—Sterility of the valley—Birds and animals—Traces of Dungan insurrection—A stray camel—Intense heat—Lake Tsaideming-nor—Opium cultivation—Bathing—Superstition about the tortoise—Flight of Chinghiz-Khan's wife—Tradition of Chinghiz-Khan—The white Banner—Tomb of Chinghiz-Khan—The Kara-sulta, or Black-tailed antelope—Shooting these antelope—Their haunts in the desert—Ruined temple of Shara-tsu—Scarce population—Wild cattle—Their origin and habits—Two bulls shot—Fishing; Mosquitoes—Salt lake; Ruins of city—Order of march; sweltering heat—Water! the halt—Wolfish appetites; evening—Loss of a horse; Djuldjig—Arbus-ula range; Ding-hu—Crossing Hoang-ho—Interview with Mandarin—Showing our guns—Baggage examined—Mandarin robs us—Embarrassing situation—Under arrest—Explanations—We take our departure.

ORDOS is the country lying within the northern bend of the Yellow River, and bounded on the three sides, north, east, and west, by that river, while on the south it is bordered by the provinces of Shensi and Kansu.<sup>1</sup> Its southern boundary is defined by

<sup>1</sup> The country of the Ordus or Ordos, here called (as in the Russian) for brevity simply 'Ordos,' the position of which is sufficiently defined in the text, has received that name only in modern times. In ancient days it was called 'Ho-nan,' viz. the land *south* of the *Ho* or (Yellow) *River*; and by this name it is mentioned in the history of the Hiong-nu, the Huns of Deguignes, who in the first or second century of the

the same Great Wall which we saw at Kalgan. Here as well as there this wall separates the culture and settled life of China Proper from the deserts of the high plateaus which are habitable only by a nomad pastoral people. This contrast between two physically distinct parts of the surface of the globe—on the one side the warm, fruitful, well-watered Chinese lowlands intersected by mountain chains, on the other, the lofty, cold, and desert plateau—has influenced the fortunes of the nations inhabiting them.<sup>1</sup> As they differed in their mode of life and character, so they hated and lived apart from each other. Just as the dull, hard life of the nomad, with its many privations, was foreign and hateful to the Chinese, so the nomad on his side looked with contempt at the tiresome industry of his agricultural neighbour, and valued his wild liberty far higher than all the blessings of the universe. Hence arose a marked contrast between the characters of both nations. The painstaking Chinese, who in long-forgotten ages attained a comparatively high although

Christian era established themselves here, in order to have ready access to the fertile lands of Shensi. In the middle ages (tenth to thirteenth century), it formed part of the kingdom of Tangut, the capital of which was at Ninghia, on the Yellow River; and when Chinghiz-Khan conquered that kingdom it became a part of the Mongol Empire. It is obscure how the tribes occupying this territory got the name of *Ordos*. That title was specifically applied to the body of Mongols established in eight white *ordus* or encampments beside the sepulchre of Chinghiz, and a migration of their descendants is supposed by Ritter to have caused the transfer of the name to the territory, now so called. (Ritter, *Asien*, i. 505; *Timk.* ii. 266, *Schmidt.*)—Y.

<sup>1</sup> This idea is fully developed in Ritter's classical work, 'Erdkunde von Asien,' translated into Russian by Semenoff.

peculiar stage of civilisation, held warfare in abhorrence and regarded it as the greatest curse. On the other hand, the restless, wild inhabitant of the cold plains of what is now called Mongolia, inured to hardship, was ever ready for the foray and the raid. He had little to lose in case of misfortune, but if successful he carried off the accumulated labour of many generations.

Such were the conditions which impelled the



MONGOL CAVALRY (from a Photograph lent by Baron Osten Sacken).

nomads towards China, and the border of their plateau served as an admirable vantage-ground for their aggressions. Here whole hordes would assemble, and hence they would suddenly pour into the enemy's country. History has recorded several irruptions of this kind, from the Mongolian side as well as

from that of Manchuria. The Great Wall was no protection against these floods of barbarians, who in their turn were incapable of founding an empire on a sound basis of internal development. After a certain period of dominion, the barbarians, who had come into contact with a civilisation so entirely foreign to them, lost their warlike strength, the only foundation of their power, were driven on to the plateau, and even temporarily subjugated by China. In this way the latter, by an artful policy rather than by strength, often warded off the misfortunes with which the nomads from time to time threatened her.

Ordos, in its physical aspect, is a level steppe, partly bordered by low hills. The soil is altogether sandy, or a mixture of clay and sand, ill adapted for agriculture. The valley of the Hoang-ho is the only exception, where the Chinese population lead a settled life. The absolute height of this country is between three thousand and three thousand five hundred feet,<sup>1</sup> so that Ordos forms an intermediate step in the descent to China from the Gobi, separated from the latter by the mountain ranges lying on the north and east of the Hoang-ho or Yellow River.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The valley of the Hoang-ho, not far from Bautu (Si-pau-to), is 3,200 ft. abs. height, and 18 miles west of the town of Ding-hu (Chagan-subar-kan) by boiling water the elevation was found to be 3,500 feet.

<sup>2</sup> The Jesuit Père Gerbillon travelled through nearly the whole of the Ordos in 1697, and has left us an account of that country which agrees very nearly with that given by Col. Prejevalsky. He mentions that the Emperor Kang-hi, who seems to have combined in his person

In ancient times Ordos became the prey of different conquerors, who seized it in turn. In the middle of the fifteenth century A.D. the Mongols made their first appearance here, and afterwards, towards the end of the sixteenth and beginning of the seventeenth century, it fell under the power of the Chakhars,<sup>1</sup> who soon afterwards acknowledged the supremacy of the Manchu dynasty, which had usurped the throne of China. Ordos was afterwards organised on the same footing as the other nomad districts; and at the present day it is divided into seven banners, which are situated as follows: on the north, Talde and Hangin; on the west, Otok and Zesak; on the south, Ushin; on the east, Djungar, and in the centre, Van (Wang). There are no towns in this country.

As we have stated, Ordos forms a peninsula in the elbow made by the winding of the Hoang-ho. This river, one of the greatest of Eastern Asia, flows from an alpine country south of Lake Kokonor, winds for a long way between gigantic chains of mountains, and at last at Ho-chau enters the confines of China Proper. From this point, or to speak more correctly from Lang-chau, the course of the Hoang-ho is north by a little east, which direction it preserves through five degrees of latitude. Then its

the qualities of a sagacious and energetic ruler with those of an intrepid sportsman, rode through the country from one end to the other, bow in hand, and killed many thousand head of game. (*Gerbillon* in *Duhalde*, iv. 463; Ritter, *Asien*, i. 155; *Deguignes, hist. gen. des Huns*. i. 142.)—M.

<sup>1</sup> At that time Ordos received its present name; in ancient times this country was called *Ho-nan*, and still earlier, *Ho-tau*.



tendency to flow to the north being checked by the obstructing Gobi and the In-shan mountains, the river makes another bend to the east, and near the town of Kai-fong-fu the principal channel dis-embogues in the Gulf of Pechihli, whilst another lesser branch flows into the Yellow Sea. The change in the lower course of the Hoang-ho occurred as recently as 1855, when, after forcing a passage through the embankments near Kai-fong-fu, the river took a new course towards the Gulf of Pechihli, where it now discharges at a distance of 270 miles to the north of its former mouth.<sup>1</sup>

The capricious windings of the Hoang-ho, and the heavy rainfall in summer in the hilly districts on its upper course, occasion frequent and extensive inundations which sometimes cause disastrous losses to the inhabitants.

After crossing into Ordos, instead of taking the shortest diagonal route, followed by Huc and Gabet,

<sup>1</sup> In all our ordinary maps the Hoang-ho enters the sea in lat. 34°, south of the great peninsula of Shan-tung. This was its true course down to some twenty years ago, and for six centuries before that. But in the earliest times of which the Chinese have record the Hoang-ho discharged into the Gulf of Pechihli, i.e. north of Shan-tung and its mountains, and it continued to do so, though with sundry variations of precise course, till the thirteenth century A.D. Before the latter period the river had occasionally thrown off minor branches to the south of Shan-tung, but it then changed its course boldly to the latter direction, and so continued till our time. The tendency to break towards the old northern discharge had long existed, and was resisted by a vast and elaborate series of embankments. These gave way partially in 1851: following floods enlarged the breach, and in 1853 the river resumed its ancient course across the plains of Pechihli, and now enters the gulf of that name in lat. 38° (*circa*). A sketch map of these variations is given in 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed., ii. 126, where references to the chief authorities will also be found.—Y.



and the former missionaries (Martini and Gerbillon), we determined to keep in the valley of the River. This route afforded greater interest for zoological and botanical researches than could be found in the sandy wastes in the interior of Ordos; besides which we wished to settle the question of the bifurcation of the Hoang-ho in its northern bend.

We marched along the River for 290 miles from the ferry opposite Bautu to the town of Ding-hu,<sup>1</sup> and the conclusion we arrived at was that the river does not divide into separate channels in its northern bend, as is usually represented on the maps, and that this part of its course has undergone a change. For the sake of clearness, I will first give a general sketch of the character of that part of the River and its valley which we surveyed, and then continue the narrative of our journey in Ordos.

Winding considerably for so large a river, the Hoang-ho flows at the rate of 300 feet a minute<sup>2</sup> through a valley bounded on the north by the In-shan and its western continuations, and on the south by a belt of drift sands known to the Mongols under the name of Kuzupchi. The banks of the river and its bed are composed of slimy clay; the water is very thick, and when standing for a short time deposits 1·3 per cent. of mud. However, the thick

<sup>1</sup> Marked *Chagan-subar-kan* on Klapproth's and Kiepert's maps.

<sup>2</sup> [Nearly  $3\frac{1}{2}$  miles an hour.] We observed this velocity of current near the shore during our crossing near the town of Bautu; in mid-stream the river was more rapid, but the velocity of the current depends on the high or low state of the water; when we crossed it was about the average level.

solution of clay suspended in the water does no harm, if the water be allowed to settle a little before use.

The depth of the Hoang-ho is nearly uniform throughout, varying according to the high or low level of the river. I measured the width opposite the town of Ding-hu with a compass, and found it to be 1,421 feet. Opposite Bautu I had no opportunity of measuring it, owing to the strict watch which the Chinese kept on us during the crossing. But, when the waters are at an average height, its width there is much the same, perhaps a little broader. The depth of the river is considerable, and it is unfordable in any part; it could be easily navigated by river steamers. At all events, large boats constantly pass backwards and forwards with supplies for the Chinese garrisons on its left bank. The voyage from Bautu to Ning-hia-fu is said to take forty days, whereas only seven days are required to float down stream between these points.

In that part of its course which we surveyed, the Hoang-ho is not subject to inundations, but flows between low level banks; the clayey soil and rapid current accounting for the constant abrasion and falling in of its banks.

From the meridian of the westernmost end of the Munni-ula mountains several channels, 170 to 290 feet wide, separate on either bank from the main river, soon uniting again with the parent stream; only one, the Baga-khatun, continues to flow in an independent stream for some distance to the east.

The channels marked in the map on the right bank of the northern bend of the River (west of the Munni-ula) have ceased to exist, owing to the change in its course, which has deviated 33 miles to the south of the former channel. The old channel, called Ulan-khatun by the Mongols, is well preserved, as we saw on our return journey from Ala-shan to Peking. The Mongols told us most positively that there were two channels between the old bed and present channel of the River, which continue to the western extremity of the Munni-ula, where some other branches again divide from the River. In all probability these two channels are those which some maps show as on the south side of the Hoang-ho. But in fact the main stream now flows in the third, i.e. the southernmost of the three.

This important change in the course of the River probably occurred at no very remote period. In support of this presumption I should mention that the Ordos country is reckoned to extend, beyond the present course of the River, as far as the old channel. There is a tradition among the inhabitants that one year the Hoang-ho, after unusually heavy summer rains, changed its former for a more southerly direction, when a dispute arose between the Urutes<sup>1</sup> and the Ordos about the boundaries of their respective territories. A commission was sent

<sup>1</sup> The *Ūrūt* or Orat form a tribe of three banners on the north of the Hoang-ho, about 120 miles west of Kuku-khoto. (See *Timk.* ii. 263.)—Y.

from Peking to examine into the affair, and this finally decided that the territory of the Ordos must be considered to be the same as before, i.e. to extend to the desiccated river bed. Even at the present day parts of the same koshungs (banners) of Ordos lie on both banks of the Hoang-ho, another proof that the River entered its new channel after the subdivision of the Ordos country into the present koshungs.

The valley of the Hoang-ho, in that part of its course which we are describing, is from twenty to forty miles broad, and of an alluvial clayey soil.<sup>1</sup> On the northern side of the river the valley widens considerably to the west of the Munni-ula mountains, while its southern shore is narrowed by the sands of Kuzupchi, which approach close to the river.

The northern side of the valley, with the exception of a narrow strip of land near the hills, where the soil is sandy and stony, is well adapted for cultivation, and is thickly covered with Chinese villages. The same remark applies to the southern bank of the River, from the place<sup>2</sup> where we crossed almost to the meridian of the western corner of the Munni-ula. This part of the valley is everywhere covered with grass land, intersected by a few streams, and in

<sup>1</sup> We sometimes arrived at pure sand beneath a surface stratum of clay not exceeding two or three feet in thickness. But the alluvial deposit near the river must be considerably more, because the above result was obtained near the sands of Kuzupchi, therefore quite at the verge of the valley of the Hoang-ho.

<sup>2</sup> It should be mentioned that the fruitful cultivated valley on the southern shore of the Hoang-ho extends much further eastwards than the point of our crossing that river.

places further removed from the River small marshes and lakes are formed. On the flooded meadow land the following flora appears : *Odontites rubra*, *Aster Tataricus*, *Panicum Mandshuricum*, *Calystegia acetosifolia*, *Echinops Turczaninovii*, *Sonchus brachyotus*, *Statice aurea*, *Sophora flavescens*, *Cynanchum acutum*, *Vincetoxicum Sibiricum*, *Vincetoxicum* sp.; varieties of *Ranunculus*, *Tanacetum*, *Oxytropis*, *Plantago*, *Stachys*, *Spergularia*, *Adenophora*, &c. It may be seen from the above list that parts of these meadows closely resemble our fields in Europe. Nearer the River grow the thick worm wood (*Artemisia* sp.), lyme-grass (*Elymus* sp.), and willow (*Salix* sp.), which further westward completely covers large areas. The marshes and their borders are thickly overgrown with reeds (*Phragmites communis*); in the uncovered spots appear the water plantain (*Alisma Plantago*), the water asparagus (*Hippuris vulgaris*), some kinds of *Scirpus*, *Eleocharis*, *Cyperus*, *Funcus*, *Utricularia*, *Cicuta*, *Butomus*, *Monochoria*, *Pedicularis*, *Lactuca*.

The sands of Kuzupchi do not come quite close up to this part of the valley of the Hoang-ho, but are separated from it by a border of sand mixed with clay which terminates in a precipitous bank, 50 feet and in some places 100 feet high, in all probability once forming the river shore.

This border is covered with small mounds (seven to ten feet high), mostly overgrown with wormwood (*Artemisia campestris*) and Siberian pea-tree (*Caragana* sp.). Here we found one of the

characteristic plants of Ordos, the liquorice root (*Glycyrrhiza Uralensis*), called *Chihir burja* by the Mongols, and *so* or *soho* by the Chinese. This plant, which belongs to the leguminous order, has a root four feet long and upwards, with a thickness of two inches near the stem. These are, however, the dimensions of the full-grown plant; the roots of the young specimens are about the thickness of a finger, although their length is from three to four feet; iron spades with wooden handles are used to dig up this root. The labour of extracting it from the ground is very heavy, because it grows downwards almost vertically into a hard clayey soil, and is found in waterless districts where the workmen are exposed to a burning sun.

A party of labourers, generally Mongols, men and women, hired by the Chinese, on first arriving at the place, establish a depôt for storing the roots obtained every day. Here they are laid in a pit to preserve them from the sun; the next process is to cut off the thin end and the lateral offshoots. Then the roots are tied in bundles like sticks, each bundle weighing 100 hings (about 130 lbs.), loaded on boats, and despatched down the Hoang-ho. The Chinese told us that the liquorice root was sent to Southern China, where a particular kind of cooling drink is prepared from it.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Liquorice root is much used in China, and is largely produced in some of the northern provinces; in 1870 6,954 peculs (= 927,200 lbs.), were shipped from Chefoo, and 1,304 peculs (= 173,866 lbs.), from Ningpo. (*Reports on Trade at the Treaty-Ports, &c.*, Shanghai, 1871, from *Hanbury and Flüchiger's Pharmacographia*, p. 156.)—Y.



From the meridian of the western extremity of the Munni-ula, the character of the valley on the southern shore of the Hoang-ho as we ascend the River changes a good deal. The soil, which was heretofore dense and fertile, is now mixed with salt, so thick in some places as to cover the ground with a white layer; there are none of those marshes or rivulets which are occasionally seen in the preceding section, and, except in the great river itself, not a drop of water can be found.

As the soil changes so does the vegetation. The flowery fields<sup>1</sup> disappear, and in their stead the reed grass (*Calamagrostis* sp.), and *Lasiagrostis splendens* cover the valley. The latter grows in tufts as high as seven feet, and is so tough and wiry as to make it difficult to pluck a single stalk. Clumps of bushes become more frequent, often covering extensive areas along the banks of the Hoang-ho.<sup>2</sup> The prevailing kind of shrub is a species of tamarisk, which is sometimes as high as twenty feet, with a stem three or four inches thick.

The sand-drift which in the former section was 12 to 15 miles from the bank of the Hoang-ho, now approaches nearer and throws out occasional arms to the River itself. These sands, as we have said, are called by the Mongols *Kuzupchi*—a name which

<sup>1</sup> In the valley of the Hoang-ho and the oases in the sands of Kuzupchi, we gathered, between the middle of July and end of August, 137 kinds of flowering plants; in the mountains of Munni-ula, between the end of June and beginning of July, 163 kinds; but some of the latter were also found in the valley of the Yellow River.

<sup>2</sup> These bushes also grow on the opposite shore of the Hoang-ho.

signifies *collar*, and is very appropriate on account of the distinct fringe which they form along the valley, from the meridian of Bautu for 200 miles up its course, where they cross to the left bank and cover the whole of Ala-shan. The sands of Kuzupchi are a succession of hillocks (40, 50, rarely 100 feet high) lying side by side and composed of yellow sand. The upper stratum of this sand, when disturbed by the wind blowing on either side of the hills, forms loose drifts which have the appearance of snow-drifts.<sup>1</sup>

The effect of these bare yellow hillocks is most dreary and depressing when you are among them, and can see nothing but the sky and the sand; not a plant, not an animal, is visible, with the single exception of the yellowish grey lizards (*Phrynocephalus* sp.) which trail their bodies over the loose soil and mark it with the patterns of their tracks. A dull heaviness oppresses the senses in this inanimate sea of sand. No sounds are heard, not even the chirping of the grasshopper; the silence of the tomb surrounds you. No wonder that the local Mongols relate some marvellous stories about these frightful deserts. They tell you that this was the scene of the principal

<sup>1</sup> The subsoil of the sands of Kuzupchi is hard clay, the same as the valley of the Hoang-ho. This phenomenon remarkably confirms the hypothesis of Ordos having once been the bed of a lake which forced a passage for itself to the ocean by the present channel of the Hoang-ho; the former shallows of this lake are now sand-drift. The probability of this conjecture being true is further confirmed by the historical documents of the Chinese which make mention of great inundations in the region of the modern Hoang-ho, 3,100 and 2,300 years B.C.—Ritter's *Erdkunde von Asien*. [See Supplementary Note.]

exploits of two heroes—Gissar-Khan<sup>1</sup> and Chinghiz-Khan: here these warriors fought against the Chinese, and slew countless numbers of people whose bodies God caused the winds to cover with sand from the desert. To this day the Mongols relate with superstitious awe how groans and cries may be heard in the sands of Kuzupchi, which proceed from the spirits of the departed, and that every now and then the winds which stir up the sand expose to view different treasures such as silver dishes, which, although conspicuous above the surface, may not be taken away, because death immediately overtakes the bold man who would venture to touch them.<sup>2</sup> According to another tradition, Chinghiz-Khan, when hard pressed by his enemies, placed the sands of Kuzupchi as a barrier on one side and turned the Hoang-ho from its former channel to the north as a protection against attack on the other.

<sup>1</sup> Gissar or Khassar, the next brother of Temujin (i.e. Chinghiz-Khan), called in Kalmuk stories *Khabutu Khassar*, i.e. Khassar the Archer, was renowned for his great strength and skill with the bow, and is the subject of many Mongol legends, of which examples will be found in Sanang Setzen, in Bergmann (*Nomadische Streifereien*, iii. 233), and in Pallas, *Sammlungun Histor. Nachricht*. i. 24). There is also a Tibetan version of the legends. The group of Mongol tribes called the Korchin claim descent from Khassar-Khan.—Y.

<sup>2</sup> A long note on the superstitious terrors of Deserts, and of the Gobi in particular, will be found in 'Marco Polo' (Book I. ch. xxxix., and see also beginning of ch. lvii.). The stories of treasure in the same desert are probably connected with the general belief (apparently founded on facts), of the former existence of cities in various parts of the borders of the Gobi, which have been overwhelmed with sand. 'That treasure is reputed to be found in these is a matter of course, but that *tea* is found in one of them at least, is a more uncommon circumstance, and appears to be a matter of fact.' See *Quarterly Review* for April 1873, p. 526.—Y.

However, the sands of Kuzupchi, which the Mongols say are from 10 to 50 miles wide, are not in all parts the land of death and desolation. Nearer the extreme edge, small oases may be seen covered with a variety of plants, amongst which we noticed the pretty shrub *Hedysarum* sp., completely covered in the month of August with pink blossoms; a few small trees also grow here—*Calligonum* sp., *Tragopyrum* sp., and the remarkable cross-shaped *Pugionium cornutum*. Only two specimens of this rare plant have as yet been brought to Europe, viz., in the last century by the naturalist Gmelin; they are preserved in the museums of London and Stuttgart. To my great regret I was unaware of the rarity of the *Pugionium*, and therefore only gathered a few specimens which I placed in my herbarium with other kinds. This plant is often met with in the sands of Kuzupchi, where it grows like a shrub to the height of seven feet, with a stem 1 to 1½ inch thick near the root.

Two hundred miles to the west of the meridian of Bautu, the sands of Kuzupchi cross to the left bank of the Hoang-ho, whilst the valley of the river (on its right bank) again changes its character and becomes quite sterile. Coarse sand is mixed with the clayey saline soil, and the valley itself, especially nearer the bank of the River, is seamed with the beds of dry watercourses which drain off the rainwater. Vegetation becomes very scanty, so much so that the soil is for the most part bare and studded with little mounds (3 to 6 feet high), on

which grow the low stunted *Nitraria Schoberi*, *Zygophyllum* sp., and another shrub of the leguminous order with a leathery leaf which is not deciduous.

These hillocks are formed by the wind which raises the sand and dust. Both one and the other are caught by the low brushwood, and as they gradually collect they form small mounds which are bound together by the roots of the bushes; the rains wash the sides down, giving them the appearance of having been dug with a spade.

Instead of the sands of Kuzupchi, undulating hills now border the valley, gradually becoming higher and higher till at length they culminate in a lofty rocky ridge opposite the town of Ding-hu, whence they run parallel with the course of the River for some distance to the south. These hills, as far as we could see, bear the same desolate aspect as the valley. In all probability the interior of the whole of Ordos is of the same character, and fully bears out its name of *Boro-tohoi*, i.e. grey (not green) plain.

The absolute height of the valley of the Hoang-ho in that part which we visited changes very little. By boiling water on Lake Tsaideming-nor we obtained 3,200 feet; 18 miles west of Ding-hu,<sup>1</sup> 3,500 feet; and nearly half way between these points, at the foot of the hills bordering the left bank of the river, again 3,500 feet.

Animal life is not very abundant in the valley of

<sup>1</sup> This place properly belongs to the plain of Ala-shan.

the Hoang-ho. Of the mammals there are the black-tailed antelope (*Antilope subgutturosa*), hares (*Lepus Tolai*), foxes, wolves, and small rodents. Of birds those we saw were mostly pheasants (*Phasianus torquatus*), larks (*Alauda arvensis*, *A. pispoletta*? *Galeria cristata*?) Wheat-ears (*Saxicola deserti*; *S. ænanthe*), and hoopoes (*Upupa Epops*). On the marshes and lakes were geese (*Anser cygnoides*, *A. cinereus*), ducks (*Anas boschas*, *A. acuta*, *A. rutila*, and others), marsh harriers (*Circus rufus*, *C. spilnotus*), terns (*Sterna leucoptera*, *Sterna* sp.), stilts (*Hypsibates himantopus*), avosets (*Recurvirostra Avocetta*), snipe (*Scolopax gallinago*, *S. mekala*?) and small sand-pipers (*Totanus ochropus*, *T. glareola*, *Tringa subminuta*). On the River itself there were gulls (*Larus ridibundus*, *L. occidentalis*?) and a fishing-eagle (*Haliaetos Macei*) may often be seen seated motionless on the precipitous banks. Ordos, like the whole of Mongolia, is so poor in birds that we only found 104 kinds in the valley of Hoang-ho and among the oases in the sands of Kuzupchi. It is probable that there are not many kinds of fish in the River. At all events we only caught six species in our small net—the Silurus (*S. asotus*), carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), the crucian carp (*Curassicus vulgaris*), dog-fish (*Squalius Chinensis*), and two new kinds, perhaps two new genera, of the family of *Cyprinidæ*. We also procured some specimens of tortoises (*Trionyx* sp.), which are found in great numbers in the Hoang-ho.

As regards population in Ordos since the devastation caused by the Dungan insurrection in



1869, the valley of the Hoang-ho is inhabited only for sixty miles to the west of the ferry of Lang-haisa ; beyond that point there is no one, and even the footpaths are so overgrown with grass that not a trace of former inhabitants remains. You may occasionally see a ruined village or the skeleton of a Mongol killed by Dungans half devoured by wolves. We were reminded of the words of Humboldt, who remarked that the historian who traces back past ages, and the geographer who travels over the earth, find everywhere the monotonous desolate picture of warring humanity.

We will now return to the narrative of our journey. The day following our crossing the Hoang-ho we were also obliged to cross its arm the Baga-khatun, which is 350 feet wide and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  miles distant from the main river. The ferry, called Li-vang-ti, is kept by Chinese, who extorted a good sum for taking us over. We pitched our tent on the other side with the intention of continuing our journey early the following morning. We were, however, quite unexpectedly detained here four days. The reason of this was first a heavy rain, which poured in torrents the whole day, soaking the clayey soil of the valley of the Hoang-ho to such an extent that our camels were quite unable to proceed ; then one of our camels recently bought at Bautu strayed, and the Cossack and Mongol were two whole days looking for it.

In the meanwhile we were obliged to wait at the ferry of Li-vang-ti, where our tent was constantly

beset by all the Chinese and Mongols who passed by, and well nigh exhausted our patience with their impudence. Once some Chinese soldiers actually demanded one of our guns or a revolver, and threatened, in case of our refusing to give them, to come in a body and take them from us.

At last the strayed camel was recaptured, and we set out for Lake Tsaideming-nor, about which we had heard from the Mongols. On the shores of that lake, which were reported to abound in game and good pasturage, we hoped to pass a fortnight, in order to rest our exhausted camels. We ourselves also required rest, besides that by staying in one place for a time we could study the flora and fauna of the Hoang-ho better. During the month of July, too, the heat every day is so intense that it is almost impossible to march even short distances with pack animals. The thermometer certainly did not mark over  $37^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $98^{\circ}$  Fahr.) in the shade, but the sun burnt fiercely and sometimes heated both sand and clay to  $70^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $158^{\circ}$  Fahr.); the camels could not set the bare soles of their feet on the burning soil, and their legs trembled with the pain. The water in the River became warmed to  $24.5^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $75^{\circ}$  Fahr.); but in the lakes and marshes the temperature increased to  $32.3^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $90^{\circ}$  Fahr.). The rains, which fell frequently and were usually accompanied by thunder, only temporarily refreshed the atmosphere. As soon as the clouds cleared away the sun's rays came down as hot as ever, and the heat became the more unbearable owing to

the dead calm of the atmosphere, only occasionally stirred by a light south-westerly breeze.

Our expectations with regard to Lake Tsaide-ming-nor<sup>1</sup> were realised. This marshy lake literally swarmed with ducks and geese which supplied us with food; the camels pastured unmolested on the neighbouring meadows; and we procured as much butter and milk as we required from the Mongols encamped near the lake. To add to our comforts, we were encamped by the side of the Tahilga, a clear stream flowing into the lake, in which we could bathe as often as we liked. In fact, never before or afterwards were we so well off in Mongolia.

On the road to Tsaideming-nor we passed another lake, Urgun-nor, on the banks of which, and in the adjoining valley of the Hoang-ho, there is a tolerably thick Chinese population mixed with Mongols, who live partly in yurtas and partly in houses. Some of the latter cultivate the soil, but they dislike labour, and their fields may be at once distinguished from those of the Chinese. In one respect only are the Mongols not behind the Chinese, viz. in smoking opium. This frightful vice is terribly prevalent in China, into which opium is imported by Englishmen from India. The Chinese also prepare it for themselves, and plant whole fields with the poppy. But its cultivation being forbidden by law, those fields of poppy which we saw in the

<sup>1</sup> Lake Tsaideming-nor is actually a marsh, thickly covered with reeds and different kinds of marshy grasses.

valley of the Hoang-ho were planted in the midst of thick cane brake and tall rushes to hide them from official scrutiny. Not that the officials destroy the forbidden crop, they only extort a large bribe from its owner as a penalty for his contraband cultivation.

The custom of smoking opium has spread rapidly from the Chinese to the neighbouring Mongols, but has not yet penetrated into the remoter parts of Mongolia. Opium-smokers have such a passion for their poison that they cannot exist without it even for a few days. It injuriously affects the whole organism. Every opium-smoker may be at once known by his pale, prematurely old face and attenuated body. I myself once tried smoking a little opium : it produced no effect whatever on me, and its taste reminded me of burnt feathers.

From our camp on the bank of the little river Tahilga we daily sallied forth on scientific and shooting excursions, and in the hottest weather rested and often bathed. Our Cossacks were afraid of indulging in the last-named pleasure for fear of the river-tortoises.<sup>1</sup> The Mongols attribute peculiar magic powers to these creatures, and in proof of their assertion show you some Tibetan letters which they say are marked underneath the body. They frightened our Cossacks by telling them that the tortoise fixes on to the bodies of persons bathing with such a firm grip that it is impossible to make it let go. The only remedy in such case is to

<sup>1</sup> The same kind of tortoise as we had seen in the Hoang-ho, *Trionyx*, sp.

fetch a white camel or goat, which on seeing the adhering tortoise utters a cry, and then the creature drops its victim of its own accord.

The Mongols told us that there were no tortoises formerly in the Tahilga, but all of a sudden these strange creatures appeared. The astonished inhabitants did not know what to do, and in their dilemma asked the advice of the gigen [or living Buddha] of the nearest temple, who told them that the newly-arrived tortoise would make itself master of the River and that it was a sacred animal. Ever since then, once a month, a religious service is held at the source of the Tahilga by the lamas of the neighbouring temple.

In order to fix the latitude of Lake Tsaidemingnor I made an astronomical observation. The Mongols did not know what to make of my occupation, and began to suspect me to be a conjuror. Fortunately I remembered that in the end of July,<sup>1</sup> exactly at the time I was making my observation, a number of falling stars would appear in the heavens; accordingly, after finishing my work, I told the assembled crowd that stars would shoot across the heavens that night. At any other time the Mongols would have paid no attention to such a phenomenon, but now they all wished to test the accuracy of my prophecy, and having satisfied themselves of its correctness that night, they no longer looked on me with suspicion. This shows how a little presence

<sup>1</sup> i.e. *Old Style*, corresponding to N. S. August 9—11, one of the periods of meteoric showers.—Y.

of mind will assist the traveller in the most trifling circumstances. For instance, we boiled water for fixing altitudes openly, often in the presence of Mongols, to whom we used to explain that this was our manner of praying to God.

A little more than seven miles to the north-east of Lake Tsaideming-nor, not far from the shore of the Hoang-ho, stands a tolerably high conical hill, called by the Mongols Tumyr-alhu, and by the Chinese Dju-djing-fu. Here, the Mongols say, the wife of Chinghiz-Khan is buried. The tradition runs as follows. One of the Mongol princes, by name Gichin-Khan, had a beautiful wife who pleased the great warrior so much that he threatened to make war if her lawful husband did not resign this woman to him. The terrified prince agreed to this demand, and Chinghiz-Khan set off for Peking accompanied by his bride. In passing through the country of the present Chakhars, the beautiful captive escaped from her lord and fled in the direction of the Hoang-ho; on the opposite bank of this river she piled up a mound of earth with her own hands and hid in it. When the pursuers sent by Chinghiz-Khan approached her hiding place, the unfortunate woman, despairing of safety, threw herself into the River, whence the Mongols call it to the present day the Khatun-gol, i.e. Lady's River.<sup>1</sup> The body of

<sup>1</sup> This would seem to be a variation of the legend related by Sanang Setzen the Mongol poetical chronicler. According to this it was on the final conquest of Tangut by Chinghiz (1227), that Kurbelyin Goa Khatun, the beautiful wife of the king of that country, was transferred to the tent of the conqueror. She did him some bodily mischief (it is not said what), and then went and drowned herself in the Kará-muren



the drowned woman was recovered, and by command of Chinghiz-Khan buried in an iron coffin in the very mound which she had made to hide in ; this hillock is called Tumyr-alhu.

Chinghiz-Khan's memory is better preserved in Ordos than in any part of Mongolia ; at all events, we heard more tales here about the conqueror than anywhere else. The most interesting of these legends are those relating to the white banner and the future resurrection of Chinghiz-Khan.

The first tells how Chinghiz-Khan was a great hunter, and while following the chase one day in the mountains of Munni-ula he met there a Russian engaged in the same pursuit. Chinghiz-Khan enquired of him how long he had been hunting, and how many beasts he had killed ? 'For some years,' answered the stranger ; 'but I have only killed one wolf.' 'How is that ?' said the conqueror ; 'I have killed several hundred animals in the same time.' 'But my wolf was a wonderful beast,' replied the Russian ; 'he was fourteen feet long, and every day devoured ten other animals ; by slaying him I have done more good than you.' 'If that be the case,' exclaimed Chinghiz-Khan, 'thou art a brave fellow ; come with me to my yurta, and I will give thee whatsoever thou desirest.'

The Russian hunter, at the invitation of Chinghiz-Khan, accompanied him to his yurta. Here, what pleased him most was one of the concubines of the

(or Hoang-ho), which thenceforth was called by the Mongols the *Khatun-gol* (Schmidt's *Sanang Setzen*, p. 103).—Y.

great warrior, who, to keep his word, was obliged to give his guest the woman he asked for. But as she was one of Chinghiz-Khan's favourites, on parting with her he gave her a white banner. With this present the Russian and his bride departed for Russia. Where they settled is not known; 'but,' say the Mongols, 'the white banner of our great sovereign is still in your country.'

Another and even more interesting tradition about Chinghiz-Khan runs as follows. The ashes of this hero, the Mongols assert, rest in a temple in Southern Ordos in the koshung (banner) of Vang, 130 miles to the south of Lake Tabasun-nor.<sup>1</sup> Here the body of the great warrior is laid in two coffins, one of silver, the other of wood, placed in a yellow silken tent in the centre of the temple; here too, beside the coffin, lie the arms of Chinghiz-Khan. Some 6 miles from the chief temple another smaller shrine has been built, in which are buried twenty of his nearest relatives. On his death-bed he told them that he would rise again after the lapse of not more than a thousand years, and not less than 800. In Chinghiz-Khan's tomb lies the figure of a man apparently asleep, although no mortal can account for this phenomenon. Every evening a roasted

<sup>1</sup> This tradition, however, does not agree with history, according to which the body of Chinghiz-Khan, after his death in 1227 A.D., near the town of Ning-hia, was carried to the north and buried not far from the sources of the Tola and Kerulen.—Ritter's *Erdkunde von Asien*.

Sanang Setzen agrees with the Mahomedan writers in representing that the body of Chinghiz was carried to his native country. It would seem that his tomb was on or beside the Khanola mountain near Urga.—Y.

sheep or horse is placed near the dead man, and by the morning it is all devoured.

The Mongols reckon that 650 years have elapsed since his death, leaving 150 to 350 years more before his coming resurrection. The same people assert that on the very day of the accomplishment of this miracle, some hero will be born in China with whom Chinghiz-Khan will do battle, subdue him, and lead his people from Ordos to what is now called the land of the Khalkas, the native country of the Mongols.

We could not discover the name of the temple where Chinghiz-Khan is said to be buried. The Mongols, for some reason or other, would not divulge it. Great numbers of pilgrims annually visit it.

After ten days' halt near Lake Tsaideming-nor we ascended the valley of the Hoang-ho. Our first march was to the Kurei-hundu, and the second to the Kurai-hundu, the last rivulet we saw in Ordos. Both these streams flow from the interior of that country; they are neither wide nor deep, but their current is very rapid and muddy; after a fall of rain the water is almost as thick as treacle. The Mongols have also invented an explanation of this. They say that owing to the muddiness of the Hoang-ho, it will not receive any clear streams as tributaries, and therefore the Tahilga flows into Lake Tsaideming-nor instead of into the main river, which rejects its transparent waters.

We remained three days on the river Kurai-

hundu, devoting the whole time to the chase of the black-tailed antelope, which we first saw here.

The black-tailed antelope, or, as the Mongols call it, the kara-sulta<sup>1</sup> (*Antelope subgutturosa*), in size and appearance closely resembles the dzeren, but differs from the latter in its black tail (seven to eight inches long), which it holds up and often switches from side to side. This antelope inhabits Ordos and the desert of Gobi, being distributed as far north as about 45° N. lat. On the south it is met with throughout Ala-shan as far as Kan-su, and then, omitting this province and the basin of Lake Koko-nor, it is again found in the saline marshy plains of Tsaidam.

It selects for its habitation the wildest and most barren parts of the desert, or small oases in the midst of sand-drifts. Unlike the dzeren, it avoids the rich pasturage and is satisfied with the scantiest food in its endeavours to shun mankind. We were always at a loss to know what it could find to drink in such spots. Certainly, judging from its tracks, it will visit by night a spring or even a well, but we have found it in a barren desert where not a drop of water could be found for 60 or 70 miles round. It can probably exist for a long time without water, feeding on a few juicy plants of the kali family.

The kara-sultas are generally found single, in pairs, or in small detachments of three to seven; it very rarely happens, and that only in winter, that

<sup>1</sup> Kara-sulta signifies 'black-tailed.'

fifteen or twenty head are seen together, but we never once saw more than this. The herd never mixes with the dzerens even if it graze on the same pastures, which seldom occurs.

It is much shyer than the dzeren, and owing to its excellent sight, hearing, and smell, easily escapes the snares of the hunter, being in common with other antelopes, very hard to kill, which increases the difficulty of the chase.

They feed in the evening and early morning, lying down, during the day under the lee of a hillock where they are sheltered from the wind. It is extremely difficult to mark one of these animals when reposing, on account of their colour so closely resembling that of the sand or the yellow clay. They are better discernible whilst grazing, or if they happen to be standing on the summit of a hill, where they will sometimes remain stationary for an hour at a time. This is the best and only opportunity the sportsman can have of stalking them.

If startled the kara-sulta bounds off for several hundred paces, then stops and looks at its pursuer for a few minutes, before resuming its flight. It is useless attempting to follow on its tracks; the animal will probably go a long distance and will be more cautious than ever.

My companion and I wasted a good deal of time and labour before we shot our first kara-sulta. The first and second days we were unsuccessful, and only on the morning of the third I succeeded in bagging a fine buck after a good stalk. One ought really

not to fire at a single kara-sulta or at a dzeren above 200 yards ; for nine out of ten shots you fire beyond that range will to a certainty be wasted. In practice, however, this rule is difficult to observe. Assuming that you have been walking for an hour or two, climbing from the top of one hillock to another, sinking knee-deep in the loose sands with the perspiration pouring from your face, and that all of a sudden you see the coveted animal before you, but above 200 yards off. You are well aware that you cannot approach any closer ; that if you are not very careful you may never see it again ; that every minute is of value ; and lastly, that you hold a rifle in your hands which will carry a long distance and hit the smallest object ; with all this, can you resist the temptation of a shot ? You raise the sight on your rifle, lie down, take a steady aim ; the gunpowder flashes fire, and the bullet buries itself in the sand, having either fallen short of or gone beyond the antelope, which is out of sight the next moment. Provoked and disgusted with your ill luck, you examine the spot where it stood, and on measuring the distance, you find that you are forty paces or more out of your reckoning. This is a great mistake to make, but it is unavoidable when you have to estimate your distance suddenly, often in a recumbent position, with your head only just raised above the hillock and when it is impossible to see any intermediate objects. Doubtless a rifle with a long point-blank range in this instance is the



best of all ; but we had none with us during the first year of the expedition.

I have stated that the kara-sulta frequents the wildest part of the desert ; but on one occasion, whilst returning from Ala-shan to Peking, in November 1870, we saw a number of these antelope in the valley of the Hoang-ho near the Sheiten-ula range, where they kept near the Chinese population and the cultivated fields. Here, contrary to their habits, they were the reverse of shy, of course because they had become accustomed to man, and had never been hunted. Their rutting season is in November ; the young ones being born in May. These creatures are far less numerous in Mongolia than the dzeren.

Soon after leaving the Kurai-hundu, we arrived at the Mongol temple of Karganti, whence there is a road across the sands of Kuzupchi to the salt lake of Tabasun-nor. This lake, described by Huc,<sup>1</sup> is about 66 miles from the shore of the Hoang-ho, and according to the Mongols about 20 to 25 miles in circumference. The salt obtained here is taken to the neighbouring provinces of China.

Leaving the Tabasun-nor road on one side, we continued our journey up the valley of the Hoang-ho, and after a day's march came to another temple demolished by the Dungans, called Shara-tsu. At this temple, one of the most important in the whole of Ordos, as many as 2,000 lamas and two or three

<sup>1</sup> Huc, *Souvenirs d'un Voyage dans la Tartarie et le Thibet*, t. i. pp. 330-334.

gigens [or living Buddhas] formerly resided ; but not a soul remains there now. Only some flocks of rock doves, jackdaws, and swallows build their nests in the ruined shrines and houses. The latter, i.e. the houses, which surround the temple, are for the most part uninjured ; but the chief shrine, with its outbuildings within the enclosure, is burnt down ; the clay idols smashed or hacked to pieces, littering the ground ; a few still on their pedestals, but cut and disfigured by swords and pikes ; the great statue of Buddha in the principal temple with a large hole in its chest, made by the Dungans in their search for treasure often hidden by the lamas in such places ; and leaves of the sacred book *Gandjur*<sup>1</sup> strewn over the floor, together with other broken fragments ; all covered with a thick layer of dust.

And yet not very long ago many thousands assembled here to worship the image of their saint. Here, as in other temples, everything was done to attract and arrest the childish imagination of the Mongols ; many of the gods are represented with stern and hideous faces ; some seated on lions, elephants, oxen, or horses ; others slaying serpents, devils, &c., and the walls of the temple that remain standing are also decorated with pictures of the same *genre*.

‘How can you put faith in gods of clay?’ I remarked to the Mongol who accompanied me over the ruins of the temple. ‘Our gods,’ he answered, ‘only

<sup>1</sup> See Supplementary Note.

lived in these idols, but they have now flown to the skies.'

Beyond the temple of Karganti, ascending the southern shore of the Hoang-ho, we met no more inhabitants, and only passed two or three small Mongol stations whose occupants were engaged in obtaining liquorice-root. The reason this country is so deserted is, as we have said, owing to the Dungan insurrection, which laid waste Ordos two years before our visit. The settled Chinese population on the southern shore of the Hoang-ho, west of the meridian of Munni-ula, was insignificant, however, even before that time on account of the narrowness of this part of the valley, and also because of the poverty of the soil, which is saline and thickly covered with shrubs of willow or tamarisk. Here we saw *wild cattle*—a very remarkable thing; about which we had previously heard from the Mongols, who accounted for their existence in the following way:

Before the Dungan disturbances, the Mongols of Ordos kept large herds, and it sometimes happened that bulls or cows would stray, wander away in the steppe, and become so wild that it was exceedingly difficult to capture them. These cattle which had run wild were scattered over different parts of Ordos. When the Dungans broke into this country from the south-west and began destroying everything they met in their progress, many of the inhabitants, panic-stricken, left all their goods and chattels behind them and fled, only thinking of their own safety. The herds left unguarded

soon became so wild that even the robbers could not capture them for their own use. After the departure of the Dungsans the wild animals remained at liberty, and they now chiefly frequent the bushes in the valley of the Hoang-ho, where there is abundance of water and good pasturage for them.

Wild cattle are generally met in small herds of five to fifteen, only the old bulls going single. It is strange how soon they return to all their wild habits notwithstanding their long domestication. The cows lie in the thickets all day, apparently hiding from man, but at twilight they come out to graze. On seeing or scenting a man, bulls and cows take to flight and never stop till they have gone a long way. The wildest and most intractable among them are, of course, the young ones, born and reared in a state of nature.

The chase of wild cattle is so difficult that during the whole of our stay at Ordos we only shot four bulls. The Mongols never take part in this chase, owing to their fear of entering Ordos, and also because these powerful animals do not feel the wound inflicted by the shot from an old flint-and-steel musket, which usually consists of a piece of cast-iron or a stone covered with lead. By beating the bushes, especially in winter, great numbers of these animals might be slain; the Mongols reckon their numbers in Ordos to be upwards of 2,000 head. Doubtless these cattle will all be exterminated in the course of time, or recaptured by the same Mongols who are now returning to Ordos. It might be otherwise

were there the same extent or luxuriance of grass plains (prairies) here that there is in South America, where a few stray individuals have been known to multiply into enormous herds.

The Mongols said that soon after the devastation of Ordos, wild sheep also appeared in these steppes, but they have all been destroyed by wolves. A few camels still wander about, one of which we succeeded in capturing, but it was a young one.

The first spot where we saw the wild cattle was twenty miles west of the temple of Shara-tsu. Our supply of meat being exhausted, we determined to take advantage of so favourable an opportunity to replenish it. We were, however, unsuccessful at first, entirely owing to our misplaced confidence in the stupidity of cows; at length, on the third day, early in the morning, I crept up to two bulls which were fighting among the bushes, and brought them both down with a right and left shot from my short rifle.

This success was most welcome to us, as we were now able to dry a supply of meat for the road. We dragged the best part of the slain animals to our tent, and cut up the meat into thin slices to be dried in the sun. This bait attracted numbers of kites, and we were obliged, gun in hand, to mount guard over the suspended pieces of meat. Eagles (*Haliaetos Maccii*) also appeared and paid the penalty of their temerity by enriching our collections.

While the meat was drying we fished in a desic-

cated arm of the Hoang-ho, near our camp. Some holes in the river-bed held water, and were full of fish, so that with our small net we caught in a short time upwards of 100 lbs. of carp and *silurus*; the latter of these is very common in the Hoang-ho. We kept the best of the fish we caught, and returned the remainder to the water.

The sport with the wild oxen and jerking the meat detained us eight days. But we had now enough to last a long while, and could advance more quickly; the more so as the poor vegetation and fauna of the valley of the river no longer presented objects of any particular interest.

On August 31st we resumed our march. The sands of Kuzupchi were on our left, as before, and on the right of our road lay the course of the Hoang-ho. Thick underwood impeded our progress in places, and the number of mosquitoes and small flies tormented us as well as our camels. The latter have a particular dislike to these insects, which are nowhere to be found in the deserts of the Mongolian plateau.

At the end of the first day's march we passed the night near the ferry of Gurbunduti,<sup>1</sup> not far from which, on the border of the sands of Kuzupchi, lies a small salt basin of the same name. We ourselves did not see it, but we heard from the Mongols that it was  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles in circumference. The layer of salt deposited is six inches to two feet

<sup>1</sup> Between the towns of Bautu and Ding-hu there are three ferries across the Hoang-ho: Dju-jing-fu, Gurbunduti, and Manting.



in thickness. Chinese and Mongol labourers are hired to dig it out; when it is loaded into boats which descend the Hoang-ho.

Another remarkable object which we had seen a few days ago was the remains of an ancient town, dating from the time of Chinghiz-Khan. These historical ruins are situated amidst the sands of Kuzupchi, twenty miles from the bank of the River, whence they can be seen very well. According to the Mongols, this was a fortified and large city. Each side of its quadrangular walls measured 15 li (about 5 miles), with a height and thickness of some 50 feet. The wells inside are 350 feet deep. The whole is now covered with sand-drift, nothing but the walls remaining. We heard no legends about the place; all the Mongols could tell us was that it was built by the orders of Chinghiz-Khan.

The summer heats, which about the middle of August had diminished, were renewed with their former intensity in the latter part of that month, and were terribly exhausting to us on the march. Although we always rose with the dawn, the packing of our things and loading the camels, together with tea-drinking, without which neither Cossack nor Mongol will begin a march for anything in the world, occupied more than two hours, and by the time we had started the sun was already high above the horizon. At such times a perfectly clear sky and breathless atmosphere often prepared us for the unwelcome advent of a hot day.

The order of our caravan was always the same.

My companion and I rode ahead of the caravan, surveying, collecting plants, or shooting any birds we might see; then followed the pack-camels, attached to one another by the halter, and guided by the Cossacks, one of whom rode in front holding the end of the halter of the first camel, while the other Cossack, with the Mongol guide, when there was one, brought up the rear.

Thus we would travel for two or three hours in the cool of the morning. By this time the sun was high in the heavens, and began to scorch us mercilessly. The baked soil of the desert smoked with heat, like a brick stove. Marching became very difficult; the head ached and swam, perspiration poured from the face and whole body, and a feeling of weakness and lassitude supervened. The sufferings of the animals were not less than those of the men. The camels toiled along with open mouth covered with sweat, which stood like drops of water on their coats; even our untiring Faust followed at foot-pace with head drooping and tail between his legs. The Cossacks, who generally sang songs, were now silent, and the whole caravan moved noiselessly onwards at measured pace, as though each person were afraid to communicate to his neighbour the heavy thoughts which oppressed his brain.

If by some good fortune a Mongol *yurta* or a Chinese house stood by the roadside, we hurried along at the top of our speed, to moisten our heads and caps, drink some water, and give a little to the

horses and the dog—the heated camels must not have any. But the refreshing effect of this was not lasting; in half an hour, or less, everything became as dry as before, and again we endured the scorching heat.

It is near midday, and soon time to halt. How far is it to the water? is the question we put to the first Mongol we meet on the road, and we learn to our sorrow that nearly four miles more remain before we can reach it. At length, having arrived at the well and selected our camping ground, we make the camels lie down,<sup>1</sup> and take their packs off. The disciplined animals know directly what is coming, and lie down of their own accord. Then the tent is pitched, and all the necessary articles dragged into it and laid along the sides; in the centre is laid a piece of felting which supplies us with a bed. Then we have to collect the argols, and boil the brick tea, which is our ordinary drink winter and summer, especially whenever the water is bad. After tea, while waiting for dinner, I and my companion press the plants we have collected on the road, skin the birds and dress them for preserving, or seize a favourable minute for transferring to the map the survey of the day. This work in the inhabited country was frequently interrupted by the arrival of Mongols from the neighbouring yurtas: these visitors would annoy us with all kinds of tire-

<sup>1</sup> In summer camels cannot be watered or pastured directly after unloading them, but they must be kept two hours quiet to give them time to get cool.

some questions or requests, till at length we would have literally to turn them out of the tent.

In the meanwhile the cravings of hunger remind one that it is time to dine ; but we must wait till the soup made from hares or partridges killed on the road is ready, or the mutton bought from the Mongols cooked. The latter, however, we rarely ate, owing to the difficulty of buying sheep, or the necessity for paying double their value ; hence we mainly depended on our guns for a supply of fresh meat.

Two hours after arriving at the halting-place dinner is ready, and we fall to with wolfish appetites. Our plates and dishes, knives and forks, are of the simplest, and harmonise well with the other surroundings : the lid of the saucepan in which the soup is boiled serves for a dish, the wooden cups out of which we drink tea are our plates, and our fingers the forks ; table-cloths and napkins are dispensed with. Dinner is soon over—we again drink brick tea ; then we start off on some excursion, or after game, while our Cossacks and Mongol guide take it in turn to pasture the camels.

Evening approaches ; the dying embers of the fire are rekindled, and we boil our porridge and tea. The horses and camels are driven to the tent ; the former are tethered, and the latter, besides being tethered, are made to lie down near our baggage, or at a short distance to one side. Night descends—the heat of the day is succeeded by the agreeable coolness of the evening. We inhale a fresher air,

and, wearied with the fatigues of the day, we enjoy the rest of tired warriors. At one of the halts on the shore of the Hoang-ho, my companion's horse broke loose, fell down the steep river bank and was drowned. This was a serious loss, as we could not buy another horse anywhere, and M. Pyltself was obliged to ride a camel. The author of this misfortune proved to be Djuldjig, who had charge of the animals, and instead of minding his business went to sleep in the bushes. This half-bred Mongol caused us a good deal of unpleasantness from first to last. We hired his services in the mountains of Munni-ula, at the rate of five lans (about 25 shillings) a month, with food found; at first he behaved respectably, but no sooner had we crossed into Ordos than Djuldjig became worse than useless. To say nothing of his incorrigible laziness, and disinclination to do any extra work, such as bringing water, collecting argols, and tending camels, &c., he was constantly quarrelling with the Cossacks, and was even saucy to my companion and myself. After a salutary chastisement for his insolence, Djuldjig began to amend his ways, although he continued to be disgracefully idle. We at length got rid of him on arrival at the town of Ding-hu.

Eighty-three miles above this town the sands of Kuzupchi cross to the opposite bank of the Hoang-ho, and its valley (on the eastward side) becomes quite barren. The steep ridge of sand which borders the valley up to this point is now replaced by sandy slopes, which gradually rise till opposite

the town of Ding-hu they culminate in a lofty rocky ridge called the Arbus-ula. This range runs almost parallel with the Hoang-ho, continually approaching it till at length it closes in upon the very bank of the river at a place opposite to which on the other side of the Yellow River rises the great range of the Ala-shan mountains. According to a Mongol tradition, one of the rocky peaks of the Arbus-ula, which has the shape of a table, served as a forge for Chinghiz-Khan's smithy. His blacksmith is represented to be a man of such gigantic stature, that although seated on the ground he was much higher than the hill, and forged different arms and accoutrements on it for the great warrior.<sup>1</sup>

On the 14th of September we arrived at the town of Ding-hu, situated on the western bank of the Hoang-ho, to which we were obliged to cross in order to continue our journey in Ala-shan. Our adventures at Ding-hu were even more unpleasant than those at Bautu.

While we were still a few miles from the town the Chinese noticed our caravan, and climbed on to the town wall in crowds to get a better view of us in the distance. Hardly had we arrived opposite to the town, than a boat with twenty-five soldiers put off from it, and these as soon as they had landed on our side demanded our passports.

Our tent was pitched on the bank of the

<sup>1</sup> Chinghiz himself was represented in traditions which found their way even to Europe as a blacksmith. This seems to have originated in a connection (whether real or imaginary) between his name *Temujin*, and the Turkish *Temurji*, an 'iron-smith.'—Y.



Hoang-ho exactly opposite the town, and I sent the Mongol Djuldjig over with the soldiers to take my passport to the Chinese commander. Half-an-hour later, the Mongol returned in company with an official, who informed us that the mandarin desired to see us and asked to be shown our gun and dog, about which he had probably heard from Djuldjig. As soon as I had changed my dress, I stepped into the boat, taking with me the Buriat Cossack and the Mongol ; the latter to act as interpreter of the Chinese language, with which he was well acquainted.

Hardly had we reached the opposite shore than a great crowd collected round us of all the inhabitants of Ding-hu. This small town had been entirely destroyed by the Dungans ; the only thing left standing was a mud wall with a circuit of less than half a mile, and so rotten that a good blow with a stout oaken stick would almost suffice to make a breach in any part of it. The only inhabitants of Ding-hu are the garrison, numbering at one time a thousand men, but now, owing to desertions, reduced by one half.

Accompanied by the whole crowd, we passed inside the wall, where we were met by some officers who motioned to us to enter a house, where we were told to wait till we could be ushered into the presence of the mandarin commanding the garrison. The house which we now entered served as a lodging for one of the officers, but outside and in it was hardly better than an ordinary shed. By way of ornament long strings of garlic hung round the walls, which

gave out an aroma quite in keeping with the other domestic arrangements.

After an interval of ten minutes the mandarin sent to say that he would receive us, and we accordingly proceeded to his house. He sat at a table in a yellow robe, and asked, with a consequential air, who I was, and what was my object in visiting the country? To this I answered, that I travelled for amusement, collecting herbs for medicinal purposes and shooting birds as specimens to show to my people at home; that I had also goods to sell to the Mongols; and, lastly, that both my companion and I were officials as stated in our passports. 'But your passport is evidently a forgery because the seal and signature are unknown to me,' interrupted the mandarin, maintaining his pompous attitude. I replied that I hardly knew more than a few dozen words of Chinese, and therefore could not write a passport for myself, and that I was unacquainted with any Chinese who could manufacture such articles. 'What goods have you?' continued the official. 'Mostly Peking ware for the common Mongols; we have already sold all our Russian articles,' was my reply. 'But you have some guns?' 'Yes, but not for sale,' I answered, 'because we are forbidden by treaty to trade in such articles in China. Our guns and revolvers are for protection against robbers.' 'Show me them, and let me see you fire at a mark.' 'Very well,' I rejoined; 'let us go outside.' I had my double-barrelled Lancaster rifle, and the Cossack carried a

small-shot gun ; with the latter I killed a swallow on the wing, and with the former smashed a brick placed as a mark. After observing these results, the Chinese commander tried himself, but shot wide of the mark.

In the meanwhile they brought some old English military guns and double-barrelled pistols to show us. The mandarin loaded a gun, but could not hit a mark at twenty paces ; then he fired a few more shots, and about the fifth shot broke the brick. Gratified with his success, he re-entered the house ; whilst we were taken to the lodging of an officer, who entertained us with water-melon, tea, and a kind of soup.

Half-an-hour afterwards we were again conducted to the Chinese Commander-in-chief. 'I must look at your things and make a list of them,' said he. 'Tell me how many, and what guns you have.' To this I assented, and a clerk wrote down at my dictation a detailed description of our rifles, smooth bores, revolvers, gunpowder, balls, &c. &c. It had now become dark, and a tallow candle and sesamum-oil lamp were lighted in the mandarin's house.

The audience, however, did not last much longer. The mandarin only asked us to sell him a rifle, and on being refused, ordered his men to ferry us back across the Hoang-ho. On returning to our tent, we were greatly delighted to find Faust, who had accompanied us from camp, but had been lost in the town ; it appeared that, tired with waiting and frightened at the noise made by the crowd, he swam

back again across the river in sight of my companion.

The following morning an official made his appearance accompanied by ten soldiers in full-dress red blouses, and announced that he had been sent to examine our things. The inspection began, but



MONGOL SOLDIER.

(From a Photograph lent by Baron Osten Sacken.)

was so carelessly conducted that the surveying work, which I had concealed at the bottom of one of my boxes, safely escaped the ordeal. One circumstance certainly favoured us, and that was the preparation of our soup, out of which the soldiers kept continually stealing bits of meat to eat, an occupation

which interested them a good deal more than examining the things.

After concluding the inspection, the official announced that his superior wished to look at the rifle and revolver we had practised with the day before. At first I declined to give up these articles, but upon his declaring he had orders not to return without them, I surrendered them on condition that a boat should be sent to take us across the river. After an hour the boat appeared, into which we placed all our baggage and crossed the river, leaving my companion and a Cossack in charge of the camels, for which the boat was to be sent a second time.

After storing all our baggage in the yard of a house standing on the bank of the River and used as a warehouse for salt, I applied to the mandarin for an order to have our camels brought over and for a pass to enable us to pursue our journey through Ala-shan. To this he replied, that he must personally inspect our things, and accompanied me to the place where they were stored. Turning them over he selected and gave to his servant whatever pleased him most, on the plea of wishing to examine them more carefully at home and promising to return them to me afterwards. He took two single-barrelled rifled pistols, a revolver in case, a dagger, two powder-flasks, a lamp, and a quire of writing paper. When I perceived that the examination was nothing less than robbery, I told my interpreter to inform him that we had not come

there to be robbed; upon this the Chinese general contented himself with what he had taken and abstained from any further inspection.

In the meanwhile the camels had not been brought across the River, the excuse being that the wind was too high and would endanger their being drowned. At last, after renewed remonstrances, the mandarin gave orders to ferry them over; but as they could not be placed on the boat owing to its high sides, ropes were tied to their heads, and in this way they were towed through the river, which is 1,400 feet wide, and has a rapid current. This bath certainly did not improve them, as these creatures have a strong aversion to water.

As soon as the camels had been brought over, I asked for my passport, but was told that the mandarin was asleep and that I might wait till next day. Out of all patience at this delay, I sent a messenger to say that if my passport were not returned we would go without it, but should prefer our complaints at Peking at such treatment.

I do not know in what words the message was delivered to the mandarin; but a quarter of an hour later an official appeared, escorted by ten soldiers, with orders from the mandarin to write another list of all our articles, and not to suffer us to depart without a passport. This time they only wrote down the number of our boxes, leathern trunks, and bags; the soldiers remained under the pretence of preserving these articles from the thieves, but really to guard us.



Our situation was most embarrassing; we were surrounded by a crowd of impudent soldiers, who took all sorts of liberties with us; and to add to our difficulties, one of our Cossacks was taken ill and was unable to move. Towards evening it began to rain; but we could not find shelter anywhere and were obliged to pass the night under the open sky, there being no room to pitch our tent in the narrow yard, already inconveniently crowded with our ten camels. We therefore submitted to circumstances, and after clearing a small space we lay down on some felting. Fortunately the rain soon ceased and the night was clear; the soldiers took it in turns to keep watch at the gates of the yard.

The next day we waited till midday, and were told that the mandarin was still asleep. I wished to satisfy myself on this point, but the soldiers would not let me pass into the town. In the meanwhile the mandarin kept sending envoys asking me to present him with all the articles he had taken from me, my Lancaster rifle among the number. I peremptorily declined, saying that I was not rich enough to give every Chinese general I saw, a gun which cost several hundred rubles.

In the afternoon they sent to tell me that the general had risen, and they brought the box with the rifle, but the powder-flask and box of caps were gone. 'Your commander has stolen two articles from this case,' I remarked to the official who brought it, and I sent my interpreter to explain this. I did

not wish to go to him any more myself, as I considered it beneath my dignity to have any dealings with such a rogue. In an hour's time the Cossack returned, bringing the powder-flask empty, but informing me that the mandarin would not surrender the caps, which he wished to keep for himself. The Cossack also told me that he had repeatedly asked him to persuade me to give him the other things. The servant who accompanied the Cossack waited for an answer, and was sent back to the mandarin with another refusal. He soon returned, however, and explained that the mandarin wished to buy the articles which had been taken. At first I thought of refusing to sell them, but afterwards, acting on the advice of a Mongol *zanghin*,<sup>1</sup> with whom we were on good terms, consented to the arrangement, on condition that a passport and guide should be at once given us. Both one and the other were soon supplied; but instead of sixty-seven lans (about 17*l.*), which was the price fixed on for the articles, the mandarin only sent fifty lans (12*l.* 10*s.*), informing me that he would pay me the remainder of the money at my next visit. I was reluctant to re-open negotiations for such a trifle, and giving orders to pack the camels notwithstanding the approach of evening, we started from Ding-hu.

The Mongol *zanghin* joined us on the road, and related how on hearing that I wished to go without his leave, the mandarin had exclaimed angrily, 'I

<sup>1</sup> A subaltern officer of the rank of cornet. Timkowski's 'Travels,' i. 11.

'will cut off his head,' and ordered us to be put under a guard. Such is the civility shown to Europeans in China, where the only name applied to us is that of '*foreign devils!*'

## CHAPTER VI.

## ALA-SHAN.

The Eleuths—Extent and character of Ala-shan—Sandy tracts of Ala-shan—Flour of the Sulhir grass—Flora and Fauna of Ala-shan—Birds of Ala-shan—Population of Ala-shan—Mongols of Ala-shan—Lake Tsagan-nor—Route to Din-yuan-ing—Arrival there—Din-yuan-ing and the Prince—The Prince of Ala-shan and his family—The Gigen—Lama Baldin-Sordji—Curiosity of the people—Intercourse with the younger Princes—Questions about Europe—Openings for trade—Stories about the Dalai Lama—‘Shambaling,’ the Promised Land—The Promised Land of ‘Shambaling’—State visit to the Prince—Interview with Prince of Ala-shan—Views of the Anglo-French war—We proceed to the mountains—Mountains of Ala-shan—Birds of Ala-shan mountains—Birds and Mammals of Ala-shan—The kuku-yamans or mountain sheep—Shooting them in the mountains—A frightened herd—Desperate leap—Return to Din-yuan-ing—Obliged to retrace our steps.

THE southern part of the high plateau of the Gobi, to the west of the middle course of the Hoang-ho, is a wild and barren desert, inhabited by Oliut (Eleuth) Mongols,<sup>1</sup> and known by the name of Ala-

<sup>1</sup> The Oliut, Eleuth, or Öloth Mongols are sometimes alleged to have derived their name from Oliutai, one of the princes of the Yuen or Chinghizid dynasty after its expulsion from China, and this would be quite consistent with Tartar practice (e.g. the *Chagatais* and the *Uzbeks*). But a more probable signification seems to be ‘the Separated.’ The title has been applied for some centuries to the western hordes, extending from the sources of the Selenga and the Orkhon, to the Thian-Shan and the Upper Irtish. They were divided into four great bodies or clans, Dzungar, Turgut, Khoshod, and Turbet (whence also called *Durban-oirad* or the Four Allies); and connected with them are also those further west, known to the Mahommedans as Kal-

shan or Trans-Ordos.<sup>1</sup> This region is covered with bare sand-drift, extending on the west to the River Etsina,<sup>2</sup> on the south to the lofty mountains of the province of Kan-su, and on the north disappearing altogether in the unfruitful clay flats of the central Gobi desert. These are the natural as well as the political boundaries of Ala-shan, which is bordered by the Khalka<sup>3</sup> and Urute countries on the north, and by the province of Kan-su and a small part of Ordos on the other sides.

Topographically Ala-shan is a perfectly level plain, which, like Ordos, in all probability once formed the bed of a huge lake or inland sea. This fact is evidenced by the level area of the whole region, its hard saline clay and sand-covered soil, and lastly the salt lakes, which are formed in the lowest parts

maks. The Turgut branch of the Eleuths, early in the eighteenth century, carried their conquests and migrations westward to the Volga; and it was this horde which in 1771 made that extraordinary re-migration in mass to the Chinese territory of which T. de Quincey has given such an extraordinary description. The Eleuths of Ala-shan were, according to Tiinkowski, settled there by the emperor Kang-hi in 1686, having been driven from their own seats by Galdan Khan, of Dzungaria.—Y.

<sup>1</sup> *Trans-Ordos* is, I presume, a name given by the traveller himself, but it is a very inconvenient style of nomenclature. The *trans* in this case is not even from the Russian, but from the Peking standpoint.—Y.

<sup>2</sup> The *Etsina* river runs northward into the desert from the vicinity of Kanchau, and on its banks no doubt stood the city of *Etsina*, 'on the verge of the Sandy Desert,' of which Marco Polo makes mention in the route to Kara-Korum.—Y.

<sup>3</sup> The *Khalkas* form another and the most important of the modern great divisions of the Mongol tribes. The name was given apparently in the latter days of the Ming dynasty (*circa* 1600), to the tribes on the north of the Gobi, then independent of China; and those bearing it extend over 30 degrees of longitude, from the Manchu country westward to the Ili.—Y.

where the last remnant of its ancient waters are collected.

The desert of Ala-shan for many dozens, aye, hundreds of miles presents nothing but naked sands, ever ready to overpower the traveller with their burning heat or smother him beneath their sandstorms. Some of these sands are so extensive as to be called by the Mongols *Tingeri*, i.e. 'sky.' Not a drop of water is to be found in them; no birds, no animals are visible; and their deathlike solitude fills with involuntary dread the soul of the man who has wandered here.

The Kuzupchi or sandy tracts of Ordos appear small in comparison with those of Ala-shan. Amid the former oases may occasionally be seen covered with vegetation; whilst here no such spots relieve the boundless expanse of yellow sand, alternating with vast areas of saline clay, and nearer the mountains with bare shingle. Such vegetation as may be seen is of the poorest description, comprising only a few stunted bushes and some dozens of kinds of grasses. In both one and the other category the *saxaul*, called by the Mongols *zak* (*Haloxylon* sp.), and the grass *sulhir* (*Agriophyllum Gobicum*), are most prominent.

In Ala-shan the *saxaul* or *zak* has an arborescent growth of 10 to 12 feet in height, with a thickness of half-a-foot,<sup>1</sup> and is generally found on the bare sand. Its wood is too knotty and porous to be of any use in handicraft, but it makes excellent fuel, and

<sup>1</sup> Occasional trees may be seen, 18 feet high, with a stem a foot thick.



its leafless but juicy and prickly branches are the chief food of the camels of Ala-shan. The Mongols pitch their yurtas beneath the shelter of these trees, which protect them in some degree from the wintry blasts on the bleak steppe; it is said, too, that you can obtain water sooner by sinking wells in places where the zak grows than elsewhere.

The range of the zak is very limited in Ala-shan, being only found in the northern part of this country. In the Gobi, however, it grows sporadically on the sand as far as the 42nd parallel N. lat.<sup>1</sup>

The grass *sulhir* is of even greater importance to the inhabitants of Ala-shan than the zak, and may be called, without exaggeration, the 'gift of the desert.' It attains a height of two (rarely three) feet, growing on the bare sand, generally near the borders of sandy wastes devoid of vegetation. This prickly saline plant blossoms in August, and its small seeds, yielding an agreeable and nutritious food, ripen in the end of September. The crop of *sulhir* is best after a rainy summer; in a drought it withers, and then the Mongols of Ala-shan fare badly the whole year round.

To obtain the seeds of the *sulhir* the Mongols gather the grass and thrash it on the bare clay, patches of which often occur in the midst of the

<sup>1</sup> The zak also grows in Ordos and Tsaidam, and is distributed over the whole of Central Asia to Turkestan.

Mr. Macgahan describes the *saxaul* of Western Turkestan as 'a low, scraggy, gnarly bush, varying from a foot to six feet high. The wood is very hard and brittle, so that it is more easily broken than cut, and it is so hardy that it flourishes even in the bleakest and most desolate places.' (*Campaigning on the Oxus*, p. 45.)—Y.

sands. The seeds are first roasted over a slow fire, then pounded in a mortar, when they produce a very palatable flour which is boiled in tea. We tasted the sulhir flour in Ala-shan, and took a supply of it with us for the return journey. The sulhir also serves as excellent food for the domestic animals: horses, camels, and sheep are all very fond of it. This plant also grows in Ordos and the central Gobi on the bare sand, and we found it in Tsaidam. The other kinds of plants in Ala-shan are mostly the same as those we had seen in Ordos. On the clay the *budarhana*, the *karmyk* often forming hillocky mounds, the prickly convolvulus (*Convolvulus tragacanthoides*),<sup>1</sup> the field wormwood, and an occasional acacia are most common; among the grasses *Inula amophila*, *Sophora flavescens*, *Convolvulus Ammani*, *Peganum* sp., *Astragalus* sp., and others are met with. But the scanty, crooked, and stunted vegetation of the desert generally leaves an unfavourable impression. There is no energy in the life of this region, the stamp of apathy and decay is upon it; everything seems to grow unwillingly as if under compulsion, receiving only sufficient nourishment from the poor soil to prevent it from withering altogether.

The poverty of Ala-shan in flora is equalled by that of its fauna. None of the larger mammals except the *kara-sulta* inhabit the desert; wolves, foxes, hares, and hedgehogs (*Erinaceus auritus*?) are

<sup>1</sup> This low and very prickly shrub, which generally grows in clumps, is called by the Mongols, *Dzara*, i.e. hedgehog.

found. Of the smaller rodents there are two kinds of sand martens ; one of them lives entirely among the bushes of zak, and honeycombs the earth with its burrows so that it is often quite impossible to ride over such spots on horseback. All day long you can hear the squeak of these little animals—a sound as dull and monotonous as everything else in Ala-shan.

Among birds the most remarkable is the *kolo-djoro* (*Podoces Hendersoni*), about the size of our starling, and resembling the hoopoe in its flight. This bird is in every respect the bird of the desert, and is only to be seen in its wildest parts. Wherever the soil becomes more productive the kolo-djoro disappears ; hence this bird, like the kara-sulta, is always an unwelcome sight to the traveller. We found it in Kan-su, and then again in Tsaidam ; its range northwards in the Gobi extends to  $44\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N. lat.<sup>1</sup>

Of other birds in Ala-shan the most common are the *sandgrouse* (*Syrrhaptes paradoxus*), which visit this region in great flocks during winter, larks (*Alauda pispoletta?* *Otocoris albigula*, *Gabrita cristata?*), stonechats (*Saxicola deserti*) and among the zak bushes sparrows (*Passer* sp.). In summer small cranes (*Grus virgo*) also visit this country, where they feed on the innumerable lizards which appear in the desert. If there are no marshes in the vicinity, the cranes come to drink at the wells, and being unmolested by man become very tame.

<sup>1</sup> But this bird is met with in the far west, where it was discovered by Forsyth's expedition, in 1870, from Lahore to Yarkand.

These are nearly all the birds of the desert of Ala-shan. Migratory birds fly at a great height without stopping. At all events we only saw towards evening flocks of cranes sitting on the sand to pass the night in order to resume their flight early the next morning. Even magpies and crows are not seen in the plains of Ala-shan ; and it is but now and then that a solitary kite sails along over the tent of the traveller, in the expectation of devouring the remnants of his meal.

Of the class of reptiles, lizards (*Phrynocephalus* sp., in smaller numbers *Eremias* sp.) are innumerable. These lizards are almost the exclusive food of the cranes, buzzards, and kites ; even gulls fly hither from the Hoang-ho to seek this prey ; wolves, foxes, and Mongol dogs also feed on these reptiles for want of something better to eat.

The population of Ala-shan is composed of Oliut (Eleuth) Mongols, to which race some of the inhabitants of Koko-nor, the Turguts,<sup>1</sup> and our Kalmucks belong. The Mongols of Ala-shan are very different in external appearance from the Khalkas, and appear to be a mixed race between the latter and the Chinese. Under the influence of the Celestials they have undergone a considerable change in character, and are not even surpassed by their neighbours in opium-smoking. Chinese industry, however, is unknown here, and Mongol laziness is preserved in all its original ugliness. Such is the influence everywhere exercised by the Chinese over the

<sup>1</sup> *Vide supra*, p. 231.

Mongols, tending rather to degrade than to civilise them. Here we have another example of the degrading tendency of Chinese civilisation on the nomads. No more contemptible creature exists, in my opinion, on the face of this earth than a Mongol who has fallen under Chinese influence and has lost the fine qualities which distinguish his race, only adopting instead new, vicious habits most congenial to the idle side of the nomad character. This nondescript possesses neither the frankness of the Mongol nor the industry of the Chinese, although he sets himself above his former fellows.

The language of the Mongols of Ala-shan is in many respects different from that of the Khalkas, from which it is also distinguished by its softer accent and more rapid pronunciation.

The Mongols of Ala-shan are very poor. Their chief occupation is breeding camels, which are used to transport salt and different Chinese merchandise. Sheep, horses, and horned cattle are not numerous, owing to the absence of pasturage; goats are more abundant, and herds of yaks, belonging to the sovereign prince and his sons, graze in the mountains.

Ala-shan is divided into three banners, for administrative purposes; but the population is small. The inhabitants were still further reduced in numbers by the Dungans, who devastated Ala-shan simultaneously with Ordos.<sup>1</sup> The town of Din-

<sup>1</sup> According to information we received from the natives, the number of yurtas remaining in Ala-shan after the Dungan invasion was about one thousand. Taking the average of 5 to 6 per yurta, we should have 5 to 6 thousand inhabitants for the whole country.

yuan-ing (Wei-tching-pu) alone escaped this fate; it is the residence of the ruling prince, and lies to the west of the Ala-shan mountains.

To this place we proceeded after leaving Ding-hu. However, after one day's march we halted for three days at the yurta of our friend the Mongol zanghin. Of him we purchased a camel and exchanged two of our own which had sore backs; we were also obliged to halt to rest the sick Cossack who fortunately soon recovered. Our former guide, Djuldjig, was left behind at Ding-hu, and in his stead, with the assistance of the same zanghin, we hired another one, who, although a Mongol, was a Mahomedan and an excellent fellow. He accompanied us to Din-yuan-ing, which is 125 miles from Bautu. The road is a mere track almost obliterated in places, and one must know the country well not to lose oneself. We saw no inhabitants, but wells are dug at intervals of 16 or 20 miles, and postal yurtas are stationed near them.

On the second day's march we passed a small lake, *Tsagan-nor*, and close beside it a spring of pure cold water—a rare sight in these countries. Two large willows sheltered the spot, which the Mongols held sacred. We were greatly rejoiced at this discovery, not having tasted good water for more than a month, and therefore determined to halt.

The limpid streams from the well only flow for a few dozen paces, but the plot of ground which they water is bright green covered with such grass as can be found nowhere in the desert.



The immigration of birds which began in August increased in September, as many as eighteen kinds having made their appearance in the early part of this month. But the birds of passage mostly keep to the valley of the Hoang-ho, and only visit the desert of Ala-shan in small numbers. Here they fare badly, for many of them perish from hunger or thirst in the wilderness, and I found numbers of dead thrushes, which dissection proved to have evidently died from starvation. My companion once picked up in a dry ravine near the axis of the lofty Ala-shan mountains, a mallard so exhausted as to allow itself to be caught in the hand.

The summer heats were now over, and we could march without great fatigue. The loose sands, ranged in small mounds like those in Ordos, surrounded us with a boundless yellow plain which was lost in the horizon. The road led through bushes of zak, frequently crossing the ridges of sand. The fate of the traveller who loses himself in these trackless wastes would indeed be terrible, especially in summer, when the desert becomes as hot as an oven.

Fifty miles before arriving at Din-yuan-ing the bare sands recede to the right of the road, which now continues through a plain of clay and sand for the most part, covered with rare clumps of the field wormwood, called by the Mongols *sharaldja*, and used by them for fuel. This plain extends as far as the Ala-shan mountains, which rise like a huge rampart, and may be seen 60 miles off; snow lay on

some of the summits of the mountains at this season, although none of them attain the level of perpetual snow.

On September 26th we arrived at the town of Din-yuan-ing, and for the first time during the expedition received a hospitable welcome from its prince, by whose order three officials came to meet us, and led us to a house previously prepared for our use. I should mention, however, that while we were still a whole day's march from the town, three other officials met us, sent by the prince to know who we were. One of their first questions was, 'Were we missionaries?' and only after receiving an answer in the negative would they shake hands with us. They said that if we had been missionaries the prince would not have allowed us to enter the town. Indeed, one of the chief elements of our success was the resolution we formed not to trouble anyone with our religious opinions.

The town of Din-yuan-ing, as we have stated, is the place of residence of the ruling prince of Ala-shan. It is 10 miles from the central part of the Ala-shan mountains, and 53 miles to the north-west of the large Chinese town of Ning-hia-fu,<sup>1</sup> in the pro-

<sup>1</sup> The Mongols call this town *Irgai*. [This is an interesting fact, and shows (what I have questioned in 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed., i. 273), that Klaproth was right in deducing from a statement of Rashiduddin, in his Persian History of the Mongols, that *Irghai* was identical with Ning-hia-fu, the capital of the king whose wife Chinghiz appropriated (*supra*, p. 203). There remains some difficulty in identifying *topographically* Ninghia with either the *Egrigaya* of Marco Polo (Book I. ch. lviii.), or his *Ergui-ul* (ch. lvii.), though we can hardly doubt that the *name* Irghai lies hid in one or other of these. And there seems little doubt that in the principality of Ala-shan we have substantially

vince of Kan-su. The Chinese call this town Wang-pu, and the Mongols Alasha-yamen, i.e. place of government of Ala-shan.

Din-yuan-ing consists of a fortress with a mud wall a mile in circumference. At the time of our visit this wall was prepared to withstand a siege, and we could see stones and beams laid on the battlements in readiness for the enemy's attack. In front of the principal wall on the northern side three small mud forts were built surrounded with a palisade.

The prince himself lives within the fortress, where some Chinese shops and the barracks of the Mongol soldiery are situated. Outside the principal barrier several hundred houses formerly stood, but they were all destroyed by the Dungans, who were, however, unable to take the fortress. Everything outside the wall was destroyed, including the suburban palace of the prince, two-thirds of a mile from the town, standing in a small park. This park, which formerly contained ponds with water, looks like enchanted ground in comparison with the surrounding wilderness.

Such is the external appearance of the town of Din-yuan-ing. Let us now describe its inhabitants.

The most remarkable personage among them is of course the ruling prince, or, as he is called here, the 'Amban.'<sup>1</sup> He ranks in the second class of

Polo's district of Tangut called Egrigaya, of which the capital was called *Calachan*. This place is also mentioned by Rashiduddin as *Khalaján*, one of the cities of Tangut.—Y.]

<sup>1</sup> We could not ascertain the name of this prince because the Mongols consider it wrong to mention the names of their chiefs, and still worse to tell them to any stranger.

princes, and governs Ala-shan on the principles of mediæval feudalism. By origin a Mongol, this prince has become quite a Chinese, the more so on account of his family ties with the Imperial house, having received in marriage one of the princesses. A few years ago his wife died, and he now lives with concubines.

The prince himself is a man of forty, with a good-looking face, but rather pale, owing to his being addicted to smoking opium. In character he is corrupt and despotic to the last degree. The gratification of a whim, a sudden outburst of passion, or the desire for revenge, override the dictates of calm judgment and discretion; in fact his own sweet will replaces every law and is implicitly obeyed without the slightest opposition from anybody. But the same system prevails throughout the whole of Mongolia and China. Nothing but the ignorance of the masses could allow such a state of society to continue, which under other circumstances would inevitably lead to the dismemberment of the empire.

The prince of Ala-shan passes all his time in the seclusion of his house, smoking opium, and never appears in the streets; formerly he used occasionally to visit Peking, but the insurrection of the Dungans put an end to these journeys.

The Amban has three full-grown sons, the eldest of whom will be his heir; the second has entered the monastic order; and the youngest, by name *Siya*,<sup>1</sup> has no fixed profession.

<sup>1</sup> The name and title of this prince, as he wrote it himself in my

The Gigen is a handsome youth of twenty-one, with a bright impetuous disposition, quite spoilt, however, by his training : he cannot bear the slightest contradiction, and considers his opinion infallible. Owing to his want of intellect and culture he gets quite confused with all the silly stuff which the lamas are constantly talking to him, about his transmigration, miracles, and sanctity. Without troubling himself to reason for himself, the Gigen takes everything for granted in the most unconcerned way, and looks upon his profession as the source of great power, and of emolument arising from the offerings of zealous believers. Nevertheless his youthful spirit seeks for something better, and frets at the narrow routine of daily prayers, prophecies, and dispensation of blessings. To satisfy his craving for liberty the youth devotes himself to the chase, and for days together, accompanied by a posse of lamas, hunts the fox in the environs of the town. Subsequently he bought one of our guns and amused himself by shooting birds in his suburban garden. But his numerous devotees will not allow the poor Gigen to enjoy even this sport in peace. Once while on a shooting excursion with my companion he requested the latter to drive these suppliants away because they crowded round him and frightened the birds. Of course it is contrary to etiquette for a Buddhist saint to go a hunting, but the lamas

note-book, was *Olos-on Tushige-gun-dzyrgeh Nehmensen Balchin-bandzarguchan*. The title and name of the Gigen : *Alasha-ing Tsin-wang koshung uyon Sayeng Batargulokchi sumch Nomon khan djantsuvandjil*.

of his suite dare not hint at such a thing to their master, who keeps them under strict discipline. In consequence of the Dungan insurrection the Gigen organised a force of lamas 200 strong, armed with English smooth-bore guns sent from Peking, to beat off the marauders, who still make frequent raids into Ala-shan.

The youngest son of the prince of Ala-shan—Siya, bears some resemblance in character to the Gigen, and is a decidedly wild youth. He himself told us that he hated books and science, but liked war, sport, and riding horses. He is certainly an excellent rider; on the occasion of a foxhunt which the two brothers arranged for us he distanced all his companions in the chase.

The eldest son we only saw once, and therefore I have nothing to say about him. His intimate friends described this prince to be unlike his brothers in character, but rather reserved in manner and dignified, as a future ruler should be.

Besides these personages we must mention a lama named Baldin-Sordji, who is a confidential adviser of the prince and his sons. This very Sordji in early life ran away to Tibet, in the company of a caravan of pilgrims; after passing eight years at Lhasa he learned the Buddhist mysteries and returned to Ala-shan a lama. Cunning and sagacious by nature, Sordji soon gained the confidence of the Amban, and was promoted to a high office. By command of the prince, he travels every year to Peking to make different purchases; he has even



visited Kiakhta, where he became acquainted with the Russians.

Sordji was very useful to us, owing to his willingness to serve us and the important position he held in the town. Without him we might not have been so well received by the prince and his sons. He was one of the three persons sent out to meet us and to enquire who we were, and he explained to the prince of Ala-shan that we really were Russians and no other kind of foreigners. *Russian*, however, is the generic name applied to all Europeans by the Mongols, with the affix *French* or *English* according as they wish to designate either Frenchmen or Englishmen; the nomads believe that the two last-named nations are vassals of the Tsagan-Khan, i.e. White Tsar.

On entering Din-yuan-ing we were met outside the town by an immense crowd of people who followed us and filled every corner of the courtyard in the Chinese inn where we were located. The landlord of this inn was evidently displeased at our lodging with him, and he was a long time in finding the key of the house assigned for our use. At last the key was found; we unloaded the camels, carried everything into the house, and soon after our meal lay down to sleep, as it was late, and we were very tired with our long march. The following day from the early morning our rest was disturbed by the inquisitive rascals, who invaded the yard, climbed on to our house, and tore slits in the paper windows through which to look at us. Our military guard

tried in vain to keep back the mob; no sooner had they driven out one set than ten minutes afterwards another collected; this continued all day during the whole of our stay at Din-yuan-ing, especially during the earlier part of the time. We could do nothing, for no sooner did we show ourselves than we attracted general attention. It was provoking to have to sit with folded hands in a dirty house just at a time when the migration of birds was at its height, and with the great wooded mountains of Ala-shan near us. But the traveller, more than anyone, must submit to circumstances, and we accordingly resigned ourselves.

Two days after our arrival at the town of Ala-shan we had an interview with the two younger sons of the prince, the Gigen and Siya, five days later with the eldest brother, and not till the eighth day with the Amban himself. We had to give presents to all of them, in accordance with the intimation we had received beforehand from the three officials who met us on our arrival. Having nothing with me specially adapted for the purpose, I gave to the prince a watch and aneroid unfit for use; to his eldest son a binocular glass, and to the Gigen and Siya sundry small articles, such as hunting accoutrements and gunpowder. In return for these, we received from the prince and his sons some valuable presents: a pair of horses, a bag of rhubarb, and a loaf of Russian sugar, imported into Ala-shan by way of Kiakhta. Besides which our friends the Gigen and Siya gave me a silver bracelet, and a

gold ring to my companion, as keepsakes. Altogether the Amban and his sons, especially the two younger, were very well disposed towards us, and were constantly giving us proofs of their goodwill. Every day they sent us baskets of water-melons, apples and pears, from their garden, which were the more appreciated after our long privations in the desert ; the old prince once sent us a dinner composed of numerous Chinese dishes of different kinds. The Gigen and Siya accompanied us on several shooting excursions, and we often passed the evening with them, sometimes chatting till late at night. Although it was difficult to keep up a conversation through the medium of an interpreter, we managed to pass our time pleasantly, and enjoyed it the more because we escaped for a time, at all events, the restraint imposed on us at our own house. The young princes appeared quite at their ease in our society, laughed and joked, and sometimes even played games or performed gymnastic exercises. In the course of conversation Siya asked many questions about Europe, and the life there ; its people, machinery, railroads, telegraphs, &c. &c. The accounts we gave seemed fabulous to them, and excited their desire to see with their own eyes all the wonders we described ; they entreated to be allowed to return with us to Russia. Sometimes they showed us different European articles bought at Peking and Kiakhta, such as revolvers, swordsticks, musical boxes, watches, and even bottles of eau-de-Cologne.

In the meanwhile our proposed interview with the old prince was postponed on various pretexts, and before that event had taken place we could not proceed to the mountains. The Lama Sordji and other officials visited us every day, and we sold them all our Peking ware at a profit of thirty or forty per cent. The Russian articles (needles, soap, pocket-knives, beads, snuff-boxes, looking glasses) realised a far higher profit; we certainly had not many of them, but the few dozen rubles' worth remaining of our stock of these goods realised 700 per cent. more than their cost price. Of course this is an exceptional case, but I think that if a regular trade were established, not only here but throughout Mongolia, it might become very profitable. Of course some knowledge and experience are requisite to ascertain what kinds of goods are in greatest demand. I think the most important articles of export from Russia would be woollen stuffs, cloth, and Russia leather, which are even now exported to China in considerable quantities. But perhaps the demand for hardware, such as scissors, knives, razors, copper vessels, iron saucepans, &c. would be even greater. All these articles are indispensable for the domestic life of the nomads, who now receive them, but of very inferior quality, from China. Another article of export might be yellow and red silk stuffs, such as are worn by the lamas; also coral, which is highly prized in Mongolia, brocade, red beads, needles, watches, snuff-boxes, looking-glasses, stereoscopes, pencils, and other small articles. One of

our most constant visitors was the Lama Sordji, who came several times a day, and told us a great deal about Tibet. He related, amongst other things, that the pilgrims arriving at Lhasa were not allowed to see the Dalai Lama before having paid from three to five lans the first time, and one lan the second and every succeeding occasion of their seeing the incarnate deity. But this scale of charges refers only to the poorer people, who are provided with lodging and food at the cost of the sovereign of Tibet. The wealthier classes and the princes who come to make their devotions bring large and sometimes very rich presents to the Dalai Lama.

The present Dalai Lama is a boy of eighteen, and, as we heard the Buddhists relate, obtained his seat on the throne in the following manner. A short time before the death of his predecessor, a Tibetan woman came to pray at the temple. Hardly had the saint set eyes on her than he prophesied that she would become the mother of his successor. He then gave her bread and some kind of fruit, after partaking of which the woman conceived. Soon afterwards the Dalai Lama died, having named this woman as the mother of his successor. It is certain that the very moment the infant was born a miraculous stream of milk flowed from the post which supported the yurta, in proof of the holy calling and great sanctity of the new-born babe.

Another very interesting tale related by Sordji was the prophecy about Shambaling, the promised land of the Buddhists, to which at some future time

all the followers of this religion will migrate from Tibet.

This country is an island lying far away in the northern sea. Gold abounds in it; corn grows to an enormous height there. Poverty is unknown in that country; in fact, Shambaling flows with milk and honey. The migration of the Buddhists to this promised land should take place 2,500 years after the date of the prophecy; since that time 2,050 years have elapsed, and comparatively not many remain.

The mode of accomplishment of the prophecy will be as follows. In Western Tibet there lives a Gigen (living Buddha), who as the living incarnation of the Divinity never dies, but only passes from one body to another. Not long before the time appointed for the fulfilment of the prophecy, this saint will be born in the person of the son of the King of Shambaling. In the meanwhile the Dungans will have become more troublesome than ever, and will have laid waste the whole of Tibet. Then the people of the latter country, under the leadership of the Dalai Lama, will abandon their fatherland and set off for Shambaling, where they will be received and colonised on good lands by their saint, who will have succeeded his father on the throne.

Meanwhile the Dungans, emboldened by their successes in Tibet, will subjugate the whole of Asia, Europe, and lastly invade Shambaling. Then the holy monarch will assemble his forces, defeat the Dungans, and drive them back to their country, and



make the Buddhist faith supreme in all countries submitted to his rule.

This Gigen even now pays secret visits to Shambaling. For this purpose he has a wonderful horse, who is always saddled, and ready to take his rider in one night from Tibet to the promised land and back again. These journeys became known to the common people quite by accident.

The Gigen had a servant who one night wishing to visit his home clandestinely took his master's sacred steed. The miraculous animal sped like an arrow from the bow into the distance. After a few hours' ride trees began to appear, then lakes and rivers, which do not exist in the servant's country; at length the frightened rider turned his horse's head back. In doing this he broke off a branch of a tree to whip the horse in case he should tire; but this never happened, and towards dawn the servant again returned to the temple, wiped the horse down, and led him back to his stable.

Meanwhile the saint awoke, and at once knew what had occurred. Summoning his servant, he asked him whither he had ridden that night. Thus unexpectedly detected, the servant did not attempt to deny what he had done, but declared that he himself did not know where he had been. Then said the saint, 'Thou hast ridden nearly as far as the happy land of Shambaling, whither my horse knows the road, and no other. Show me the branch thou hast brought back with thee; behold, there are no such trees as this in Tibet, they grow not far from Shambaling.'

At the conclusion of his tale Sordji asked if I did not know where Shambaling was. In that country, added the lama, there is an enormous city wherein lives a queen, who since the death of her husband has ruled her people. I suggested England. 'Well, that must be Shambaling,' exclaimed the delighted Sordji, and begged me to show him the country on the map.

At last, on the eighth day of our stay at Dinyuan-ing, we received an invitation from the Amban to visit him. The lama Sordji first asked us, probably at the instigation of the prince himself, how we should salute their sovereign—according to our own custom, or in the Mongolian way, i. e. by falling on our knees. On being told that we should of course bow in the European fashion, Sordji begged us to prostrate ourselves before the Amban, or at all events that our Cossack interpreter should do so; but we peremptorily refused.

The visit took place at eight in the evening, in the reception chamber of the Amban. This apartment was very nicely furnished; it actually contained a large European mirror, purchased at Peking for 150 lans (about 37*l.*). Lighted stearine candles in plated candlesticks stood on the tables, on which was spread an entertainment, consisting of nuts, cakes, Russian sweetmeats with mottoes, apples, pears, &c.

When we entered and bowed to the prince, he invited us to sit down in the places prepared for us; the Cossack stood near the door. Besides the Amban, some rich Chinese merchant, as I afterwards

learned, was in the house. At the doors of the house, and in the entrance-hall, stood the aides-de-camp of the prince and his sons, who were also obliged to be present during our reception.

After the usual enquiries about our health and safe journey, the Amban said that no Russian had ever before visited Ala-shan ; that he now for the



RUINS OF CHAPEL OF SISTERS OF MERCY AT TIEN-TSIN, DESTROYED BY CHINESE RIOTERS (from a Photograph by J. Thomson, Esq., F.R.G.S.).

first time saw these foreigners, and was very glad of our visit.

He then began asking us about Russia. What was our religion ; how did we cultivate the soil ;

how were stearine candles manufactured ; how did people travel on railways ; and how were likenesses taken by photography ? ‘ Is it true,’ asked the prince, ‘ that the liquid matter from human eyes is used in photography ? It is reported,’ continued he, ‘ that the missionaries at Tientsin put out the eyes of the children whom they had taken to educate for this purpose, which so enraged the people that they put all the missionaries to death.’<sup>1</sup> On my answering him in the negative, the prince begged me to bring him a machine for taking portraits, and I could hardly excuse myself by assuring him that the glasses would infallibly be broken on the road.

The prince then asked what tribute the French and English paid as vassals of Russia. When I answered the Amban that I had never heard of such a thing, he urged me to tell him whether the above-mentioned nations made war with China with our consent or of their own free will. ‘ In any case,’ continued the prince, ‘ it was only the exceeding kindness of our Emperor that allowed these barbarians to depart from beneath the walls of his capital without being destroyed to a man ; as a punishment for their savagery they had to pay a large contribution.’<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> At Tientsin, in July 1870, the common people rebelled, killed twenty Frenchmen and three Russians ; the latter were accidentally among the number. The instigators of this tumult assured the people that the French Sisters of Mercy, who undertake the education of children, afterwards put out their eyes to obtain the liquid necessary for the preparation of photographic likenesses. This report circulated all through China, and was credulously believed.

<sup>2</sup> The opinion that during the last Anglo-French war with China the Europeans, and not the Chinese, were the vanquished, is universal throughout the whole of inner Asia, wherever we travelled. Certainly

All this time our friends, the sons of the prince, the Gigen and Siya, who were in the reception chamber, made signs to us on their fingers, laughed, and played all sorts of childish tricks whenever their father's attention was turned another way. The relations of the young princes to their father appeared to be of the most servile character; they were terribly afraid of him, and obeyed all his wishes unhesitatingly. The princes also kept up an espionage, and were not ashamed even in our presence to whisper to the lamas in attendance all kinds of tittle-tattle and gossip about their father and brother; towards their inferiors they behaved in the most despotic manner.

Our audience lasted about an hour. On taking leave the prince gave the Cossack interpreter twenty lans (5*l.*), and permitted us to hunt in the neighbouring mountains. Thither we proceeded the following day, pitching our tent at the summit of a pass near the axis of the main range. Our camels remained in the town, in the charge of Sordji and the Cossack, who was again taken ill more seriously than before; the chief cause of his malady was home-sickness. The prince sent us some guides and another lama, probably to act as a spy on our movements.

The mountains to which we now removed are,

to the Asiatic mind an enemy who appears beneath the walls of a hostile city and does not destroy it, is no victor, but rather the conquered party. The Chinese Government took advantage of this circumstance to spread the report among their faithful subjects of their victory over the Europeans. [Yet they can scarcely have suppressed the knowledge of the destruction of the emperor's summer-palace; and that just act of the English chiefs, which raised so unreasonable a clamour, finds in the circumstances here stated a new justification.—Y.]



as we have said, about ten miles from the town of Din-yuan-ing, and form the boundary between Ala-shan and the province of Kan-su. The whole range is known under the name of Ala-shan. It rises from the very shore of the Hoang-ho, opposite to where the Arbus-ula mountains in Ordos abut on the river, i.e. about fifty-five miles south of the town of Ding-hu. From this point the range we are describing extends, from north to south, along the left bank of the River, from which it gradually diverges. The total length of the whole range, according to the Mongols, is about 150 miles, but its width is very inconsiderable, and about the centre does not exceed seventeen miles. These mountains, however, rise abruptly from the valley, and are wild and alpine in character, especially on their eastern slopes, which are girt with enormous perpendicular cliffs, 700 to 800 feet in height, and seamed with deep valleys, in fact are marked with all the features of wild alpine scenery. No solitary peaks tower above the chief axis of the range, the highest points of which are *Bayan Tsumbur* and *Bugutui*, about its centre. The former of these mountains is 10,600 feet high, the latter about 1,000 feet higher. But between these two mountains the range subsides sufficiently to allow of a pass, the only one across it, by which the road leads to the large Chinese town of Ning-hia-fu.

Notwithstanding their height, the mountains of Ala-shan nowhere attain the limit of perpetual snow.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In September, when we saw the Ala-shan mountains for the first



Even on the highest summits the snow all melts in spring, although it sometimes falls in May and June, when it is raining on the neighbouring plains. The rain and snowfall on these mountains is very large, although running water is remarkably scanty; even springs are rare, and according to the Mongols only two running streams of any size occur in the whole range.<sup>1</sup> This phenomenon is attributable to the wall-like steepness of these mountains, which do not retain the moisture for sufficient time to allow of the formation of rivers. The torrents, which owe their short-lived existence to the heavy rains, descend headlong to the neighbouring desert, and are lost in the sands or form temporary lakes on the clay flats; but as soon as the rain ceases they disappear as suddenly as they were created.

The narrow, but at the same time lofty and rocky, chain of the Ala-shan mountains has been elevated by subterranean agency, and stands like a rampart in the midst of surrounding plains, exhibiting a peculiar formation, and forming quite a distinct group, as far as we could learn, unconnected with the ranges of the Upper Hoang-ho; it terminates in the sandy deserts in the south-eastern corner of Ala-shan. The chief rocks in these mountains are slates, limestone, felspar, felspathic porphyry, granu-

time, snow lay on some of the peaks on the northern side; from the end of that month snow, accompanied by rain, always fell in the upper and central zone of the mountains.

<sup>1</sup> Both these streams have their sources in Mount Bugutui. One of them, the Bugutui-gol, flows to the west, and the other, the Keshikteh-Murren, to the eastern slope of the mountains. On leaving the mountains both these streams are lost in the desert.

lite, gneiss, micaceous sandstone, and, the later volcanic formations; on the summit of Mount Bugutui the rocks are partly of quartzose conglomerate. Excellent coal-beds have been opened in the Ala-shan range.<sup>1</sup>

The borders of the mountains of Ala-shan nearest to the plains are only covered with grass and small rare underwood, but at a height of about 7,500 feet on the western slopes there are forests consisting of spruce interspersed with poplar and willow. On the eastern side the forests probably begin lower down, but the prevailing trees even here are small poplars, with a sprinkling of white birch, pine, and arborescent juniper. The thick underwood of these forests is chiefly composed of spiræa and hazel, and in the upper zone of prickly *Caragana jubata*, called by the Mongols 'camel's tail;' the highest parts of the mountains are covered with alpine pastures.<sup>2</sup>

Formerly a good number of Mongols lived in these mountains, and three temples were erected there, but these have been destroyed by the Dungans.

The ornithological fauna of the Ala-shan range, contrary to our expectations, was very poor, chiefly owing, in my opinion, to the want of water. On the occasion of our first visit the season was the middle of autumn, and a large number of birds had flown south, but in the summer of 1873 we found a similar scarcity of birds here.

<sup>1</sup> Before the Dungan ravages the coal was worked in small quantities by the Chinese.

<sup>2</sup> A more detailed description of the flora of the Ala-shan mountains will be given in Volume II. Chapter VIII.

The most remarkable of the native birds of the Ala-shan mountains is the long-eared pheasant (*Crossoptilon auritum*), called by the Mongols *kara-takia*, i.e. black hen. It belongs to a peculiar species, distinguished from other pheasants by a bunch of long feathers in the back of the head, like the ears of an owl; the *kara-takia* is much larger than the common pheasant, has strong legs, and a large roof-shaped tail, the four central feathers of which are long and pennated. The general colour of the plumage is leaden blue; the feathers of the tail are white near the root, turning to steel colour at the ends. The long ear feathers and throat are white; the bare skin on the cheeks and the legs red. The plumage of the hen bird is exactly similar to that of the male. The long-eared pheasants keep in small coveys in autumn, of about four to ten birds in each, in coniferous and deciduous forests. The Mongols said that formerly there were many more of these birds in the Ala-shan mountains; but in the snowy winter of 1869-70 a large number died from starvation and cold; however, the *kara-takia* are still sufficiently numerous.

We also saw the vulture (*Vultur monachus*), the lammergeier (*Gypaëtus barbatus*), the wall-creeper (*Tichodroma muraria*), the Siberian tit (*Pæcile cincta*), the nut-hatch (*Sitta villosa*), the greenfinch (*Hesperiphona speculigera*), *Pterorhinus Davidii*, jackdaws, and two kinds of partridges (*Perdix barbata* and *P. chukor*). Of migratory birds in the end of September we only saw the red-throated thrush (*Turdus rufi-*

*collis*), *Ruticilla erythrogastra*, *Accentor montanellus*, *Nemura cyanura*. The flight of birds of passage was nearly over by this time, the grass was withered, the leaves on the trees and bushes turned yellow or fallen off; snow fell instead of rain; frosts set in every night, and the depth of autumn had settled on the mountains.

The Mammalia are even less varied than the birds; but their want of variety is compensated for by their numbers, especially of the larger animals. During the whole of our stay in these mountains on both occasions we only found eight kinds of mammals, viz. the deer (*Cervus* sp.), chiefly inhabiting the pine forests on the western slopes, musk-deer (*Moschus moschiferus*), mountain sheep (*Ovis Burrhel*), called by the Mongols *kukuyaman*, i.e. blue goat, in great numbers on the eastern and more rocky side of the range. Among animals of prey are wolves, foxes, and polecats (*Mustela* sp.); among Rodentia a species of *Lagomys* and mouse (*Mus* sp.); and the Mongols assured us that in the northern unwooded parts of the range there are also argali.

Deer are plentiful in the Ala-shan mountains, where they are strictly preserved by order of the prince. They are nevertheless killed secretly, especially in summer, at the season of the growth of the young horns, so valuable in China. While we were in the mountains it was the rutting season of the deer, and the loud call-note of the males resounded in the forests day and night. I need

not dwell on the impression these sounds produced on my companion and myself. From early morning till late at night we climbed the mountains in pursuit of the wary animals, and at length shot an old buck, whose skin we prepared for our collection. Still more exciting was the chase after the mountain sheep inhabiting the Ala-shan range in great numbers, especially the wildest parts of the upper belt of the mountains. This animal is not much larger than the ordinary sheep. The colour of its wool is a tawny grey or tawny crimson; the upper part of the face, the chest, fore part of the legs, the line marking the division of the sides from the stomach, and the tip of the tail, black; the belly white, the hinder part of the legs yellowish white. The horns are large in proportion to their size, and curve upwards from the base with points twisted back. The ewes are smaller than the rams; the black marks on their bodies not so dark, and the horns small and almost upright.

The kuku-yamans live singly, in pairs, or in small herds of five to fifteen. As an exception they sometimes collect in large numbers, and my companion once saw a herd of a hundred. One or more of the males act as sentinels and protectors to the rest. On the approach of danger they at once give the alarm with a loud short whistle, so like a man's that at first I mistook it for the signal of a hunter.

A startled sheep rushes headlong up the rocks, which are often quite precipitous, and it is astonish-

ing to see the activity with which so large an animal climbs the most inaccessible places. The smallest ledge serves as a foothold for the kuku-yaman on which he can balance his body on his thick legs. Sometimes when a stone gives way under the weight of the animal, and rolls down the precipice with a loud noise, you expect the sheep to go down after it, but the next minute it leaps over the rocks as if nothing had happened. On seeing the hunter the kuku-yaman whistles two or three times, and after a few bounds stops to see whence the danger proceeds. He then offers a fair mark for the bullet; only you must not delay, otherwise, after remaining stationary a few seconds, he will continue his flight. When undisturbed the kuku-yaman generally moves at a footpace or slow canter, sometimes holding his head down.

The kuku-yaman is generally very wary and never allows anything suspicious to approach it. Its organs of scent, hearing, and sight are admirably developed; it is impossible to come within 200 paces of it downwind. Before evening it seeks its favourite alpine meadows to graze, and in the morning when the sun is high again returns to its native rocks. Here it will take up a position on some ledge and remain as motionless as a statue, now and then turning its head from side to side. I have seen the animal at such moments of repose on a shelving ledge of rock with its hind quarters reared above its head, and yet apparently perfectly at its ease. About mid-day these sheep generally rest on the ledges of



rock, in summer more often on the northern side, probably for the sake of coolness; here they will lie on their side, stretch out their legs like a dog, and doze.

The pairing season of these animals, according to the Mongols, is in November, and lasts about a month. At such times the call-note of the males is very similar to the bleating of goats, and may be heard day and night; at this season they fight furiously with one another. But they often fight at other times, and the ends of the horns of full-grown males are constantly broken owing to their pugnacious disposition. The young mountain sheep are born in May and remain with the mother till the next rutting season.

The chase after the kuku-yaman is exceedingly difficult, but some of the Ala-shan Mongols are expert hunters, and kill them with their matchlocks. The inferiority of their guns is compensated for by a perfect knowledge of the country and habits of the animal. A full-grown ram yields about seventy-two pounds of meat; in autumn they are very fat and their flesh good to eat. The skins are sewn into bags and articles of clothing by the Mongols.

During our excursion in these mountains my friend and I passed days together in the chase. Ignorant of the locality, I provided myself with a Mongol hunter as a guide who was thoroughly acquainted with the mountains and the habits of the kuku-yamans. At early dawn we would leave

our tent and ascend to the summit of the mountain ridge by the time the sun showed itself above the horizon. On a clear still morning the panorama which lay beneath us on both sides of the mountains was enchanting. On the east glistened the riband-like stream of Hoang-ho, and the numerous lakes round the town of Ning-hia-fu sparkled like brilliants; on the west the sands of the desert faded from view in a broad yellow band dotted with verdant oases of clay-soil like islands in the sea of sand. The surrounding stillness was unbroken save by the occasional bleat of the deer calling his mate.

After a short rest we would make our way cautiously towards the nearest crags of the eastern slope of the mountains, where the mountain sheep are most abundant. On coming to the edge of a cliff my guide and I would stretch out our heads and peer down below. After carefully scanning all the ledges and clumps of bushes we would drag ourselves forward on hands and knees and then take another brief survey. This would be repeated at each cliff or rather at each precipitous bluff of rock. Often not satisfied with only looking we would listen attentively for the noise made by the footsteps of the animal or a loose stone detached from its place by his hoof. Now and then we ourselves would roll large stones down to the wooded ravines to startle our quarry from his covert. It was a fine sight to watch the downward flight of one of these pieces of rock. Barely clinging to the side of the cliff the mass yielded to a slight effort. Slowly

severing itself from the parent rock it would begin rolling gradually, but every second its impetus increased until at last the rock entered the ravine with the noise and speed of a thunderbolt, breaking great trees in its passage, and followed by a *débris* of smaller stones which poured into the ravine with a dull jarring noise. The valley re-echoed with the sound, startled animals and birds left their haunts, but in a few minutes all was still and quiet as before.

We passed many an hour in looking for mountain sheep, without, however, finding them. You must have the eye of a hawk to distinguish the grey skin of the kuku-yaman from the rocks which are of the same colour, or to detect the animal lying in the bushes. My guide had wonderful sight; he often saw the horns of the animal at a distance of several hundred paces, when I could not distinguish them with a field-glass.

Then we would begin stalking. For this purpose we had sometimes to make long circuits, descending almost sheer precipices, now jumping from rock to rock or across wide chasms, and now clinging to the ledges of cliffs; in fact, we were on the brink of danger at every step. Hands were often bleeding from cuts and scratches, boots and clothes torn, but all was soon forgotten in the hope of bagging the coveted animal. But, alas! how often these expectations were cruelly disappointed, when as we were stalking our quarry another kuku-yaman chanced to see us and gave warning to his mate, or a stone giving way under our feet warned

the wary animal of impending danger, and in a moment he was out of sight. How can I describe our disappointment! all our labour was spent in vain, and we had to recommence our work, i.e. look and listen for other kuku-yamans.

But then when everything went smoothly, and we were fortunate enough to get within 200 or 150 paces of the sheep, with what a beating heart would I lean my rifle on a projecting ledge and aim! In a moment the report of the discharge rolled through the ravines of the wild mountains, and the kuku-yaman, pierced with the shot, fell on a rock, or rolled down into the valley below, leaving a bloody trail behind it. Sometimes, if only wounded, the wild sheep would start off, then a second bullet from my rifle laid it low on the spot. This animal is, however, difficult to kill, and will often escape though mortally wounded.

As soon as we had descended to the slaughtered sheep we cut it up, the Mongol taking as his share the entrails, &c.; then tying the legs of the animal together, he would throw it over his shoulder, and we would start for camp heavily laden. When the droughts in spring parch up all the grass on the mountains, the kuku-yamans feed on the leaves of the trees, and will even spring on to the trees for this purpose. Of course this may be an exceptional case; but I myself, in May 1871, saw two of these animals on a wide-spreading elm fourteen feet from the ground, on a spur of the mountains bordering the left bank of the Hoang-ho.

The kuku-yamans are, as we have stated, active climbers, but they sometimes find themselves in an awkward position. Thus in the mountains round Lake Keko-nor I once surprised a herd of twelve on a gigantic cliff. How they got there I cannot to this day explain, because the rock was perfectly precipitous on three sides, and on the fourth covered with loose detritus, which could have borne nothing larger than a mouse. Parallel with this rock, and 100 paces distant from it, was another one more accessible, whence I suddenly caught sight of the game. An old ram stood exactly facing me, on a narrow ledge just wide enough for his feet to rest on. I fired, and my shot struck him behind the chest. He stood for a few moments tottering on the verge of the precipice. At length his strength failed him; first one foot, then another, gave way, and the handsome beast fell headlong down a chasm 400 feet deep. Sullen echoes resounded as he fell. The frightened herd did not know what to do, and after making a few bounds along the edge of the cliff, stopped. Another shot was fired, and a ewe this time fell into the same chasm into which the ram had preceded her.

It was an extraordinary sight. I myself could not help feeling moved at seeing two of these large animals fall headlong into the depths below. But the excitement of the chase prevailed. Again I loaded my rifle, and again sent two shots into the herd, now more than ever alarmed. In this way I fired seven times, till the animals were driven to

their last desperate extremity. They slipped down the side of the cliff, and jumped from a ledge eighty feet high.

Besides the Ala-shan mountains, the mountain sheep are found in great numbers in the range bounding the valley on the left bank of the northern bend of the Hoang-ho, but they do not inhabit the Munni-ula, or the other more northerly mountains of Mongolia. Towards the south this animal is very often met with in the mountains round Lake Koko-nor and in Northern Tibet, but here it assumes a different shape, and may be a separate species.

After a fortnight's stay in the Ala-shan mountains, we returned to Din-yuan-ing; here we determined to retrace our steps to Peking, in order to obtain fresh supplies of money, and other necessaries for a new journey. Unpleasant as it was, we were obliged to give up our intended journey to Lake Koko-nor, which was only 400 miles distant, i.e. less than a month's journey. Notwithstanding all our care, amounting almost to stinginess, we had less than a hundred lans (20*l.*) left in money on entering Ala-shan, and it was only by selling our merchandise and two guns that we could get enough money for the return journey; our Cossacks, too, proved untrustworthy and lazy, and with such a staff we could not undertake a new journey more difficult and dangerous than the one we had accomplished. Lastly, my passport from Peking only allowed me to go as far as Kan-su, and we might, therefore, be refused admittance to that province.



With deep feelings of regret, which can only be understood by the man who has reached the threshold of his desires, without having the means of crossing it, I was compelled to submit to necessity and turn back.

## NOTES.

[*All Notes signed Y. are by Colonel Yule, the remainder are by Mr. Morgan.*]

### GREAT FLOODS IN CHINA.

PAGE 193.

THE Chinese annalists in the Shuking of Confucius relate, that in the sixty-first year of the great Emperor Yao (B.C. 2297), a contemporary of Abraham, a disastrous flood occurred, the waters of the Hoang-ho uniting with those of the Yang-tse-kiang, submerging the whole of the intervening country and putting a stop to agriculture and industry. The efforts of the Emperor and his great officers of state were directed to find some means of checking the floods and alleviating the wide-spread distress of the population; and Père Mailla, who visited these localities and compared them with the Chinese maps, was astonished at the gigantic nature of the works for draining the inundated districts, of which traces remained even in his time. How this great flood originated and what was the cause of it, history gives no clue; and few scientific travellers have, hitherto, visited the vast deserts lying to the north-west of the Hoang-ho. Is it not possible that the great migration of people, alluded to in the writings of Confucius, may in some way be connected with these early traditions? At all events, taking into consideration the sudden and destructive inundations in the lower course of the Hoang-ho in more recent times, and the terrible earthquakes to which China was subject in A.D. 1037, we cannot regard the great flood of China as an absolute impossibility, although science may throw more light on the subject hereafter.

The earlier inundation, referred to in the note, is of purely legendary origin. The time assigned for its occur-

rence, by Chinese writers, is about coincident with the Great Deluge. It is related that during the Fu-shi dynasty (3100 B.C.), a rebel of the name of Kung-kung caused a great inundation. This is an allegorical impersonation of the Evil spirit in the following legend, quoted by Klaproth:—Kung-kung proceeded with Chuan-shu to conquer the world; in his rage he struck a tremendous blow at Mount Pu-shan, which broke the pillars supporting the heavens and tore asunder the bands confining the earth. The heavens fell on the north-west, and part of the earth split off in a south-east direction, causing a great inundation, and this devastated the north-west of Central Asia and swept away the south-eastern part of the continent; the remains of which are the Australian islands of the present day.<sup>1</sup>

THE GANDJUR OR KANJUR. THE SACRED  
LITERATURE OF TIBET.

P. 211.

The collection of sacred books—the Tibetan Bible, is entitled *Kanjur*, i.e. Translation of the Word (of Buddha). It was translated entirely from Sanskrit originals in the eighth and ninth centuries, when the canon was closed. It consists of 100 volumes, in some editions extending to 108 vols.—oblong folios of separate leaves, 400–700 in each volume, unbound, placed between two rough boards, and fastened with a rude strap and buckle. The Kanjur contains not less than 1083 distinct works, which relate to the teachings of Buddha, and which were set down by three of his disciples, and after certain revisions formed into the present codex. It is divided into seven parts, each containing several volumes.

In addition to this great compilation—*the Bible of the Lama hierarchy*,—the Tibetans possess a still greater collection, called the *Tanjur*, i.e. Translation of Doctrine, in 225 folio volumes. This, however, is not included in the

<sup>1</sup> See Ritter's 'Erdkunde von Asien,' i. 158–160.—Deguignes' 'Hist. des Huns,' t. i. p. 7.

canon. It may be looked upon as a body of divinity, ethics, philosophy, grammar, logic, rhetoric, poetry, prosody, medicine, and alchemy, for the information of the Lamas. It probably corresponds to the *Atthakathâs* of the Southern Buddhists, the Singhalese, Burmese, and Siamese—but the *Tanjur* is much more extensive. It consists of two divisions, printed in the rudest manner in some editions, but some beautiful manuscripts exist of parts of each. The value differs according to the ink with which the manuscript is produced; a copy in red is 108 times more precious and efficacious than one in black; in silver, 108 times more availing than one in red; in gold, 108 times more effectual than in silver.

The *Kanjur* is found in many editions not only issued from Peking, Lhassa, Teshù Lumpo, Kunbum, and other sacred cities, but also from the presses in various monasteries.

The *Tanjur* is very rarely met with. It appears to have been printed for the first time in 1728–1746. Foucaux says that the collection was in existence in the beginning of the seventeenth century.

An ordinary copy of the *Kanjur* cost a few years ago, in Peking, 150*l.* The edition of the Emperor, Kien-long, was valued at 2,000 ounces of silver (600*l.*). M. Vassilieff paid for a copy of the *Tanjur* at Peking only 700 silver roubles (100*l.*). The Buriat tribe obtained a copy of the *Kanjur* for 7,000 oxen, and copies of the *Kanjur* and *Tanjur* together for 12,000 silver roubles. Complete copies of both these works are deposited in the Library of the India Office, having been given to the late Hon. East India Company by their agent, the resident in Nepaul, Mr. Brian H. Hodgson, to whom the Grand Lama presented them in appreciation of Mr. Hodgson's tolerant spirit and manner of treating with the Tibetan Buddhists.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See 'The Phoenix,' vol. i. p. 10, an article by the editor, the Rev. J. Summers; from which I have summarised the above particulars.—M.

## SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

VOLUME I. PAGE 6.

COLONEL PREJEVALSKY here, and I think elsewhere, gives *Daban* as the Mongol equivalent for 'mountain range.' In this I cannot but think he is mistaken. *Dábán* in oriental Turki (and presumably in Mongol, if it be a Mongol word also) means, not a *range*, but a *pass*, or what is in Savoy called a *col*. Thus, on one of the routes from India to Yarkand there is a pass called the *Yanghi Dábán*, 'the New Pass.' 'New Range' would be nonsense; but 'Yanghi-daban-Range,' as some maps have it, is lawful nomenclature.

The Pass is that feature in a mountain range which most interests travellers, and which they hear most frequently named; passes always have names; ranges, among people who have no books of geography, are apt to have none. Hence, with imperfect knowledge of the language, it gets assumed that the name of a Pass is the name of a Range.

This occurs in various languages. In maps of China we find mountain ranges called by such names as Pe-ling and Tsin-ling, as if *ling* were 'mountain range.' But *ling* is 'a pass.' Tsin-ling-*shan*, 'the mountain of the Tsin Pass,' would be right. Huc, again, in spite of all the monstrous Tibetan passes that he traversed, never discovered that *La* in Tibetan meant a Pass and not a mountain. And this leads him to his preposterous derivation of *Potála*, or as he chooses to call it *Bouddha-La*, the Vatican of the Dalai-Lama, from Buddha-La, 'mountain of Buddha' (the words would really mean 'Buddha Pass'), with which it has as much to do as Ben Nevis with the hill-

country of Benjamin, or cream of tartar with Crim Tartary.<sup>1</sup>

Somewhat in like manner we have come to call various chains of mountains in India the Western Ghats, Eastern Ghats, and so forth; and I have seen it stated in a geography-book that *Ghat* means mountain. But *Ghât* really means a *Pass*. The plateau above and the plain below those passes were respectively known to the Mahommedan rulers as *Bâlâ-ghât* and *Pâyin-ghât*, 'Above the passes' and 'Below the passes.' Hence the Portuguese, and after them the English, attached the idea of *mountain range* to the word *Ghat*.—[Y.]

## GIGEN.

P. 12.

This is the word used by our author for those ordinary 'incarnate' Lamas whom Huc calls *Chaberons*. The word is Mongol, and we find it thus explained in Kovalefsky's Dictionary: '*Gheghen* . . . éclat, splendeur; . . . brillant . . . personne vénérable; *titre honoraire d'un grave personnage*.' *Gegen Khutuktu* is one of the formal titles of the Great Lama at Urga spoken of in the text.<sup>2</sup>—[Y.]

<sup>1</sup> *Buddhala* is however older than Huc, for I see it is alluded to by I. J. Schmidt in his *Forschungen*, &c., 1824, p. 209.

The origin of the application of the name *Potala*, or *Potaraka*, to the palace of the Grand Lama seems a little obscure. The name is the same as that of the city in Sindh (Haidarâbâd), which the Greeks called *Pattala*. Koeppen says that, according to legend, the Sakya family, i.e. the family of Buddha, originally sprang thence. According to Buddhist stories there were two other sacred hills of this name. The first rose out of the Western Sea, and bore on its summit a celestial palace which served as a rest-house to the Bodhisatvas on their errands to earth. This is the true and heavenly *Potala*. Another lay in the China Sea opposite Chekiang, and is in fact the famous ecclesiastical island of *Puto* near Chusan.

<sup>2</sup> See Koeppen, *Lamaismus*, 376.



## PEHLING AND FANQUI.

P. 41.

The footnote here, which says '*Pehling* is the Chinese for Englishmen, *Fan-qui* for Frenchmen,' needs correction. *Fan-Kwei* is simply the term usually rendered 'foreign devils,' and is applied to Europeans generally. *Pe-ling* appears to be a corruption of the Western Asiatic *Firingi*, i.e. 'a Frank,' a term which in some older Chinese notices appears in the form *Fu-lang*. *Pe-ling*, or *philing*, we know from Huc,<sup>1</sup> Hodgson, and Edgar<sup>2</sup> is the name which the Chinese at Lhasa give to the English in India, and it perhaps came to them through the Kashmiris and other Mahommedan traders to Lhasa.

'*Peh-ling Fan-qui*,' in the comprador's utterance quoted, means, I imagine, 'the Frank foreigners' who come by sea, in contradistinction to the Russ foreigners who come by land, and with whom the Chinese perhaps recognise something more of affinity.—[Y.]

## KUMIZ AND DARÁSUN.

P. 54.

Col. Prejevalsky makes these two drinks identical, but he is surely wrong. *Darásun* is the Chinese rice-wine, or something analogous. Kovalefsky gives '*Darasoun*, Chinese hoang-tsieou . . . des boisson fortes; vin ordinaire fait avec des grains; vin jaune.' William de Rubruk gives a catalogue of Mongol drinks in the following words:—'Tunc ipse fecit a nobis queri quid vellemus bibere, utrum vinum vel *terracinam* [*darásun*], hoc est cervisiam de risio, vel *caracosmos* [*kara-kumiz*], hoc est clarum lac jumentu, vel *bal*, hoc est medonem de melle. Istis enim quatuor potibus utuntur in hyeme' (p. 305-6).—[Y.]

<sup>1</sup> '*Pélins de Calcutta*' (ii. 265).

<sup>2</sup> *Hodgson's Essays*, p. 68; *Rep. on Sikhim and Thibetan Frontier*, Calcutta, 1874, p. 17.

## TARTAR MANNERS AT FOOD.

P. 56.

The uncleanly modes of Tartar eating impressed medieval travellers as much as the moderns: 'And after they have eaten, or even whilst in the middle of their eating, they lick their fingers with tongue and lips, and wipe them on their sleeves, and afterwards, if any grease still remains upon their hands, they wipe them on their shoes. And thus do the folk over all those countries, including western and eastern Tartars, except the Hindús, who eat decently enough, though they, too, eat with their hands.'<sup>1</sup>—[Y.]

## MONGOL ORIENTATION.

P. 64.

It seems likely that Colonel Prejevalsky has made some mistake about this right-hand and left-hand matter, from the want of good interpreters. Even if the fact were, as he says, that the Mongols never say 'to the right' or 'to the left,' but only 'to the east' or 'to the west,' this would be exactly what used to be alleged of North Britons, among whom, in former days, when a bench in church was crowded, you might have heard a request for a neighbour 'to sit *wast* a bit.'

If Colonel Prejevalsky will try to define the points of the compass to himself, he will find that *right* and *left*, with respect either to the rising or to the midday sun, are the ideas on which the meaning of those points ultimately depends.

Hence, in various languages we can trace that the words implying either North and South or East and West, are actually words properly meaning *right* and *left*. E.g. in Sanskrit we have *Dakshina* = 'dexter,' but applied to the south (whence *Deccan*), though the corresponding *sinister*

<sup>1</sup> *Friar Jordanus*, p. 10.

with the meaning of 'north' is lost. Klaproth (*Asia Polyglotta*) quotes the following explanation from a Mongol vocabulary:—' *Dzägun* (*Dzun*); the quarter in which the sun rises is called *Dzun*, i.e. the Left hand. It is also called *Dorona*.' And it is easy to understand how the Mongols, whose tents always faced the south,<sup>1</sup> should make the east left and the west right. Tibet Proper was called by the Mongols *Baron-tala*, the Right, i.e. West quarter, whilst Mongolia was *Dzun-tala*, the Left, i.e. East quarter.<sup>2</sup> It is not so easy to understand how Dzungaria (*Dzungar* = Left-hand) got its name, for that region is the most westerly part of Mongolia.<sup>3</sup>

The foregoing remarks indicate a probability that the Mongols of whom our author speaks were using the words *right* and *left* in their proper sense when he supposed them to be using the words *east* and *west*.

What Colonel Prejevalsky means by the Mongol north being our south I do not understand. In Chinese maps, as in our own medieval maps, I believe the south is generally at the top; and in the Chinese compass the needle is regarded as pointing *south*. To these circumstances perhaps he refers.—[Y.]

#### THE CHINESE YEAR.

P. 65.

The author's account of this matter is far from exact.

There are 12 'moons' or months in the ordinary year. These are some of 29 and some of 30 days, not alternating, but regulated by certain fixed rules, and the common

<sup>1</sup> *Marco Polo*, bk. i. ch. lii.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, 2nd ed., i. 216.

<sup>3</sup> The fact stated in the following extract of a letter from Mr. Ney Elias may be involved in the explanation: 'throughout the Altai I noticed that Khalkas, Kirghis, and Kalmucks all pitched their tents facing *East*. The prevailing wind there, in winter, is from the westward.' (*Dated Aug. 2, 1873.*) In such a region *left* would mean *north*, and Kovalefsky does give *Baron* as signifying *côté droite*, *midi*, ou occident.



also to the points of the compass, and to any other expression of numbers in a series of ten or twelve.

And the Chinese days are not grouped into weeks of seven days, with definite names, but by cycles of sixty days.<sup>1</sup>—[Y.]

#### THE MONGOL ALPHABET.

P. 67.

So far as we know the earliest character employed by the Mongols for writing their own language was that which they borrowed from the Uighur Turks of the Kashgar country. This was the character commonly used in the chancery of Chinghiz-Khan and his immediate successors. This Uighur character had been borrowed from the old Syriac; and as we find names in Syriac upon the famous Christian monument of Singanfu (A.D. 781), there can be little doubt that it had been introduced into Eastern Turkestan by the Nestorian clergy.

A Lama, Sája Pandita by name, was employed at the court of Kublaï Khan (latter part of thirteenth century) in modifying this Syro-Uighur alphabet so as to fit it better to the Mongol language. He is said to have introduced the system of connecting the letters by continuous lines from top to bottom, 'like the marks cut on tally-sticks.' Some have alleged that even the old Syriac was written vertically; but in any case the language of William de Rubruk (1253), in speaking of the Uighur writing, most precisely describes the vertical direction of the modern Mongol script. Sája died before he had completed his alphabetic system.

His successor, Bashpa Lama, threw aside the Uighur model, and invented a square character founded on a Tibetan modification of the Devanagari. Kublaï himself persistently patronised this alphabet, and tried to force it into use, but it took no root.

Kublaï's successor, Temur or Oljaïtu Khan, commis-

<sup>1</sup> Substantially from Williams's *Observations of Comets . . . from Chinese Annals*, 1871.

sioned a relation of Sája, called Tsorji Osir, to translate the Tibetan sacred books into Mongol, with the use of Bashpa's alphabet. Finding this unmanageable, he reverted to the Uighuresque characters of his kinsman Sája, with some additions, but even so found it necessary to write many whole words in Tibetan characters. Some years later, in the reign of Khaishan or Jenezek Khan, the successor of Temur (1307-1311), who was a man of education, the task was resumed; and under his direction Tsorji brought the Syro-Uighur alphabet to perfection. This is substantially the character still in use among the Mongols, though some additions have been since made to it. The Manchu alphabet, again, was modelled upon this Mongol one.<sup>1</sup>—[Y.]

#### THE KHATA (*KHADAK*), OR CEREMONIAL SCARF.

P. 73.

The fullest notice of this curious usage in polite intercourse is given by Huc (ii. 85 *seqq.*):—

'There are *khatas* of all sizes and prices; for it is an article that the poor can dispense with no more than the rich. No one moves about without a little store of them. If you go to pay a visit of ceremony, or to ask a favour of anyone, or to return thanks for one received, you begin by displaying the *khata*; you take it in both hands and present it to the person whom you wish to honour. If two friends who have not met for a long time chance to gather, their first care is the reciprocal offer of the *khata*; . . . also when a letter is written it is customary to fold up along with it a small *khata*. The finest phrases, the handsomest presents, all are of no esteem without the *khata*; with it, the most ordinary objects acquire an immense value . . . These *khatas* form an important branch of commerce for the Chinese of Tang-keu-eur (Tonkir). The Tibetan embassies never pass without carrying away a prodigious stock of them.' Bogle and Turner often mention the thing, but not the name of *khata*.—[Y.]

<sup>1</sup> See Abel-Rémusat, *Langues Tartares*.



## OM MANE PADME HUM !

P. 76.

The following passages on this mystic formula are partly from Koeppen's *Lamaismus* (p. 59-60), and partly from an excellent article on Tibet in the 'Calcutta Review,' by Mr. Wilfrid Heeley, of the Bengal Civil Service, in which some paragraphs of Koeppen are condensed :

'Om mane padme hûm !—the primeval six syllables, as the Lamas say, among all prayers on earth form that which is most abundantly recited, written, printed, and even spun by machines, for the good of the Faithful. These syllables form the only prayer known to the ordinary Tibetans and Mongols ; they are the first words that the child learns to stammer, and the last gasping utterance of the dying. The wanderer murmurs them on his way, the herdsman beside his cattle, the matron at her household tasks, the monk in all the stages of contemplation (i.e. of *far niente*) ; they form at once a cry of battle and a shout of victory ! They are to be read wherever the Lama Church hath spread, upon banners, upon rocks, upon trees, upon walls, upon monuments of stone, upon household utensils, upon strips of paper, upon human skulls and skeletons ! They form, according to the idea of the believers, the utmost conception of all religion, of all wisdom, of all revelation, the path of rescue and the gate of salvation ! . . .

'Properly and literally these four words, a single utterance of which is sufficient of itself to purchase an inestimable salvation, signify nothing more than : "O the Jewel in the Lotus ! Amen !" In this interpretation, most probably, the *Jewel* stands for the Bodhisatva Avalokiteçvara, so often born from the bud of a lotus flower. According to this the whole formula is simply a salutation to the mighty saint who has taken under his especial charge the conversion of the North, and with him who first employed it the mystic formula meant no more than *Ave Avalokiteçvara !*

But this simple explanation of course does not satisfy the Lama schoolmen, who revel in glorifications and multitudinous glossifications of this formula. The six syllables are the heart of hearts, the root of all knowledge, the ladder to re-birth in higher forms of being, the conquerors of the five evils, the flame that burns up sin, the hammer that breaks up torment, and so on. *Om* saves the gods, *ma* the Asuras, *ni* the men, *pad* the animals, *me* the spectre world of *pretâs*, *hûm* the inhabitants of hell! *Om* is 'the blessing of self-renunciation, *ma* of mercy, *ni* of chastity, &c.' 'Truly monstrous,' says Koeppen, 'is the number of *padmes* which in the great festivals hum and buzz through the air like flies.' In some places each worshipper reports to the highest lama how many *om manis* he has uttered, and the total number emitted by the congregation is counted by the billion.

Grueber and Dorville describe *Manipe* as an idol, before which *stulta gens insolitis gesticulationibus sacra sua facit, identidem verba hæc repetens*: 'O Manipe, mi hum, O Manipe, mi hum; *id est* Manipe, salva nos!'—[Y.]

## THE OBO.

P. 76.

Of the *Obo*, or sacred cairn of the Lamas, probably a relic of their primeval superstitions, a representation is given in Kircher's account of the journey of Grueber and Dorville, who characterise it thus: 'Trophæa quæ in summis montium cum adoratione magno Lamæ diriguntur, pro conservatione hominum et equorum.'<sup>1</sup>

Turner describes such a *trophæum* on the boundary between Bhotan and Tibet.—[Y.]

<sup>1</sup> *China Illustrata*, p. 70.

## TSAGAN BALGAS.

P. 106.

The *Tsagan Balgassu*, noticed in Mr. Morgan's footnote, is a different place, being the *Chagan-nor* of Marco Polo, some 45 miles NW. of Kalgan. *Chaghan Balghassun*, or 'White Town,' is a term applied by the Mongols to all royal residences.<sup>1</sup>

The place mentioned in the text was on the banks of the Shandu- (or Shangtu-) gol, immediately north of the town of Dolon-nor; and one at first supposes that it must have been Kublai's famous summer palace of 'Xanadu' or Shangtu, which almost occupies such a position, but is nearer NW. than N. of Dolon-nor. Moreover, the place stands on the left bank of the river, whereas we find Prejevalsky's *Tsagan Baigas* by his map to be on the right bank. I have little doubt that the site seen by Prejevalsky was that of another of Kublai's foundations, called in his day *Langting*, of which Dr. Bushell wrote to me: 'The ruins of the city are marked on a Chinese map in my possession, *Pai-dzeng-tzu*, i.e. "White City," implying that it was formerly an Imperial Residence. The remains of the wall are seven or eight *li* in diameter (qy. circumference?), of stone, and situated about forty *li* NNW. from Dolon-nor.' All the points named do not correspond, but the name and position do seem to answer.—[Y.]

## DUMB BARGAINING.

P. 145.

This kind of dumb higgling by finger pressure inside a sleeve or under a shawl, is found over all the longitude of Asia, from Peking certainly to Bombay, and possibly to Constantinople. I have suggested elsewhere<sup>2</sup> that a rumour of the use of such a system among the Chinese

<sup>1</sup> See *Marco Polo*, 2nd ed., vol. i. p. 287, and vol. ii. p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> *Marco Polo*, 2nd ed., ii. 486.

might have been confounded by Pliny with another system of dumb bargaining, related of many uncivilised nations, and have given rise to that strange statement of his about the *Seres*.—[Y.]

## SHAMBALING.

P. 253.

*Shambhala*; called in Tibetan *bdé-hbyung*, vulgo *de-jung* ('origin of happiness'), is a fabulous country in the north, the capital of which was *Kálapa*, a very splendid city, and the residence of many illustrious kings of *Shambhala*. It was situated beyond the Sita River, and the augmentation of the length of the days from the vernal equinox to midsummer amounted to twelve Indian hours (*gharis*), or four hours forty-eight minutes.

The Sita is one of the four mighty rivers of the Hindú mythological geography, into which the Ganges breaks after falling upon earth. It is regarded in the Vishnu Purána as flowing eastward, and would find its actual representative in the Tarim, continued to the ocean in the Hoang-ho; and the Chinese traveller Hwen-thsang does identify it thus. Csoma de Körös, however, interprets it in the Tibetan legend as the Jaxartes, and calculates the latitude of *Kálapa* as between  $45^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ}$ .

According to some of the Tibetan books, Dazung, a king of *Shambhala*, visited *Sákya Muni*, and the latter foretold to him a great series of the kings to succeed him, followed by the rise of Mahomedanism, and then by the general re-establishment and diffusion of Buddhism,—a prophecy which one is sometimes tempted to think is receiving its accomplishment in modern Europe. Some of the Tantrika doctrines were said in Tibet to have come from *Shambhala*.<sup>1</sup>

*Sambhala* is in Hindú mythology the place where

<sup>1</sup> See *Csoma Körösi*, in *J. As. Soc. Bengal*, ii. 57 &c.; *As. Researches*, xx. 488.

*Kalki*, the final incarnation of Vishnu, is to appear. It is identified by some with Sambhal, a very ancient Hindú town in Rohilkhand, which occurs in Ptolemy's Tables. We learn from Ibn Batuta that the last of the Mongol emperors of China sent an embassy to Sultan Mahommed Tughlak of Dehli, to obtain permission to rebuild a temple at *Samhal*, near the foot of Himálya, whither his (Buddhist) subjects used to go on pilgrimage. So it is probable that Sambhal may have been associated with these Tibetan legends, though lying in a wrong direction *from Tibet*.

When Mr. Bogle was at Tashi-lunpo the Teshu-Lama desired him particularly to inquire from the Bengal pundits about 'the situation of a town called Shambul' (*Markham*, p. 168).

In reference to the apparent identification that had been made between this mystic land of Shambaling and our own Isle of the West, I am tempted to introduce here (somewhat *à propos de bottes*, I confess) an anecdote extracted, once more, from the valuable letters of Mr. Ney Elias, to whom I have been so much indebted in the compilation of the Introductory Remarks to these volumes. After speaking of a wide-spread belief among the Mongols, and Chinese of Mongolia, in the existence of a race of people in the Alatau range who have the bills of ducks, my correspondent goes on:—

'What would a modern Japanese traveller, for instance, say, if he were to hear from the natives of Northern Mongolia that in unknown lands far to the westward, beyond the *Aros* (Russians) there existed a race called *Inglis*, who had but one leg of flesh whilst the other was of wood? He would doubtless regard the story as of a piece with that of the duck-headed mountaineers. . . . There has lived at X—— for many years past one solitary Englishman in the person of Mr. Z—— Z——, who has had the misfortune to lose one of his legs, and who is well known to the Mongols frequenting that border as an *Inglis*, or a western man who is not a Russian. . . . On my late

journey I met with a lama, a native of the neighbourhood of X——, who said he knew Mr. Z——, the *Inglis*; but when told that I was a countryman of his, was disinclined to believe it, on account of neither of my legs being of wood!—[Y.]

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

LONDON: PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
AND PARLIAMENT STREET



UNIVERSITY of CALIFORNIA  
AT  
LOS ANGELES  
LIBRARY

4



This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

APR 5 1978

DISCHARGE-URL

NOV 29 1978  
NOV 30 1978

DISCHARGE-URL

MAR 8 1979

**NON-RENEWABLE**

MAR 20 1992

ILL/SJP

DUE 2 WKS FROM DATE RECEIVED

NOV 10 1981

APR 28 1982

OCT 06 2003



3 1158 00411 4822

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



AA 001 051 352 1

University of California  
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
305 De Neve Drive - Parking Lot 17 • Box 951388  
LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA 90095-1388

Return this material to the library from which it was borrowed.

Q12  
F  
AF  
DI  
NO

OCT 24 2006

NOV 2 2006

MAR 29 2007

NON-R

MAR

ILL/

DUE 2 WKS FRG

MAR 10 2007

APR 28 2007

Form L9-Series 4939



3 1158 00411 4822

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



AA 001 051 352 1







orni  
al  
y















Chaps 445

TRAVELS IN EASTERN HIGH ASIA

VOL. II.

LONDON: PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

# M O N G O L I A,

CANCELLED  
E. I. I.

THE TANGUT COUNTRY,

AND THE

SOLITUDES OF NORTHERN TIBET:

BEING A

*Narrative of Three Years' Travel in Eastern High Asia.*

BY

*Prehevalskii*  
LIEUT.-COLONEL N. PREJEVALSKY,

OF THE RUSSIAN STAFF CORPS: MEM. OF THE IMP. RUSS. GEOG. SOC.

TRANSLATED BY

E. DELMAR MORGAN, F.R.G.S.

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES BY

COLONEL HENRY YULE, C.B.

LATE OF THE ROYAL ENGINEERS (BENGAL).

*IN TWO VOLUMES—VOL. II.*

*With Maps and Illustrations.*

LONDON:

SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON, SEARLE, & RIVINGTON,  
CROWN BUILDINGS, 188 FLEET STREET.

1876

*All rights reserved.*

LIBRARY OF THE  
MUSEUM OF COMPARATIVE ZOOLOGY  
HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

ABSOLUTE TO MINE

25  
739  
A 35  
V 2

# CONTENTS

OF

## THE SECOND VOLUME.



### CHAPTER I.

#### RETURN TO KALGAN.

	PAGE
Departure from Din-yuan-ing—Illness of Pyltseff—Salt lake-bed of Djaratai-dabas—Mode of obtaining salt—Kara-narin-ula mountains—Route through the Urute country—Ascent of plateau—Excessive cold ; snow-storm—Sufferings of animals—Descent to the Hoang-ho—Incursions of Dungans—Hostility of Chinese officials—Chinese soldiers—Old river bed—Wintering birds ; pheasants—Tea-drinking—Border range—Rejoin outward track—Buying argols—Temperature inside tent—Shireti-tsu—Loss of all our camels—Awkward predicament—Buy fresh camels—Trading caravans—Epidemic among dzerens—Argali—Arrival at Kalgan . . . . .	1

### CHAPTER II.

#### RETURN TO ALA-SHAN.

Start for Peking—Packing collections—New outfit ; rifles ; revolvers—Merchandise—Fresh Cossacks—Trial of guns—Effect on the inhabitants—Mongol dog ' Karza '—Water barrels—Departure from Kalgan—Late spring—Migration of birds—To the Munni-ula—Spring vegetation—Leave for the Hoang-ho—Rice fields—Shooting carp—Unattractive valley—Sandy borders of Ala-shan and its vegetation—Inanimate nature—Envoys from the prince—Arrival at Din-yuan-ing—The Czar's officer—



	PAGE
Trafficking—Favourable opportunity to proceed—Prince opposes our departure—Intrigues of Sordji—Want of funds—Sale of guns and merchandise—Fortune befriends us—Preparations for a start—Departure of caravan—Detention—Siya's promise—Disappointment—Anxiety—Siya again—Good news—We join caravan—Our travelling companions—Lama-warriors—Randzamba—His passion for the chase—With the caravan—Poisoned wells—Great fatigue—Inquisitive visitors—Pursuit of science under difficulties—Tingeri sands—Mountains of Kan-su—Snowy peaks—Cultivation—Great Wall of China—Town of Ta-jing—Watch towers—White bread—Choice of routes . . .	23

### CHAPTER III.

#### THE PROVINCE OF KAN-SU.

First sight of Kan-su—Marginal range—Ta-yi-gu—Sung-shan—Abundance of water—Ruined villages—A false alarm—Harsh treatment of prisoner—Gold washings—Profusion of vegetation—Another adventure—Randzamba and the breech-loaders—Mystery explained—Temple of Chertinton; its superior or abbot—We leave our camels and horses—The Rangtu-gol—Cultivated and thickly-populated plain—The Taldi—The temple of Chobsen; its images and idols; its militia garrison—Arrival at Chobsen—Drying the collections—Stagnation of trade—Start for the mountains—Description of the mountains of Kan-su—Northern and Southern chains—Snowy peaks—'Amuch' the sacred mountains—Geology—Minerals—Climate—Flora: trees, bushes, &c.—The Rhubarb plant ( <i>Rheum palmatum</i> )—Method of obtaining and preserving it—Artificial cultivation—Rhododendrons—Characteristic plants of Kan-su—Luxuriant meadowland—Fauna of Kan-su—Mammals—Birds; their classification—Birds of alpine zone—Absence of water-fowl—Excessive humidity—Thunderstorms—Sodi-Soruksum; splendid view—Mount Gadjur; its sacred lake—Terror of natives—Guides refuse to proceed—Autumn—Camels suffer—Chobsen besieged—Perilous situation—Prepare for defence—Night-watch—Hire guides to Koko-nor—Consult auguries—Halt—Supplies—Departure—A critical moment—Appearance of Dungans—Murzasak—Tatung-gol—Koko-nor at last . . . . .	59
---	----



## CHAPTER VI.

## NORTHERN TIBET.

	PAGE
The Burkhan Buddha mountains ; the effects of a rarefied atmosphere—M. Huc's 'vapours of carbonic acid gas'—The Nomokhun stream—The Shuga mountain range and river—Tibetan frontier—The Urundushi mountains—Sources of the Hoang-ho, and pilgrimage thereto—The Baian-kara-ula range—Character of the desert plateaux of Tibet—Extraordinary exhaustion produced by exertion at high altitudes—Caravans to Lhasa—Time occupied on the journey—Dangers and hardships of the road—Abundance of animal life—Mammals—The wild yak ; its habits ; its physical defects and low intelligence ; disease to which it is subject—Wild yak shooting—The animal hard to kill—Grandeur of the sport—Mode of stalking—They rarely charge—Examples of yak-shooting—The yak-meat—The white-breasted Argali—The Orongo ( <i>Antilope Hodgsoni</i> )—Large herds of these antelope—Their unwary habits—Held sacred by Mongols—Unicorns—The <i>ata-dzeren</i> , or little antelope—Its amazing swiftness—The Tibetan wolf ( <i>Lupus Chanco</i> )—The fox ( <i>Canis Corsac</i> )—Birds of Northern Tibet—Progress of journey—Travelling yurta—Intense cold—Tattered garments—Rarefied atmosphere—The halt—Preparing dinner—Long nights—Sport on the plateau—Climate—Dust storms—Chutundzamba—Arrival at the Murui-ussu—Limit of the expedition—Necessity for return . . . . .	174

## CHAPTER VII.

SPRING ON LAKE KOKO-NOR AND AMONG THE KAN-SU  
MOUNTAINS.

Return to Tsaidam—Influence of its warmer climate—Spring in Tsaidam—Migratory birds—Spring in Koko-nor—Mirages—Shooting excursions—Fishing—Thaw on lake—Scarcity of birds—Departure from Chobsen—Equipment of caravan—Sale of revolvers—Humidity of Kan-su—Slippery mountain paths—Fording the Tatung-gol—Encounter with 'Kotens'—First signs of spring—Night frosts—Gales—Atmospheric phenomena—Tardy vegetation—The great rock-partridge ( <i>hailik</i> )—The snow-vulture ; how to shoot it—Heavy snowfall—May in Kan-su—The long-eared pheasant ( <i>Crossoptilon auritum</i> )—The marmot ( <i>Arctomys robustus</i> )—The bear ( <i>kung-guressu</i> )—Extraordinary reports concerning it—We see one—It escapes—Straitened finances—Last weeks in Kan-su—Its variable climate—Departure . . . . .	224
---	-----

## CHAPTER VIII.

RETURN TO ALA-SHAN. ROUTE TO URGA BY THE CENTRAL  
GOBI.

	PAGE
Departure from Ala-shan—Nearly lost in the desert—A dilemma —We follow the wrong road—A night of suspense—Looking for landmarks—The 'Obo'—Water at last!—Meeting with pilgrims—Din-yuan-ing—Letters from home—Excursion to Ala-shan mountains—Their changed appearance—Their flora and fauna—Sudden flood—Collections endangered—Caravan re-organised—Start for Urga—Terrible heat—Guide at fault— —Death of 'Faust'—Desperate situation—Saved—Grief at the loss of our dog—Route across the Gobi—Urute country—The Galpin Gobi—Wells choked by rain—Similarity between Gobi and Sahara—The Hurku range—Mountain goat ( <i>Capra Sibirica</i> )—Trade routes—The desert north of the Hurku— Shortlived oases—Large and flourishing herds—Polluted water —The mirage—Migration of birds—More trade routes—Altered aspect of country—Rich pasturage—Abundance of animal life —Climate—Impatience to reach Urga—Arrival there—End of the expedition . . . . .	254

## TABLE OF NOTES TO VOLUME II.

## NOTES BY MR. MORGAN.

Urumchi . . . . .	285
The Rhubarb Plant . . . . .	291
The Manul . . . . .	298

## SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES BY COL. YULE.

The Taldi . . . . .	299
Siling and Tonkir . . . . .	300
The Kyang and Kulan . . . . .	301
The Tangutans . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
The Dungans . . . . .	304

	PAGE
Red and Yellow Lamas . . . . .	305
Difficulty as to Fires at Great Altitudes . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
The Murui-ussu, the Tibetan Source of the Yang-tse-kiang . . . . .	306
—————	
Table of Colonel Prejevalsky's Observations . . . . .	307
INDEX . . . . .	309

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

TO

## THE SECOND VOLUME.



1. The Gobi Plateau (borrowed from the *Tour du Monde*) . . . . . to face page 6
2. Kutukhtu-Lama of High Rank (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken, Hon. Corr. Mem. R.G.S.) . . . . . page 46
3. Lama in Officiating Dress (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . . „ 72
4. A Flowering Plant of the Medicinal Rhubarb (from a Sketch by Professor Maximovitch, of the Imperial Botanical Gardens, St. Petersburg, engraved in 'Regel's Garten Flora') . . . . . to face page 82
5. The Yak (traced by Col. Yule from a Drawing by J. E. Winterbottom, Esq., in the possession of Dr. Hooker) . . . . . page 116
6. Tibetan Lama-Physician (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken). . . . . „ 157
7. Mongol Princess in Gala Robe covered with Pearls and Precious Stones; back view of same (from Photographs lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . . „ 161
8. The Wild Yak, *Poëphagus grunniens*, Pall. (after an Engraving from a Specimen in Col. Prejevalsky's collection, now in the Museum of the Academy of St. Petersburg) . . . . . „ 188
9. Head of *Ovis Poli* (after an Engraving in Severtsoff's *Turkestanskiya Životniya*) . . . . . „ 201



10. Village on the Shore of Lake Baikal (Eastern Siberia), destroyed by an Earthquake (borrowed from the *Tour du Monde*) . . . . . to face page 214
11. Horns of the Orongo-Antelope (from an Engraving of a Specimen in Col. Prejevalsky's collection) . . . . . Page 223
12. The Snow-Vulture (after an Engraving in Severtsoff's *Turkestanskiya Životniya*) . . . . . „ 238
13. Mongols Worshipping 'Obo' (borrowed from the *Tour du Monde*) . . . . . to face page 257
14. The Russian Force at Urga in the Summer of 1871 (from a Photograph lent by Baron Fr. Osten Sacken) . . . . . „ „ 283

# TRAVELS IN MONGOLIA.



## CHAPTER I.

### RETURN TO KALGAN.

Departure from Din-yuan-ing—Illness of Pyltseff—Salt lake-bed of Djaratai-dabas—Mode of obtaining salt—Kara-narin-ula mountains—Route through the Urute country—Ascent of plateau—Excessive cold; snow-storm—Sufferings of animals—Descent to the Hoang-ho—Incursions of Dungans—Hostility of Chinese officials—Chinese soldiers—Old river bed—Wintering birds; pheasants—Tea-drinking—Border range—Rejoin outward track—Buying argols—Temperature inside tent—Shireti-tsu—Loss of all our camels—Awkward predicament—Buy fresh camels—Trading caravans—Epidemic among dzerens—Argali—Arrival at Kalgan.

ON the morning of October 27th we left the town of Din-yuan-ing (Wei-tching-pu) on our return journey to Kalgan. The eve of our departure we passed with our friends, the Gigen and Siya, who took leave of us with unfeigned sorrow, and invited us to return as soon as possible. We gave them our photographs, and assured them that we would never forget the kindness we had received in Alashan. Just as we were on the point of starting the Lama Sordji and another official made their appearance, to bid us a last good-bye from the sons of the prince, and to escort us out of the town.

We had now a long and difficult journey before us, the distance from Din-yuan-ing to Kalgan (through Mongolia) being reckoned about 800 miles, which we had to perform without a break. Meanwhile the approach of winter was heralded by sharp frosts and winds, prevalent in Mongolia at this season of the year. To make matters worse my travelling companion, Michail Alexandrovitch Pyltseff, fell ill with typhoid fever soon after we left Din-yuan-ing, a circumstance which detained us nine days, near the spring of Kara-moriteh in the northern part of Ala-shan.

The state of my companion's health was rendered more critical owing to the want of medical assistance, for although we had a few drugs with us I had not sufficient confidence in my skill as a practitioner to administer them. Happily his youth pulled him through, and Michail Alexandrovitch, in spite of continued weakness, was able to sit on a horse, although he fell off more than once in a fainting fit. However, we hurried on, marching from sunrise to sunset every day.

Desirous of becoming acquainted with the country on the left bank of the Yellow River, and the mountains which border this part of the valley, I determined on crossing the country of the Urutes, which is conterminous with Ala-shan. In the northern part of the latter region, 63 miles from Din-yuan-ing, we came to an immense lake-bed of sedimentary salt, called by the Mongols *Djaratai-dabas*. This lake-bed occupies the lowest part of the whole of

Ala-shan, and is 3,100 feet above the sea ; it is about 33 miles in circumference, and encrusted with a layer of pure salt 2 to 6 feet thick. It is remarkable that this natural production should be so little utilised ; only a few dozen Mongols being engaged in the industry of digging the salt out and carrying it on camels to the Chinese towns of Ning-hia-fu and Bautu.<sup>1</sup>

The salt is obtained in the following way : first a thin covering of dust is removed from the surface, the salt is then dug out with iron spades and washed in the water which collects in the excavated holes. It is then poured into bags, and laden on camels, each camel carrying a load of about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. A payment of 50 chokhs,<sup>2</sup> or about 2*l.*, is levied on the spot on each camel load, and the same amount is charged for the labour of getting it. A Mongol officer lives at Djaratai-dabas, to inspect the salt industry and receive the income arising from it, which is paid into the treasury of the prince. The latter also earns large sums by his camels, which are hired for the transport of the salt ; nine-tenths of the profits realised are given up to him, leaving only one-tenth to the carrier. The Mongols said

<sup>1</sup> Huc gives a vivid description of a lake-bed of the same kind in the Ordos country, under the name of *Dabsoun-Nür*, or Salt Lake (i. 329-331).—Y.

<sup>2</sup> *Chokh* or *chek*, said by Timkowski to be a corruption of a Mongol term *jos*, is the name which the Russians give to what we call Chinese *cash*, properly *l'sien*, those copper coins with a hole in the middle which are strung on strings. The old normal equation was one string or 1,000 *l'sien* = 1 *liang* (lan of the text) or ounce of silver, but now the number varies and is always much more than 1,000. The calculations in the text seem to reckon 1,500 cash to the *liang*.—Y.

that a camel load of salt fetches  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 lans, 7s. 6d. to 10s., at Bautu.

The environs of this lake are almost devoid of vegetation, and present a desolate aspect, particularly in summer, when the heat is so intense as to put a stop for a time to the salt industry.

The sparkling surface of Djaratai-dabas appears like water in the distance, and resembles ice when you are near it. So deceptive is its appearance that a flock of swans, apparently attracted by the sight of water in the desert, descended before our very eyes almost to the surface of the false lake, but discovering their mistake rose again in the air with affrighted cry, and continued their flight.

In the north of Ala-shan, not far from the well of Moriteh, where we halted in consequence of the illness of M. Pyltseff, there rises from the plain a comparatively small but rugged group of mountains, the Khan-ula or Haldzyn-burgontu, forming the last elbow of the border range on the left bank of the Hoang-ho. This range, known to the Mongols as the Kara-narin-ula<sup>1</sup> (black pointed mountains), begins at the Haliutai River, and continuing in a south-westerly direction for about 200 miles as far as the northern boundary of Ala-shan, terminates in some low rocky hills rising from the sandy plain; its southern branches, which attain a considerable height at Khan-ula, but soon diminish in size, alone extending a short distance beyond Djaratai-dabas.

<sup>1</sup> These mountains are not generally known by this name, which we only heard applied to them by some lamas.

Towards the east the Kara-narin-ula is connected by low and perhaps interrupted ridges of hills with the Sheiten-ula and therefore with the In-shan ; on the south it is separated from the Ala-shan mountains by sandy wastes upwards of 60 miles in extent.

Like the mountains near Kalgan, the Kara-narin-ula serves as a border range, i.e. it forms the girdling rampart of the elevated Gobi, separating it from the lower valley of the Hoang-ho ; the difference between the level of the country lying east and west of it amounting to 2,400 feet. From the valley of the river it presents the appearance of a steep wall, intersected by occasional narrow defiles. Its greatest height is in the middle ; but along its whole extent it is wild and barren. Enormous crags of granite, hornblende, gneiss, felspathic porphyry, syenite, felspar, limestone, and clayey schist furrow the sides of these mountains and crown many of their peaks, whilst great blocks of the minerals become detached from the rocks by a natural process of disintegration, and roll down to the bottom of the ravines. Here and there a shrub of the wild peach, or a scanty elm, clings to the mountain side, but otherwise there is very little vegetation of any kind. Nevertheless, animals abound here ; numbers of kuku-yamans haunt the rocks, and the argali inhabits the western slopes where the outline of the hills is softer. The peculiarity of this range is the abundance of its springs and watercourses, notwithstanding the entire absence of trees.

From Khan-ula we had the choice of two routes



—one by the valley of the Hoang-ho along the foot of the range which borders it, and the other by the western side of the same mountains, i.e. over the highlands of the country of the Urutes. I chose the latter road in order to acquaint myself with the character of this part of the Gobi plateau.

We ascended gradually some of the low outlying hills of the chain which, as we have remarked, are much lower than the rest. The appearance of the plateau at first, with its sterility and naked sands, reminded us of the desert of Ala-shan. Vegetation is very scanty; the wild wormwood and prickly convolvulus being the chief kinds. But as we advanced to the north-west the soil improved, and at length, 80 miles beyond the boundary of Ala-shan, it became clayey or clay mixed with shingle, and was covered with short steppe grass. Here we at once found those denizens of the Mongol steppes — the dzerens, which are not met with in the whole of Ala-shan.

On ascending the plateau the climate rapidly changed. The autumn weather during the whole of October in the plains of Ala-shan was delightful, and the temperature so warm that even in the second half of this month at mid-day the thermometer marked  $12.5^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $54^{\circ}$  Fahr.) in the shade, and on the 6th of November the surface of the sand was heated to  $43.5^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $109^{\circ}$  Fahr.); the night frosts were never severe, and the thermometer did not fall below  $-7.5^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $20^{\circ}$  Fahr.) at sunrise.



THE GOBI PLATEAU.



But no sooner had we crossed the Kara-narin-ula mountains than excessive cold weather set in; and on the 15th November we experienced a storm which reminded us of the climate of Siberia a month later. With a violent gale from the NW. and a temperature of  $-9\cdot0^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $17^{\circ}$  Fahr.), the sleet continued the whole day; the snow flakes, driven by the force of the wind into the finest particles, were mingled with clouds of sand which completely enveloped us. Large objects, ten paces off, were invisible; and we could neither open our eyes nor breathe freely when facing the wind. It was useless attempting to pursue our journey under these circumstances, and we remained in our tent, occasionally issuing forth to clear away the snow and sand-drifts which blocked up the entrance to our humble abode. Towards evening the violence of the snow-storm increased so much that we were obliged to leave our camels out all night, only securing them the following day.

The snow lay on the ground several inches deep, forming great drifts in places, and hard frosts continued every day. This unfavourable weather added greatly to the difficulties of our journey, and aggravated the sufferings of my sick companion. The beasts also suffered a good deal from want of food. Two of our camels and one horse soon refused to move, and had to be abandoned, their places being taken by the spare camels which we had got in Ala-shan.

In this way we advanced for 100 miles along

the western side of the Kara-narin-ula. At length, after satisfying ourselves that this range does not throw out lateral spurs into the centre of the plateau, which it borders, we crossed to the other side by the defile of the river Ugyn-gol, and on November 11th descended into the valley of the Yellow River. Here we passed suddenly from winter into mild autumnal weather, such as we had left behind us in Ala-shan. Not a particle of snow lay on the ground, and the thermometer, which on the uplands stood below zero at noon, now often rose above the freezing point. This change in the temperature occurred in an extent of only thirteen miles of country covered by the border range.

Winter, however, soon began to make itself felt also in the valley of the Hoang-ho. The water was covered with ice, and the morning frosts rapidly increased in intensity. The mercury fell to  $-26.0^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $-14^{\circ}$  Fahr.) at sunrise, but during the day it was warm, especially in calm weather; the sky was almost always clear.

We saw no inhabitants on the western side of the Kara-narin-ula. All the Mongols had fled to the valley of the Hoang-ho, alarmed at the appearance of a small band of brigands who came from the environs of Lake Koko-nor. Such incursions were not unfrequent in those parts of Mongolia which lay on the borders of the districts disturbed by the Dungan rebellion. The bands of robbers which continually made their appearance in these districts were composed of all kinds of vagabonds armed with

pikes or swords, and in a few instances with matchlocks. Yet, notwithstanding their inferior weapons, they produced a panic among the Mongols and Chinese, who took to their heels and ran as fast as ever they could at the mere name of a Dungan. While we were at Din-yuan-ing, the Prince of Alashan, who was preparing to despatch an armed force against the marauders, sent an official to ask us for the loan of our military caps to frighten the enemy. 'The brigands are well aware,' said the official, 'that you are here, and if they see your caps, which we will put on, they will imagine that you are with us, and will run away directly.' This incident serves to show what dread is inspired by even the name of Europeans, and how the people of Asia instinctively acknowledge our moral superiority over their degenerate character.

In Chapter IV. of this volume I will describe more fully the military operations of the Mahommedan insurgents and Chinese forces ; suffice it for the present to remark, that the Dungans are not a whit braver than their opponents, and are terrible only to Chinese and Mongols. Strange as it may sound, it is none the less a fact that, in the districts which were liable to these robber raids, we travelled with more ease and security than anywhere else ; and that for the simple reason that they had no population ! We were convinced (and the belief was confirmed by all the experience of our later wanderings) that these cowardly marauders, even if several hundred strong, would never dare to attack four Europeans armed to



the teeth ; and if in a moment of unusual audacity they had ventured on so rash a proceeding, our guns and revolvers would have taught them a good lesson. On the other hand, when travelling through populous districts, we were constantly exposed to all kinds of insults, against which there was no possible defence. Although our Peking Foreign Office passport set forth that in case of need help should be given us, this was a mere formula, and was of no practical advantage ; we really experienced nothing but hostility from the Chinese, and their local authorities were always delighted at any inconvenience and annoyance that befell us. Our visits to the towns of Bautu and Ding-hu were marked by such scenes as could never have occurred had the Chinese functionaries been better disposed towards us. In proof of this assertion I will presently relate an accident which befell us in the earlier part of December. But now let us return to our narrative.

The valley of the left bank of the Hoang-ho at its northern bend presents a grassy aspect like that of the right bank. The clayey soil is covered with thick clumps of the high *divisun* grass ; beside the river there is a growth of bushes ; whilst nearer the mountains the surface of the plain becomes shingly. The absolute height of this country, like Ordos, does not exceed 3,500 feet. The Chinese population is dense, particularly nearer the river, while at the foot of the mountains are the habitations of Mongols who have fled hither from the uplands and from Ordos. Chinese soldiery are quartered in the villages as a

protection against Dungans. In the district between the towns of Ning-hia-fu and Bautu the number of these troops is estimated at seventy thousand, although numerous desertions are said to have diminished this army to one-half of its nominal strength. The soldiers are so demoralised that they do nothing but plunder the inhabitants, who look upon them as terrible scourges. The Mongols often told us that they had more cause to dread the presence of their defenders, the Chinese soldiers, than that of the Dungans, because the latter 'robbed them once for all, and had done with it, but the soldiery kept continually looting.'

Even we had some disagreeable encounters with the Chinese soldiers. Once they tried to take possession of our camels ; on another occasion two soldiers ordered us to draw water out of a well for their horses. But the rascals were punished as they deserved, and left us somewhat crestfallen.

Near the mountains we saw the old channel of the Hoang-ho (Ulan-khatun), which is 1,190 feet wide, and very distinctly discernible, although completely dry and grass-grown. The Mongols told us that this desiccated river-bed separated from the present Hoang-ho at the point where the sand-drifts of Ordos crossed into Ala-shan ; the old channel passes close to the mountains for a considerable distance, then taking a sharp turn it unites with the present river near the western extremity of the Munni-ula.

There are two lesser arms between the former

and present channels of the Hoang-ho which dry up during the hot weather, but are full of water at flood-time. Besides the main river and its channels, there is no water in the valley, except in wells, which are invariably very deep. The streams which rise in the border range disappear immediately in the soil, not one of them flowing as far as the Hoang-ho.

We found several wintering kinds of birds in the valley, viz. *Falco tinnunculus*, *Circus* sp.? *Plectrophanes lapponica*, *Otis tarda*, *Coturnix muta*, *Anas rutila*, and innumerable pheasants (*Phasianus torquatus*). The latter haunt the long grass called *dirisun*, and owing to the absence of water come to drink at the wells, where they may be shot in any numbers from a place of ambush. I preferred, however, shooting them with my setter, Faust, and the first day bagged twenty-five, besides losing some wounded birds, which were difficult to find owing to the length of the grass, and the pace at which they run.

When the nature of the valley of the Hóang-ho became steppe-like, kara-sultas and dzerens appeared in numbers, and every day's sport included some of these animals, which replenished our supplies of provisions. However, the favourite delicacy of the Mongol whom we hired at Ala-shan, as well as of our Cossacks, was brick tea, which they consumed in inordinate quantities, especially when milk was procurable, which, to use an expression of the Cossacks, 'whitened' the tea and gave it a dainty relish. A bucketful of this nectar was the usual

allowance. This tea-drinking was a great nuisance to us, particularly when we were in a hurry to proceed on our journey; but nothing would induce either Mongol or Cossacks to stir till they had boiled their tea and refreshed themselves with long draughts of this beverage. Finding that the spirits of the party often depended on the consumption of tea, particularly of the whitened kind, I made up my mind to submit to it.

Our route in the valley of the Hoang-ho skirted the border range which extended as an uninterrupted wall as far as the river Haliutai. Here the mountains suddenly become much lower, in fact are no higher than hillocks, and retreat to one side of the abrupt cliff which continues to define the valley of the river. These hillocks serve as connecting links between the mountains on the border and the Sheiten-ula chain, which extends eastwards as far as the river Kunduling-gol. The latter is a low but rocky and treeless range, as far as we could see very deficient in water.

Almost on the meridian of the western termination of the Sheiten-ula rise the westernmost spurs of the Munni-ula. Between these two chains of mountains lies the broad valley of the Hoang-ho, thickly populated by Chinese. A belt of sand-drifts here prepares the traveller coming from the east for the frightful deserts of Ordos and Ala-shan.

At the Kunduling-gol we rejoined the track of our outward journey, so that from this point forward we had the benefit of a map and travelled no longer

at haphazard. Moreover, no further surveys were necessary, and the labours of the expedition were consequently lightened. This relieved us of very troublesome work; and indeed surveying in winter is so arduous that I got two fingers on each of my hands frostbitten whilst working with the compass.

Early in December we left the valley of the Yellow River, and ascended by the Shohoin-daban to the more elevated border of the plateau, where we again experienced severe cold. The thermometer at sunrise descended to  $-32.7^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $-26^{\circ}$  Fahr.); and the frost was often accompanied by strong winds and sleet. All this happened in the very place where in summer we had  $37^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $98^{\circ}$  Fahr.) of heat. Thus the traveller in Central Asia must endure scorching heat and Siberian cold, and should be prepared for sudden changes from one extreme to the other.

My companion, still weak and shaken in health, was obliged to sit on horseback day after day, wrapt in a sheepskin cloak. We, who usually went on foot, did not feel the cold so much whilst on the march; but in camp the severity of the winter was felt by us all with a vengeance. How well I remember the purple glow of the setting sun in the west, and the cold blue shades of night stealing over the eastern sky. We would then unload our camels and pitch our tent, after first clearing away the snow, which was certainly not deep although dry and fine as dust. Then came the very important question of fuel, and one of the Cossacks usually rode forward to

the nearest Mongol yurta to buy argols if we had not already laid in a supply. We paid a high price for the argols, but this was a lesser ill; how much worse was it when they refused to sell them to us, as the Chinese often did! Once, at our wits' end for fuel, we were obliged to cut up a saddle in order to boil a little tea, and had to content ourselves with this frugal supper after a march of 23 miles in severe cold and snow-storm!

When a fire was lighted inside our tent the warmth was sufficient at all events for that part of the body which was immediately turned towards the hearth; but the smoke irritated the eyes, and when aggravated by dust became almost unbearable. In winter the steam from the open soup-kettle completely filled our tent, reminding us of a Russian bath, only that of course the temperature was very different. Boiled meat became quite cold before we had time to eat it, and the hands and mouth were covered with a layer of grease which had to be scraped off with a knife. And in the stearine candle that lighted us at supper-time, the part close to the wick would burn down so low, that we had from time to time to break off the outer shell, which remained unaffected by the flame.

For the night we piled round the tent all the packs and closed the entrance as tightly as possible, but notwithstanding all these precautions the temperature inside our dwelling was very little warmer than out of doors, as we kept up no fire after supper-time until morning. We all slept under fur



cloaks or sheepskin coverings, generally undressing to sleep more comfortably. While asleep we were warm enough, because our whole bodies, head and all, were under the coverings, and we sometimes added felts over all. My companion slept with Faust, and was very glad of such a bedfellow. Hardly a night passed quietly. Prowling wolves often frightened our camels and horses, and the Mongol or Chinese dogs would occasionally enter the tent to steal meat, generally paying the penalty of their lives for such unceremonious behaviour. After such an episode, how long it was before he whose turn it had been to quiet the startled camels, or to shoot the wolf or thieving dog, could get his blood a little warm again!

In the morning we all rose together, and shivering with cold, made haste to boil some brick tea; then we folded the tent, loaded the camels, and at sunrise continued our journey in the sharp frosty air.

One would have expected that in returning by the same road we had come we should have avoided many accidents, and might have reckoned beforehand the length of our marches, but in this we were deceived; one more misadventure had yet to be encountered. This occurred in the following way: Late in the evening of the 12th December, we halted for the night at the temple of Shireti-tsu, 53 miles to the north of Kuku-khoto, on the high road from that town to Uliassutai. The following morning all our camels, seven in number exclusive of a sick one, were allowed to graze near the tent not far

from some camels belonging to other caravans which were on their way from Kuku-khoto. Just at this place the steppe grass was entirely trodden down; our beasts therefore crossed a little hill a short distance off to find some better food and seek shelter from the wind, which had been blowing in gusts for five days without intermission. After a little while a Cossack and our Mongol started to drive back to the tent the strayed camels, but they had disappeared from the hillock, and their tracks, partly obliterated by the wind, were undistinguishable from those of other camels. As soon as I heard of their disappearance, I despatched the same men in search of them; they were absent the whole day inspecting the camels of all the caravans in the neighbourhood, but not a vestige could be seen or heard of the animals, which were as completely lost as though they had been swallowed up by the earth. Early the following morning I sent my Cossack interpreter to the monastery of Shireti-tsu, on the land of which we had sustained the loss, to give notice of the theft and ask assistance in finding the missing camels. Our messenger was very reluctantly admitted into the monastery, where the lamas, after examining our Peking passport in which it is mentioned that assistance is to be given when needed, coolly remarked, 'We are not the guardians of your camels; seek them yourselves as best you can.' A similar reply was given by the Mongol official, to whom we likewise applied for aid. Meanwhile the Chinese refused to sell us straw to feed our only remaining sick

camel and two horses, whilst the steppe grass was so trodden under foot by the camels belonging to passing caravans as to afford no fodder whatever. Our poor beasts were dying of starvation, and one of the horses was frozen to death at night; the sick camel expired two days afterwards, and lay directly in front of the entrance of our tent, completing the picture of our misery. We were now left with only one horse, which could hardly move its legs. This beast was only saved from starvation owing to the fancy the Chinese took for satisfying their dainty appetites with our dead camel, which was tolerably fat, and which we exchanged for twenty-five trusses of good hay.

The Mongol and Cossack were sent off a second time in search of the missing animals, but returned after a few days, and declared that they had ridden a great distance and made many enquiries, but could learn nothing of the lost camels. Of course it was impossible to find them without the assistance of the local officials. I therefore decided on hiring some of the neighbouring Chinese to convey us to Kuku-khoto, whence we hoped to find means of conveyance to Kalgan. The Chinese however, notwithstanding their mercenary natures, were not tempted by the offer of a large sum of money, and would not agree to be our carriers at any price, fearing, of course, the responsibility which they might incur towards their authorities.

Our position now seemed a desperate one. Fortunately at this time we had two hundred lans in

cash (50*l.*), left over from the amount realised by the sale of our merchandise and guns at Ala-shan. I therefore resolved to send the Cossack with the Mongol to Kuku-khoto to buy fresh camels. But the question was, how were they to go, as we had only one horse left, and even that was unfit for use? First then I started with the Cossack interpreter to try and buy a horse at some Mongol quarter. After walking the whole day, we succeeded in purchasing one, and the following morning the Cossack and Mongol started for Kuku-khoto. There they bought new, but very inferior, camels, and these at last enabled us to continue our journey, after a detention of seventeen days at Shireti-tsu. Thus, besides the loss of time, we sustained a very considerable loss in money also. Several of our animals had perished before this, owing to want of food and water, heat, frost—in fact from the difficulties of the route. In the first year of the expedition we lost, altogether, twelve camels and eleven horses; most of the latter however were exchanged with the Mongols for better animals, of course with considerable additional payment.

During this long detention, caused by the loss of our camels, we had hardly any occupation, and there were no birds of any kind except larks and sand-grouse. Writing was also out of the question, because, in the first place, there was nothing to record, and secondly, because it is no such easy matter to write in winter out of doors; you must first thaw the frozen ink, and hold your pen frequently to the

fire while writing to prevent the ink in it from congealing. And I always preferred writing my journal in ink, only using a pencil in extreme cases—the latter rubs out so easily and becomes illegible.

Every day caravans passed us on their way from Inner Mongolia, Uliassutai, and Kobdo to Kokonor. They carried leather and wool to barter with the Chinese for millet, tea, tobacco, flour, cotton yarn, and other articles of domestic use. With the exception of tea, all the other articles might be supplied by the Russians if our commercial relations with Mongolia were more extensive. Kobdo, Uliassutai and Uрга, the chief places in the north and the richest part of the country, are almost adjacent to our Siberian frontier, and yet all the imports to these towns are derived from China, and it is to China that the inhabitants go to make their purchases, travelling thousands of miles across the desert and passing months on the way.

On fine calm days I went after dzerens, which were plentiful at a distance of three miles from camp. At that time the dzerens were attacked by an epidemic producing great weakness, soon followed by death. Numbers of their dead bodies strewed the steppe, where they were devoured by crows and wolves, and were also collected for food by the Chinese, who came from Kuku-khoto for this purpose.

Although we were not on the best of terms with the inhabitants, whose character we thoroughly understood by this time, Mongol visitors would often

drop in. On one of these occasions our guests stole our last axe and hammer, trifling but indispensable articles for our journey. No others could be obtained, and it was useless attempting to recover the stolen ones. We therefore substituted a hand-saw for the axe, and in the place of a hammer we made use of a big stone, which we carried with us and used every day to drive the iron tent pegs into the frozen ground.

As soon as we had obtained new camels, we hurried to Kalgan by forced marches, only stopping for two days in the Suma-hada mountains to hunt the argali; this time I succeeded in bagging two old rams. Another accident happened to us on the road. My friend's horse took fright, shied, and ran away. Michail Alexandrovitch was too weak to keep his seat on horseback, and fell head foremost on the frozen ground, so heavily that we picked him up insensible. However, he soon came to himself, only suffering a slight contusion.

The influence of the warmth of China on this border land of Mongolia was very remarkable; on calm days or with gentle south-westerly winds it was quite warm during the day. On the 10th December the thermometer marked  $2.5^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $35^{\circ}$  Fahr.) in the shade. But no sooner did a westerly or north-westerly wind spring up than it became cold. The night frosts were generally moderate; the thermometer at sunrise did not descend below  $-29.7^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $-20^{\circ}$  Fahr.), but after a cloudy night it only registered  $-6.5^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $20^{\circ}$  Fahr.). The weather



was generally clear. Snow only fell three times during the whole of December, covering the ground in places several inches thick, although many parts remained quite bare of snow.

The icy winds of Siberia, the almost constantly unclouded sky, the bare saline soil, and its great altitude above the sea, combine to make the Gobi or desert of Mongolia one of the coldest countries in the whole of Asia. But though even here, on the Mongolian border adjoining China, the great elevation of the plateau of course affects the temperature, the climate is far less severe than in remoter parts of the Gobi, and only on rare occasions are the extreme rigours of its winter experienced.

Every day's journey diminished the distance which separated us from Kalgan, and increased our impatience to gain that town. At last the long-wished-for moment arrived, and at a late hour on New Year's Eve (12th January) 1872, we appeared before our Kalgan fellow-countrymen, who received us as hospitably as before.

The first act of the expedition was ended. The results of our journey, which had been so gradually collected, now became plainer. We could say with clear consciences that so far we had fulfilled our task; and this amount of success only whetted our passionate desire to plunge once again into the heart of Asia, and strive to reach the distant shores of Lake Koko-nor.

## CHAPTER II.

## RETURN TO ALA-SHAN.

Start for Peking—Packing collections—New outfit ; rifles ; revolvers—Merchandise—Fresh Cossacks—Trial of guns—Effect on the inhabitants—Mongol dog ‘Karza’—Water barrels—Departure from Kalgan—Late spring—Migration of birds—To the Munni-ula—Spring vegetation—Leave for the Hoang-ho—Rice fields—Shooting carp—Unattractive valley—Sandy borders of Ala-shan and its vegetation—Inanimate nature—Envoys from the prince—Arrival at Din-yuan-ing—The Czar’s officer—Trafficking—Favourable opportunity to proceed—Prince opposes our departure—Intrigues of Sordji—Want of funds—Sale of guns and merchandise—Fortune befriends us—Preparations for a start—Departure of caravan—Detention—Siya’s promise—Disappointment—Anxiety—Siya again—Good news—We join caravan—Our travelling companions—Lama-warriors—Randzemba—His passion for the chase—With the caravan—Poisoned wells—Great fatigue—Inquisitive visitors—Pursuit of science under difficulties—Tingeri sands—Mountains of Kan-su—Snowy peaks—Cultivation—Great Wall of China—Town of Ta-jing—Watch towers—White bread—Choice of routes.

A FEW days after my return to Kalgan I started for Peking, to obtain fresh supplies of money and make preparations for a new journey. My companion remained at Kalgan with the Cossacks to lay in a store of different small articles required for the expedition and buy camels, those we had obtained at Kuku-khoto having turned out worthless.

Two months, January and February, quickly glided past in the bustle of preparation, packing and despatching our collections to Kiakhta, and writing

reports of our last year's explorations. We were as straitened as ever in our finances, the sum assigned for the use of the expedition in 1872 not having been received in full at Peking. But this difficulty was happily arranged, thanks to the renewed kindness of General Vlangali, who again lent me the necessary moneys, amounting to even more than the anticipated receipts of the current year. The General also procured from the Chinese Government a passport to enable us to travel in Kan-su, Kokonor, and Tibet. The Government, however, officially notified that, owing to the disturbed state of these countries, travelling in them was attended by considerable danger, and they would in no case be responsible for our safety.

To provide for any emergency which might arise, I determined to increase the number of our guns, which, as we have already seen, are the best defence a European can have in travelling through those parts of Asia which are inhabited by a treacherous and cowardly set of thieves.

At Peking and at Tien-tsin I soon obtained several breech-loaders and revolvers. The best of my new guns was a rifle by Berdan, carrying a bullet at point-blank range upwards of 400 paces, a quality of the greatest importance in firing at unmeasured distances. This gun I reserved for my own use. My companion and one of the Cossacks each took a Snider, and the other Cossack a Martini-Henry with a seventeen-barrelled revolving chamber; lastly, a fifth Spicer rifle was taken in reserve. We supplied

ourselves with 4,000 prepared cartridges for these guns; besides which we had 13 revolvers, 2 Remington pistols, a double-barrelled Lancaster rifle, and four shot-guns, for which we carried  $2\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. of shot and  $\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. of gunpowder.

These constituted our fighting and sporting equipment. In every other respect we were obliged to stint ourselves as far as possible, owing to our limited means. To cover some of the expenses of outfit and provide for the continuation of our journey, I travelled to Tien-tsin,<sup>1</sup> where I bought sundry small merchandise to the amount of 80*l.*, which I hoped to sell at a good profit at Ala-shan. After all these purchases had been completed, we had only 87 lans (about 22*l.*) left in our pockets at the time of our departure from Kalgan.

The *personnel* of our expedition was now re-organised. The two Cossacks who had accompanied us during the first year proved to be untrustworthy, and suffered so dreadfully from home-sickness that I determined to dismiss them and procure others instead. My two new travelling companions were selected from the detachment stationed at Urga, and, fortunately for us, proved most devoted, efficient, and zealous coadjutors during the whole of our long journey. One was a Russian youth, aged 19, named Pamphile Chebayeff, the other a Buriat, Dondok Irinchinoff. We soon struck up a close friendship with these good men, which eminently

<sup>1</sup> Tien-tsin is a little over 66 miles in an easterly direction from Peking; and is situated near the mouth of the Peiho, by which river seagoing steamers of a moderate size ascend as far as that town.

conducted to the success of the expedition. Separated as we were from our own country, in the midst of foreigners, we lived like brothers, sharing alike hardships and dangers, joys and sorrows. Can I ever forget the companions whose fearless courage and devotion to the cause contributed so powerfully to ensure our ultimate success? . . .

As soon as the new Cossacks arrived at Kalgan, I divided between them the rifles and revolvers, and daily practised them in their use. Before starting on our journey we went through the manœuvres for repelling a false attack; for this purpose we fixed a target at a distance of 300 paces, and all fired as rapidly as possible. The results were brilliant: it was struck all over with our shot; and on another nearer mark the small bullets from the revolvers rained like a shower of peas. The Chinese collected in crowds to witness the sight, never before having seen breech-loaders, and only shook their heads as they looked on at the tricks of the 'foreign devils,' while some applauded vehemently, declaring that if they had but a thousand such soldiers, they would soon crush the Dungan insurrection.

Besides our trusty Faust, we now took a large and very savage Mongol dog, called 'Karza,' to serve as a watch-dog. This animal followed us through the whole of our second expedition, and was of great service. He soon forgot his former Mongol masters, and was a most inveterate enemy of all Chinese, frequently ridding us of intrusive visitors. On first acquaintance, Faust took a dis-

like to Karza, and the two were bitter enemies to the last. It is remarkable how seldom European dogs fraternise with their Chinese or Mongol brethren, however long they may live in company with them.

Among other articles of outfit, we supplied ourselves with four flat water-barrels,<sup>1</sup> each holding about eight gallons. We had suffered terribly from the want of water during the hot weather in the first summer of our travels, and profiting by our past experiences we took a supply this time. Altogether, our equipment was more complete than last year. But the baggage for our second expedition weighed 27 cwt., making in all nine camel-loads. Every day we helped the Cossacks to pack the loads on the camels, having been unable to find a Mongol to replace the one who had accompanied us from Ala-shan to Kalgan, and who had refused to return to his home with us.

Before starting on our journey I sent a report to the Geographical Society, giving an account of our first year's travels, concluding in these words: 'Thanks to the cordial assistance rendered by our ambassador at Peking, I am now supplied with a passport from the Chinese Government to enable me to enter Koko-nor and Tibet. I have also two new Cossacks who appear to be trustworthy; and if we are all able to do our best, M. Pyltseff and I hope, notwithstanding all the difficulties which must

<sup>1</sup> When the Mongols cross the Gobi in summer they always carry some of these flat water-casks, which they call *Khubina*; two of them filled with water make a load for one camel.



beset the path of the traveller in countries so remote and amidst so unfriendly a people, to succeed in our enterprise.' These expectations were fully realised, and good fortune never deserted us.

On the morning of March 17th we left Kalgan, taking the same route by which we had returned the year before from Ala-shan. The first evening we again felt the severity of the climate of Mongolia; spring had not commenced here, although at the end of February the weather at Kalgan was tolerably warm. Waterfowl had appeared in large numbers, and insects were numerous. On the plateau, however, all this was changed. The snow had certainly all melted, but thick blocks of last winter's ice still encumbered the streams; the thermometer marked several degrees of frost, cold winds prevailed, and birds of passage had not yet appeared; in fact, the steppes of Mongolia bore a wintry aspect.

Like the spring of last year, the frost, wind, and snow, varied by an occasional warm day, continued throughout March and even the whole of April. The atmospheric changes, especially from heat to cold, were very sudden. Thus at 1 P.M. on March 25th, the thermometer marked 22° Cent. of heat (72° Fahr.), and the following day 5° Cent. of frost (23° Fahr.). Again, in the beginning of April, after some warm days, accompanied by thunderstorms, on the night of the 12th two feet of snow fell, and the mercury receded 19° Fahrenheit, after which frost and snow continued till the end of April, when

summer weather suddenly set in, in the valley of the Hoang-ho.

The early spring this year differed from the last in the greater frequency of snow-storms and comparatively rare occurrence of NW. winds, although it blew hard for several days in succession. The dryness of the air was as remarkable as ever, a fact we were reminded of not only by the psychrometer, but also by the extraordinary dryness of our lips and hands, the skin of which cracked and had a polished appearance.

The flight of birds even in March was very small; during the whole of that month we only remarked 26 kinds,<sup>1</sup> in small numbers, sometimes only one or two of a species. Geese and cranes appeared in large flocks, but they flew high, hardly ever alighting to rest. Even in the wooded mountains of Munni-ula, where we passed the latter end of April, birds of passage, including small birds, were very scarce. In all probability, these winged wanderers, in their flight to the North, keep as long as they can within the limits of China Proper, sheltering themselves behind the great border ranges of the plateau, only ascending the latter when driven to their last extremity and compelled to turn their

<sup>1</sup> They appeared in the following order:—*Anser segetum*, *Anas rutila*, *Cygnus musicus*, *Milvus govindus*, *Larus occidentalis* (?), *Vanellus cristatus*, *Saxicola leucomela*, *Saxicola Isabellina*, *Motacilla paradoxa*, *Ruticilla erythrogastra*, *Upupa Epops*, *Ardea cinerea*, *Anthus pratensis*, *Anser grandis*, *Larus ridibundus*, *Anas tadorna*, *Anas crecca*, *Anas acuta*, *Recurvirostra Avocetta*, *Aegialites cantianus*, *Grus Virgo*, *Cygnus olor*, *Anser cinereus*, *Lanius major*, *Grus cinerea*, *Totanus calidris*.

backs on the warm plains of China, and face cold and hunger on the barren deserts before they can reach their favourite northern haunts. Yes! even Siberia, awful as the name may sound to many, is a paradise compared to these deserts; its spring is real spring, not the crippled substitute which greets you in Mongolia. Here, even in April, nothing reminds you that Nature has awakened from her winter's sleep—everything is yet dead and inanimate. The yellow grey steppe appears as uninviting as ever; the carol of the lark or the song of the linnet are rare sounds, and no other songsters visit these plains. The streams are still waterless; the salt lakes drier than in summer, when rains supply the evaporation, and the icy cold blasts of winter heighten the dreariness of the landscape.

For a little more than a month we journeyed from Kalgan to the Munni-ula range, where we determined to make some halt in order to observe the flights of small birds and collect the spring flora of these mountains. We had first intended returning to the Hoang-ho in the beginning of March, crossing that river over the ice into Ordos, and there watching the migration of birds of passage; but we were disappointed in our expectations, only arriving at the Munni-ula mountains on April 22nd, by which time most of the birds were gone. We had therefore to give up our second visit to Ordos, and content ourselves with the Munni-ula.

Here, towards the end of April, vegetation made rapid progress, especially in the lower and middle

belts on the southern slopes of the mountains. The wild peach-trees and bushes were in full blossom, relieving the sombre tints of the hill-sides, which were not yet green. The ravines, particularly where the sun's rays found entrance, were covered with young grass and here and there little flowers such as the anemone (*A. Pulsatilla* and *A. barbulata*), milk vetch (*Astragalus* sp.) and *Gagea* sp. peeped forth. The poplar, aspen-tree, and willow were in leaf, and the buds of the white and black birch bursting. On the higher alpine meadows vegetation had not yet felt the warmth of spring, but the snow had thawed even on the highest summits of the mountains.

Judging from the situation of the Munni-ula, in the midst of bare steppes half way between north and south, one would have expected that numbers of small birds would have been attracted hither; but this is not the case. During the eleven days we spent here we found only four more kinds of birds<sup>1</sup> than we had observed in July of the previous year; and even these were solitary specimens which had apparently found their way hither by stealth or by accident.

Disappointed in our anticipated ornithological harvest, we left the Munni-ula on May 4th, and started for Ala-shan, ascending the left bank of the Hoang-ho, i.e. by the same route as we had taken in winter when returning to Kalgan. The only

<sup>1</sup> *Turdus ruficollis*, *Emberiza pithyornus*, *E. pusilla*, *Scolopax rusticola*.

difference we made this time was in not crossing the Kara-narin-ula, but keeping the whole way at the foot of these mountains. After entering the valley of the river, we passed three days at a place called by the Mongols Kolo-sun-nur, where rice-fields are cultivated by Chinese, who irrigate them by means of artificial canals leading from the Yellow River. On this flooded land we counted about 30 kinds of birds, chiefly belonging to the orders *Grallatores* and *Natatores*, of which we had seen none on the dry steppes of Mongolia.<sup>1</sup> Even here these birds were not numerous; the best time for their migration had passed by, and only a few lingered behind the rest. Our ornithological studies this spring were so far unsuccessful, and the only observation, and that of a negative kind, which we were enabled to make was that birds of passage shun the waterless deserts of Mongolia.

Our occupations were now varied with a little fishing. The carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) spawn early in May, and every morning and evening large numbers might be seen disporting themselves in the shallowest parts of the flooded fields. Here was an opportunity not to be lost for satisfying our craving for a fish diet. We first pulled off our boots, and,

<sup>1</sup> *Anser cygnoides*, *Anas pæcilorhyncha*, *Anas falcata*, *Anas querquedula*, *Fuligula cristata*, *Fuligula ferina*, *Phalacrocorax Carbo*, *Pelicanus crispus*, (?) *Podiceps* sp., *Sterna leucoptera*, *Totanus ochropus*, *Tringa subminuta*, *Scolopax gallinago*, *Actitis hypoleucos*, *Aegialites minor*, *Platalea leucorodia*, *Ardea alba*, *Limosa melanuroides*, *Hybsibates himantopus*, *Botaurus stellaris*, *Glareola pratincola*, *Haliaëtus Macei*, *Pandion* sp., *Motacilla citreola*, *Motacilla flava*, *Anthus Richardii*, *Hirundo rufa*.

taking our guns, waded towards the spot where we could see the carp jumping. So intent were they with their games as not to notice us, and we generally approached to within a few paces of them; then, watching our opportunity, we shot them as they rose to the surface, and in this way secured some fine fish every day.

In the beginning of May the heat in the valley was intense; the mercury rose to  $31^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $88^{\circ}$  Fahr.) in the shade, whilst the water was heated only to  $21^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $70^{\circ}$  Fahr.), rendering bathing a pleasant relief. Hardly any rain fell, and vegetation was checked by the excessive heat as much as it had been by the preceding cold season. The yellowish grey tint of the valley at this time was particularly unattractive; only a few tufts of green grass had sprung up, in the midst of which solitary flowers (*Thermopsis lanccolata*, *Astragalus* sp., *Hyperoum* sp., *Potentilla* sp., *Iris* sp.) raised their heads timidly in the midst of surrounding desolation. Wherever a white layer of salt covered the soil, it had the appearance of driven snow, even when you were close to it; in such spots not a blade of green could be seen—nothing but withered clumps of *dirisun*. The whirlwinds frequently raised columns of saline dust, which blinded us and aggravated our sufferings. Only those parts of the valley were a little more cheerful where last year's vegetation had been completely burnt up by the early spring heats, and where towards the middle of May some green grass had appeared.

In the border range vegetation was equally



scanty. The high rocks and *débris* on the hill-sides appeared the same as in winter ; even the ravines in the mountains were very little better. Naked sand, boulders and crumbling rock, a few crooked dwarf elms, wild peach, or clumps of acacia, were the ever-recurring objects which met the travellers' eyes. Even on the banks of some tiny rivulet, which, after flowing a very short distance above ground would quickly hide itself beneath the soil as though it feared to encounter the terrors of the wilderness, the narrow fringe of verdure was mostly devoured by the Mongol goats.

The boundary of Ala-shan is marked by a line of drift sands, which, as we know, cover the whole of Trans-Ordos. The scantiness of the vegetation, notwithstanding the advanced season (end of May), was even more remarkable here than in the country through which we had passed. Indeed, the aspect of nature hardly differed from that which we had observed late in the previous autumn : here were the same cheerless yellow sands, the same patches of *zak*, the same clayey hillocks with clumps of stunted *karmyk*. If perchance some stray flowering grass (*Sophora flavescens*, *Turnefortia Arguzia*, *Convolvulus Ammani*, *Peganum* sp., *Carduus* sp.) appeared, it was only as a stranger or foster-child of so unprolific a parent. Two or three kinds of bushes (*Convolvulus tragacanthoides*, *Nitraria Schoberi*, *Calligonum Mongolicum* ?) were in flower, but they only grew in clayey spots so far apart as not to brighten the prevailing gloom of the landscape.

Still less can be said of animal life in these regions. The flooded fields in the valley of the river were the resort of water-fowl, and in the tall tufts of *dirisun* could be heard the call of many a pheasant; small birds were also now and then seen, but on entering Ala-shan all was changed, and scarcely a note broke the stillness of the desert.

The same death-like silence reigned in the mountains bordering the left valley of the Hoang-ho. When I passed the night near the summit of Mount Koir-Bogdo, while on a hunting excursion, the evening and early morning were as still and voiceless as in winter; the only sounds were the noise of the buzzard, and the hideous cry of a kite or vulture.

The climate of these regions harmonizes with their whole nature. After sultry heat in the beginning of May, it suddenly froze on the 17th of that month, the thermometer marking  $2^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $29^{\circ}$  Fahr.) at sunrise; to this succeeded hot weather, followed by a short interval of moderate temperature, after which the heat again became intense, the thermometer in the middle of June registering  $40^{\circ}$  Cent. ( $104^{\circ}$  Fahr.) in the shade.

In April and May violent winds sometimes occurred, but less frequently than at the same season in the previous year. While these lasted, the air was so thick with dust as almost to prevent respiration; the sun was darkened and everything covered with a thick layer of dust, which entered eyes, nose, and mouth. The direction of the wind was variable: during April it generally blew from the NW.

and SW., or cold quarters ; in May from the SE., or warm quarter.

Rain fell more frequently in the latter month than in the former, and was sometimes accompanied by thunderstorms ; but it only lasted a short time, and the atmosphere became terribly dry. All our things suffered ; we were obliged to moisten our collection of plants, otherwise they became so brittle as to break into little bits. I could hardly write my journal, for the ink dried in the pen as rapidly as it froze in winter, thus affording a curious instance of similar effects being produced by two opposite causes—heat and cold.<sup>1</sup>

Towards the end of May we entered Ala-shan, and soon afterwards met two officials sent from Din-yuan-ing by the prince to welcome us and conduct us through the desert. The real motive of their politeness was impatience on the part of the prince and his sons to receive our presents, of which they had heard through Baldin Sordji. We met this lama in April, near the Munni-ula, on his way home from Peking, whither he had been sent by his master on business. We presented him with a token of our gratitude for his past services, and showed him the handsome presents which we were bearing to the princes. With these gifts we hoped to win over to our interests the lords of Ala-shan, upon whose good-will our future journey to Lake Koko-nor entirely depended.

1

‘The parching air  
Burns froze and cold performs the effect of fire.’

The officials who met us at once began asking about the presents; they told us how desirous the princes were to receive them, and entreated me to send them in advance; to this I consented, and forwarded to their sovereign a large two-coloured plaid and a revolver, to his eldest son a plaid and a microscope, and to each of the younger a Remington pistol, with 1,000 prepared cartridges. On receiving the presents, although the hour was late, one of the officials immediately took his departure, the other remaining with us.

On June 7 we arrived at Din-yuan-ing, and established ourselves in a house prepared for our reception. The inquisitiveness of the people as usual gave us no peace, until we tied our fierce Karza to the gate of our house, where he kept the rascals at a respectable distance.

The evening of our arrival we were visited by our friends, the Gigen and Siya. My uniform as an officer of the staff, which I had purposely brought with me from Peking, produced a great impression upon the young princes, who examined it attentively. They were now more than ever convinced that I was a high functionary, perhaps the trusted agent of the Emperor himself. They had often questioned me last year about this; but when they saw me appear in a brilliant uniform, their suppositions were entirely confirmed. Henceforward I received the title of *the Czar's officer*, by which I was called during the remainder of our journey. I did not attempt to remove this opinion of my importance, which suited

me, inasmuch as it explained the object of our journey. In future the people always said of me that the Tsagan-khan (i.e. White Khan) had sent his officer into their country to see them and their land with his own eyes, that he might return home and tell him everything.

Early the next morning Sordji and others called on us on behalf of the prince and his sons to examine and buy our merchandise, requesting us in their names to sell to none but themselves. Now began our troubles. One lama took a microscope, another a stereoscope, a third soap and needles, a fourth cloth, &c. ; all these articles kept continually changing hands as first one, then another examined them. The princes were not nearly so eager to buy this year as they were last, although we fixed much lower prices. The old prince, however, was delighted with the stereoscopes and slides, and at once bought our whole stock.

In the meanwhile an excellent opportunity presented itself of getting to Lake Koko-nor. At Dinyuan-ing we overtook a caravan of twenty-seven Tangutans<sup>1</sup> and Mongols, who had lately arrived from Peking, and were about to pursue their journey to the temple of Chobsen, in the province of Kan-su, forty miles to the NNE. of Si-ning, and five days' journey from Lake Koko-nor. The Tangutans were overjoyed at our proposal to join their party, counting on our protection in case of an attack by Dun-

<sup>1</sup> The Tangutans are allied with the Tibetans. A description of them will be found in Chapter IV. of this volume.

gans. The further to impress them with the efficiency of our arms, we went through some firing exercise with rifles and revolvers. Numbers of spectators were present, and great was their astonishment at the rapidity and accuracy of our fire. The Tangutans almost danced with delight at their good luck in having secured such travelling companions.

The opportunity which thus presented itself of reaching Chobsen was a real piece of good fortune. Without it we could not have expected to procure a guide even across Southern Ala-shan. We were still more pleased when we heard from the Tangutans that their temple was situated in the midst of lofty mountains covered with forests, abounding in birds and wild animals. In fact, nothing could have been more opportune. We had only to obtain the consent of the Prince of Ala-shan to our departure with the Tangutans, who could not otherwise take us with them.

He, however, tried by every means in his power to deter us from proceeding to Koko-nor. What his motives may have been I cannot say; most probably he obeyed instructions from Peking, and had perhaps received a rebuke from head-quarters for his civility to the Russians last year.

However that may have been, Baldin Sordji now took an active part in forwarding his master's intrigues; at first he suggested our consulting the lamas as to whether the auguries were in favour of our journey. Of course they would have opposed



our departure, and prophesied all sorts of misfortunes if we went. The same ruse was tried last year with the view of discovering who we really were, and they threatened, if we persisted in our refusal to enlighten them, to find out through the Gigen; but all these artifices signally failed, owing to our determination not to submit to anything of the sort. We were then told that the Tangutans would travel very rapidly—thirty miles a day, or even more, and that we could not endure the fatigue of such long marches, especially as we should have to travel a good deal by night. To this we begged Sordji to mind his own business, and not trouble himself about our comforts on the road, of which we were the best judges. Finding that our resolution was still unshaken, he drew an alarming picture of the difficulties of the road, of the lofty mountains which we must cross on the way to Chobsen, and which were almost if not quite impassable for camels. ‘We had better wait a month,’ he added, ‘and then the Amban (governor) would give us guides to Koko-nor.’ But having been assured a few days before by the same individual that no guides for Koko-nor could be procured at any price in the whole of Ala-shan, and that not even the threat of capital punishment in case of refusal would induce them to go, so afraid were they of the Dungans, we put no faith in his promises. To make this bait more tempting, a Mongol officer called on us, of course at the bidding of Sordji, and related as a profound secret how the prince had that day given orders in the yamen (i.e. public office) for

two guides to be in readiness to escort us to Koko-nor, or even to Tibet if we wished to visit that country.

In the meanwhile our interview with the prince was put off from day to day under the pretext of his indisposition; the real cause of the delay being his fear lest I should insist on being allowed to depart with the caravan of Tangutans. Nor did we see the eldest son; the Gigen and Siya came frequently to visit us, without, however, inviting us to their house as formerly. In fact, our reception was far less cordial than last year.

On the other hand, our finances were in a worse plight than before. Of 87 lans (22*l.*) which we had when we started, only 50 (12*l.* 10*s.*) remained, and we had to buy six new camels and two horses to continue our journey. Three of the eleven camels with which we had left Kalgan, and both our horses, had died on the road. The only way of raising money was by the sale of our merchandise. Had the prince only known of our circumstances, he could have detained us without the slightest difficulty by refusing to buy our goods and forbidding any of his subjects from purchasing of us. If we let slip this opportunity, and the caravan were to leave Dinyuan-ing without us, we must for ever despair of reaching Koko-nor even with money. Here was a nice state of affairs caused by a beggarly want of funds.

Good luck again came to our rescue in the most extraordinary way. The Gigen agreed to give us

six camels and 100 lans (25*l.*) in money for a Spencer breech-loading rifle. He certainly valued the camels at 50 lans (12*l.* 10*s.*) a piece; on the other hand, the price I had asked for the gun was eleven times more than I gave for it, so that the thing was as broad as it was long. After receiving about 120 lans (30*l.*) more for some of our other merchandise, we were sufficiently independent to act with decision. I told Sordji that I would certainly accompany the Tangutans, and demanded a return of the things taken, or payment for them in money.

On the evening of June 13, the day before that fixed for the departure of the caravan, Sordji came to inform me that the prince had ordered the Tangutans to remain two days longer in town. All this time the lama never ceased urging us to remain, assuring us of the prince's grief at our speedy departure, of his fondness for Russians, and of his liking for their goods, especially stereoscopes, guns, cloth, soap, candles, &c. counting them off on his fingers as he repeated the words. He entreated us to give a gun to the prince, and another to his eldest son, or some other good article, even if it were Russian clothes. In fact, nothing could exceed the shameless behaviour of the prince and his sons in asking us to make them presents. They were so importunate at last that we were obliged to conceal some of our things whenever we expected visitors.

After persisting in my demands, I received 258 lans (62*l.* 10*s.*) from the prince for the articles he had taken, which, added to the sum we already pos-

essed, amounted to 500 lans (125*l.*) and fourteen camels.

We were certainly very fortunate. The departure of the Tangutan caravan was positively fixed for the morrow; and although we had received no intimation from the prince of his consent to our journey, we were no longer told that we must stay, and his family seemed to be aware of our plans, the Gigen having sent us a pair of horses as a present.

It would be difficult to express our satisfaction as we worked till late at night making preparations for a start the next day. Before sunrise the following morning all our party were astir loading the camels. Half of them were ready when a Tangutan suddenly appeared with the news that the caravan would not leave that day, a band of Dungans having been reported to have been seen in the vicinity of Din-yuan-ing. Unwilling to believe the Tangutans, I sent M. Pyltseff and a Cossack to enquire if the report were true; they soon returned and told us that the caravan was quite ready to march.

Sordji now appeared with his version of the story, which he reiterated at length: my patience was completely exhausted, and I abused him in round language. He then explained that the Tangutans did not wish us to accompany their caravan, and that they were bad people, although hitherto he had always praised them.

At this moment I heard that the caravan was leaving the town. Accordingly, we finished loading the camels, and, escorted by the mob, marched out of the

courtyard of the house with the intention of following. Before we had proceeded a hundred paces, Siya rode up and assured me that the Dungans had been again heard of, and that, although it had started, the caravan would be turned back; the young prince ended by entreating us to remain till the whole affair was satisfactorily explained. Siya's companion, the lama chief of the Tangutans, who had been so anxious hitherto that we should travel together, now repeated the words of the prince, and urged us to defer our departure.

His appearance and his sudden change of manner had more weight with us than all the warnings of the prince. We could no longer count on him as a friend, but must regard our future travelling companion as an enemy; how, then, could we place confidence in him? As a last resource, but one which I knew could not lead to much, I asked Siya if he would give me his word of honour that we should not be cheated, and that the caravan would not leave without us? 'I give it willingly! I answer for it,' he joyfully exclaimed, caring very little how he attained his object of detaining us. The lama chief also assured me that they would not start without us. Accordingly, we turned into the prince's suburban garden and pitched our tent, awaiting further events.

How can I describe our disappointment, particularly at first? It was certainly too bad. The long-cherished object of our desires, to gain which we had suffered so much, the prize which we had seemed

on the point of winning, was suddenly snatched from our grasp. We knew not for how long. Had we been told on our first arrival at Din-yuan-ing that we must not proceed with the Tangutans, the disappointment, although great, would not have been half what we now experienced. We had never ventured to hope for such a favourable opportunity, and now it was doubly hard to bear when success appeared so certain. We passed all that day on the tip-toe of expectation. Sordji and the other lamas never once came near us; only Siya arrived towards evening, and him I frightened by threatening to complain on my arrival at Peking of the way we had been treated by the authorities of Ala-shan. The young prince, evidently ashamed at the part he had taken in all these intrigues, entreated us to wait a little while longer, assuring me that the Tangutans would on no account leave without us. After my past experiences I could put little faith in these assurances, and was turning over in my mind what part of Mongolia I should next explore, when suddenly, towards evening the following day (June 17), Siya again appeared, bearing the welcome tidings that the Tangutan caravan was at a short distance from the town, and we might join it the next day. The scouts who had been sent to reconnoitre reported that nothing could be seen of the Dungans, and that the alarm was a false one. Of course this was merely to blind us; no Dungans had passed anywhere near, but most probably the Prince of Ala-shan wished to gain time to send to Ning-hia-fu, and ask for instruc-



tions from the governor of that town how to act under the circumstances. The secrecy observed with regard to all travellers in China is so great that I could not discover, either then or afterwards, why we were detained at the moment of departure, and prevented for two days from proceeding on our journey. However, we had no more time to think of it, and we were overjoyed at the favourable turn of events.



KUTUKHTU-LAMA OF HIGH RANK.

(From a Photograph lent by Baron Osten Sacken.)

The prospect of fulfilling our great enterprise gave us no rest the remainder of that day and night. The caravan with which we were now associated was equipped at Peking by one of the most important of

the Kutukhtus of Mongolia—the Gigen Djandji, owner of a great many churches at Peking and in Mongolia, including the renowned monastery of *Utai*, not far from Kuku-khoto. The saint himself was born at the temple of Chobsen, in the province of Kan-su, whither our future companions were now travelling. They were a motley assemblage. Exclusive of our four selves, the caravan numbered 37 men, ten of whom were lama-warriors, sent as an escort by the Gigen of Ala-shan; the others were mostly Tangutans, natives of Chobsen; there were also a few Mongol pilgrims on their way to pray at Lhasa. For the conveyance of all their luggage, 72 camels and 40 horses, including our own, were required. The chiefs of the caravan were Donir-Lamas (treasurers of Lamaseries), Tangutans by birth, and excellent obliging men. To cement our friendship with them, I gave to each one a small plaid.

All the members of the caravan were armed with matchlocks, lances, or swords. They had the reputation of being brave, almost foolhardy men, to venture at such a time into a country infested with bands of marauding Dungans. The courage of our companions, however, as we shall presently see, was not great even when the danger was only of an imaginary kind.

The lama-warriors carried English smooth-bores, bought by the Chinese Government, and sent from Peking to Ala-shan. Their guns, however, were of an inferior kind, and were rendered still more unserviceable by careless treatment. But the appearance

of the escort in their red blouses and forage caps, mounted on camels, was very striking and picturesque ; as for their fighting capacities, they were no better than their fellows. But the most remarkable personage of the party was a Tangutan named Randzema, on his way from Peking to Tibet. He was a man of about forty, frank in manner and good-natured, very talkative, willing to assist everyone, and have a finger in everybody's pie. The loquacity of our new friend, accompanied with his emphatic gestures, suggested our bestowing upon him the sobriquet of the 'many-worded, *Avvakum,*' which very soon passed through the caravan, and became thenceforward the usual appellation of Randzema. His ruling passions were the chase and target firing ; the latter amusement was indeed frequently indulged in by the whole party. Almost every day, as soon as we had arrived in camp, some would begin shooting at a mark ; others would soon gather round, first as mere spectators, then, desirous of trying their skill, they would bring their guns, and in this way the firing became general. Randzema was the leading spirit of all these parties. It was enough for him if he heard the report of fire-arms ; no matter what he might be doing at the time, even though asleep or resting after a long march, the indefatigable *Avvakum* would rouse himself at once and proceed bare-footed to the scene of action. Here he would frequently advise how the target should be placed, upon the size of the charge, how a broken gun might be repaired, &c. Although he had the reputation of

being a good sportsman, he certainly did not distinguish himself as a marksman, and invariably used such heavy charges that his shoulder was constantly swelled from the recoil.

Our friend always rode on horseback, leaving the laden camels to two of his companions. He was ever on the alert for game; no sooner had his quick eye detected antelope than he galloped up to offer us the option of shooting it, or sometimes stalked them himself, having first lighted the slow match of his gun. His companions, upon whom devolved the whole care of the pack animals, were evidently not very well pleased with their friend's turn for sporting. On one occasion they punished him by obliging him to lead the pack animals, when, to our surprise we saw Randzamba no longer mounted on his horse, but leading his camels by the halter. He did not, however, endure this restraint on his liberty for long. As ill-luck would have it, antelope were plentiful that day, and Randzamba, perched upon the back of a camel, could see a long way. In whatever direction he chanced to look, his eyes were sure to rest upon some of these animals; this was too much for his forbearance, and after watching us start off in pursuit of one of the kara-sultas (black-tailed antelope), his excitement knew no bounds, and, oblivious of all else save the one absorbing passion of the chase, he led his pack animals into a ravine, where they were found by his countrymen, who, seeing how impossible it was to put any trust in so restless a

mortal, relieved him from his duties, and allowed him once more to mount his steed and enjoy his favourite pursuit.

The day after we joined the Tangutans the caravan started. We brought up the rear with our camels, in order not to detain the others by any stoppage arising from the refastening of a pack or any accident of that kind. Although the sale of our merchandise at Din-yuan-ing had considerably diminished the bulk of our baggage, the necessity for laying in a stock of provisions (rice and millet), which we had heard were unobtainable in Kan-su, besides other minor purchases, such as spare ropes, felting, &c., increased our effects so materially that we had still nine good camel-loads. It was now more difficult for our party of four to manage this train, being no longer independent as to our movements, but obliged to keep pace with the caravan. I tried in vain to hire a Mongol assistant, but no one would come even for a good sum of money. It was with the greatest difficulty that I succeeded in persuading some of the Tangutans to allow our camels to pasture with their own at night on payment of a rouble (2s. 6d.) a day to the watcher. As for the other work, we had to do it all ourselves, and could find no spare time even to think of science on the road.

We generally rose about midnight, in order to avoid the heat of the day, and marched from twenty to twenty-five miles, or even more sometimes, to the halting-place, which was usually near a well; but if there were none near, we would dig a hole in the

ground, in which the salt water would collect. Some of our companions had often made the journey before, and knew the way perfectly across these deserts. They could tell directly which were the most likely places for water: in some places the precious fluid was not more than three feet below the surface; in most of the road-side wells it was generally very bad, and, to make it worse, the Dungans often threw into them the bodies of dead Mongols. I cannot help shuddering now when I remember how one day, after having drunk tea, we proceeded to give some drink to the camels, and discovered the putrid carcass of a man lying at the bottom of the well from which we had drawn water for our own use!

We could not sleep at the halting-places because of the great heat of the soil and the stifling atmosphere. Notwithstanding which, we had to remove the pack-saddles of the camels to prevent their backs from becoming sore, as they infallibly would in the hot weather if we neglected this precaution. It took us an hour to water our animals—a tedious process which had to be performed every day in hot weather, each camel consuming on an average six gallons at a time. Even at night our rest was disturbed owing to excessive exhaustion.

For the first few days our tent was beset by inquisitive visitors. They would know everything. Our guns—every article we possessed, no matter how insignificant, was an object of interest to them. They would take it up, examine it closely, smell it, and ask numberless questions, which we had to



answer again and again, as the curiosity of every new-comer had to be satisfied. This was very tiresome, but could not be avoided if we wished to keep on good terms with our fellow-travellers, upon whom the success of our journey so greatly depended.

A good deal of curiosity, almost amounting to suspicion, was excited by our habit of collecting plants, recording meteorological observations, and writing a journal. I tried to avoid suspicion by explaining that I made notes of all I saw to refresh my memory when I returned home, and had to give in my report; as to my plants, they were for medicinal purposes, and the stuffed birds and animals for exhibition; the object of my meteorological observations was to know beforehand what the weather would be. Of the truth of the last statement they were quite satisfied, after a fall of rain which I had foretold by means of the aneroid. The title of '*the Czar's officer*,' which had followed me from Dinyuan-ing, served to dispel the doubts and distrust of our companions. However, I could not make many observations which I should otherwise have done for fear of causing great suspicion, and deferred doing this till my return journey, contenting myself for the present with a route survey, which was very imperfect, owing to the want of a pocket compass,<sup>1</sup> and the intrusiveness of our companions. Sometimes it was absolutely necessary to make an entry in my pocket-book; for this purpose I intentionally

<sup>1</sup> I was obliged to give both my small compasses to the princes of Ala-shan.

loitered behind the caravan, and, sitting down on my heels, made notes of the surrounding objects. Even then I had to exercise the greatest caution, because, if once found out, I could never have removed the suspicions which would have arisen as to the objects of our journey.

The difficulties of collecting plants were also very great. No sooner did we gather some herb than a number of the Tangutans would surround us, exclaiming, '*Yamur yem ?*' (What medicine is it?) or, '*Tsisik sehken fuh na ?*' (Is it a good flower?) When any of our party shot a bird, they would ride up and enquire what bird we had killed? was it good to eat? how had we shot it? &c. These annoyances, however disagreeable, had to be endured with the best possible grace.

The road from Din-yuan-ing led at first south, and afterwards almost due west, to the town of Tajiing, which is situated within the limits of the province of Kan-su.

The south of Ala-shan differs but little from the northern and central parts of that country: like them, it is a wilderness in the full meaning of the word; its sands are even more extensive, and have well earned their Mongol appellation of *Tingeri*, i.e. sky. These drift-sands form the southern border of Ala-shan, from the Hoang-ho on the east to the river Etsina on the west, as we were told by the Mongols. Having crossed the *Tingeri* for ten miles in their narrowest eastern part, we became well acquainted with them.

The Tingeri have the appearance of innumerable hillocks, lying close together, without any regularity. They are from fifty to sixty feet, rarely one hundred feet high, composed of fine yellow sand on a hard clay subsoil, with occasional bare patches of clay. A few rare tufts of mat grass (*Psamma villosa*) and field mugwort are here and there scattered over these clayey areas, now and then protruding through the sand; or more rarely some shrub of the leguminous order makes its appearance. But such scanty vegetation makes no impression on the death-like character of these deserts, the only living creatures in which are the kites and small black *marmot*. The loose sand, heated by a burning sun, is constantly carried by the wind from one hillock to another, lying in ridges or furrows between the mounds. These greatly impede the progress of the caravan, especially of the pack-animals, which have to climb from one hillock to another, sinking deep at every step in the loose soil. There is no track here of any kind; nothing but dried camels' dung, and an occasional skeleton of one of these beasts serve to show you the direction you must take. You generally steer by the sun. It is terrible to be caught in such places in a whirlwind. The summits of the sandy hillocks at first appear as though enveloped in smoke; the air becomes darkened with clouds of sand, which obscure the sun. The best time for crossing these hillocks is after a rain-fall, when the hardened soil supports the weight of the camels and the air remains clear.

On the clay flats, which alternate with the bare sand, the most common plants in Southern as in Northern Ala-shan, are the budarhana and karmyk, occasionally the field mugwort, and a low stunted shrub, the *Sarcosygium xanthoxylon*; the zak, or *saxaul*, is never found here. The country is undulating, and a few small hills now and then vary the monotony, sometimes prolonged into chains. These hills, never rising more than a few hundred feet above the surrounding plain, are generally entirely devoid of vegetation; such as there is, it does not differ from that of the adjacent desert. During our march with the Tangutan caravan we saw no inhabitants. Everything was destroyed and pillaged by the Dungans, who sometimes made their appearance in bands in Southern Ala-shan in quest of more plunder. We saw by the roadside several human skeletons, two ruined temples, and whole heaps of putrefying corpses, half devoured by wolves.

After crossing the Tingeri, we directed our march along their southern border, over barren clay with only two kinds of saline plants, and soon the magnificent mountains of Kan-su rose in front of us, towering above the adjacent plains like a huge rampart; while in the far distance the snowy peaks of Kuliang and Liang-chu might be discerned. One more march, and this grand range stood before us in all the majesty of its matchless beauty. The desert as suddenly terminated. Hardly more than a mile from the sands, which extend far to the westward, cultivated fields, flowery meadows, and Chinese

farmhouses gladden the sight. Culture and desert, life and death, are placed in such close juxtaposition that the astonished traveller may well doubt his own eyes.

This contrast in the nature of the country which still forms the boundary between that of roving nomads and that of settled cultivators is defined by the same Great Wall which we had seen at Kalgan and Ku-peh-kau. Hence it continues westwards over the mountains bordering the plateau, passing round the south of Ordos, and abutting on the Alashan mountains, which form a natural barrier to the desert. From the southern end of the last-named range, the Great Wall continues along the northern border of the province of Kan-su, past the towns of Lang-chau, Kan-chau, and Suh-chau to the fortress of Kia-yui-kwan. The Great Wall (if we can call it by such a name here) bears no resemblance to the gigantic edifice near Peking. Instead of an immense stone building, all we saw on the border of Kan-su was a mud wall, greatly dilapidated by time. A short distance to the north of it, about three miles and a half apart, stand clay-built watch-towers twenty-one feet high, by about as much square at the base, now entirely deserted, but formerly garrisoned by ten men, whose duty was to signal the approach of the invader. The line of watch-towers is said to have extended from the province of Ili to Peking itself, and news was conveyed by it with marvellous rapidity. The signal was smoke which rose from the summit of the tower, a fire

having been lighted inside. The Mongols gravely assured me that the fuel used on these occasions was a mixture of wolves' and sheep's dung, and that the smoke rose perpendicularly in the air, no matter how strong a wind blew.

Rather over a mile beyond the Great Wall lies the small town of Ta-jing, which escaped the Dungans. At the time of our march it was garrisoned by 1,000 Chinese troops, Solones<sup>1</sup> from Manchuria, near the banks of the Amur. They all understood Russian, and some could even speak it, saluting us with a 'How do you do? I hope you are well.'

Our caravan did not enter the town, but halted immediately outside its mud wall, where we hoped to obtain some respite from unwelcome visitors. But vain were such hopes. In a moment the news of our arrival had passed through the town, and we were invaded by crowds of sightseers. Not content with looking from a distance, the Chinese actually forced their way into our tent, and gave us not a moment's peace. It was no use driving them out, or setting the dog at them, because no sooner had one lot disappeared than another made its appearance. Officers rode up to our tent, and asked us to show them our guns and make them some present. On our refusal, they demanded to see our passports, and threatened to prevent us from proceeding on our journey. This continued for two days, i.e. as long as we were at Ta-jing. Here we found a very

<sup>1</sup> See Supplementary Note.



rare thing—some excellent leavened bread, baked with yeast.<sup>1</sup> This was the first of the kind we had seen, and we never afterwards saw any more of it. Of course we took a good supply for the road. Whence this mode of baking bread was introduced I cannot say, although the Solones told us that some years ago they taught the art to the local bakers, having learnt it from the Russians on the Amur.

The best road from Ala-shan to the temple of Chobsen, and also to Si-ning and Lake Koko-nor, passes through the towns of Sa-yang-chen and Djung-ling; but we took a more westerly course through Ta-jing, in order to avoid the Chinese towns and population, which is thickly scattered along the more easterly and better road. Our fellow-travellers were so well aware of the difficulties to which they would have to submit at the hands of the Chinese authorities and soldiers, if they marched through the populous region, that they preferred following the mountain paths leading from Ta-jing to Chobsen through districts thinly inhabited and depopulated by the Dungans.

<sup>1</sup> In China only unleavened bread is used, and that always newly baked. The Abbé Huc, however, in the description of his journey through Tartary, mentions some excellent leavened loaves which he found in Kan-su, near the town of Sa-yang-chen, therefore not far from Ta-jing.—Huc, 'Souvenirs d'un Voyage en Tartarie,' &c., t. ii. p. 33.

## CHAPTER III.

THE PROVINCE OF KAN-SU.<sup>1</sup>

First sight of Kan-su—Marginal range—Ta-yi-gu—Sung-shan—Abundance of water—Ruined villages—A false alarm—Harsh treatment of prisoner—Gold washings—Profusion of vegetation—Another adventure—Randzemba and the breech-loaders—Mystery explained—Temple of Chertinton; its superior or abbot—We leave our camels and horses—The Rangtu-gol—Cultivated and thickly-populated plain—The Taldi—The temple of Chobsen; its images and idols; its militia garrison—Arrival at Chobsen—Drying the collections—Stagnation of trade—Start for the mountains—Description of the mountains of Kan-su—Northern and Southern chains—Snowy peaks—‘*Amneh*’ the sacred mountains—Geology—Minerals—Climate—Flora: trees, bushes, &c.—The Rhubarb plant (*Rheum palmatum*)—Method of obtaining and preserving it—Artificial cultivation—Rhododendrons—Characteristic plants of Kan-su—Luxuriant meadow-land—Fauna of Kan-su—Mammals—Birds; their classification—Birds of alpine zone—Absence of water-fowl—Excessive humidity—Thunderstorms—Sodi-Soruksum; splendid view—Mount Gadjur; its sacred lake—Terror of natives—Guides refuse to proceed—Autumn—Camels suffer—Chobsen besieged—Perilous situation—Prepare for defence—Night-watch—Hire guides to Koko-nor—Consult auguries—Halt—Supplies—Departure—A critical moment—Appearance of Dungans—Mur-zasak—Tatung-gol—Koko-nor at last.

WE left Ta-jing on the morning of June 20, and the same day ascended the mountains of Kan-su, where we suddenly found ourselves in a new climate surrounded by a new nature. On first entering this region we were impressed with its lofty elevation and the grand mountains rising to the limits of

<sup>1</sup> The name of Kan-su is derived from two of its towns—Kan-chau and Suh-chau. Yule’s ‘Marco Polo,’ new ed. vol. i. p. 222.—M.

perpetual snow. Although only twenty-seven miles distant from the desert of Ala-shan, the soil was remarkably fertile, and the humidity of the climate ensured abundance of water. The flora and fauna also marvellously changed; a profusion of rich grass clothed the plains and valleys; dense forests darkened the steep slopes, and animal life appeared in great variety. But to return to our narrative.

As is the case with other mountain-chains of the Mongolian plateau, this marginal range in Kan-su shows its full development only on the side of the Ala-shan plain; whilst on the other face the declivity is short and easy. Even the snow-capped peaks of Ku-liang and Liang-chu, about thirty miles to the right of our road, apparently do not rise much above the plateau, and their southern slopes are only marked with occasional patches of snow. The ascent is by a ravine hemmed in by precipitous rocks of schistous clay; the road is tolerably good, and even practicable for wheeled conveyances. On either side are lofty rugged mountains, abounding in excellent pasturage for cattle; forests grow near the axis of the range, but at some distance from the road.

After crossing the pass (nineteen miles from the entrance to the mountains), we came to the small Chinese town of Ta-yi-gu, destroyed by the Dungs, but at this time garrisoned by 1,000 Chinese soldiers. Its height is 8,600 feet, while Ta-jing is only 5,900 feet above sea-level.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> On entering Kan-su, our aneroid got out of order; all further hypsometrical observations were, therefore, made with boiling-water.

Leaving the little town of Sung-shan (also destroyed by Dungans) on our left, we directed our march across an uneven steppe which lay immediately beyond the border range, between it and other mountains that rose in front of us.

We had no further cause for trouble about pasturage or water. Water poured from every cleft in the rocks, and the profusion of rich grass reminded us of our meadows at home. Here we saw dzerens (steppe antelopes), and a small herd of horses run wild, which had been let loose at the time of the insurrection. They were so shy that we tried in vain to capture one.

Traces of the ravages committed by the insurgents now met us at every step. The numerous villages were all in ruins, human skulls littered the ground, and not a soul was to be seen. Our companions showed symptoms of the greatest cowardice; they refused to make a fire at night, lighted their matchlocks, and begged us to go in front: all their fears, however, were dissipated in the most ludicrous way.

In the valley of the Chagrin-gol, the lamas espied some men running away; taking them for Dungans, and overjoyed at the small number of the enemy, they opened fire, although the fugitives were a long way off. My companion and I hastened to the scene of action, imagining that an attack had actually been made, but when we saw how matters stood we remained as spectators. The lamas continued firing although the enemy were by this time out of sight.

After discharging his piece every man shouted at the top of his voice before reloading. This is the usual style of warfare, alternately firing and uttering terrible cries to frighten the enemy.

At length our brave warriors started in pursuit and caught one man who turned out to be a Chinese. He may possibly have been a Dungan for the Mahomedan Chinese do not differ in appearance from their Confucian brethren. It was resolved to put the prisoner to death as soon as the caravan arrived at the next halting-place; in the meantime he was compelled to walk beside his captors. He was caught trying to get off by hiding in the long grass at the road side, so he was tied by his queue to the tail of one of the mounted camels.

On arrival at camp the prisoner was fastened to one of the packs, while the lamas sharpened a sword intended to cut off his head. But now a dispute arose as to whether he should be put to death, some of them wishing to spare his life. Understanding perfectly their conversation, which was in Mongol, the Chinaman never lost his composure. When tea was ready he was invited to join in the meal, receiving as much attention as an invited guest. Greatly to our astonishment he drank it as though nothing out of the common way had happened, the lamas filling his cup while they discussed his execution. Finding this extremely disgusting, we started off on an excursion into the mountains. On our return towards evening we learned that, thanks to the mediation of the leaders of the caravan,

the man's life had been spared, and that he would be set at liberty in the morning.

After crossing the Chagrin-gol, a good-sized stream flowing in a south-westerly direction to the town of Djung-ling,<sup>1</sup> we again entered mountains, which now form no part of the border range, but are piled up on the lofty plateau of Kan-su. This chain runs parallel with the largest of the tributaries of the upper Hoang-ho, viz. the Tetung-gol or Tatung-ho, flowing from the north; another equally gigantic range rises on its southern bank. I will presently describe the orography of this region, but now continue the narrative of our journey to the temple of Chobsen.

From the Chagrin-gol we ascended the valley of the Yarlin-gol<sup>2</sup> by a road practicable for wheeled carriages, although it has been much neglected since the Dungan insurrection. No inhabitants were to be seen. We passed several abandoned gold-washings; all the streams in these mountains are said to abound in the precious ore. Water is everywhere plentiful, and the character of the scenery thoroughly alpine. Like the Munni-ula, the Ala-shan range, and most of the mountains of Mongolia, the outer slopes are the wildest; towards the passes the scenery becomes tamer. Some towering peaks, however, are visible even here, as for instance, Mount Gadjur, which

<sup>1</sup> This town is situated on the Chagrin-gol, twenty-three miles below the spot where we crossed this stream, which is apparently a branch of the Tatung.

<sup>2</sup> This stream flows into the Chagrin-gol; we saw in its valley an image of Maidari, fourteen feet high, cut out of the rock.



we could see on our right ; but none of them attain the limit of perpetual snow.

We now passed through a belt of underwood, soon afterwards succeeded by forests which grow chiefly on the southern slopes ; the upper zone was thickly covered with grass. New kinds of plants met our eyes at every step ; almost every shot we fired added some fresh specimen to our bird collection ; but we had no time to linger over these pleasures, so eager were our companions to reach their destination, and so fearful of Dungans. We could only make the best use of our opportunities as they presented themselves. To add to our difficulties the rain fell incessantly, and the atmosphere was saturated with moisture, rendering it impossible to dry our collections, which were consequently ruined by the damp ; and even our guns were rusted by it.

After crossing the pass, the ascent of which is gradual and the descent only a little steeper, we encamped for the night in the mountains. Here another adventure befell us. Our Cossacks, who had gone to fetch wood, observed a fire burning in an adjoining ravine, and some men near it. On hearing this report everyone in camp was on the alert, imagining that they were robbers preparing to attack us by night. We determined to reconnoitre before it became quite dark, and accompanied by eight of the caravan, our friend Randzemba among the number, we cautiously approached the fire ; but we were soon observed, and the enemy fled. The lamas at once pursued, yelling at the top of their voices, but

owing to the thick underwood, and approaching twilight, could not overtake the fugitives. We all assembled round the deserted camp fire, on which stood an iron bowl containing food, with a bag of provisions lying near it. Judging from the small size of the cooking vessel that the party could not be numerous, and that after all they might not be robbers, our companions began holloaing in Mongolian, Tangutan, and Chinese to invite the strangers to return. The only response vouchsafed was a shot, fired from a clump of bushes on the brow of the hill, which whistled close by us. In return we fired about fifteen times in the direction of the smoke, the lamas joining in, and Randzamba of course taking a leading part. For a long while afterwards he could talk of nothing else but the breechloaders, and on returning to camp in answer to all questions put to him by his companions, he would exclaim, 'Ay lama, lama, lama!' vehemently shaking his head and wringing his hands to express his unutterable astonishment.

We determined to mount guard that night, and lay down to rest with our guns under our heads as usual. Hardly had I fallen asleep when I was roused by the report of a shot close to our tent, followed by a loud cry. Seizing our guns and revolvers, we ran to the door, and found that the sentry had fired into the air. 'Why did you do that?' I asked him. 'To let them know we are watching,' was the answer. The Chinese soldiers frequently did this, at least the militia assembled for

the defence of Chobsen constantly wasted their ammunition in this way. The following day the whole mystery was explained. At dawn two Tangutan sportsmen appeared, asserting that they and their two companions had run away from us, that one of their party had fired supposing us to be Dungans, but that nothing had been heard of him since. They begged us to restore the bag of clothing which the lamas had appropriated as their legitimate spoil. These, however, not only refused to surrender, but thrashed the strangers soundly into the bargain, for their companion's impudence in having fired upon us!

On resuming our march, we fell in with an encampment of Tangutans, with their black tents and herds of long-haired yaks, called *sarlaks* by the Mongols. After crossing some more spurs of the great range, we reached the bank of the Tatung-gol, and encamped for the night near the temple of Chertinton. The impregnable position of this temple saved it from falling into the hands of the rebels, and made it a secure place of refuge for the neighbouring Tangutan population. In the next chapter I will describe this people more fully; suffice it for the present to remark, that at first sight we were struck with their resemblance to gipsies.

The Tatung-gol, where we now approached it, about half way from its source, is a rapid stream 140 feet wide, flowing in a stony channel, in some places between precipitous walls of rock, but occasionally forming picturesque valleys, in one of which, shel-

tered by enormous cliffs, stands the temple of Chertinton.

The superior of the temple, a Gigen (i.e. living Buddha) is a very remarkable man. On learning of our arrival he invited us to his house to drink tea and make his acquaintance. We gave him a stereoscope, with which he was delighted, and we soon became good friends. Unfortunately he was a native Tangutan, and could not speak Mongol; our conversation was, therefore, carried on through the medium of two interpreters, the Buriat-Cossack and a Tangutan. Our host was an artist and made a sketch of our first meeting with him.

The valley of the Tatung-gol is so deeply cut into the mountains that the elevation of the temple is only 7,200 feet, the lowest spot we visited in the district, although to the eastward, i.e. towards the Hoang-ho, the valley of its tributary is of course lower.

The fords of this river are only practicable at low water, and even then are very difficult: a bridge has, therefore, been thrown across it, two miles above the temple; but the gates at either end are too narrow to allow of the passage of loaded camels. We had, therefore, to unload our beasts, and hire Chinese to carry our things across. Here we pitched our tent, and remained five days, in consequence of the illness of the Cossack Chebayeff. Our companions could not wait so long, and left us to continue their journey to the temple of Chobsen, only forty-seven miles distant. Our compulsory five days'

halt was very agreeable, enabling us to make excursions into the mountains, and to study their flora and fauna. The profusion of both one and the other made me decide on returning to this spot, and devoting the whole summer to the special study of the mountains round Chertinton.

We were told positively that our baggage animals could not pass the range on the right (southern) bank of the Tatung ;<sup>1</sup> accordingly we left camels and horses, and hired Chinese to carry the baggage on mules and asses to Chobsen.

On July 1, we ascended one of the tributaries of the Tatung, the Rangta-gol, by a narrow path leading through a defile in which we saw the black tents and wooden huts of the Tangutans. The hills are well wooded up to their higher zones, which are covered with underwood. Enormous rocks rise on all sides and shut in the lateral defiles. The ascent was very steep, almost precipitous, and the beasts could hardly keep their footing. The view from the summit, however, is splendid, overlooking a wide uneven plain, which presented a remarkable appearance as we saw it, swathed in fleecy clouds with a bright sun and clear sky overhead.

The descent on the opposite side is short but abrupt,<sup>2</sup> leading to an extensive hilly region, on the outskirts of which is the town of Si-ning, at the foot of lofty snow-clad mountains. This is a well-

<sup>1</sup> This information afterwards proved incorrect ; pack-camels may cross the mountains, although with considerable difficulty.

<sup>2</sup> The ascent from the Tatung by the valley of the Rangta is twenty-three miles long, the descent on the south only six miles.

cultivated and populous country, comprising the towns of Nim-pi and Ou-yam-pu, and further to the west, Si-ning, Tonkir, and Seng-kwan.

The inhabitants of this part of the province of Kan-su<sup>1</sup> are Chinese, Tangutans,<sup>2</sup> and Taldi, to the latter of whom I will for the present confine my remarks.

This tribe inhabits a comparatively limited district near the towns of Nim-pi, Ou-yam-pu, and Si-ning, and the temple of Chobsen, where they form half the numerical strength of the population. Externally they are more like Mongols than Chinese, although a settled agricultural people. Their faces are round, with flattened features, cheekbones prominent, eyes and hair black, mouth rather large, and figure thickset. The men shave beard and hair, leaving a pig-tail.<sup>3</sup> The girls plait all their hair into a long tress behind, and wear a tall square head-dress made of *daba* (cotton cloth), but the old women put nothing on the head, dividing the hair in front and braiding it behind. The dress of men and women is very like that of the Chinese, with whom, as well as with the settled Tangutans, they intermarry. They are Buddhists by religion.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Kan-su is bounded on the north by Mongolia, on the east by Shen-si, on the south by Sze-chuan, while on the west, before the Dungan insurrection, it extended as far as Barkul and Urumchi in Eastern Turkestan.

<sup>2</sup> A description of the Tangutans will be found in Chapter IV. of this volume; the Chinese in Kan-su are the same as in other parts of the Empire; the Mongols only inhabit those districts lying near the sources of the Tatung, forming part of the Koko-nor administrative district.

<sup>3</sup> Unlike Mongols and Chinese, the Taldi can apparently grow beards.

<sup>4</sup> The following extract translated from Palladius' letter to Gen.



These are all the observations I could make of this people, of whom we saw little. The Mongols spoke in a disparaging way of their physical and moral qualities, and described their language to be a mixture of Mongol, Chinese, and words of their own.

The temple of Chobsen, which was the starting point of all our subsequent excursions, stands on the northern border of the hilly region which we have mentioned. It is forty miles NNE. of Si-ning, in  $37^{\circ} 3'$  north latitude, and  $100^{\circ} 58'$  east longitude from Greenwich, fixing the latter approximately by existing maps. Its elevation is 8,900 feet above the sea. The temple comprises a principal shrine, surrounded by a mud wall, and a number (perhaps 100) of smaller buildings, which were all destroyed by the Dungans three years before our arrival, the shrine alone, protected by its wall, escaping.

The temple is of brick, in the usual quadrangular

Vlangali, dated Peking, August 13, 1873, supplies further particulars about the Taldi: 'It is certain that in the last century a colony of Mahommedans, "turban wearers" from the western countries, settled near Si-ning; probably in the course of time they became like the common Dungans, judging from those of the Si-ning Mahommedans who brought rhubarb to Kiakhta. As to the name of *Taldi*, I suspect that it refers to the general appellation of the emigrants from *Taltu*, or *Tartu* (the Chinese reading is uncertain), in the sixteenth century, and originated in the following way: when the inhabitants of Hami were hard pressed by the sultans of Turfan, the Ming Government built them a separate city 400 li from Suh-chau; this city is mentioned in Chinese history under the name of *Kuyui-chen* (its extensive ruins and aqueducts are still visible), but the settlers themselves called it *Taltu*, in what language I know not; a short time afterwards the Turfanis advanced to Kuyui or Taltu and obliged its inhabitants to remove to Kan-su, where they simply called themselves "people of Taltu," without any other name to indicate the origin of their tribe. I offer this explanation merely as a suggestion founded on actual fact.'

—M.

shape common to all Buddhist places of worship, the sides facing the four cardinal points; the entrance is by a triple gate on the south, opposite to which is a stone platform ascended by a flight of steps. The sloping roof is covered with sheets of copper gilt, adorned with dragons at the corners.

A copper-gilt statue (fourteen feet high) of Sakya-muni, i.e. Buddha, occupies a conspicuous place in the interior. The god is represented seated; before him a lamp is always burning, and pinchbeck vessels containing water, rice, and barley-meal stand near.

Along three sides are ranged on shelves a thousand lesser deities from one to two feet high, the attitudes of some of which are peculiarly grotesque.

All these idols were made at Dolon-nor by order of the Abbot Djandji, and brought to Ala-shan, whence they were conveyed to Chobsen at the cost of the prince.

A gallery runs round the four sides of the courtyard, 100 paces each way, covered with rude paintings illustrating the exploits of gods and heroes, a strange medley of serpents, devils, and monsters; here too, at intervals of seven feet along the balustrade, are placed small iron urns, to contain the prayers, written on slips of paper, of the devout suppliants who daily attend the sacred edifice.

At the time of our visit 150 lamas and one Gigen resided at Chobsen. The cost of maintenance is defrayed by the abbot and by the voluntary contributions of pilgrims who are entertained on festivals with tea, milk, and roasted barley or *dzamba*.

The latter is the universal food of all Tangutans and Mongols in Kan-su and Koko-nor. It is prepared in the simplest way: the grain is first roasted over the fire, then pounded in a mortar, and the meal thus prepared is boiled in tea and eaten instead of bread.

In addition to the lamas, a force of 1,000 militia



LAMA IN OFFICIATING DRESS.

(Mongols, Chinese, Tangutans, and Taldi), were assembled for the defence of Chobsen against the Dungans, whose territory was only ten miles off, and who were continually harassing the neighbourhood,

riding up to the very walls of the temple in defiance of its badly-armed garrison. Four miles and a half to the east of Chobsen, another mud wall similar to the one on the borders of Kan-su, but even more dilapidated by time, extends, as we were assured, from Si-ning through Tatung to Kan-chau.

On our arrival at Chobsen the late companions of our journey welcomed us, and placed at our disposal a large empty house, formerly used as a store for idols. Here we spread out and dried our collections, which had seriously suffered from damp. But our occupations were constantly interrupted by sightseers, whose curiosity was excited by our herbs, &c., and it required all my prestige as a physician to allay their suspicions.

We stayed a week here preparing for an expedition to the mountains, where we intended passing the summer. Our purchases included four mules (for which we paid 110 lans), and a few small articles, which we had great difficulty in obtaining, owing to the stagnation of trade consequent on the unsettled state of the country. The currency too was very puzzling. Here a lan (tael) of silver was worth 6,500 cash; there were two unit weights—one being equal to sixteen lans, and another equal to twenty-four; in addition to the *tu*, the usual measure of solids, a new one called the *shing*,<sup>1</sup> containing five hings of dzamba or barley-meal, was introduced.

At length everything was satisfactorily arranged,

<sup>1</sup> The *shing*, one-tenth of a *tu*, is in general use in China, but we first saw it at Chobsen. [The *tu* is equal to 12 lbs.—M.]

and leaving the bulk of our baggage at Chobsen, on July 22, we started with four mules and two horses for the Tatung valley near Chertinton.

I must now make a short digression, in order to give a general sketch of the mountains in that part of Kan-su which we visited, viz. north and north-west of Lake Koko-nor.

The confined basin of this alpine lake is surrounded on all sides by mountains, forming a continuation of the ranges covering North-eastern Tibet, and the basin of the upper Hoang-ho. From this point, i.e. from the sources of the river, the system bifurcates, passing north and south of Lake Koko-nor, and continuing a long way to the west<sup>1</sup> forming a peninsula of high land defined on the south by the salt marshes of Tsaidam, and on the north by the vast plains of the Gobi. Towards the latter, as we have seen, the mountains form a rampart supporting the plateau, on which lie Koko-nor and Tsaidam, and separated from the still more elevated uplands of Tibet by the range of Burkhan Buddha.

Turning to Kan-su Proper, or rather to that part which we explored, we find it to consist of three parallel chains of mountains: one bordering the plateau on the side of Ala-shan, the other two piled upon the table-land, and following the course of the most important of its rivers, the Tatung-gol. On the east, as we approach the Hoang-ho, the mountains diminish in size, while on the west their

<sup>1</sup> We were told by the natives that this range continued for upwards of 300 miles to the west of Lake Koko-nor.

elevation increases till they attain the limits of perpetual snow at the sources of the Etsina-gol<sup>1</sup> and Tolai-gol. Here all these ranges may possibly unite or throw out new branches, but in any case further to the west they again diminish and soon terminate, perhaps merging in the general upheaval of the Gobi.

The whole of this mountainous system is known to the Chinese under the name of Siue-shan or Nanshan ; but the several ranges have no special names, and, therefore, for the sake of distinctness I will use the terms '*northern*' and '*southern*' for the ranges on either bank of the Tatung, while that dividing Ala-shan from Kan-su shall be called the '*border range*,' without, however, the least intention of applying these names in the future.

The northern and southern chains bear a close resemblance to each other, and are equally wild and alpine ; they abound in deep narrow gorges, huge cliffs, and precipices. About the middle of the Tatung-gol a few solitary peaks rise to a height of 14,000 feet,<sup>2</sup> but without attaining the perpetual snow-line. The snowy mountains are, as we have mentioned, further to the west, near the towns of Lang-chau and Kan-chau, and at the sources of the 'Tatung and Etsina. One snowy peak, however, rises behind Si-ning.

Although the pass over the northern chain is

<sup>1</sup> The R. Etsina, with its left tributary the Tolai, flows due north, watering the cultivated land in the vicinity of Kan-chau and Suh-chau, beyond which they enter the desert and discharge into Lake Sogo-nor.

<sup>2</sup> Mount Gadjur is in the northern range.



less steep and rugged than that over the southern, the peaks on this side are the loftiest, including Mount Konkir,<sup>1</sup> which is covered with snow the whole year round. The highest mountains in either ranges are held sacred by the Tangutans under the name of *Amneh*, i.e. 'ancestors.' They are thirteen in number, situated about the middle and upper course of the Tatung, but the southern chain has only three, viz. *Chaleb*, *Bsiagar*, and *Kumbum-damar*. The sacred mountains of the northern range, taking them in the order in which they come, are *Mela*, *Konkir*, *Namrki*, *Chiskar*, *Rargut*, *Rtashtai*, *Shorun-tsun*, *Marntu*, *Djagiri*, and *Sienbu*.<sup>2</sup>

The geological formations are chiefly schistous clay, chlorite, limestone, felspar, gneiss, and diorite. The mineral wealth of this region consists in its coal-fields and gold, which, according to the natives, is found in almost every mountain stream; the coal-beds near Chertinton are worked by the Chinese.

According to the natives, shocks of earthquake are frequent and violent, but we only felt one slight shock.

The climate is exceedingly damp, especially in summer, part of autumn and spring; in winter, the people told us, that it was generally clear, cold winds alternating with calm warm weather. It rained constantly during the summer. We registered

<sup>1</sup> This mountain is situated at the sources of the Tatung, near Yunan-chen.

<sup>2</sup> I could not discover why Mounts Gadjur in the northern, and Sodi-Soruksum in the southern range, are not included in the number of the sacred mountains.

twenty-two rainy days in July, twenty-seven in August, and twenty-three in September; of the latter number twelve were snowy; from September 28, it snowed frequently. Owing to the heavy rainfall the soil is very moist, nearly every ravine having its stream. The temperature in summer is low, if it be remembered that this region lies in the thirty-eighth parallel. Even in July the greater heights were covered with hoarfrost; in August thick flakes of snow fell, thawing, however, during the daytime, and after the beginning of September the snow remained on the ground.

The heat in summer was never oppressive, the highest temperature registered in July being 88° Fahr. in the shade. Light winds prevailed from the SE., and thunderstorms were most frequent in July and September, in the latter month accompanied by snow and hail.

The flora is rich and varied, as one would have expected from the moisture and richness of the soil, and the other favourable conditions for its development. Forests, however, in our sense of the word, only grow on the northern slopes of the southern range: a circumstance deserving of notice, because in these mountains arboreal vegetation has not to contend with the disadvantages of an arid climate as in the mountains of Mongolia. Even in this moist atmosphere trees apparently avoid the sun, which certainly does not make its presence often felt during the summer. As usual, the lower zones are the most thickly wooded, from the bottom of the

valleys up to 9,500 or 10,000 feet above sea-level. Here vegetation was most abundant. Fine tall trees, dense underwood, and a variety of flowers reminded us of the forests in the Amur country, and were rendered doubly grateful by contrast with the preceding aridity of the desert of Ala-shan.

On our first entrance into the forests we recognised many a flower and plant familiar to us at home, and descried also many new kinds never before seen. Among these the red-barked birch (*Betula Bhojpattra?*) was most conspicuous, attaining a height of 30 to 40 feet, with a thickness of 1 to 1½ foot in the stem. The trunk is very like that of the common birch, excepting in its bark, which peels off and hangs from it in long festoons. The Tangutans use this, instead of packing paper. Close by grows our old friend the white birch (*Betula alba*), also conspicuous in the lower forests.

The aspen (*Populus tremula*) next attracts our attention, standing both solitary and in masses; the pine<sup>1</sup> (*Pinus Massoniana?*), and spruce fir (*Abies obovata*), occasionally covering the hill-side; the spreading poplar (*Populus* sp.), and willow (*Salix* sp.), only growing in the valleys. The red mountain-ash (*Sorbus Aucuparia*), side by side with another kind (*Sorbus* sp.) with fruit of an alabaster white, looked very pretty, growing to a height of 14 feet. The arboreous Juniper (*Juniperus* sp.), 20 feet high, unlike other trees, is more often met with on the

<sup>1</sup> It is not probable that this is *P. Massoniana*, which is a Japanese plant of lower elevation.—J. D. H.

southern, i.e. sunny slopes, and at an elevation of nearly 12,000 feet among the Alpine shrubs. This tree is held sacred by the Mongols and Tangutans, who burn the branches for incense during prayer time.

The bushes are of course most abundant on the banks of the streams. Here we saw syringa (*Philadelphus coronarius*) in full bloom in June; two kinds of wild rose (*Rosa* sp.), one with white, the other red flowers; two kinds of barberry (*Berberis* sp.), one covered with thorns an inch and a half long; the Chinese elder (*Sambucus Chinensis*); gooseberry (*Ribes* sp.) in large bushes 10 feet high, with big yellowish bitter berries; a raspberry (*Rubus pungens*), with delicious fruit of a pale red colour; another raspberry (*Rubus Idæus*?) similar to the European species, but only two feet high, growing on the exposed hill side in the zone of the alpine shrubs; and seven or eight kinds of honeysuckle (*Lonicera*), one yielding a long blue fruit, which is edible.<sup>1</sup>

Among the other bushes we may mention the Spiræa, black currant (*Ribes*), cherry (*Prunus*), spindle tree (*Euonymus*), wild pepper (*Daphne Altaica*?), *Cotoncaster*, *Hydrangea pubescens*, and the *Eleutherococcus senticosus* found on the Amur. The *Lespedeza*, however, a native of the same country, is not found further than the Munni-ula, not being met with either in the Ala-shan or

<sup>1</sup> Professor Maximovitch, of the Botanical Gardens, St. Petersburg, informs me that this species of honeysuckle nearly resembles the *Lonicera carulea* of Siberia, which is also edible.—M.

Kan-su ranges ; the absence of the hazel is equally notable.

The streams are frequently fringed with willow (*Salix* sp.), and tall buckthorn (*Hippophaë rhamnoides*) fifteen feet high ; on the open mountain side are the hawthorn (*Cratægus* sp.), yellow camelthorn (*Caragana* sp.), and white *Kurile tea*<sup>1</sup> (*Potentilla glabra*).

Herbaceous plants are even more numerous. The wild strawberry (*Fragaria* sp.) is plentiful on the moist loamy soil ; patches of moss are sometimes covered with pink flowers of a pretty *Pedicularis* ; in the woodland glades many a bright peony may be seen, with a groundsel (*Ligularia* sp.), valerian (*Valeriana* sp.), meadow rue (*Thalictrum* sp.), geranium (*Geranium* sp.), columbine (*Aquilegia* sp.), winter-green (*Pyrola rotundifolia*), garlic (*Allium Victorialis*), great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*), *Rubia Favanica* ? *Prenanthes* sp., *Pleurospermum* sp., the clematis twining round the bushes, and the rosebay willow-herb (*Epilobium angustifolium*) adorning the grassy slopes with its rose-coloured flowers. Later in the season, towards the end of July, we found in the same localities the great yellow and twining wolf's-bane (*Aconitum lycoctonum*, and the *A. volubile*), larkspur (*Delphinium* sp.), tansy (*Tanacetum* sp.), the upright bitter-vetch (*Orobus Lathyroides*), feverfew (*Pyrethrum Sinense*), the creeping

<sup>1</sup> The *Potentilla fruticosa* and *P. glabra* are known in Siberia under the name of *Kurile tea* ; a name given to this plant owing to the circumstance of the inhabitants of Kamchatka and the Sea of Okhotsk infusing a beverage from its leaves.—M.

rooted elecampane (*Inula Britannica*), and the stinking bugwort (*Cimicifuga fetida*). Ferns (*Polypodium vulgare*, *Adiantum pedatum*, *Asplenium* sp.) also abound in these forests.

On the open hill-sides in the tree-belt grow varieties of saxifrage, red lily (*Lilium tenuifolium*), hyssop-leaved dragon's-head (*Dracoccephalum Ruyschiana*), *Senecio pratensis*, *Schultiza* sp., *Allium* sp., *Gentiana* sp., *Ajuga* sp.

In the open valleys in spring we saw numbers of flowering Iris; and in summer: aster (*Aster artaticus*), common sorrel (*Rumex Acetosa*), Persicaria (*Polygonum polymorphum*), primroses (*Primula Sibirica*), forget-me-nots (*Myosotis* sp.), hare's-ear (*Buplcarum* sp.), *Gentiana* sp., *Anemone* sp., *Artemisia* sp., *Melica* sp., *Elymus* sp., *Spodiopogon* sp., *Lolium* sp.; *Ranunculus*, *Oxytropis*, and *Potentilla*.

One kind of the last-named flowers familiar to us under the name of wild tansy (*Potentilla anserina*), is called here *djuma*, and supplies an edible root, large quantities of which are dug up by the Chinese and Tangutans in autumn or spring. The roots are washed, dried, and then boiled in water, and eaten with butter or rice; they taste something like beans. A poisonous kind of grass (*Lolium* sp.) grows here and in the Ala shan mountains; it is called *Khoro ubusu* by the Mongols, and is very injurious to cattle, especially camels, the native herds carefully avoiding it.

But the most remarkable plant of the tree-belt is the medicinal rhubarb (*Rheum palmatum*), known



to the Mongols as the *Shara-moto*,<sup>1</sup> and to the Tangutans as *Djumtsa*. As it has not yet been studied by European naturalists in its native country, I will describe it at some length.<sup>2</sup>

It has three or four large dark green leaves<sup>3</sup> near the root, from the centre of which springs the flower-stalk to a height of seven to ten feet, with a thickness of one-and-a-half inch near the ground.<sup>4</sup> Old plants have ten or more leaves, but the flower-stalks are in such case more numerous, the proportion of leaves being invariably three or four to each. The section of leaf-stalk is oval, about the thickness of a finger; the length of the leaf being twenty-six inches, colour underneath green, above reddish, covered with fine reddish hairs one-fifth of an inch long. The flower-stalk throws out a few small leaves at its joints, and the small white flowers are set on a second stalk branching from the main stem two-thirds of its height from the ground.

The root is cylindrical with a number of slender offsets,<sup>5</sup> the length and number of which depend on the age of the plant. When full grown the root is

<sup>1</sup> I.e. yellow tree.

<sup>2</sup> Compare this and the following paragraphs with Marco Polo, speaking of the same region: 'Over all the mountains of this province rhubarb is found in great abundance, and thither merchants come to buy it, and carry it thence all over the world. Travellers, however, dare not visit these mountains with any cattle but those of the country, for a certain plant (*erba*) grows there, which is so poisonous that cattle which eat it lose their hoofs' (2d. ed., i. 219).—Y.

<sup>3</sup> The largest leaf we measured was two feet long by three broad.

<sup>4</sup> These are the dimensions of a full-grown plant.

<sup>5</sup> Old roots have as many as twenty-five offsets, the largest being  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. in diameter, with a length of 21 inches.



A FLOWERING PLANT OF THE MEDICINAL RHUBARB  
*Rheum palmatum*.

(a) Small lateral panicle, with ripe fruit.

(b) A flower from which anthers have fallen off.



about a foot long and the same in thickness;<sup>1</sup> its exterior covering is a brown, rough rind, which is cut off when dry. The flowering time is the end of June or beginning of July; the seeds ripen towards the end of August.

The natives asserted that the root is fittest for medicinal purposes in spring and autumn, and that when the plant is flowering it becomes porous; but we did not find this to be the case in the specimens we obtained in midsummer. The Tangutans and Chinese dig it up in September and October; but the disturbed state of the country has almost put a stop to this industry, which at one time was so actively pursued that nothing but the inaccessibility of some of the forests could have preserved it from extinction. In the environs of Chertinton it is rare, but it is said to abound near the sources of the Tatung and Etsina further to the west, whence the largest quantities were formerly obtained, and transported to Si-ning, the chief central depôt for the rhubarb trade. During our stay in these parts the price averaged a lan (tael) of silver per ten hings (i.e. about  $6\frac{1}{2}d.$  per hing).<sup>2</sup>

It is transported by land in winter, and by boats in summer down the Hoang-ho to Peking, Tien-tsin, and other ports, where the Europeans buy it, paying six or ten times more than its value at Si-ning. A large quantity used formerly to be sent to Kiakhta, but of late years the supply has ceased. The trade

<sup>1</sup> Some few, however, are even larger.

<sup>2</sup> A hing is about  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb.—M.

might be reopened by a well-equipped caravan provided with an escort of ten well-armed men.

The first process in preparing the rhubarb is to cut off the lateral offshoots, removing the outer rind with a knife, and cutting the root into pieces, which are threaded on strings and suspended in the shade to dry, generally under the roof of a house, where the air circulates freely: if dried in the sun it is spoiled.

The plant grows at an elevation of 10,000 feet above the level of the sea, very rarely above that limit, and mostly preferring the ravines, with a rich loamy soil and northern aspect. It seldom grows on the southern slopes or on the bare mountain.

The Tangutans sometimes sow it in the gardens adjoining their dwellings, propagating it by means of seeds and young plants. It may be sown in autumn or early spring, but the soil must be fine, carefully sifted black mould. The third year after sowing the root is about the thickness of a man's fist, and in about eight or ten years it attains maturity. It is sown by the natives in small quantities as a medicine for themselves and their cattle. It is not cultivated largely, probably owing to the abundance of the wild plant. I feel certain that it might be successfully cultivated in many parts of Russia, as for instance on the Amur, the Baikal, the Oural, and the Caucasus; and experiments will probably be made with the seeds I brought home and sent to the Botanical Gardens.

It also grows in the mountains south of Lake

Koko-nor, in the snowy range south of Si-ning, and in the Yegrai-ula, near the sources of the Yellow River. We could not ascertain positively if it grows in the neighbouring province of Sze-chuan, but it is not found in Northern Tibet. Thus from all the information we could gather, it is limited to the alpine country of Lake Koko-nor and the sources of the Yellow River.<sup>1</sup>

Another kind (*Rheum spiciforme*)<sup>2</sup> is also found in the Kan-su mountains, where it only grows in the alpine region. This plant has a thin branched root about four feet long, but is unfit for medicinal purposes. It grows in the Himalayas and Thian Shan, and we often saw its withered leaves in winter in Northern Tibet.

We have already said that the forests grow 10,000 feet above sea-level; higher than this they are replaced by alpine bushes and by meadows; the rhododendra, of which we found four kinds—all pronounced to be new by the botanist Maximovitch

<sup>1</sup> The above described plant is not the same as that which has lately been introduced into European gardens as the true rhubarb of commerce, namely *R. officinale*, Baillon (see Flückiger & Hanbury, 'Pharmacographie,' p. 442). The latter plant is a native of Mongolia, and is described by Bell, of Anternony, in his travels (vol. I. p. 384-387). Several species are cultivated in Europe, and their roots are extensively used as substitutes for the Chinese plant, especially the *R. Rha-ponticum*, in England, and *R. palmatum* itself, which has been grown on a large scale in Russia and elsewhere on the Continent, where, however, its central root proves liable to decay. It was long ago ascertained by the French pharmacologist, M. Guibourt, that the root of the cultivated *R. palmatum* approached most nearly to that of the imported plant.—J. D. H. [See Supplementary Note.]

<sup>2</sup> The Tangutans call this kind *zarchium*, and the Mongols *Kur-meh-shara-moto*.



—were most conspicuous. One variety, twelve feet high, and not deciduous in winter, with tough leaves and sweet-scented white blossoms, was particularly fine, and might also be seen in the forests below the alpine belt.

The other characteristic plants of this region are the *Caragana jubata* (the same species as in the Ala-shan mountains), the yellow kurile tea (*Potentilla tenuifolia*), spiræa (*Sp. Altaica*), and willow (*Salix* sp.), growing in thick moss (*Hypnum* sp.) chiefly on the northern slopes. It would be impossible in this brief sketch to do justice to the profusion and variety of the flowering herbs, which now grew in patches among the bushes now covered whole sides of the higher mountains. Amongst the plants we noticed a great many entirely new kinds. The most conspicuous were several kinds of poppy (*Papaver*), louse-wort (*Pedicularis*), larkspur (*Delphinium*), saxifrage (*Saxifraga*), gentians (*Gentiana*), *Ranunculi*, *Potentilla*, garlic (*Allium*), Siberian aster (*Aster Sibiricus*), *Erigeron* sp., *Saussurea graminifolia*, *Leontopodium alpinum*, *Antennaria* sp., *Androsace* sp. In the interstices of the rocks grew different varieties of primroses (*Primula*), whitlow grass (*Draba*), fumaria (*Corydalis*), golden saxifrage (*Chrysosplenium* sp.), stonecrop (*Sedum* sp.), *Isopyrum* sp., *Arenaria* sp.; and among the loose detritus, wolf's-bane (*Aconitum* sp.), *Ligularia* sp., *Saussurea obvallata*, &c. All these herbs and shrubs blossom in the end of June, when the mountains are ablaze with the yellow kurile tea, red,

white, and lilac rhododendra and *Caragana jubata*, with an occasional patch of bright red flowers. But this does not last long. In July the rhododendra and *Caragana jubata* cease blooming, and early in August the morning frosts nip many of the herbs.

The luxuriance of the alpine meadows is limited to an elevation of 12,000 feet. The temperature above this is too cold, and winds and storms of too frequent occurrence, to allow of the development of vegetation, which becomes more stunted the higher we ascend, until it disappears altogether, and nothing is left but bare rocks, with an occasional patch of moss and lichen. Here the scientific observer may find an admirable illustration of the wasting, irresistible power of time, as it gradually wears down the hardest rocks and reduces to insignificance the loftiest cliffs.

Here, too, amid the loose *débris*, springs take their rise, at first trickling in feeble runnels, half hidden beneath the stones, soon to unite with other streams and descend in torrents down the rocky valleys.

As regards fauna that of the Kan-su mountains is richest in birds; of mammals we only found eighteen kinds, and fish and reptiles were very scarce. The small number of insects and almost entire absence of reptiles is due to the unfavourable climate.

The mammals belong exclusively to three orders, carnivora, rodents, and ruminants. We did not see a single specimen of the *Insectivora* or *Cheiroptera*.

Large animals are few by reason of their falling a prey to the hunter, and the large population. However the musk-deer (*Moschus moschiferus*?), wild sheep (*Ovis pseudo-Nahoor*), deer (*Cervus* sp.), and pygargs (*Cervus pygargus*), are plentiful. The last-mentioned, although found in the Munni-ula, does not inhabit the Ala-shan mountains.

Among the rodents the most remarkable are the marmot (*Arctomys robustus*), abounding in these mountains at an elevation of more than 12,000 feet, a small kind of lagomys (*Lagomys Thibetanus*), very plentiful in exposed places, and another species only found among the rocks and detritus in the upper alpine zone. Blind rats (*Siphneus* sp.) are also plentiful on the lower ground. Here, too, may be seen the little field-mouse (*Arvicola* sp.), hares (*Lepus* sp.), and an occasional flying-squirrel (*Pteromys* sp.) in the forests, distinct from the Siberian species.

We have enumerated all the ruminants and rodents; it only remains to describe the carnivora. The only representative of the feline order is the wild cat (*Felis* sp.); there are neither tigers nor panthers. A small species of bear, a polecat (*Mustela* sp.), a badger (*Meles* sp.), a fox (*Canis vulpes*), and two kinds of wolves, the common one (*Canis lupus*), and another of a reddish colour, are found in these forests.

Birds are far more numerous than mammals—we counted 106 settled or nesting kinds and eighteen migratory. The former number is certainly large if we consider that it includes only five orders, *Rap-*

tores, *Scansores*, *Oscines*, *Columbæ*, and *Gallinaceæ*; of the *Grallatores* and *Natatores* only one species breeds here. The proportions of the representatives in each class are, however, very unequal, the warblers (*Oscines*) being far the most numerous; next in order come the *Raptores*, then *Gallinaceæ*, then climbers (*Scansores*), and *Columbæ* last of all.

The following table will at once show the distribution of the birds of Kan-su:—

	Settled and nesting	Migratory	Total
1. Birds of prey ( <i>Raptores</i> ) . . . .	12	2	14
2. Climbers ( <i>Scansores</i> ) . . . . .	7	0	7
3. Warblers ( <i>Oscines</i> ) . . . . .	74	5	79
4. Pigeons ( <i>Columbæ</i> ) . . . . .	3	0	3
5. Gallinaceous ( <i>Gallinaceæ</i> ) . . .	9	0	9
6. Waders ( <i>Grallatores</i> ) . . . . .	1	7	8
7. Webfooted ( <i>Natatores</i> ) . . . . .	0	4	4
	106	18	124

On comparing the birds of Kan-su with those of Mongolia, we find as striking a difference between them as between their floræ—a fact accounted for by the contrast between the physical conditions of the two countries. Forty-three of these birds were foreign to Mongolia, and even more if we were to include the birds of the Munni-ula and Ala-shan ranges. The ornithology of Kan-su comprises Siberian, Chinese, Himalayan, and Thian-Shan birds.

Beginning with the *Raptores*, we first notice three kinds of vultures, the Snow-Vulture (*Gyps nivicola*),<sup>1</sup> the Black Vulture (*Vultur monachus*), and the lam-

<sup>1</sup> *Gyps Himalayensis*, Hume's 'Rough Notes,' p. 15.

mergeier (*Gypaëtos barbatus*), the latter an inhabitant of Europe, the two former exclusively belonging to Asia. The Snow-Vulture is an immense tawny-coloured bird, measuring ten feet between the tips of the wings. These are the chief representatives of the birds of prey.

Among the *Scansores* (climbers) no very remarkable kinds can be mentioned. Swifts (*Cypselus leucopyga*) build their nests in the rocks below; cuckoos (*Cuculus* sp.) and woodpeckers (*Picus* sp. *Picus Martius*) are heard in the woods; but the Japanese goatsucker (*Caprimulgus Jotaca*), so common in Eastern Asia, is not met with west of the Munni-ula.

We now come to the most numerous class, viz. the Warblers, comprising the large white-headed redstart (*Phenicura leucocephala*), only seen on the banks of streams in company with the active dipper (*Cinclus Kashmirensis*), the Kamchatka ruby-throat (*Calliope Kamtschatkensis*), the small yellow-breasted bullfinch (*Pyrrhula* sp.), scarlet bullfinch (*Pyrrhula erythrina*), the rose-finch (*Carpodacus* sp.), the tiny wren (*Troglodytes Nipalensis*), several kinds of *Phyllopneuste*, and the blue magpie (*Pica cyana*). The *Pterorhinus Davidii* and *Trochalopteron* sp., nearly allied to the thrush family, sing very sweetly on the banks of the streams.

Three kinds of thrush (two I believe to be new species) inhabit the tall forests, all excellent songsters; here, too, we saw four kinds of titmouse (*Parus* sp.) hedge-sparrow (*Accentor multistriatus*), and great

grosbeak (*Hesperiphona speculigera*<sup>1</sup>), the latter preferring the juniper bushes, the berries of which are its favourite food.

In the alpine region we found the red-winged wall-creeper (*Tichodroma muraria*), for ever climbing up the rocks; a large species of *Carpodacus* with a gay note, two alpine choughs (*Fregilus alpinus*, *Fregilus graculus*), the martin (*Chelidon* sp.), the velvety blue stonethrush (*Grandala cælicola*), the mountain pipit (*Anthus rosaceus*) and two kinds of hedge-sparrows (*Accentor Nipalensis*, *A. rubeculoides*), the former of which is a great songster. A little lower down, among the bushes were the beautiful lesser titmouse (*Leptopæcile Sophieæ*) of a metallic violet hue, the deep pink *Carpodacus rubicilla*, *Caliope pectoralis*, the reed-warbler (*Schænicola* sp.), with long pink tail feathers; and in the open valleys the linnet (*Linota brevirostris*), *Montifringilla Adamsi*, and *Montifringilla* sp.

Among the *Columbæ* and *Gallinacæ* in the alpine region we noticed the rock-dove (*Columba rupes-tris*); another kind of mountain-pigeon, the wary *Columba leuconota*, among the wildest and most inaccessible cliffs of the upper zone; the great snow-partridge (*Megaloperdix Thibetanus*), called *Kunmo* by the Tangutans, and *Hailik* by the Mongols. Not far off, in the clumps of rhododendron and caragana, the dusky Impeyan grouse (*Tetraophasis obscurus*) and partridge (*Perdix* sp.), distinct from the Mongol species. In the lower tree-belt the gallinaceous

<sup>1</sup> *H. carneipes*, Hodgs.



order was represented by a new kind of tree-part-ridge (*Bonasia* sp.) larger than ours with darker plumage; the rare *Itaginis Geoffroyi*, the pheasant (*Phasianus* nov. sp.), and the tufted species (*Crossoptilon auritum*), a splendid bird, with plumage of a leaden colour, which had attracted our attention in the Ala-shan mountains.

None of the waterfowl breed in the mountainous region of Kan-su, and birds of passage are rare; we only found one kind of wader (*Ibidorhynchus Struthersii*) in the pebbly beds of watercourses.

On re-entering the mountains near Chertinton, we moved from place to place, always selecting the most favourable ground for encamping, and stayed as long as was necessary in one spot. The daily rains and excessive humidity greatly interfered with our pursuits, increasing the difficulty of drying our plants and skins, and obliging us to seize every opportunity afforded by the short intervals of fine weather for the preservation of our collection.

The constant rains in the alpine zone were often accompanied by snow and frosts at night; the birds, too, were all moulting at this season, and hardly ten per cent. of those we shot were fit for preserving. But the plants, at all events in July, were in full flower, and we secured 324 varieties out of 3,000 specimens; whereas we obtained only 200 birds. Insects were very scarce, not only in the alpine region, but even in the lower ground. This was certainly a drawback to our entomological collection; on the other hand, we felt grateful for being spared the plague

of mosquitoes and flies, from which I had experienced such tortures during my wanderings in the forests of the Amur.<sup>1</sup> We could not spare time to hunt large game, which is scarce; and during the whole of our stay here I only shot two wild sheep, which, with two small yaks bought of the Tangutans, supplied us with provisions.

Rainy weather continuing incessantly for days together caused us great discomfort, obliging us to sit idle in our tent without even a sight of the mountains, which were thickly shrouded in mist. Now and then we marched into the midst of a thundercloud, and the lightning played all round us. The moisture inside our tent was also very troublesome; although our guns were wiped every day, half the Snider cartridges missed fire owing to the damp.<sup>2</sup> The weather only became clearer on the lower ground, and in the valley of the Tatung.

Here we really felt the heat, although the water in all the streams was too cold for bathing.

We passed several days on the southern border of the southern range, before crossing to the other side, where we encamped near Mount Sodi-Soruksum, considered to be the highest of these mountains. Taking advantage of some clear weather, I made the ascent, wishing to ascertain its height by boiling water. After climbing 3,000 feet above our camp, I

<sup>1</sup> Lieut.-Col. Prejevalsky travelled in the Amur and Ussuri country between the years 1867-1869, and he has published an interesting narrative of his experiences in those regions.—M.

<sup>2</sup> It was so damp that we could not make the fire burn without using a hand-bellows, which are in general use among the inhabitants.

gained the summit, whence I had a magnificent view. The valley of the Tatung, with its tributary streams hurrying to join it on all sides, the northern range and the snowy peaks far to the westward, combined to produce an effect indescribably beautiful. I had never been so high before; at my feet were great mountains covered with wild crags and clothed with forests, through which wound rivers like silver threads. For a long while I could not tear myself away from the spot, but remained as one entranced, and shall remember that day as one of the happiest of my life.

In the hurry of starting I had left the matches<sup>1</sup> behind, and could not strike a light by the flash of my gun. I had, therefore, to defer taking the altitude for two days, when I again ascended the Sodi-Soruksum with the boiling-water apparatus complete, determined this time to discover the secret; a few minutes after lighting the spirit lamp I found it to be 13,600 feet above the sea. This is below the limit of perpetual snow, only a few patches being visible under the rocks, where the sun's rays did not penetrate.

After passing July in the mountains on the southern side of Tatung-gol, we crossed in the early part of August to the northern range and pitched our tent at an elevation of 12,000 feet, at the foot of the gigantic peak of Gadjur. Here we remained about a fortnight, rain falling incessantly,

<sup>1</sup> These matches, of Viennese manufacture, are sold by the Chinese all over the Empire.

and on the 7th and 9th of August snow fell in such quantities as to lie on the ground and form considerable drifts. Under these circumstances scientific investigations could not be successfully prosecuted; the flowering season was nearly over, and only forty of the plants collected by us during the summer were gathered in August.

The summit of Gadjur is crowned by some huge cliffs, in whose bosom reposes the small lake of Demchuk.<sup>1</sup> This lakelet is 700 feet long and 240 wide; the access is by a narrow chasm like a gateway. The lake itself is held sacred by the Tangutans, and prayers are offered up here by the common people as well as by the lamas of Chertinton. Their superior, our friend the Gigen, lived for seven years in a cave on the lake, and told us that he once saw a large blue cow rise from it, swim on its surface for some time and again disappear in its depths. Ever since then it has been held in high repute.

The absolute elevation of Demchuk is 13,100 feet, and the situation is very striking. The narrowness of the gorge, the tranquil gleaming waters, the gigantic rocks towering up all round, only admitting one small streak of sky, and lastly, the solemn silence almost unbroken save by an occasional falling stone, move the inmost soul of man. As for myself, I remained more than an hour on its shore absorbed in reverie; and when I left I felt how naturally the untutored mind might invest with mysterious sanctity

<sup>1</sup> There are actually two little lakes, but one is much smaller than Demchuk, and lies below it.

so quiet a spot. I visited another small lake, called Kosin, near the summit of Sodi-Soruksum, also formed by springs; but its situation is more exposed, and it is not surrounded by the same mystery as Gadjur. Kosin, however, is also held sacred ever since the spirit (good or evil, I know not) drove from the spot a Tangutan hunter, attacking him under the form of a grey yak;<sup>1</sup> since which time sport is strictly prohibited on this and the other sacred mountains (Amneh).

According to another tradition, Mount Gadjur was sent hither by some Dalai-Lama to impress the minds of the people with the wonders of the holy country (i.e. Tibet).

Its precipitous cliffs, composed of felspar, limestone, and schistous clay, rise to about 1,000 feet above Lake Demchuk; it is, therefore, higher than Sodi-Soruksum. However, I only saw a few patches of melted snow in sheltered spots on the northern side.

On the south of the Tatung the Tangutan<sup>2</sup> population is very thick in certain districts less exposed to the marauding Dungsans, as for instance, round the temple of Chertinton, but in the northern range towards Mount Gadjur not a human being could be seen. Pillaging parties frequently passed here on

<sup>1</sup> It is curious that in the popular legends of this people 'grey' cows, yaks, &c. take as prominent a part as they do in the popular legends of Russia.

<sup>2</sup> Eight miles below Chertinton some agricultural Chinese have settled in the valley of the Tatung; this colony escaped the Dungan ravages.

their way from the town of Tatung<sup>1</sup> to plunder in Eastern Kan-su ; and so great was the terror they produced that nothing would induce the Mongol whom we hired at Chobsen to accompany us to Gadjur, until we took another Tangutan guide well acquainted with the country, when the two, after holding some parley together in their own language, consented to proceed. I think they mutually agreed to desert in case we were attacked ; but as we never trusted to the assistance of our guides in case of danger, this would not have made the slightest difference to us. Our fame as marksmen, and the reports of our wonderful guns, which had spread far and wide, were of much greater importance. I was regarded as a magician, whom no bullet could harm, and I, of course, took care not to undeceive them. We were always on the alert, however, and kept watch in dangerous places. We never held intercourse with the natives after dark for fear of admitting an enemy unawares. But we were not molested, although bands of robbers frequently passed our camp, and must have known of our whereabouts.

After the middle of August animal and vegetable life rapidly declined, and by the end of the month autumn had set in. The leaves were yellow, and the fruit of the mountain-ash and barberry adorned the ravines. The grass had withered, and only a few solitary flowers were left. One after the other the gay birds disappeared in search of a warmer

<sup>1</sup> This town stands on the Tatung-gol, sixty-seven miles above the temple of Chertinton.



climate and more abundant food in the lower valleys.

The scientific harvest was all gathered, and we determined to retrace our steps to Chobsen, and attempt to proceed thence to Lake Koko-nor. On our way back we caught our camels, which had been allowed to pasture near the temple of Chertinton, and were in miserable condition, owing to the unaccustomed food upon which they had fed all summer. They all had bad coughs, brought on by the damp climate, and their bodies were covered with sores; in fact they were hardly fit for even a short journey.

On September 1, we arrived at Chobsen, where we found that during our absence the Dungans had increased their marauding to an alarming extent. The badly-armed militia, numbering 2,000 men, could do nothing against the mounted robbers, who rode up to the very walls of the temple and taunted its defenders: 'Where are your Russian friends now with their good guns?' they would exclaim; 'we have come to fight them.' The militia sometimes returned a volley, but the bullets from their matchlocks fell short of the enemy. Our friends, the leaders of the caravan, were the chief organisers of the defence. They had sent several messengers into the hills imploring us to return, and were anxiously awaiting our arrival. Now, we thought, at all events we shall have a brush with the brigands; as for their leader, who was described by the gallant defenders of Chobsen to be a terrible warrior, who rode a piebald horse and bore a charmed life, we

determined to try the effect of a Snider or Berdan bullet on him.

Our situation, however, was one of great danger. The temple, already inconveniently crowded, could not accommodate us and our camels. We, therefore, were obliged to encamp about half a mile off in an open grass plain. Here we took every precaution against attack. All the boxes containing our collections, the bags with supplies and provisions, and the pack-saddles were formed into a hollow square, within which we could retreat. Here stood our rifles with bayonets fixed, and near them piles of cartridges and ten revolvers. Before night all the camels were made to lie down and tethered round our improvised fortification, their ungainly bodies forming an additional protection against a mounted enemy. Lastly, to prevent waste of ammunition, we measured the distances on all sides, marking them with piles of stones.

The first night all the natives retreated within the temple, and we remained quite alone face to face with the robbers, who might appear at any moment in hundreds, or even thousands, and overpower us with their superior numbers. The weather was fine, and we sat for a long while in the moonlight talking over old times, our country, and friends whom we had not seen for so long. About midnight three of us lay down to rest, of course without undressing, leaving one to keep watch till morning. The following day passed as quietly as the first. The robbers had vanished, and even the miraculous warrior did

not appear. The third day was a repetition of the two preceding, and the inhabitants of Chobsen, taking courage, drove their cattle out of the enclosure of the temple, and allowed them to graze near our camp.

Such is the moral superiority of the European over the degraded inhabitants of Asia; such the impression produced by the resolution, energy, and unwavering courage of a superior race.

We remained at Chobsen for six days exposed to unavoidable danger, which in the end opened to us a way to Lake Koko-nor.

The direct road to the lake passes through the towns of Seng-kwan<sup>1</sup> and Tonkir, by which it takes five days to reach its shores; but, owing to the occupation of Seng-kwan by Dungans, we had to abandon this route for some other more practicable. We fortunately succeeded in finding one.

On the third day of our halt three Mongols arrived at Chobsen from the banner of Mur-zasak, near the sources of the Tatung, having driven a flock of sheep, under cover of the night, over the mountains for sale. These men were obliged to return home soon and might serve as excellent guides for us, if we could induce them to accept our offers. With this view I addressed myself to our friend the treasurer of the temple, giving him a handsome present. Moved by this bribe, the lama persuaded the newly-arrived Mongols to act as our

<sup>1</sup> The local Mongol name of this town is Mu-paishinta.

guides to their country, i.e. to Mur-zasak, receiving thirty lans (about 7*l.*) in payment for a distance of not more than eighty-eight miles.

The principal objection which presented itself to their dull brains was the impossibility of travelling by night with pack-camels over the mountains; and if we attempted moving by day the probability of encountering Dungans, who pass continually between Seng-kwan and Tatung. Our perilous encampment near Chobsen was now of service to us. 'Fear not the robbers with these people,' said our friend the treasurer to the Mongols; 'look at us with 2,000 men shut up in our temple, and they only four in number in the open plain, yet no one dares to touch them. Think you that ordinary folk could have done that? No! the Russians know everything beforehand, and their captain is a great magician, or a great saint.' This argument, backed up by so tempting a bribe as thirty lans of silver, finally overcame their scruples, and they declared their readiness to show us the way, begging us first to consult the auguries in their presence as to the most favourable day for setting out on the journey.

Having made some observations for ascertaining the sun's altitude, in order to fix the latitude of Chobsen, and the magnetic declination, I announced that it was necessary to postpone our departure for a few days. This delay was indispensable, to enable us to store all our collections in a place of safety at Chertinton, because Chobsen might be taken in our absence by the Dungans. The Mongols, who con-

sulted their auguries with a similar result, were well content to delay the start, and expected that in a few days the marshes would be frozen over. We held a council and fixed our departure for October 5, till which day we determined to keep our plans secret. The guides received ten lans as earnest-money, and retired to Chobsen, while we returned into the mountains, and encamped on the southern edge of the southern chain, whence my companion rode to the temple of Chertinton and delivered the boxes containing our collections into the charge of the gigen of that place.

Our twelve days' halt on the southern chain of the mountains was almost unproductive of scientific results; for no forests grow on the southern slopes of these mountains, and the alpine zone is almost without a flora; besides which many of the mountains were in their higher parts covered with snow and rain, and hail-storms occurred daily. The chief flight of birds took place in the first half of September, and on the 16th of that month large flocks of cranes, passing at such a height as hardly to be visible, directed their flight southwards.

Meanwhile the Chinese troops had begun operations against the Dugans at Si-ning, having marched into Kan-su 25,000 strong in July that year, and established themselves at Nim-pi and Ou-yam-pu. In the next chapter I will describe their operations before Si-ning; suffice it for the present to remark, that in consequence of orders which had been issued, prohibiting the sale of provisions to anyone except the troops, we

had great difficulty, even with the assistance of our friends, in procuring supplies. And of these we required enough to last us the whole winter, for it was generally reported that no provisions could be obtained at Koko-nor.<sup>1</sup> Our supplies, however, were at all times limited by our slender resources, and the only provisions procurable were dzamba (barley-meal) and coarse wheaten flour. We bought about seven cwt. of each, and we had also about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. of rice and millet left over from our Ala-shan stores, making four camels' loads in all.

A few days before our departure for Koko-nor, the caravan of Tangutans with which we had travelled to Chobsen returned to Peking, and we availed ourselves of this opportunity to send letters and official reports. In them I announced my intention of starting for Koko-nor, which I hoped to reach; but I added that we could not proceed thence to Lhasa in Tibet owing to the want of funds.

At last the wished-for day drew near, and in the afternoon of October 5 we left Chobsen. As I have stated, our road lay over the mountains between the Dungan towns of Seng-kwan and Tatung, by foot-paths almost impracticable for our enfeebled and suffering camels. We therefore divided the baggage among all the pack animals, taking in addition one of the mules which we had used for the summer excursion.

The first short march was satisfactorily accom-

<sup>1</sup> This proved to be a false report, as we had no difficulty in buying barley-meal at the encampment of the Wang (prince) of Koko-nor.



plished, but the following morning, not far from the temple of Altin, an adventure befell us. Our guides had warned us that this was a dangerous place, owing to the patrols of Chinese soldiers, who plundered friends or foes indiscriminately. We replied that it was quite the same to us, and that our bullets would serve for Chinese as well as Dungans. Their information proved correct. No sooner were we in sight of the temple than thirty mounted soldiers suddenly appeared, and after firing a few shots into the air charged our caravan with fearful cries. When they were within 500 paces I told our guides to motion to them and warn them that we were not Dungans but Russians, and that we would fire if they attacked us. Probably misunderstanding these explanations, the Chinese continued to advance at a gallop to within 200 paces of us, and we were on the point of firing. Fortunately, the affair passed off peaceably. Observing that our guns were at the ready, and that we were not in the least alarmed by their cries, they halted, dismounted, and came towards us, declaring that they had made a mistake, and had taken us for Dungans. This was of course a mere excuse, as the brigands never ride camels; and if we had shown fear and run away we should doubtless have been plundered. A few miles further the same adventure was repeated with some more Chinese, who retired empty-handed.

Our third day's march was the most dangerous, for we had to cross two high roads leading between Seng-kwan and Tatung. We passed the first suc-

cessfully, but from the summit of the pass leading to the second we could see, at a distance of upwards of a mile, about a hundred mounted Dungans escorting a flock of sheep. On observing us they fired a few shots and closed the defile through which we were marching. The effect of this manœuvre on our guides was astonishing. Paralysed with fear, they muttered their prayers in a trembling tone of voice, imploring us to return; but we knew very well that retreat would give courage to the enemy, who could easily have overtaken us on their horses; and we therefore determined to force a passage. We were four well-armed and resolute men: as we marched ahead of our caravan, the guides followed with the camels, and were only prevented from deserting by our threat of shooting the first who turned back. The danger was great, but there was no help for it, and we had full confidence in the excellence of our arms and the well-known cowardice of the Dungans.

Our calculations proved correct. On observing our forward movement, the Dungans fired a few more shots, and before we had approached within range fled to either side of the high road at right angles with our advance. Leaving the defile, we crossed the road and began the ascent of a very steep high pass. To add to our difficulties night came on and a violent snow-storm overtook us, rendering it extremely difficult for the camels to keep their footing. The descent was even worse; we had to feel our way down in the dark, stumbling and falling at every step. After an hour's advance,

we halted in a narrow defile covered with brush-wood, where we had the utmost difficulty in pitching our tent and lighting a fire to warm our benumbed and bruised limbs.

The following five days' journey passed without any adventure, and we reached Mur-zasak in safety. This station is on the bank of the Tatung, only eight miles from the Dungan town of Yunan-chen; but, notwithstanding the evil repute of his rebel neighbours, the Mongol commander lived on the best terms with them, selling them cattle and taking their merchandise in exchange. Thanks to the letter of the treasurer of Chobsen, describing me as a personage of exalted rank nearly related to the Emperor, we obtained two guides to the next Tangutan station; of course not without presents to the commander and handsome pay to the guides.

The road now ascended the left bank of the Tatung, and was much better than the one we had come, the only obstacle to our progress being the daily fall of snow, which made it very muddy and slippery for our exhausted camels. The Tangutan officer at the station (twenty-seven miles from Mur-zasak) was an excellent fellow; on receiving five yards of plush and 1,000 needles, he sent us a sheep and ten pounds of yak butter. We stayed a day with him, and, having obtained new guides, left the valley of the Tatung on our way southwards towards Lake Koko-nor.

The basin of the Upper Tatung is very mountainous and wild, the two chains of mountains

continuing to be distinctly defined on either bank, while some lateral spurs of the southern range form the watershed between some tributaries of the Tatung and the streams flowing into the Siling-gol and Koko-nor; the largest we crossed was the Buguk-gol, a tributary of the Siling, flowing through a beautiful valley.<sup>1</sup> The northern range makes a sudden bend to the north, near the town of Yunan-chen, towards the sources of the river Etsina, where the mountains are higher and more rocky, culminating in the snowy peak of Konkir, one of the sacred mountains of the Tangutans.

The southern range between Chobsen and Mur-zasak is covered with dense underwood on its northern slopes, with an occasional spruce fir in the valley of the Buguk-gol; the southern slopes abound in rich pasture land. Beyond Mur-zasak, in the direction of the sources of the Tatung, and after crossing the watershed between the basin of this river and Koko-nor, the character of the scenery changes; the mountains are lower (excepting those in the main range) less steep and rocky, and the valleys marshy. The only shrub is the yellow kurile tea, in some places covering large areas. In fact, everything betokens the approach to the steppes of Koko-nor, which we entered on the 24th of Oct., and the following day we pitched our tent on the shore of the lake.

The dream of my life was accomplished, and the

<sup>1</sup> It is of interest to see this name *Siling* applied apparently to the river running by Sining-fu. See Supplementary Note.—Y.

object of the Expedition gained! It is true that this success had been purchased at the cost of many hardships and sufferings; but all past trials were forgotten, as we stood in triumph on the shore of the great lake, and gazed with admiration on its beautiful dark blue waves.

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE TANGUTANS AND DUNGANS.

Tangutan territory—The people—Characteristic traits—Stature ; appearance ; mode of wearing hair—Kara Tangutans—Language ; dress ; habitations—Black tents and wooden huts—Occupations—The domesticated Yak—Its different uses—Nomadising habits—Contrast between Mongols and Tangutans—Industry ; food ; dirt—Tonkir, a trade centre—Avarice—Polite customs—Monogamy—Religion—Government—Dungans or Mahommedan rebels—Their temporary success—Chinese towns fall into their hands—Revolt becomes brigandage—Opportunities neglected—Causes of non-success—Cowardice of rebels and of Chinese—Inefficient weapons—Siege of Chobsen—Commercial relations between belligerents—Measures of Chinese Government—Chinese soldiers—Bad arms—Want of discipline—Opium smoking—Looting—Government defrauded—Desertion—Punishment—Low morals—Mode of fighting—State of Affairs in Kan-su—Chinese take the offensive—Advance on Si-ning—Assault of this town—Marriage of Emperor of China—Siege operations suspended—Cowardice of besieged—Capture of Si-ning and advance westwards—Tangutan vocabulary.

THE Tangutans, or the Si-fan as the Chinese call them, are of the same race as the Tibetans.<sup>1</sup> They inhabit the hilly region of Kan-su, Koko-nor, Eastern Tsaidam, and the basin of the Upper Hoang-ho, and are met with as far as the Murui-ussu,<sup>2</sup> and perhaps beyond it. They regard these countries, to which they apply the name of Amdo, as their own peculiar

<sup>1</sup> The ancestors of the present Tibetans were Tangutans who removed to Tibet from Koko-nor in the fourth century B.C. See Father Hyacinthe's 'Statistical Description of China,' Part II. p. 145.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. the Tibetan course of the Kin-sha Kiang, which eventually becomes the Great Yangtse-Kiang.—Y.



territory, although they are here mingled with Chinese and Mongols.

Externally they present a marked contrast to the two last-named races, and, as we have already said, somewhat resemble gipsies. In height they are above the average, with thickset figures and broad shoulders; their hair, whiskers, and beard invariably black; the eyes dark and rather large, never narrow like those of the Mongols; the nose in general straight, although sometimes aquiline, and also sometimes turned up; the lips thick and protruding; the cheekbones not so prominent as in the Mongol type; the face long, never flat; the skull round; the teeth white and regular; the skin tawny coloured; the women smaller and darker in complexion than the men.

Unlike Mongols or Chinese, the Tangutans have a strong growth of beard and whiskers, which they always shave as they do the head, leaving a pigtail; the lamas, however, like the Mongols, shave the head clean.

The women wear long hair, parted in the middle, and divided into a number of small plaits on either side, adorned with different articles of finery, such as beads, ribbons, &c. They tinge their cheeks with Chinese dyes, and in summer with the juice of the wild strawberry, which abounds in the forests. This custom only prevails in Kan-su, not in Koko-nor or Tsaidam, probably on account of the difficulty of obtaining the necessary colouring matter.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It prevails among the proper Tibetans, both at Lhassa and in

Such is the outward appearance of the Tangutans of Kan-su. Those of another branch known as Kara- (or black) Tangutans, inhabiting the basin of Koko-nor, Eastern Tsaidam, and the sources of the Yellow River, are distinguished by a greater stature, darker complexion, and especially by their predatory habits; these again wear no pigtails, shaving the head clean.

Our studies in the language were pursued under extraordinary difficulties, owing to the want of an interpreter, and the suspicious character of the people. If we had written down a word while conversing with one of them we should never have learned anything again; the report of our having done it would soon have been circulated in the neighbourhood and would have excited endless suspicions. My Cossack interpreter, at the best a very indifferent dragoman, did not know a syllable of Tangutan, being able only to hold a conversation with such natives as understood Mongol, and these are met with rarely.<sup>1</sup> There was more chance of finding a Mongol who spoke Tangutan, and such a one we succeeded in obtaining for our summer trip to the mountains. But to carry on conversation through the medium of two interpreters is a tedious and irksome business. I usually spoke in Russian to the Cossack, who interpreted into Mongol, the Mongol in his turn rendering the meaning into Tangutan.

Ladakh; at least if the custom here referred to is the same which Huc describes (ii. 254) at Lhasa, where he says the women rub their faces with 'a sort of black sticky varnish much like grape jam.'—Y.

<sup>1</sup> Nearly all Tangutans in Kan-su speak Chinese.

Allowing for the limited intelligence of the Cossack, the stupidity of the Mongol, and the suspicion of the Tangutan, some idea may be formed of our difficulties in studying the language. Now and then, while speaking with a native, an opportunity would present itself of jotting down a few words unobserved; but progress under these circumstances, in a language so entirely strange to Europeans, was almost hopeless.

The Tangutans have a way of pronouncing their words very rapidly, and their language is characterised by the following particulars:—

A large number of monosyllabic words pronounced abruptly: e.g. *tòk* (lightning), *ksiù* (water), *rtsà* (grass), *ksià* (hair).

The union of several consonants: e.g. *mdzugéheh* (fingers), *námrtsah* (year), *rdzávah* (month), *lámrtón-lamá* (paradise).

Vowels at the end of words are often lengthened out: *pchi-i* (mule), *sha-a* (meat), *tzia-a* (tea), *veh-é-é* (husband), *siya-a* (hat); or in the middle of words: *sa'azyuyu* (earth), *dóoa* (tobacco.)<sup>1</sup>

The final *n* is often drawn out and pronounced through the nose: *lun(g)* (wind), *shan(g)* (forest), *siübchen(g)* (brook); words ending in *m* have an abrupt sound, as in *lam* (road), *onám* (thunder). The letter *g* at the beginning of a word is pronounced like the Latin *h*: *hóma* (milk); *k* is sometimes aspirated and pronounced as *kh*: *khi'ka* (range), *diudkhúk* (tobacco-pouch); *ch* like *tsch*: *tscho* (dog);

<sup>1</sup> Is this not the Hindi *dhua*, smoke, showing whence tobacco was introduced into Tibet?—Y.

*r* at the beginning of words when joined to one or more vowels is almost inaudible: *rgáamu* (wife), *rmúkha-a* (cloud).

The dress of the Tangutans is of cloth or sheepskins, suitable to the climate, which is very damp in summer and cold in winter. The summer costume worn by men and women consists of a grey cloth coat, or long tunic, reaching down to the knees, Chinese or home-made boots, and a low-crowned broad-brimmed felt hat. Shirts and trowsers are never worn, and in winter the sheepskin cloak is put on next to the skin; the upper part of the legs is usually bare. The richer persons wear robes made of Chinese *daba* (cotton cloth), but this is considered a luxury; the lamas have the usual red or, more rarely, yellow dresses. Their clothes are far inferior in texture to those of the Mongols, and the silken robe, so frequently seen among the Khalkas, is quite the exception here. But whatever the garment or the season of the year, the Tangutan always lets the right sleeve hang down empty, leaving the arm and part of the breast on that side exposed; a habit maintained even on a journey, weather permitting.

The smartest among them trim their coats with fur of the Tibetan panther, and wear a large silver earring set with a sapphire in the left ear; a tinder-box and knife stuck into the belt behind, and a tobacco-pouch and pipe on the left side, are worn by all. The inhabitants of Koko-nor and Tsaidam carry long Tibetan swords, made of very inferior

metal, although very expensive; the price of the cheapest being three or four lans (15s. to 21s.), and the best costing as much as 15 lans (about 4*l.*).

The dress of the women is precisely the same as that of the men, with the sole difference that on holidays they wear wide handkerchiefs thrown over their shoulders, studded with shells, and those who can afford it are particularly fond of red beads.

The characteristic habitation of the Tangutan is his black tent, made of coarse woollen cloth,<sup>1</sup> supported at the corners on four poles, and fastened to the ground at the sides with loops. In the middle of the roof, which is nearly flat, there is an oblong slit about a foot wide to allow of the escape of smoke, closed during rain and for the night. In the centre of the tent is placed an earthen hearth; opposite the entrance are ranged the *Lares* and *Penates*, and on either side the implements and various domestic utensils of its inmates.

In the richly-wooded districts of Kan-su, where the Tangutans live with the Chinese and cultivate the soil, the tents are replaced by wooden huts, which are very similar, although even inferior, to those of White Russia,<sup>2</sup> having no wooden floors, and having the interior walls of the rough round timbers, the interstices being filled with clay; the roofs are flat, made of branches covered with earth,

<sup>1</sup> The cloth is woven from yak-wool.

<sup>2</sup> For those readers to whom the term 'White Russia' may not be familiar I may explain that at the present day it applies chiefly to the two Governments of Vitebsk and Mohilev, lying to the south-west of the Russian empire.—M.

with a hole left in the middle to answer the double purpose of chimney and window.

But this wretched abode is luxurious compared with the black tent. The former, at all events, is weather-proof, while to the latter summer rains and winter frosts have easy access. There is no exaggeration in saying that the marmot in his burrow is far more comfortable than his neighbour—man. The animal has at least a soft couch to lie upon, but the bed of the Tangutan is a heap of dirt, or sodden pieces of felt, thrown on the damp ground.

The chief occupation of the Tangutans is rearing cattle, which supply all the wants of their simple lives. Their domestic animals are yaks and sheep (not the fat-tailed kind), with horses and cows in smaller numbers; their wealth in flocks and herds is very considerable, owing to the abundance of rich pasturage in Kan-su and Koko-nor, where we often saw several hundred yaks and thousands of sheep belonging to one owner, whose abode was in no degree better than that of the poorest of his brethren. It is a rare sight to see a rich Tangutan wearing a cotton robe instead of the common cloth dress, or indulging in an extra piece of meat at his meals; his mode of life is, in all respects, the same as that of his servants. He is as dirty as they are; he never washes, and his garments swarm with insects, which he kills without the slightest regard to propriety.

The characteristic animal of the country, and the inseparable companion of the Tangutan, is the long-haired yak, also bred in the mountains of Ala-



shan, and kept in large numbers by the Mongols in Northern Khalkas, a hilly, well-watered, and grassy country—indispensable conditions for the well-being of this animal which only thrives at a certain level above the sea. Yaks cannot exist without plenty of



THE YAK (after a Drawing by J. E. Winterbottom, Esq., lent by Dr. Hooker).

water; they are fond of bathing, and are excellent swimmers; we saw them more than once swim across the rapid Tatung-gol, although carrying packs. The domestic yak is of the same size as our cattle; the hair is black or black-and-white; they are very seldom entirely white. Notwithstanding their long domestication, they still retain a good deal of their wild nature; their movements are quick and agile, and when enraged they are very dangerous.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For an account of the domestic yak, see 'The Abode of Snow,' by A. Wilson, chap. xiii. Hooker's 'Himalayan Journals,' i. 212 *seqq.*, and 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed., i. 268 *seqq.*—M.

The yak not only supplies fine wool, milk, and butter, but is a most useful beast of burden. It certainly requires skill and some patience to fasten the load on his back ; but when this difficulty is overcome, he will carry at least two cwt. over lofty precipitous mountains, by the most dangerous paths, climbing ledges of rock where a goat or wild sheep would hardly keep its footing. In the country of the Tangutans, where camels are scarce, the yak is almost the only substitute, and large caravans of these animals are annually sent from Koko-nor to Lhasa.

In Kan-su herds of yaks roam almost at liberty over the pastures, being driven in at night to the tents of their owners. Yak milk is delicious, and as rich as cream ; the butter made from it is yellow and far superior to that made from cows' milk. In fact the yak is a most valuable beast, and should be encouraged in Siberia and in those parts of European Russia suitable to its habits, the Ural mountains for instance, or the Caucasus, where it could be acclimatized without great difficulty. Any number of yaks may be purchased at Urga at 5*l.* a head ; and they could be driven to Russia at a small expense.

The Tangutans ride the yak, guiding it by means of a rope attached to a large wooden ring inserted in its nostrils. The cross-breed of the yak bull and domestic cow,<sup>1</sup> called by the natives *khainik*, is stronger, more hardy, and therefore more valuable.

<sup>1</sup> This valuable cross is also mentioned by Marco Polo, in his account of Tangut (2d. ed. i. 266). It is in use also on the Indian side of Tibet.—Y.

We saw some Tangutans near Chobsen, living with Chinese, engaged in agriculture; but a settled life does not harmonise with their restless natures. They pine after the careless pastoral existence best suited to their indolent character.

Their encampments always consist of a few yurtas standing together, very rarely of single tents as is the case so frequently with the Mongols. Indeed, the habits and manners of the two races are quite distinct. The one loves his dry, barren desert, and fears damp more than any hardship; the other, inhabiting a country lying so near, but at the same time physically so different, is quite another stamp of man. He prefers the moist climate and rich soil of his native valleys; he hates and fears the desert. The same remarks apply to their respective animals. The camel of the Mongol is a four-footed counterpart of its master, while the yak typifies the chief peculiarities of the Tangutan.

In the wooded parts of Kan-su, a few Tangutans turn with the lathe different utensils, such as wooden bowls for eating out of, or for keeping butter in; the latter purpose being in general served by yaks or sheep's bladders.

The most common, indeed the only, industry of the Tangutans is preparing yak (or more rarely sheep's) wool for cloth, out of which all their clothes are made. They spin the wool on a long stick with a crook at the end for holding the spindle. The yarn is woven into cloth, not by themselves, but by the Chinese. We may mention that the only measure

known to the Tangutans in Kan-su is the span of their arms ; so that the measurement of the piece, and therefore the price to be paid for it, depends on the stature of the buyer !

The sole occupation of the Tangutan is tending cattle ; this is some break to the absolute idleness to which he gives up his whole life. For hours together grown-up men and women and children sit round the hearth doing literally nothing but drink tea, which is as indispensable to them as it is to the Mongols. In the Tangut country, where, in consequence of the Dungan disturbances, the price of brick tea has considerably risen, dried yellow onion heads are used as a substitute, after undergoing a process somewhat similar to the preparation of tobacco. This 'tea' is chiefly manufactured at Tonkir,<sup>1</sup> and gets its name from that place. The natives drink large quantities of this nasty decoction, mixed with milk. A tea-kettle is simmering all day long on the hearth, and tea-drinking goes on at least ten times a day, guests being always invited to join.

*Dzamba* (barley-meal) is invariably mixed in the tea ; a small quantity being put into a cup half filled with tea, and stirred with the finger, till it thickens into the consistency of paste. To this mess curds are sometimes added by way of a relish, but only by the rich ; the poor have to content themselves with tea and dzamba. This disgusting mess is their

<sup>1</sup> This town is thirteen miles WNW. of Si-ning. [It is evidently the Tang-keu-cul of Père Huc, which no doubt is the pronunciation of the Chinese characters representing the name.—Y.]

chief food, but little meat being eaten. Even the rich Tangutan, owner of several thousand head of cattle, will not kill a sheep or yak for his own use, and is so mean and stingy that he will deny himself a piece of meat if by so doing he can save a lan of silver. Tangutans, like Mongols, will eat carrion, and with a relish too. Next to tea and dzamba, their favourite food is *tarik*, i.e. boiled sour skimmed milk, which is to be found in every tent; the wealthier classes also make a kind of cheese of curds and butter, which is considered a great delicacy.

The Tangutans are disgustingly dirty, and never wash the bowls out of which they eat; the cups out of which they drink are merely rinsed out after use, and replaced in the bosom where vermin swarm; they never wash the cow-teats before milking, and they pour the milk into the filthiest of utensils; their churn is a piece of raw sheepskin fastened to the end of a stick, with wool and dirt adhering.

With few exceptions they are no agriculturists, obtaining their supplies of dzamba from Tonkir, a trade centre of some importance. Hither they drive their cattle and carry their skins and wool to barter in exchange for dzamba, tobacco, daba (cotton cloth), Chinese boots, &c., the price of every article being fixed according to the number of sheep it would fetch.

They are as distinct from the Mongols in character as they are in appearance. They are superior to the latter in courage, energy, and intelligence, especially to the Mongols of Koko-nor and Tsaidam.

But they are not so hospitable as the thoroughbred Mongols, and they are very cunning and mercenary, particularly those who mix with the Chinese.

A Tangutan will never do anyone a service for nothing, but will always try to get as much as he can for it, even though it were from his own brother.

Their usual salutation is extending both hands horizontally, with the words *Aka temu*, i.e. 'How do you do?' *Aka*, like the Mongol *nokhor*, signifying *Master*, or *Monsieur*, frequently used in conversation. On making a new acquaintance, and in general on visiting anyone, particularly if he be a person of distinction, a silk scarf<sup>1</sup> is invariably presented, the quality of which depends on the mutual good feeling subsisting between guest and host.

The Tangutans do not admit plurality of wives, but keep concubines. All the domestic work is done by the women, whose rights in the household are, as far as I could judge, equal to those of the men. They have a curious custom of stealing their neighbours' wives, of course not without their secret assent. In such case the stolen wife belongs to her ravisher, who pays the husband a good sum as compensation. They all count their age, not from the day of their birth, but from that of their conception, adding one to the years of their life for that passed in the mother's womb.

They are as zealous Buddhists as the Mongols,

<sup>1</sup> This etiquette of the *Khata*, or ceremonial scarf of silk, is expounded at large by Huic (ii. 86), and is mentioned also by Turner.—Y.



and are dreadfully superstitious. Charlatanism and soothsaying are with them mixed up with the doctrines of their faith. The more devout make annual pilgrimages to Lhasa. Lamas are highly venerated, and exercise boundless influence over the people; but temples are not numerous here as in Mongolia, and the Gigenes often live in black tents along with ordinary mortals. Their bodies are not buried in the ground after death, but are exposed in the forest, or on the steppe, to be devoured by vultures and wolves.

The Tangutans are governed by their own officers, who are under the control of the Chinese governor of Kan-su. The latter usually resides at Si-ning, but on the occupation of that town by the rebels, he transferred his seat of government to Djung-ling. On the recapture of Si-ning by the Chinese troops in the autumn of 1872, he returned to his former residence.

The Mahommedan insurrection, which, about ten years ago, spread over all the western dominions of China, and at first appeared to have every chance of success in its struggle with the Manchu government, is now completely on the wane. The insurgents or *Dungans*,<sup>1</sup> as we call them, known to the Chinese under the name of Hwei-Hwei, on the first outbreak of the rebellion, succeeded in attaining

<sup>1</sup> This name is quite unknown to the Mahommedans or Chinese in those districts we visited. The Chinese call all Mahommedans in China by the general name of *Hwei-Hwei*. They are all *Sunnis*, but divided into several sects. [It would appear that *Dungans*, as used here, is simply the equivalent of Chinese Mahommedans.]—Y.

liberation from the Chinese yoke, which was their main object, over a vast extent of territory situated to the west of the Great Wall and near the sources of the Yellow River; but they soon gave up acting on the offensive, and confined themselves to brigandage in the neighbouring districts of China and Mongolia. Their last signal successes were the devastation of Ordos and Ala-shan on the east; Uliassutai, Kobdo, and Bulun-tokhoi on the west; soon afterwards they were defeated by the Chinese, and were finally obliged to defend themselves against the decisive measures taken by their opponents to the east of the Upper Hoang-ho. Here we were witnesses of some engagements between the insurgents and Chinese troops. The following narrative will, therefore, refer only to the action of both parties in the province of Kan-su.

The Mahommedan insurrection broke out in this province in 1862, and some important successes were at first gained by the insurgents. Three large towns, Si-ning, Tatung, and Suh-chau, fell into their hands; the Chinese garrisons were either put to the sword, or compelled to adopt the Mahommedan religion and enter the ranks of the rebels. Chinese garrisons, however, still held out in some towns situated near those which had freed themselves, and Djung-ling, Sa-yan-chen,<sup>1</sup> Taging, Lang-chau, and Kan-chau

<sup>1</sup> Sa-yan-chen is not to be found in Prejevalsky's Map, but we find in Kiepert's 'Asia' (1863), *Sanyantsing*, very near the position of Prejevalsky's Yunan-chen. It is probable, however, that this position is only Kiepert's interpretation of Hue's vague indications, for *Sau-yeu-*

remained in their power, so that Kan-su was not entirely lost to China. The territories held by the respective combatants were not only in contact, but sometimes actually overlapped each other, neither side taking decisive measures to drive the other out.

In this position of affairs petty pillaging and brigandage became the primary object of the revolted Mussulmans. And in the absence of nobler motives, these practices speedily led to the decline of their cause, ere it had time to acquire a sound political basis. Instead of advancing in a compact body beyond the Yellow River direct on Peking, and settling beneath its very walls the question of the existence of an independent Mahomedan state in the east of Asia, they dissipated their forces in the movements of small independent bands, chiefly bent on plunder.

Had they acted in a resolute way they might have had a good chance of success. To say nothing of the cowardice and demoralisation of the Chinese forces, the Hwei-Hwei or Mussulmans would have found a powerful support among their co-religionists, who are animated by the bitterest hatred to the Manchu, and would gladly have joined their ranks. If it be remembered that Islamism numbers from  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 millions<sup>1</sup> of adherents in China Proper, superior in energy and religious organisation, it can scarcely

*tsin* is one of his halting-places (ii. 32), and if so the true place is very doubtful.—Y.

<sup>1</sup> According to an approximate calculation by the Archimandrite Palladius, a distinguished sinologue. See 'Labours of the Peking Mission,' 1866, vol. iv. p. 450.

be doubted that a bold advance of the Dungans might have threatened the tranquillity, nay, perhaps the existence, of the Celestial Empire, and certainly that of the reigning Manchu dynasty. Moreover, provinces of China further south were at the same time disturbed by the revolts of the Taepings and of the Yunnan Mahommedans, though these had no connection with the north-western movement, of which we are speaking. Thus the Peking government was threatened by great calamities both from the south and from the west ; but none of her enemies knew how to avail themselves of their first successes, and thus China had time to recover herself, and afterwards, in her turn, to assume the offensive.

Another important element of success was entirely disregarded by the insurgents, and that was to gain the good will of the Mongols, who so bitterly detest the Chinese.

The two races, alien as they are from each other in character and religion, would have found a bond of union in their common struggle for freedom ; but from the very first the Dungans ill-used the Mongols, and treated them exactly as they did the Chinese, so that these desirable allies were effectually estranged.

But victory could never have declared for the rebels unless they had acted under one leader. Here they entirely failed. Every large town or district carried on an independent system of warfare under its own chief, whether Akhun or Hadji.<sup>1</sup> The

<sup>1</sup> Thus, in Kan-su, the towns of Si-ning, Tatumg and Sui-chau, with their districts, were entirely independent of one another.

case with which they plundered Ordos and Ala-shan in 1869, despite the presence of a force of 70,000 Chinese troops on the middle course of the Hoang-ho, is a convincing proof of the success which might have attended their arms in a serious struggle with China. The following year they sacked Uliassutai, and the year after that Kobdo, the chief places in Western Mongolia.<sup>1</sup> Both these towns were garrisoned by Chinese soldiers, who hid themselves at the first appearance of the Dungans, without offering the slightest resistance.

We must not, however, draw conclusions from these facts favourable to the valour of the Mahommedans.<sup>2</sup> They are in fact as arrant cowards as the Chinese, and only put on a bold demeanour when they are certain of encountering no resistance. All their plundering forays and skirmishes with the Chinese simply amounted to this ;—one set of cowards tries to outwit another ; as soon as either side has succeeded, *Væ victis!* woe to the fallen enemy. We were told by eyewitnesses that not satisfied with slaughtering the women, the Mahommedans threw hundreds of little children into deep wells, and then stood gloating over the agonies of their unfortunate victims. The Chinese retaliated in like manner. Whenever victory declared for either side it was

<sup>1</sup> Bulun-tokhoi was destroyed in 1873. The aspect of Kobdo shortly after its capture by the Mahommedans has been described by an eyewitness, Mr. Ney Elias, who visited it in November, 1872. (See *Journal of the Royal Geogr. Soc.*, vol. xliii., p. 134).—M.

<sup>2</sup> I am only alluding to the Mahommedans in Kan-su ; those of Chinese Turkestan and the Thian-Shan may be different.

immediately followed by a wholesale butchery of the vanquished; no prisoners were made, no quarter given.<sup>1</sup>

The bands of Dungans who made plundering incursions into Kan-su and on the borders of Mongolia, were composed of every kind of vagabonds, half of whom were often unarmed; the remainder carried spears or swords, and a few matchlocks. Old men and women followed to collect booty, and bring it home under cover of their companions' escort.

To give a correct idea of the absurd nature of the military operations of the Dungans, I will describe the siege of the temple of Chobsen, which happened three years before our arrival in Kan-su, as it was related to us by some of its defenders.

The temple is surrounded by a mud wall, 20 feet high and 280 feet square. In the centre of each face and at the four corners stand small towers, each capable of containing fifteen or twenty men. The wall has a wooden roof, sloping on either side, and at a short distance from it, about 100 houses are scattered about, each standing in its own enclosure. There is no well inside the temple, and water is obtained from a spring in the immediate vicinity.

In the summer of 1868 several thousand Dun-

<sup>1</sup> In every place where the Mahommedans revolted, the Manchu officials and Chinese soldiers were in general exterminated to a man; occasionally soldiers were spared on condition of their embracing Mahommedanism. Of the peaceable Chinese population living in Dungan territory, those who became Mahommedans had equal rights with the conquerors; the others were made slaves. Women were not required to change their religion.



gans made their appearance at Chobsen, with the object of taking and destroying the temple. Its defenders, numbering 1,000 men, Chinese, Mongols, and Tangutans, retreated within the principal enclosure, leaving the enemy to take possession of the outer houses, which of course they had no difficulty in doing, but the main wall was strong enough to resist all their efforts, and the first assault was unsuccessful. The hour of taking tea now drew near, and as the observance of this custom is not neglected even during actual warfare, the besiegers withdrew to their camp, about two-thirds of a mile from the temple. Taking advantage of such a favourable opportunity, the besieged sallied out of their fortress in full view of the enemy, proceeded to the stream to obtain a supply of water, and in their turn set to work tea-drinking. The next day beheld a repetition of the same process; the Dungans invested till mid-day, when they retired to drink tea; in this way the siege lasted six days, at the expiration of which, finding they could not take the place, the Dungans returned to their homes.

This anecdote would have been almost incredible, had we not convinced ourselves of the rotten state of China and her tributaries. They are all alike, and nothing but ignorance on the part of Europeans could invest them with any of the attributes of power or majesty.

Notwithstanding the rancorous hatred between Mussulmans and Chinese, they are not unwilling to have commercial transactions with one another. In

Kan-su, where the Dungans are in such close proximity with the Chinese, we repeatedly heard it stated that the Mussulmans at such and such a place were on good terms with some temple or village in their neighbourhood with which they traded. Thus the Dungans at Tatung were at enmity with the temple of Chobsen and the surrounding district, while at Simni, on the Tatung-gol, forty miles to the north of Chobsen, they were friendly with the Gigen of its temple, trading peacefully and molesting no one. In the same way the commander of Mur-zasak, one of the banners of Koko-nor, as we have already mentioned, was on excellent terms with the Dungans at Yunan-chen, whom he supplied with cattle.

Such an anomalous position of affairs could only exist in a country like China. Let us now see what measures were taken by the Chinese to quell the insurrection in Kan-su.

After the loss in a few years of the whole of Eastern Turkestan, the countries lying at the foot of the Thian-Shan, and a large part of Kan-su, the Chinese Government began to realise the great danger of their position, and determined to employ every means in their power to prevent the insurrection from spreading to the northern provinces of China Proper. With this view a line of defence was drawn along the upper and middle course of the Hoang-ho. Here 70,000 troops were disposed, partly garrisoning the towns of Kuku-khoto, Bautu, Ding-hu, Ning-hia, Lang-chau, &c., and partly quartered by small detachments in the intermediate villages. The

garrisons of those towns of Kan-su which still remained in the power of China were strengthened. Nothing more was done in the first instance. The Dungans, gratified with their success in freeing themselves from Chinese rule, discontinued aggressive measures, and gave themselves up to looting, while the Chinese garrisons immured within mud walls remained tranquil spectators of the complete devastation of the country.

The Chinese troops in Kan-su and on the Hoang-ho were brought from the southern provinces of the empire, and were called by the inhabitants *Khotens*; they also included a few Solones from Manchuria. Their arms consisted of swords, matchlocks, a few smooth-bore English muskets and double-barrelled pistols, some of English and others of Tula manufacture, the latter probably obtained on the Amur. The cavalry and some of the infantry were armed with long bamboo lances, decorated with red flags and effigies of the dragon.

The moral qualities of Chinese soldiers are so peculiar that a European would find difficulty in believing it possible for an army composed of such elements to exist, particularly when brought into the field. In the first place all of them, officers and men, are addicted to opium-smoking, and cannot exist without it for a single day. This vile habit is not only practised in barracks, but even on a campaign, in the face of an enemy, they will smoke themselves into a state of torpor. The result is moral and physical debility, and complete unfitness

for the hardships and privations of warfare. Their discipline is so bad that they are incapable of keeping on the alert even for a few days, and they would fall an easy prey to an active energetic enemy. They post no picquets; they make no reconnaissances. Any information of the enemy's movements is reported by spies; so unfitted are they for physical exertion that nothing but the threat of instant execution will compel them to leave the shelter of their house or tent in bad weather, or at night. On the march the infantry either ride or travel in carts; nothing will induce them to go on foot, even for a few marches. Finding their arms inconvenient to carry, they frequently lay them on the cart or camel in order to feel quite at their ease, as if they were on a pleasure excursion.

On arriving at the night halting place they loot and rob the inhabitants of everything they possess. One carries off a hen, another a sucking-pig, a third a bag of flour, a fourth forage for his horse; in fact, their system of foraging reminds one of an enemy's town given up to pillage. Officers take an active part, only that, instead of robbing on their own account, they take the plunder from the men; no complaints are heard or even made, and the inhabitants are only too glad if they can keep a whole skin. So customary is this style of thing that the Mongols, directly they hear of the approach of the Chinese troops, remove their encampments to great distances from the road, or hide in the mountain defiles with

their herds;<sup>1</sup> and caravans take circuitous routes in order to avoid meeting the soldiers.

Garrison troops also commit the same depredations. After first pillaging the country in the immediate vicinity of the town in which they are quartered, they proceed in small detachments on more distant forays which sometimes last for several days. The commander receives his share of the booty, and everything is arranged satisfactorily. Officers of all ranks, from the highest to the lowest, rob the government as much as they can. The chief source of their illicit earnings is derived from the pay of soldiers who have died or deserted, which they continue to receive long after it has ceased to be due. Desertion is so common that many of the battalions are reduced from 1,000 to 100 men, and it has been confidently asserted that the 70,000 troops on the Hoang-ho actually do not number more than 30,000. All these facts are of course concealed from the government at Peking.

The severest penalties will not check these offences, or restore the *morale* of the army. The ordinary punishment for light offences is the bastinado, applied on the soles of the feet with bamboo sticks, but desertion, insubordination, and in some

<sup>1</sup> So says Marco Polo, of the people near the western parts of the Gobi: 'When an army passes through the land, the people escape, with their wives, children, and cattle, a distance of two or three days' journey into the sandy waste; and knowing the spots where water is to be had they are able to live there, and to keep their cattle alive, whilst it is impossible to discover them; for the wind immediately blows the sand over their track.'—Book I. ch. 38.—Y.

cases plundering, are punishable by death. But where crime is so widespread, it seems rather to be aggravated than diminished by severity, and year by year the Chinese soldiers become more demoralised. But the picture we have drawn of the defenders of the Celestial Empire is still incomplete. The most striking trait in their character is cowardice, innate in all Chinese, and not considered a disgrace; far from this, the discretion of the soldier who runs away is sometimes highly praised.<sup>1</sup> The tactics of warfare consist in frightening the enemy, never in hazarding a resolute attack. The order of battle is a semicircle threatening the front and flanks simultaneously; the troops open fire at a distance ten times further than the range of their guns, utter fearful cries after every round, and altogether behave in a childish way, which of course would produce no effect on superior troops. A bold well-armed enemy might march into any part of the Middle Kingdom with perfect confidence of the result. He need not trouble himself about the number of his opponents; one wolf will put to flight a thousand sheep, and every European soldier is a wolf in comparison with Chinese soldiers.

This was the state of affairs in Kan-su for ten years. The Chinese garrisoned those towns which remained faithful to them, while the insurgents ravaged the country, neither of the belligerents taking more

<sup>1</sup> It is hardly necessary to comment on this wild kind of talk. The army of Colonel Gordon showed of what Chinese soldiers are capable when rationally disciplined and boldly led.—Y.



decided measures. The governor of Kan-su resided at Djung-ling, while a Dungan akhun ruled at Si-ning.<sup>1</sup>

At length the authorities at Peking determined to resort to more energetic measures, and accordingly despatched a new army of 25,000 men to the scene of action. Their chief object was to capture Si-ning, an important commercial city with a large population. Advancing in échelons, the Chinese troops only arrived in Kan-su by the month of June 1872, and quartered themselves in the towns of Nim-pi and Ou-yam-pu, about thirty miles from Si-ning. Here they passed two months in complete idleness, merely pillaging the neighbouring country, and giving the Mahommedans time to assemble 70,000 men in Si-ning. Not till September did they advance against this town, and take up their position beneath its walls, within which the defenders had as usual retired. Four European field-pieces, brought from Peking, struck terror into the insurgents. Each of these guns was drawn by six mules caparisoned in silk, and none durst approach them under fear of immediate death. They were furnished with grape shot and small shells, which were of the greatest service to the Chinese.

At the assault of the town, some of these shells burst in the streets, and created a panic among the defenders. To make matters worse, one of them which had not exploded on falling suddenly burst

<sup>1</sup> It is said that the loss of Si-ning was not reported at Peking until three years afterwards.

among the crowd, killing and wounding several, and putting the rest to flight. The fight, however, continued for a few days after this occurrence, until the Chinese captured a part of the wall, and obliged the defenders to retreat to another part of the fortifications.

At this juncture, news was received of the marriage of the Emperor of China. Siege operations were immediately suspended, and a theatre was built by the soldiers to celebrate the auspicious event. The rejoicings, fireworks, and theatrical representations were continued for a week, during which time most of the officers and soldiers were drunk, or insensible from opium-smoking; and this went on close to a still unconquered enemy. If the Dungans had only had 100 men of any pluck among them, they could, in one night attack, have slain 1,000 Chinese soldiers, and dispersed the remainder. But not even a handful of brave men were to be found among the cowardly defenders of Si-ning. They knew very well that as soon as the Chinese had once taken possession of the town, they would receive no grace, but yet they could not muster up courage enough to profit by a singularly favourable opportunity which thus presented itself.

This is an instance of the moral degradation of the East, where a man cannot overcome his animal instinct of self-preservation, and invariably shows signs of cowardice when left to himself; but when once the coward is in a position out of which he cannot extricate himself, he becomes completely

indifferent to death, and walks to the scaffold like an animal without reason.

Having celebrated the marriage of the Emperor, the Chinese troops recommenced military operations and soon took Si-ning. Then commenced a wholesale butchery of the vanquished. We were told by eye-witnesses that the Chinese soldiers, wearied with slaying the people with cold steel, collected them into bands, without distinction of age or sex, and drove them to the mountains, where they pitched them down precipices; in this way 10,000 were put to death.

After the capture of Si-ning, its Chinese governor was reinstated, and in the course of the winter three more towns were re-captured: Seng-kwan, Yunan-chen, and Tatung. Here they only spared those of the rebels who would abjure Mahomedanism and embrace Buddhism. Numbers of Dungans fled to join their co-religionists in the west.

After receiving further reinforcements from Peking, the Chinese continued their advance westwards, and in the summer of 1873 captured the important rebel position of Suh-chau.<sup>1</sup> No authentic news of the recent operations of the Chinese has been received. They have now, at all events, a more difficult task before them, in their struggle with Yakub Beg of Kashgar.

---

Here is the list of Tangut words which I made :

Mountain . . .	Ri-i <sup>2</sup>	River . . . .	Chsiúchen(g)
Range . . . .	Khika	Rivulet . . . .	Siúbchen(g)

<sup>1</sup> It is reported that all the inhabitants of Suh-chau were massacred.

<sup>2</sup> Prolonged vowels are denoted by doubling them.

Lake . . . . .	Tso-o	Wild-boar . . .	La-a
Water . . . . .	Chsiu	Chamois . . .	Kashá
Grass . . . . .	Rtsa	Deer { buck . . .	Sha-a?
Forest . . . . .	Shan(g)	{ doe . . .	Imú
Tree . . . . .	Shan(g)-Kireh	Argali . . . .	Rkhian(g)
Firewood . . . .	Mi-i-shan(g)	Kuku-yaman .	Rna-a
Fire . . . . .	Mi-i	Camel . . . .	Namún(g)
Cloud . . . . .	Rmúkha-a	Felt . . . . .	Dziugón
Rain . . . . .	Tsiar	Fur cloak . . .	Rtsókha
Snow . . . . .	Kin	Hat . . . . .	Sia-ia
Thunder . . . .	Onám	Saddle . . . .	Rtárga
Lightning . . .	Tok	Dressing-gown	Lo-o
Frost . . . . .	Khabsá	Boots . . . . .	Kham
Heat . . . . .	Tsátchigeh	Shirt . . . . .	Tsélin(g)
Wind . . . . .	Lun(g)	Pipe . . . . .	Tétkhu-u
Road . . . . .	Lam	Tinder . . . .	Mítsia
Tea . . . . .	Tsia-a	Tobacco . . . .	Dó-oa
Yurta (tent) . .	Kirr	Horse-shoe . .	Rníkhtsiak
Hearth . . . . .	Khtsiaktáb	Tobacco-pouch	Diudkhúk
Tent . . . . .	Riukárr	Man . . . . .	Kcheibsa
Milk . . . . .	G(h)óma	Woman . . . .	Yerkmát
Butter . . . . .	Marr	Child . . . . .	Siázi
Meat . . . . .	Sha-a	Husband . . .	Veh-eh
Sheep . . . . .	Liuk	Wife . . . . .	Rgánmu
Goat . . . . .	Ramá	Man in the	
Cow . . . . .	Sok	sense of hu-	
Bull . . . . .	Ólunmu	man being .	Mni
Yak { male . . . .	Yak	Head . . . . .	Mní-gou
{ female .	Ndjeh	Eye . . . . .	Nik
Dog . . . . .	Tscho	Nose . . . . .	Khna-a
Horse . . . . .	Rta-a	Forehead . . .	Tombá
Ass . . . . .	Onléh-eh	Ears . . . . .	Rna
Mule . . . . .	Pchi-i'	Eyebrows . . .	Dzúma
Bear . . . . .	Bsiugdjet	Mouth . . . .	Ka
Beaver . . . . .	Chiúkram	Lips . . . . .	Chéhli
Wolf . . . . .	Káadam	Cheeks . . . .	Dziámba
Fox . . . . .	Gaa	Face . . . . .	No-o
Steppé fox . . .	Beh-eh	Hair . . . . .	Khtsia
Hedge-hog . . .	Rgan	Moustachios .	Kóbsi
Bat . . . . .	Pána-a	Whiskers . . .	Dziára
Jerboa . . . . .	Rkhtflu	Beard . . . . .	Dziámki
Hare . . . . .	Rúgun	Teeth . . . . .	So-o
Lagomys . . . .	Bchjaa-Djákzium	Tongue . . . .	Khtseh
Mouse . . . . .	Kharda	Heart . . . . .	Rkhin(g)
Marmot . . . . .	Sho-o	Blood . . . . .	Chak
Dzeren (ante-		Neck . . . . .	Khnia
lope) . . . .	Go-o	Intestines . . .	Dziunák

	Pchan	No.	Mit.
Breast . . .	Pchan		
Hands . . .	Lókhva		
Fingers . . .	Mdzugéheh	1	Khtsik
Nails . . .	Tsínmu	2	Ni
Back . . .	Tsánra	3	Sum
Stomach . . .	Chómbu	4	Bjeh
Feet . . .	Kúna-a	5	Rna
Footstep . . .	Kánti	6	Chok
Knee . . .	Ormú	7	Diun
Hungry . . .	Khtsínar	8	Dziat
God . . .	Skhá-a	9	Rgiu
Angel . . .	Túnba	10	Tsiú-tambá
Devil . . .	Djeh-eh	11	Tsiú-khtsik
Paradise . . .	Lámrtón-lamá	12	Tsiú-ni
Hell . . .	Ouardú	20	Ni-chi-tambá
Sky . . .	Nam	30	Sum-chi-tambá
Sun . . .	Níma	40	Bjéh-chi-tambá
Stars . . .	Kárama	60	Chok-chi-tambá
Moon . . .	Dáva	70	Diún-chi-tambá
Earth . . .	Sáazyu-u	80	Dziát-chi-tambá
Year . . .	Námrtsa-a	90	Rgiup-chi-tambá
Week . . .	Níma ?-abdún	100	Rdziá-tambá
Day . . .	Nima ?	101	Rdziá-ta-khtsik
Night . . .	Namgum	102	Rdzia-ta-ní
To walk . . .	Djeyo	200	Ní-rdzia
To stand . . .	Laniót	300	Súm-rdzia
To eat . . .	Tása	400	Bjéh-rdzia
To drink . . .	Tún	500	Rná-rdzia
To sleep . . .	Rnit	600	Chók-rdzia
To lie . . .	Niaya	700	Diún-rdzia
To sit . . .	Dok	800	Dziát-rdzia
To cry . . .	Kiúpset	900	Rgiú-rdzia
To speak . . .	Shóda	1,000	Rtún-tik-khtsik
To pray . . .	Shágamtsa	2,000	Rtún-tik-ní
To see . . .	Khtsírhta	10,000	Chí-tsok-khtsik
To bring . . .	Tséh rashok	20,000	Chí-tsok-ni
To go . . .	Dándjeh	100,000	Búma
To run . . .	Dardjúk	200,000	Búma-ni
He . . .	Kan	300,000	Búma-sum
Is . . .	Yut	1,000,000	Síva
Yes . . .	Rit	10,000,000	Dúnkhir. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Some remarks on this 'Tangutan' vocabulary will be found in the Introduction.—Y.

## CHAPTER V.

## KOKO-NOR AND TSAIDAM.

The lake—Colour of its waters—Island and temple—Fish—Legendary origin of lake—Its shores—Birds—Animals—The Kulan or wild ass—Eleuth Mongols—Low standard of civilisation—Kara-Tangutans—Their predatory habits—Mongol tradition concerning them—Administrative divisions of Koko-nor—We buy fresh camels—Tibetan envoy—Favourable opportunity of reaching Lhasa lost—We determine to advance—Guides—Temple of Kumbum and its sacred tree—Tibetan medicine—Route along shore of lake—Ponhain-gol—Huc's account of river inaccurate—Southern Koko-nor range—Djaratai-dabas salt basin—Princess of Koko-nor—The Tsing-hai-wang—Our reception—My reputation as saint, prophet, and physician—*Baumsteitismus*, a universal panacea—Mongol ailments—Plain of Tsaidam—The Baian-gol—Saline vegetation—Karmyk berries—Scarcity of animal life—Inhabitants—Lake Lob—Wild camels and wild horses—Autumn on Koko-nor—Clear atmosphere—Cultivated land—Crossing the marshes—Tsong-zasak—Mongol guide 'Chutun dzamba.'

LAKE KOKO-NOR, called Tsok-gumbum by the Tangutans, and Tsing-hai<sup>1</sup> by the Chinese, lies to the west of Si-ning, at a height of 10,500 feet above the level of the sea. In shape it is an ellipse with its longer axis running from east to west. It is from

<sup>1</sup> The Mongolian name signifies 'light blue'—the Chinese 'dark blue.' We could not ascertain the exact meaning of the Tangutan name. The inhabitants of the region, and in general the Southern Mongols, call it Khoko-nor, i.e. softening the *k* into *kh*.

[The Tangutan, *i.e.* the Tibetan name of the lake is properly *Tsongonbo*, as written by Della Penna, or *Tsot-Ngon-po*, as written by Huc, meaning just the same as the Mongol and Chinese, viz., 'Blue Lake.'—Y.]



200 to 230 miles in circumference ; we could not, indeed, ascertain its exact size, but the natives told us that it took a fortnight to go round it on foot, and seven or eight days on horseback. Its shores are very flat and shelving ; its water salt and undrinkable. But this saltness imparts an exquisite dark blue colour to the surface, which excites even the admiration of the Mongols, who have compared it not inaptly to blue silk. It is certainly very beautiful, especially as we first saw it, late in autumn, when the snowclad mountains formed a white frame for the velvety blue waters which passed out of sight on the eastern horizon.

Many streams flow into Koko-nor, the more considerable being eight in number, of which the Pouhain-gol, joining its south-western corner, is the principal.

As on other great lakes even a light breeze will often raise its waves,<sup>1</sup> and it is rarely and only for short intervals calm. Strong winds prevail about the middle of November, when the lake freezes and remains ice-bound till the end of March, i.e. for 4½ months.

In the western part of the lake, some fourteen miles from the southern shore, there is a rocky island<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Huc asserts that there is a perceptible ebb and flow in this lake. I purposely stuck poles into it and convinced myself that there was no regular rise and fall of the water. The descriptions of Huc, from Lake Koko-nor forwards, are in general curiously inaccurate, as we shall have more than once to remark. See *Souvenirs d'un Voyage*, &c., vol. ii. p. 185.

<sup>2</sup> The inhabitants of the shores of Koko-nor say there is only one island.

about six or seven miles in compass, on which stands a small temple inhabited by ten lamas, who have no means of communication with the main land during summer, for there is no boat on the lake, and none of the inhabitants understand the use of one. In winter pilgrims cross over the ice, and bring presents of butter and barley-meal to the hermits, who at this season come out of their cells to collect alms.

Koko-nor abounds in fish, but you find only a score or two of Mongol fishermen on its shores, and these send all that they catch to the town of Tonkir. Their nets are small, and the fishing is chiefly carried on at the mouths of the streams which flow into the lake. The only kind of fish that we saw was the *Schizopygopsis* nov. sp., which we captured ourselves; we heard that though there were many other species, owing to the badness of the nets they were rarely caught.

The local tradition<sup>1</sup> of the origin of Koko-nor represents it to have once been an underground lake in Tibet, in the place where Lhasa now stands, and to have been transferred to its present site before the memory of man. The story runs thus:—

In olden days, before the present residence of the Dalai-Lama was built, one of the sovereigns of Tibet bethought him of erecting a splendid shrine in honour of Buddha, and so having selected a site he began to build. Thousands of workmen were em-

<sup>1</sup> This legend is related by Huc (*Souvenirs d'un Voyage*, &c., vol. ii. p. 189-194). The only new point that I have been able to add is the story of the origin of the island.

ployed for a whole year, but no sooner was the edifice completed than the whole suddenly tumbled to pieces. Again the work was begun, and again, from some unknown cause, it fell to ruins. It was rebuilt a third time, but the result was just the same. The king, startled and alarmed, applied to one of the gizens to explain this phenomenon. Though the prophet could give no satisfactory answer, he was able to inform his master that in the far East there lived a saint who alone of mortals possessed the secret, and that if the king could extort it from him the building might be completed. On receiving this answer, the monarch chose a trusty lama and sent him in search of the saint.

In the course of some years the envoy travelled through nearly all the Buddhist countries, visiting the most famous shrines and conversing with the different gizens without finding anybody answering to the prophet's description. At length, disgusted with the ill-success of his mission, he determined to return home by those great steppes which stretch on the borders of China and Tibet. One day as he was riding over the plain, the buckle of his saddle-girth broke, and seeing a solitary little *yurta* (tent) not far off, he went towards it for help. On entering he found a blind old man engaged in prayer, who welcomed his guest, and gave him a buckle from his own saddle. He then invited the traveller to sit down and drink tea, and enquired of him whence he had come and whither he was going. Unwilling to disclose the object of his journey, the envoy replied

that he was a native of the West, and had come on a pilgrimage to pray at all the famous temples of the East. 'Ah!' said the old man, 'we are fortunate indeed in possessing so many beautiful shrines. They are trying in vain to build one in Tibet, but their work will never be completed, because in the very place which they have chosen for it, there is a subterranean lake which loosens the foundations as fast as they are laid. But, prithee, keep this secret, for if the Tibetan lamas hear of it, the waters of the lake will pass hitherwards and swallow us up.'

Hardly had he done speaking when his guest started from his seat, and announcing that he was a lama from Tibet whose object was to discover this very secret, jumped on his horse and galloped away. Despair and fear took possession of the old man. He began calling loudly for help, and as soon as one of his sons, who was tending the cattle hard by, came in, the father bade him quickly saddle a horse. 'Haste thee, haste thee after that lama, and wrest his tongue from him.' Of course the old man was thinking of his secret, and meant that the son should put the stranger past blabbing. But the word '*kileh*' means in Mongol either the tongue of a man or animal, or the buckle of a saddle-girth. Hence, when the messenger overtook the lama he told him that his father wanted him to return his '*kileh*,' whereupon the latter unfastened the borrowed buckle and gave it to the son, who returned with it to his father. The latter on finding that his son had only brought back the buckle, and had suffered the lama

to continue his journey, exclaimed, 'God's will be done! All is over! We are lost!' Sure enough that night a fearful subterranean noise was heard; the earth opened; and streams of water pouring forth from below soon flooded the wide plain. Much cattle and many souls perished, the old man among the rest. At length God took pity on sinful mortals and sent a wonderful bird, which flew away with a huge rock from the Nan-shan mountains, and deposited it in the fissure whence the waters were pouring forth. The flood was now stopped; but the plain had been already converted into a lake, and the safety-bringing rock became the island which you see to this day.

The lake is closely hemmed in by mountains on its northern and southern shores, while on the east and west the mountains are at some distance. The narrow strip of level ground between the lake and the mountains is excellent steppe-land, resembling the best parts of the Gobi, only more plentifully watered. The contrast between the climate, flora, and fauna here and those of Kan-su is very remarkable. Instead of the unceasing rain, snow, and moisture which we had lately experienced, we now had fine autumnal weather which continued every day. But instead of alpine meadows, forests, and a damp loamy soil, we were now in the midst of plains of saline clay, covered with steppe-grass and tall *divisun*, where those ever-recurring denizens of the steppe, the *dzeren* and *ogotono* (alpine hare), larks, and sand-grouse were to be seen. Here too were

new kinds of birds and mammalia, peculiar to the deserts of Tibet.

The most remarkable of the birds was a species of lark (*Melanocorypha maxima*) larger than a starling; inhabiting the tufted marshy grass, an exquisite songster. Two kinds of *Montifringilla* (*M. ruficollis* and another) and a *Podoces humilis* were occupying the burrows of the alpine hare. The Mongol sandgrouse (*Syrrhaptes paradoxus*) is a rarer bird in these steppes than its allied Tibetan species (*Syrrhaptes Tibetanus*), which is larger and has a different note. The waders (*Grallatores*) had left before our arrival, and of the web-footed tribe only a few geese (*Anser cinereus*), ducks (*Anas boschas*, *A. rutila*, *A. crecca*, *Fuligula cristata*), cormorants (*Phalacrocorax carbo*), and gulls (*Larus Ichthyætus*, *L. ridibundus*) remained. We thought that the autumnal migration must have passed, but our observations in the following spring proved that Lake Koko-nor did not abound in waterfowl or wading birds. Among birds of prey, vultures and lammergeiers daily visit its shores in search of food, and numerous buzzards, hawks, and eagles appear to winter here for the sake of feeding on the alpine hares that are found so abundantly.

The last-named animal, differing very slightly in appearance, size, and voice from its Mongol congener, inhabits in extraordinary numbers the pasture land at the foot of the mountains; honeycombing the ground for miles, so that it is dangerous to ride



over it at a trot. Hundreds and thousands may be seen on a fine day disporting themselves in the open, or basking in the sun near their holes; and although destroyed by eagles, buzzards, and hawks, wolves, foxes, and steppe-foxes, they multiply so quickly as to make up for all losses.

The most remarkable animal of the steppes of Koko-nor is the wild ass or *kulan*,<sup>1</sup> called *djang* by the Tangutans (*Equus Kiang*), in size and external appearance closely resembling the mule; the colour of the hair on the upper part of the body is light chestnut, and white underneath. We saw them first on the upper Tatung-gol, where the Kan-su mountains are unwooded, and the pasturage is good. The kulan ranges over Koko-nor, Tsaidam, and Northern Tibet, but it is found in the greatest numbers in the first-named country.

The steppes, however, are not its exclusive habitat; it is also found in the mountains wherever grass and water are abundant. We occasionally saw it on the lofty mountains of Northern Tibet, grazing with the *kuku-yamans*. The kulans mostly keep in troops of ten to fifty; larger herds of several hundred being only met with in the vicinity of Koko-nor; and it is not probable that they often congregate in such large numbers, for when seen by us they invari-

<sup>1</sup> A woodcut of this animal, after Wolf, will be found in Yule's 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed., vol. i. p. 227. It was described by Pallas and Moorcroft. See also Hooker's 'Himalayan Journals,' vol. ii. p. 172.—M. Some naturalists have distinguished the *Kiang*, Pallas's *Dshiggetai*, from the *Kulan* of Western Turkestan, the *Ghorkhar* of Persia. The late Mr. Blyth (*Four. As. Soc. Bengal*, vol. xxviii.) says they differ only in shades of colour and unimportant markings.—Y.

ably broke up into smaller troops, and dispersed in different directions.

Each lot of mares is led by a stallion, the size of whose family depends on his age, strength, and courage; his individual qualities keeping his harem together. Old and experienced stallions have as many as fifty wives, whilst the younger are obliged to content themselves with five or ten. Young or unfortunate bachelors roam about alone, casting envious glances from a distance at their older or happier rivals, by whom again they are always regarded with suspicion, and never allowed to approach the harems. Should one of these stallions notice another approaching too near his troop, he rushes to the encounter and tries in every way by kicking and biting to drive him off. Fights frequently occur during the rutting season, which we were told by the Mongols is the month of September. The males are very jealous and combative at this season, and sometimes go out of their way to seek an antagonist. The young are born in May; but often die before attaining maturity; and in the largest herds we saw but a few foals, which never seemed to leave their mother's side.

The kulan's sight and hearing are excellent. It is difficult to kill him on level ground. The best way is to walk boldly up to the troop, which you may do to within 500, or sometimes, though rarely, 400 paces, but even at this distance you cannot be certain of your aim, and should you not hit him in a vital part he will not fall. It is useless attempting

to stalk them on level ground as it makes them more wary and shy. You may perhaps succeed in getting within 200 paces of a herd, but you must still be careful to aim at the head, or behind the shoulder; a kulan with a broken leg will run for some distance before he lies down in a hollow or ravine. The best time to stalk them is when they are drinking; this is the plan usually adopted by the natives, who kill them for the sake of their meat, which is esteemed a great delicacy, especially in autumn, when they are very fat.<sup>1</sup>

When alarmed a kulan runs down wind with his great ugly head and scanty tail stretched out. In their flight they always follow their leader, generally in single file. After running a few hundred yards, they will stop, huddle together and confront the object of their fears for a few minutes; the stallion will then advance and try to reconnoitre the source of danger. If the hunter still continue to approach them, they will again take to flight, but this time they will run a good deal farther. The animal is not nearly so wary as you would at first sight suppose it to be. I only heard its voice twice—the first time when the stallion was driving back to his troop some strayed mares, and the second when two males were fighting. The noise they made was a loud harsh neigh, repeated at short intervals, and combined with a bray.

The inhabitants of Koko-nor and the conterminous

<sup>1</sup> The ghorckhar, or wild ass of the Persian Desert, is also highly prized for his flesh.—Y.

country of Tsaidam are Mongols and Kara-Tangutans. The Mongols are chiefly Oliuths (Eleuths), with some Turguts, Khalkas, and Koites. Exposed to the implacable hatred of the Tangutans, the Mongols of Koko-nor are the worst of their race. In face they are not unlike the Tangutans, but their expression is stupid, their eyes dull and heavy, and their disposition morose and melancholy. They show no energy, no strong desire for anything, but a sort of brute apathy as to everything in the world except food. The prince (*Wang*) of Koko-nor, a man of some intelligence, spoke of his subjects to us as only externally resembling human beings; as in all other respects absolutely beasts. 'Knock out a few of their upper front teeth, set them on four legs, and you have regular cows,' added he. The Mongols of Koko-nor have adopted even the mode of life of the Tangutans, and live in black tents; towards Tsaidam, however, further from Koko-nor, the felt *yurta* re-appears. The Kara-Tangutans outnumber the Mongols in Koko-nor, but their chief habitations are near the sources of the Yellow River where they are called Salirs;<sup>1</sup> they profess the Mahommedan religion, and have

<sup>1</sup> *Salirs* or *Salars*. The archimandrite Palladius observes that they are so named after their place of habitation. They are also called the 'black-yurta Fans,' 'dog-Fans,' and 'Mahommedan Tangutans.' Suen-hwa quotes a legend in which this people are described as a colony of Uigurs. They are noted for their fanaticism, and appear to be the backbone of the Dungan insurrection. They inhabit the department of Ho-chau, near the borders of the Koko-nor district. 'Trans. of the Imperial Russian Geographical Society,' vol. ix. 305.—M. [According to a Russian work quoted in 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed. ii. 23, *Salars* is the name by which Ho-chau is known to the Mahommedans of Central Asia. See 2nd ed. ii.—Y.]

rebelled against China. The Kara-Tangutans are only nominally subject to the Chinese governor of Kan-su; they regard the Dalai-Lama of Tibet as their lawful sovereign, and are under their own officers, refusing to submit to the chiefs of the Mongol banners in whose districts they are living.

The Kara-Tangutans of Koko-nor live by rapine and plunder, and the Mongols of the province are their habitual prey. Not only are the cattle driven off, but the people are mercilessly put to death or carried off into captivity. The Mongols, besides being arrant cowards, are powerless to defend themselves against their better-armed enemies, and if by chance in self-defence a Mongol happen to kill a Tangutan robber, he must pay the family of the slain man a heavy fine or, in the event of his being too poor to pay, the whole koshung or banner to which he belongs is mulcted on his account. If payment be refused, the Tangutans assemble a force of several hundred men and make war. As their marauding expeditions are unpunished, the numbers of the Mongols diminish year by year, and, unless the Chinese Government take decisive measures to protect them, they will be exterminated before long. Not content with plundering the immediate neighbourhood, the Tangutans extend their raids to some distance, as, for instance, to Western Tsaidam. For these expeditions they organise small bands of ten men, each of whom leads a spare horse or two in case the one he is riding should die on the road.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To lead spare horses with them on their expeditions of plunder

Provisions for two or three months are taken on pack-camels. Returning home laden with spoil, the first act of the robbers is to implore God's forgiveness, and the more easily to obtain it they ride off to the lake, where they buy, or perhaps appropriate without payment, a quantity of newly-caught fish, and throw these back into the waters.

According to the Mongols the Kara-Tangutans began to plunder this country and Tsaidam about eighty years ago, and since that time have continued uninterruptedly this mode of gaining a livelihood. The Chinese governors of Kan-su are bribed by the robbers to give a certain degree of countenance to their proceedings, so that the complaints of the Mongols are never listened to. A local Mongol tradition on the origin of the Kara-Tangutans and Mongol-Oliuths of Koko-nor runs as follows:—

Several hundred years ago a people of Tangutan race lived on the shores of Koko-nor, called Yegurs,<sup>1</sup> who professed Buddhism, and belonged to the red-capped sect.<sup>2</sup> These Yegurs were continually plundering the caravans of pilgrims on their way

and invasion was a regular practice of the mediæval Tartars. See 'Marco Polo,' 2nd ed. i. 256.—Y.

<sup>1</sup> These might be the Uigurs, were not they of Tangutan, not Mongolian race. [I do not clearly understand this note. The *Uigurs* are generally understood to be typical *Turks*, and in great measure the progenitors of the present people of the Kashgar basin. But it is possible that the existence of these *Yegurs* in Tangut may have to do with the thesis so obstinately maintained by I. J. Schmidt that the *Uigurs* were Tibetans.—Y.]

<sup>2</sup> Buddhists in Tibet are divided into two sects, the red-capped and yellow-capped. The radical difference between them is that while the former allow their lamas to marry, the latter oblige them to live single. [This definition is not to be relied on.—Y.]



from Mongolia to Tibet, until the Oliuth prince Gushi-Khan, who ruled in North-western Mongolia, marched an army to Koko-nor to subdue them. The Yegurs were partly exterminated, but some of them escaped to North-western Kan-su, where they mixed with the other inhabitants.

After the subjection of the Yegurs, some of the Oliuth (Eleuth) troops returned to the north, but others settled in Koko-nor; their descendants are the Mongol inhabitants of the present day. Some hundreds of them emigrated to Tibet, where their posterity has multiplied and now numbers 800 yurtas divided into eight koshungs (banners). They live six days' journey to the south-west of the village of Napchu,<sup>1</sup> where they cultivate the soil and bear the name of Damsuk-Mongols, after the little river on whose banks they are settled.

The tradition further says that when the Yegurs were destroyed by the Mongols, one old woman, with three daughters all in the family way, escaped to the right bank of the Hoang-ho. Here the daughters gave birth to three sons, from whom are descended the Kara-Tangutans, or, as they call themselves, the *Banik-Koksum*. During the course of many years they increased in numbers and returned to Koko-nor, where they were at first obliged to defend themselves against the Mongols, but as they

<sup>1</sup> The village of Napchu is near the southern foot of the Tang-la, twelve days' march from Lhassa, on the high road taken by pilgrims from the north. [Huc mentions this village and its Mongol inhabitants, II. 238.—M.]

became more powerful, in their turn took to plundering.

‘Had we but slain those three accursed girls,’ remarked the Mongols, ‘there would be no Kara-Tangutans now, and we should live in peace.’ According to their reckoning eight generations have elapsed since the Oliuths came to this country.

For administrative purposes the district of Kokonor includes a vast region besides the basin of the lake: viz. the upper Tatung-gol on the north, and the whole country to the borders of Tibet on the south; or in other words, the region comprising the sources and head waters of the Hoang-ho and Tsaidam, extending a long way to the north-west. The whole of this is divided into twenty-nine koshungs (banners), five of which lie on the right, i.e. western bank of the Upper Hoang-ho, five in Tsaidam, whilst the remaining nineteen are situated in the basin of the lake and on the upper Tatung-gol. With the exception of the five koshungs on the right bank of the Upper Hoang-ho, under the immediate control of the amban (governor) of Si-ning,<sup>1</sup> all the administrative divisions are under two Tsiun-wangs, Tsing-hai-wang and Mur-wang, each having twelve koshungs under his supervision; the former governing the western or larger, the latter the eastern part of the country.

Our camels were quite done up and unfit for further use when we left Kan-su. Fortunately camels

<sup>1</sup> According to the Mongols the inhabitants of these koshungs are almost exclusively Tangutans.

were plentiful here, and we had no difficulty in exchanging our tired-out beasts for fresh ones, by making an additional payment of ten to twelve lans a-piece (2*l.* 15*s.* to 3*l.* 6*s.*). We had now again eleven camels, but our money was reduced to 100 lans (27*l.* 10*s.*). How could we expect with such a pittance as that to get to Lhasa, however great our good luck otherwise? Shortly after our arrival at Koko-nor a Tibetan envoy paid us a visit; he had been sent in 1862 by the Dalai-Lama with presents for the Emperor, but arriving here at the time of the outbreak of the Dungan insurrection in Kan-su and the occupation of Si-ning by the rebels, he was detained, and ever since then had lived here or at Tonkir without being able to continue his journey to Peking, whilst he did not dare to venture back to Lhasa. Hearing that four Russians had passed through the very country which he was afraid of entering when backed by an escort of several hundred men, he came to see what manner of men we could be.

This envoy, whose name was Kambi-nansu, was a most obliging, amiable man, and offered us his services at Lhasa. He told us that the Dalai-Lama would be very glad to receive Russians, and that we would be well received. We listened to this with heavy hearts, for we saw clearly that now nothing but want of money prevented us from penetrating to the very heart of Tibet! When will any future traveller have so good a chance as we were thus compelled to forego? How much will have to be spent another time to attain an object which a small expenditure

would now have placed within our grasp? A sum of 1,000 lans (275*l.*) would have sufficed to take us from Koko-nor to Lhasa and thence to Lob-nor, or whither we would.

Although thus obliged to give up all hopes of extending our travels to the capital of Tibet, we determined nevertheless to advance as far as possible, well aware how important to science is every additional footstep in these unknown regions of Asia.

We obtained two guides as before from the Mongol and Tangutan military officials, partly in return for presents, and partly in consequence of the letter of the treasurer of Chobsen to Mur-zasak and of our Peking passport, which specified that two subjects of the Celestial Empire were constantly to be in our service. This paragraph indeed was inserted to provide for the event of our hiring Mongols or Chinese servants, but we were advised to take advantage of it to obtain guides, as we succeeded in doing, to Koko-nor and Tsaidam.

One of the guides whom we hired at Koko-nor had formerly been an officiating lama at the temple of Kumbum, twenty miles south of Si-ning, famed throughout Lamadom as the birthplace of the Buddhist reformer Tsong-kaba, whose sanctity, the Buddhists say, was proved by different miracles. Thus a tree grew up from the place where his swaddling clothes were buried,<sup>1</sup> bearing leaves marked with the Tibetan alphabet; this may still be seen at Kumbum, where it stands in a separate court, the most sacred

<sup>1</sup> His *hair* according to Huc (II. 113).—Y.

object in the place. In the Mongolian language it is called *Zandamoto*,<sup>1</sup> but the same word applies to the arborescent juniper and to other useful trees; for instance, the walnut-wood stocks of guns are 'zandamoto;' the leaves of the sacred tree are said to be about the size of those of the common lime. The Tibetan letters are of course inscribed by the lamas, or perhaps exist only in the imagination of devout believers. And the tree itself is most probably a native of Kan-su, as it grows in the open air, and can therefore bear the severity of the climate. We attach no weight to the mere fact of its being considered by all Buddhists as sacred and unique; what strange beliefs and superstitions obtain credence even in Europe!<sup>2</sup> Kumbum is famed for its school of medicine, in which young lamas destined to practise that art receive instruction. During the summer the students repair to the neighbouring mountains to collect herbs, which are the only remedies known in the Tibetan pharmacopœia. Of course a great deal of hocus pocus is added, but it is not improbable that by these means discoveries unknown to European science are made in the healing art. I think that anyone who had made medical botany his study

<sup>1</sup> *Chanda*? Is this a corruption of the Sanskrit *Chandana*, sandal wood? *Moto* or *modo* is merely 'wood.'—Y.

<sup>2</sup> Huc, it will be remembered, gives testimony as an eye-witness to this marvellous tree, declaring that the Tibetan characters are found not only on the leaves but on the bark, which detaches like that of a plane-tree. 'We made every search for indications of trickery, but none could we find! and the drops of perspiration burst from our foreheads!' In fact, Huc and Gabet regarded it in good sooth as *opus Sathana*.—Y.

might pick up some valuable hints were he to turn his attention seriously to the Tibetan and Mongolian practice.



TIBETAN LAMA-PHYSICIAN (from a Photograph lent by Baron Osten Sacken).

In former times 7,000 lamas lived at Kumbum, but their number is much diminished since the temple was despoiled by the Dungs, who, however, spared the principal shrine with the sacred tree. Such is the fame of the place that it will doubtless soon be restored.

On leaving our camp to the north-west of Kokonor our route lay first along the northern and then along the western shore of the lake. After fording a few small streams, we soon approached the largest of its affluents—the Pouhain-gol, which, as the



Mongols told us, rises in the Nan-shan mountains and flows 260 miles before discharging its waters. In its lower course, i.e. where the Tibetan road crosses it, its width is about 100 feet, and it is fordable almost everywhere; the depth not exceeding two feet. The Pouhain-gol is thus a river of very moderate calibre, and the description given by the Abbé Huc of the terrible passage of the Tibetan caravan which he accompanied to Lhassa, across twelve of its channels, appeared to us, as we read it on the very spot, marvellously overdrawn. The worthy father remarks that his companions considered it very fortunate that only one man broke a leg, and two yaks perished. Now, the river has here only one channel, which is flooded only in the rainy season, and might suffice to drown a hare possibly, but certainly never so powerful a swimmer as the yak. In the following March we lived a whole month on the Lower Pouhain-gol, and forded it dozens of times on every shooting excursion, often calling to mind as we did so Huc's description.<sup>1</sup> The valley of this river is from eight to ten miles wide; on the opposite side rises a lofty range which, as the natives told us, extends along the southern shore of Koko-nor,<sup>2</sup> and continues for about 330 miles to the west. I shall call it the Southern Koko-nor range, to distinguish it

<sup>1</sup> Compare Huc's account (vol. ii. p. 199). The river was covered with ice, not strong enough, however to bear the weight of the caravan animals, a circumstance which, combined with the darkness of night, must have occasioned difficulties in the passage, and partly caused the accidents which befell his party. Huc's passage was apparently made in the first week of November.—M.

<sup>2</sup> It is curious that Huc does not mention this great range.—M.

from the Northern or Kan-su mountains, with which it probably unites at its western extremity.

Just as these latter mountains divide its basin from the moist, hilly, wooded region of Kan-su, so does the southern range define the boundary between the fertile steppes surrounding the lake and the deserts of Tsaidam and Tibet. The northern slopes of this range have many points of resemblance to the Kan-su mountains, and are for the most part covered with shrubs and small underwood, while on the other side their character is completely Mongolian. Here the clay soil is in many parts quite bare, or dotted only with an occasional tree-juniper; the watercourses are dry; and no sign of rich grass-land is visible. Here also the traveller must prepare to enter the desert, which lies on the south, and may be compared in sterility with the plains of Ala-shan. Nothing grows on its saline clay soil but such grasses as the *dirisun*, with *budarhana*, and *karmyk*; its animals, the *kara-sulta* and *kolo-djoro*, are such as only inhabit the wildest deserts. Here lies the salt basin of *Djaratai-dabas*, about twenty-six miles in circumference, presenting a layer of excellent salt, a foot thick in the middle, diminishing to an inch round the edges. The salt is transported hence to Tonkir, its excavation being superintended by a resident Mongol official.<sup>1</sup>

The plain in which this basin lies is twenty miles

<sup>1</sup> It is worthy of notice that the salt is paid for on the spot at the rate of two packets ( $\frac{1}{4}$  lb.) of *guamian* (a kind of vermicelli prepared from dough) for each camel-load; however, at Koko-nor butter also passes as currency.

wide, and extends some distance to the east, bounded on the north by the Southern Koko-nor mountains, and on the south by another parallel chain which unites with the former a little to the west of Djaratai-dabas.

Not far from the point of their junction, at the entrance of a narrow defile formed by the Dulan-gol, is Dulan-kit,<sup>1</sup> where Tsing-hai-wang, governor of Western Koko-nor resides. He used formerly to live on the shore of the lake, but the constant deprivations of the Tangutans obliged him to remove his camp. One may form an idea of the extent of their robberies from the fact that 1,700 of his horses were stolen in three years. The Wang, i.e. Prince, of Koko-nor died a year before our arrival;<sup>2</sup> leaving as his successor his eldest son, a youth of twelve, whose title had not as yet been acknowledged by the Chinese Government;<sup>3</sup> and his mother, a young energetic woman, acted as regent. We met her with the young prince near Djaratai-dabas, on their way to Tonkir to transact business. The latter eyed us with a sort of stupid curiosity, but the princess demanded our passport, and, after reading it through, remarked to her attendants, that we were perhaps emissaries of

<sup>1</sup> The word 'kit' means a *church*, and there is certainly a small temple at this place. [The river is the Toulain-gol of Huc (ii. 208), where the French travellers found the ruins of a flourishing convent.—Y.]

<sup>2</sup> Both the wangs of Koko-nor are subject to the amban of Si-ning, i.e. the governor of Kan-su.

<sup>3</sup> Tsing-hai-wang died in 1871. A thousand head of cattle, including 300 yaks, were paid for the celebration of his funeral obsequies at different temples; besides which several hundred lans in money were sent to Tibet for the same purpose.

the Emperor of China to report everything we saw to him. She then bade them give us guides, and we separated, after an interview which did not last more than half-an-hour.



MONGOL PRINCESS.

BACK VIEW OF MONGOL PRINCESS.

(From a Photograph lent by Baron Osten Sacken.)

But we received a hearty welcome, at the headquarters of Tsing-hai-wang, from the uncle of the prince who assists his nephew in the affairs of government. This uncle, a Gigen by profession, once owned a temple, but the Dungsans destroyed it. He had been several times to Peking and Urga,

where he had met Russians. He was an excellent fellow, and in return for our present to him sent us a small yurta, which was afterwards of great service to us in Tibet. But the greatest kindness he showed us was in forbidding his subjects from entering our tent except on special business ; so that for the first and only time during the expedition we lived near the natives without being disturbed by them.

We have more than once alluded to the inconvenience we suffered from the curiosity and impudence of the inhabitants during the whole journey. They were especially intrusive and tiresome on our departure from Koko-nor, when the report spread that four strangers had appeared, and that one of them was a great saint of the West, on his way to Lhasa to see the Dalai-Lama, the great saint of the East. My promotion to the rank of demi-god might be attributed to several causes : first, our safe journey through Kan-su at a time when it was as full as it could be of robbers ; secondly, our new-fashioned guns which killed animals at unheard-of distances and birds on the wing ; and, lastly, our mode of preparing skins, and the secrecy observed as to the objects of our journey : all these combined to induce the belief among the people that we were mysterious beings. Whenever a person of consequence, such as a Gigen or the Tibetan envoy, paid us a visit, they were more than ever convinced that I must be a great *kubilgan* or saint. This circumstance favoured us to a certain extent, because my reputation for sanctity lessened the difficulties of the road, and



thus in a measure removed the obstacles that beset our path; on the other hand, it was necessary to keep up my character by dispensing benedictions, prophesying, and every kind of absurdity. Tangutans and Mongols would sometimes come in crowds to pray, not only to us but to our guns, and the native princes often brought us their children, entreating us to lay our hands upon them, and thus confer a lifelong blessing. As we approached Dulan-kit, a crowd of 200 men assembled to worship us, kneeling down on each side of the road.

I was often consulted in my capacity of prophet, not only as to the future, but in cases of straying cattle or lost pipes, and the like. And one of the Tangutan princes besought us to tell him how to make his barren wife bear children, if it were but two or three! The Kara-Tangutans, who are constantly harrying the region round Koko-nor, not only never dared to attack us, but actually discontinued their raids in the district through which we happened to be travelling. The chiefs of the Mongol banners often applied to us for our assistance to protect them against the robbers, and to order the restoration of their ravished cattle.

The charm which attached itself even to our name exceeded all bounds of probability. Thus on the way to Tibet we left a bag of barley-meal with the Prince of Tsaidam, who gladly took charge of it, assuring us that it would protect him from marauding Tangutans; two months afterwards when we returned, the same prince sent us a couple of sheep in



return for the service we had done him ; for robbers had been deterred from molesting his banner by apprehensions lest they should steal something belonging to the Russians !

Endless were the absurd stories circulated about us. Thus it was generally believed that though we were but four in number, yet at my bidding a thousand men would rise up and do battle in our behalf ; it was asserted that I had power over the elements, and could infect cattle or even men with diseases, &c. And I am firmly convinced that ere many years have elapsed, the story of our journey in those countries will have passed into a legend, adorned with all sorts of imaginative flights.

I had to play not only the saint but the doctor also. The latter title was given me in the early months of the expedition owing to my plant-gathering habits, and to the successful cures which I afterwards performed on some fever patients with doses of quinine ; quite enough to convince the Mongols firmly of my powers of healing. My fame spread far and wide throughout Mongolia, Kan-su, Koko-nor, and Tsaidam. In the two latter countries numbers of sick persons, especially women, came to consult me upon their maladies. Being entirely ignorant of medicine, and having only a small supply of drugs, and without either time or inclination for such work, I usually had recourse to one of the most impudent quackeries that ever appeared in the medical world, viz. *Baumsteitismus*, a system which professes to cure every ill that flesh is heir to by punctuating the skin of the affected

part with a bunch of needles set on a spring, and afterwards rubbing in an ointment.

I had taken one of these instruments with me, in some kind of prevision of its utility. If Dr. Baumsteit, the inventor of this marvellous panacea, be still alive, he may take pride in learning that his discovery was welcomed with enthusiasm by the inhabitants of Koko-nor, who regarded the needle-spring as a sacred thing received almost direct from Buddha himself! I subsequently presented it to a Mongol prince, who at once began to practise with it on his aides-de-camp, although they had nothing earthly that ailed them.

The most common maladies among the Mongols were syphilis, different skin diseases, and stomach complaints, besides contusions and fractures of bones. The sufferers gave the most ludicrous accounts of their ailments; thus, one woman, whose digestive organs were impaired by an excessive consumption of barley-meal, declared that she had a fungus growing inside her; another that her eyesight had been harmed by the evil-eye, &c.

My patients, however, were not satisfied with the operation of Baumsteitismus only; they asked us to give them internal remedies as well; we usually administered doses of salts, tincture of peppermint, and soda powders, sometimes, as in cases of cataract, magnesia, simply to rid ourselves of them. Our stock of medicines, however, was at last exhausted, and we had to fall back upon the needle-spring, which never failed us to the end of the expedition.

Two days' march from the residence of Tsing-hai-wang we left the mountains behind us. As we crossed the last spurs of the southern range we saw stretching before us the level plain of Tsaidam,<sup>1</sup> bounded on the north, east, and south by mountains,<sup>2</sup> but extending westwards in one continued expanse, as far, according to the natives, as Lake Lob-nor.

The plain of Tsaidam, which at a comparatively recent geological age formed the bed of a huge lake, is now covered with morasses, so thickly impregnated with salt as to be encrusted with a layer in some places half-an-inch to an inch in thickness, resembling ice. Here too are shaking bogs, small rivers and lakes; and in the western part of the plain the large Lake of Kara-nor. The most important of its rivers is the Baian-gol, about 1,600 feet wide where we crossed it, but of inconsiderable depth, in fact, not more than three feet, with a soft slimy bed. According to the Mongols the Baian-gol flows out of Lake Toso-nor at the eastern extremity of the Burkhan Buddha, and after a course of about 200 miles loses itself in the marshes of Western Tsaidam.

The saline argillaceous soil of this region is ill-suited to vegetation. With the exception of a few kinds of marshy grasses, which in places grow together and form meadows, the whole expanse is

<sup>1</sup> The boundary of Tsaidam lies a little over sixteen miles to the south of Dulan-kit.

<sup>2</sup> On the north, by the western continuation of the Southern Kokonor range, on the south by the Burkhan Buddha mountains of Tibet, and on the east by some transverse chains which unite the two systems.

covered with reeds four to six feet high.<sup>1</sup> On the drier ground *karmyk* (*Nitraria Schoberi*) abounds, such as we had seen in Ordos and Ala-shan, but growing here to a height of seven feet. Its sweet saline berries are plentiful, and, like the fruit of the *sulhir* in the Ala-shan, form the staple food of the inhabitants. The Mongols and Tangutans supply their wants for the whole year by collecting these berries late in autumn, when they hang dry on the twigs, boiling them in water, and eating them with barley-meal. They also drink the sweet brackish liquor in which the berries have been boiled. Many birds and beasts, including wolves and foxes, feed on these berries, and camels are particularly fond of them. Large animals are, however, scarce in Tsaidam, probably owing to the crust of salt on the surface of the ground, which injures the soles of their feet and their hoofs. Now and then a *kara-sulta* or a *kulan* (wild ass) may be seen, or more often a wolf, fox, or hare. The small number of animals is in part due to the myriads of mosquitoes, midges, and gadflies, which at certain seasons of the year oblige even the natives to retreat to the mountains with their herds.<sup>2</sup> The birds of Tsaidam belong chiefly to the orders of Swimmers and Waders; but as we passed through this country late in autumn

<sup>1</sup> Compare Huc's account, page 209 of vol. ii., which does not differ much from that of the author, except that he omits to mention the marshes and reeds, and calls the Baian-gol the Tsaidam River.—M.

<sup>2</sup> It is remarkable how seriously the cattle suffer from the insects; the sheep and other domesticated animals become much thinner than in winter when the food is not so rich, but when they are free from the torment of flies and mosquitoes.

and early in spring we saw very few of either kind. There was, however, a new pheasant in large numbers distinct from the Kan-su and Mongol species. We also found a few wintering birds, such as the *Ruticilla erythrogastra*, *Carpodacus rubicilla*, *Buteo aquilinus*, *Falco Hendersoni*, *Circus Cyaneus*, *Anthus pratensis*? *Anas boschas*, *Rallus aquaticus*.

The inhabitants of Tsaidam are the same as those of Koko-nor—Mongols and Kara-Tangutans; the latter, however, only inhabiting the east of the country. For administrative purposes Tsaidam is included in the Koko-nor region, and is divided into five banners: *Kurlik*, *Burun*, *Tsung*, *Koko-behleh*, and *Taiji*. According to the account we heard from a native prince the population numbers 1,000 yurtas, i.e. 5,000 to 6,000 men and women, taking the average of five or six to a yurta. The Mongols told us that the marshes extended for fifteen days' march WNW. from the point where we crossed them; and that beyond lay a tract of bare clay, after which the country again became steppe-like, abounding in water and pasturage known by the name of *Gast*. The only living creatures in these regions are the *kulans*, or wild asses; and hunters come from Lake Lob-nor, only seven days from the *Gast* country, in search of them. We were assured by the natives that Lob-nor was only a month's journey, i.e. 500 to 600 miles, from that part of Tsaidam in which we were. Guides may be obtained here on payment of a good sum, to take one, at all events, as far as *Gast*, whence there is no difficulty in getting to Lob-nor.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Ney Elias remarks that the approximate position of Lob-nor

Such a journey as the one we have just mentioned, besides its geographical interest, would finally set at rest the question of the existence of wild camels and horses. The natives repeatedly told us of the existence of both, and described them fully.

According to our informants wild camels are numerous in North-western Tsaidam, where the country is barren, the soil being clay, overgrown with *budarhana*, and so destitute of water that they have to go seventy miles to drink, and in winter are obliged to satisfy their thirst with snow.

The herds are small, averaging five to ten in each, never more than twenty. Their appearance is slightly different from the domesticated breed; their humps are smaller, the muzzle more pointed, and the colour of the hair grey.

The Mongols of Western Tsaidam hunt them for the sake of their delicate flesh, especially in autumn when they are fat. The hunters supply themselves with ice to avoid perishing from thirst in the wilderness. These camels cannot be very shy if it be true that they may be killed with the match-lock. They are described as wonderfully long-sighted and keen-scented, but unable to see objects near them. In February, during the pairing season, the males become very bold and approach close to the caravans passing from Tsaidam to Ngan-si-chau. Caravan camels have been known to elope with their wild mates, never returning to their owner.

lies between that deduced by Père Gaubil from a Chinese itinerary based on Hami and Mr. Shaw's carefully drawn up itineraries converging on that lake from several sides. See 'Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society,' vol. xviii., No. 1, note on page 83.—M.



Before we entered Tsaidam we had heard of wild camels in the country of the Tangutans, and in the desert between Lob-nor and Tibet. Shaw<sup>1</sup> also heard of them on his journey from India to Yarkand, and they are also mentioned by Chinese writers. But of what breed are they? Were their ancestors wild, or are they descended from some which escaped to the desert, ran wild, and multiplied? This question cannot be decided on the unsupported testimony of the natives, but we think that the fact that the domestic camel cannot propagate without human assistance argues for an original wild stock.<sup>2</sup>

Wild horses, called by the Mongols *dzerlik-adu*,<sup>3</sup> are rare in Western Tsaidam, but more numerous near Lob-nor. They are generally in large herds, very shy, and when frightened continue their flight for days, not returning to the same place for a year or two. Their colour is uniformly bay, with black tails and long manes hanging down to the ground. They are never hunted owing to the difficulties of the chase.

The plains of Tsaidam are 1,700 feet below Koko-nor, and on this account the climate is warmer. The absence of water also tends to increase the heat.

About the end of October, when we left Kan-su,

<sup>1</sup> 'High Tartary, Yarkand, and Kashgar,' by Robert Shaw, page 168. See also the note on that page. [See remarks in Introduction to the work.]—M.

<sup>2</sup> Domesticated animals may perhaps acquire this faculty after they have been set at liberty for some years.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. 'wild troop.'

and all through November, the autumnal weather was fine and clear, and though the night frosts were sharp ( $-9^{\circ}$  Fahr. in October, and  $-13^{\circ}$  Fahr. in November) the days were warm<sup>1</sup> when the sun shone and there was no wind, and we enjoyed it the more after the constant rain and snow in Kan-su. Towards the end of October Lake Koko-nor remained unfrozen, only some of the smaller bays being covered with ice, but a month later the rivers, including the Baian-gol, were ice-bound. Very little snow fell, and the little that did fall soon disappeared under the combined influence of sun and wind.<sup>2</sup> The natives said that even in winter snow was rare in Tsaidam and Koko-nor; in Kan-su, where the weather is generally clear at that season, it snows but little.

After taking our leave of the Tsing-hai-wang, we crossed a barren saline plain, in which are the two salt basins of Sir-ho-nor and Dulan-nor, after which we ascended a spur of the southern range, whence we saw the plain of Tsaidam in our front, and the Burkhan Buddha mountains, which rose like a wall, beyond it. The atmosphere in autumn is so clear that with the naked eye we could see the mountains although eighty miles off, and with a field-glass we could make out almost every cliff.

Before entering the salt marshes we crossed a wide undulating plain which connects them with the

<sup>1</sup> The first day that the thermometer descended below the freezing-point at 1 P.M. was November 9.

<sup>2</sup> The snow here and in Kan-su is so dazzling that the inhabitants, as they have no spectacles, bandage their eyes with blinkers made from the black tail of the yak.

high border-land. Here the soil is clay and shingle, with occasional sand drift, where the *saxaul*, characteristic of Ala-shan, at once appears. The clay flats were for the most part entirely barren, bushes of karmyk and tamarisk only growing here and there.

A rare sight now met our eyes, for we came upon a few acres of cultivated land sown with barley and wheat. The largest plot of this cultivation covered from twenty to thirty acres near the encampment of Tsing-hai-wang, to whom it belonged. Agriculture is of quite recent introduction in Tsaidam, dating only from the time when, owing to the Dungan insurrection, communications with Tonkir were cut off, and the inhabitants could not obtain the needful supplies of the barley which forms their staple food.

Our course lay across nothing but salt marshes for 40 miles. There are no tracks here, and we steered in a straight line, first over the bare salt crust, and then over frozen clay. It was painful walking for the animals; some of the camels were lamed by it, and the dogs could hardly put their bleeding feet to the ground.

On November 30 we reached the station of the governor of the banner of Tsung-zasak, whence the Gigen of Koko-nor had directed that we should be supplied with guides to Lhasa. We concealed the abandonment of our intention to go so far, in order to avoid suspicion. The prince hesitated for some time before selecting a guide for us. At length a Mongol, by name Chutun-dzamba, who had been

nine times to Lhasa with caravans, came to us. After a long consultation and the usual tea-drinking, we hired the services of this old man at the cheap rate of seven lans per month, with food and a riding camel provided by us. We further promised him a present if he discharged his duties zealously; and the next day we started for Tibet with the intention of advancing through that unknown country to the upper waters of the Blue River.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> i.e. of the Yangtse-Kiang. I do not know whence the name *Blue River*, commonly used by French authors, and here by a Russian, has been taken.—Y.

## CHAPTER VI.

## NORTHERN TIBET.

The Burkhan Buddha mountains; the effects of a rarefied atmosphere—M. Huc's 'vapours of carbonic acid gas'—The Nomokhun stream—The Shuga mountain range and river—Tibetan frontier—The Urundushi mountains—Sources of the Hoang-ho, and pilgrimage thereto—The Baian-kara-ula range—Character of the desert plateaux of Tibet—Extraordinary exhaustion produced by exertion at high altitudes—Caravans to Lhasa—Time occupied on the journey—Dangers and hardships of the road—Abundance of animal life—Mammals—The wild yak; its habits; its physical defects and low intelligence; disease to which it is subject—Wild yaks hooting—The animal hard to kill—Grandeur of the sport—Mode of stalking—They rarely charge—Examples of yak-shooting—The yak-meat—The white-breasted Argali—The Orongo (*Antilope Hodgsoni*)—Large herds of these antelope—Their unwary habits—Held sacred by Mongols—Unicorns—The *ata-dzeren*, or little antelope—Its amazing swiftness—The Tibetan wolf (*Lupus Chanco*)—The fox (*Canis Corsac*)—Birds of Northern Tibet—Progress of journey—Travelling yurta—Intense cold—Tattered garments—Rarefied atmosphere—The halt—Preparing dinner—Long nights—Sport on the plateau—Climate—Dust-storms—Chutun-dzamba—Arrival at the Murui-ussu—Limit of the expedition—Necessity for return.

THE Burkhan Buddha range forms the southern boundary of the marshy plains of Tsaidam, and at the same time the northernmost limit of the lofty plateau of Northern Tibet. Its length (according to what we were told by the inhabitants) is about 130 miles from east to west, and while its eastern extremity is near the Yegrai-ula<sup>1</sup> mountains and Lake

<sup>1</sup> The Yegrai-ula range is not far from the sources of the Yellow River; according to the Mongols it is not covered with perpetual snow,

Toso-nor, it is defined on the west by the course of the Nomokhun-gol, which flows from its southern foot, sweeps round the western end and enters the Tsaidam plain, where it joins the Baian-gol.<sup>1</sup> The Burkhan Buddha is, therefore, a distinct range, more particularly on the north, where it rises boldly from the perfectly level plains of Tsaidam; it has no very conspicuous peaks, but extends in one unbroken chain.

The Mongol tradition regarding the origin of the name 'Burkhan Buddha,'<sup>2</sup> dates several hundred years back, when a certain gigen happened to be returning to Mongolia from Tibet, and, after encountering all the horrors of the Tibetan deserts, descended in safety to the warmer plains of Tsaidam; desirous of showing his gratitude to the Divine Being, he named after Buddha himself that range which, like a giant watchman, keeps guard over the adjacent cold and sterile highlands. These mountains are indeed a distinguishing physical feature of this region. To the south of them the elevation is from 13,000 to 15,000 feet<sup>3</sup> the whole way to the head waters of

but is well wooded. Lake Toso-nor is narrow, but about forty miles, or two days' journey, in length. The Baian-gol flows out of it.

<sup>1</sup> The Nomokhun-gol flows from the Shuga mountains in a narrow channel; at its confluence with the Baian-gol the Mongols say there are some old ruins, formerly occupied by Chinese troops.

<sup>2</sup> This name means 'god Buddha.' [Since *Burkhan* is a word commonly used by the Mongols as the *synonym* of 'Buddha,' it is probable that the name as given by Huc is more correct, viz. *Burkhan Bota*, which that traveller interprets as 'Buddha's Kitchen,' connecting the name with the supposed mephitic gases which he speaks of there, ii. 212.—Y.]

<sup>3</sup> With the exception of the narrow gorge of Nomokhun-gol, which intersects the plateau.



the Yangtse-kiang, and considerably beyond these to the Tang-la mountains, which in all probability are even higher than the Burkhan Buddha.

The ascent from the foot to the chief axis of the range is about twenty miles,<sup>1</sup> rising by a gentle incline until within a short distance of the summit (15,300 feet), where it becomes steeper. The nearest peak, and also the highest in the whole range<sup>2</sup> (if we may believe the Mongols), also bearing the name of Burkhan Buddha, rises 16,300 feet above sea-level, and 7,500 above the Tsaidam plain.

Yet notwithstanding its great height, the Burkhan Buddha does not attain the limit of perpetual snow; even when we crossed in the beginning of December there was but a slight covering, a few inches in depth, on the northern slopes of the highest summits and of the axis of the range itself, and on our return march, early in spring, we saw no snow of the previous year unmelted, even in those gorges well sheltered from the sun.

This phenomenon is explained by the circumstance that, although at a great elevation above the sea, these mountains rise very slightly above the exposed plains to their south, and the currents of wind passing over the surface of the latter, after they have been thoroughly warmed by the summer sun,

<sup>1</sup> Between the foot of the mountains and the salt marshes of Tsaidam there is an intervening strip, ten miles wide, of sloping gravelly ground, completely devoid of vegetation and dotted with boulders.

<sup>2</sup> This is hardly correct, I think; some of the other peaks are higher than the one I measured, although perhaps only a few hundred feet.

drive the snow off the very highest summits. Moreover in winter the snowfall is very slight,<sup>1</sup> and although heavier in spring it soon thaws in the sun, without having time to drift into more compact masses, such as might last throughout the summer. The extreme barrenness of the Burkhan Buddha is its most prominent characteristic. The slopes are of clay, small pebbles, *débris* or bare rocks of schist, syenite, or syenitic porphyry; the latter are most marked on the borders and along the axis of the range. Vegetation is almost exclusively confined to stunted bushes of *budarhana* and yellow kurile tea; birds and beasts are also rare.

The southern slopes are in general somewhat less sterile than those facing the north; here too running streams are more abundant, and something like grass may be seen. But the herbage is soon eaten off by wild animals, or by the Mongol cattle driven hither during summer to escape the swarms of insects which infest the Tsaidam marshes.

Notwithstanding the gradual nature of the ascent, the exertion to both man and beast was very severe, owing to the enormous elevation, and the consequent rarefaction of the atmosphere. Our strength failed us, a feeling of languor supervened, respiration became difficult, and our heads ached and grew dizzy. Camels frequently fall down dead here; indeed one of our own expired on the spot,

<sup>1</sup> The Mongols told us that the snowfall was very unequal. One winter there would be more, another less.

whilst the others were only just able to surmount the pass.<sup>1</sup>

The descent from the pass was even more gradual than the ascent. It continued for fifteen miles, and terminated at the stream called Nomokhun, flowing in a gorge of which the height above the sea was 11,300 feet. And this was the lowest elevation in the whole of our route across Northern Tibet. Beyond the Nomokhun the ground gradually rises to another range, the Shuga (Chouga), lying parallel with the Burkhan Buddha and terminating as abruptly on the west, where it abuts on the Tsaidam plains.<sup>2</sup> This range is somewhat longer than the preceding. It commences with the Urun-dushi mountains on the east, where the Shuga-gol also rises. This stream is 280 feet wide<sup>3</sup> where we

<sup>1</sup> In his description of these mountains (ii. 210-212), Huc says that the range is remarkable for the presence of noxious gases on its northern and eastern face. He continues to relate how he himself and his companions felt the injurious effect of these gases on the pass. An exactly similar description may be found in a translation of a Chinese itinerary from Si-ning to Lhasa (Trans. of the Russ. Imp. Geogr. Soc. 1873, vol. ix. pp. 298-305), where it is said that in twenty-three places on this road deleterious exhalations, '*chan-tsi*,' are met with. We were for eighty days on the plateau of Tibet and never once experienced the 'pestilential vapours' or exhalations of 'carbonic acid gas.' The difficulty of marching here as well on the perfectly level parts of Northern Tibet, the catching of the breath, fatigue and giddiness, are of course attributable to the enormous elevation and rarefaction of the air at those altitudes. This also accounts for the argols burning so badly. Again, if there really were carbonic acid, or other noxious gases, how could the Mongols live there in summer with their herds, or how could the vast troops of wild animals pasture here and farther in the desert? [See also remarks in Introduction.]

<sup>2</sup> In all probability these two ranges, i.e. the Burkhan Buddha and Shuga, unite in the extreme west, where they abut on Tsaidam.

<sup>3</sup> This was the width of the ice in the channel in winter; the stream itself is probably much narrower.

crossed and shallow throughout; it flows with a course of 200 miles (so the Mongols told us) along the southern foot of the range, and then disappears in the marshes of Western Tsaidam. Its valley, like that of the Nomokhun-gol, is grassy and fertile, compared with the sterile mountains on either side.

The Shuga range closely resembles the Burkhan Buddha. Here we find the same absence of life, the same bare slopes varying in colour and shade according to the nature of the clay, or of the rocks which cover them. Huge crags of limestone and epidote are piled on their summits, but by the Tibetan road the ascent and descent are gentle, although the absolute elevation is greater than that of the more northerly range.<sup>1</sup> In the centre of this chain five isolated peaks attain the limit of perpetual snow.<sup>2</sup>

This range forms the political boundary between Mongolia (i.e. the Tsaidam district) and Tibet. But the frontier is not laid down with accuracy, and the Tibetans claim the territory up to the Burkhan Buddha. Serious disputes, however, are not likely to arise, because for a distance of 530 miles along the Tibetan road, i.e. from the Burkhan Buddha to the southern slopes of the Tang-la, there is no popu-

<sup>1</sup> The pass over the Shuga is 15,500 feet.

<sup>2</sup> These five peaks were about five miles to the east of our line of march; their apparent height above the pass is 2,000 feet; in the middle of December and middle of February snow lay in quantities on their northern slopes, and on the south in a narrow belt only, near the very highest summits.

lation whatever.<sup>1</sup> The Mongol name for this region is '*guressu-gadzir*,' or 'country of wild beasts,' from the abundance of animals which exist here in a state of nature, and which we shall have occasion to speak of presently.

The group of the Urundushi mountains, from which the Shuga range diverges, rises on the north of the plain of *Odon-tala*,<sup>2</sup> famous for its springs, and known to the Chinese under the name of *Sing-su-hai* or 'Starry Sea.' Here are the sources of the celebrated Hoang-ho, only seven days' journey from the point where we crossed the Shuga range, but unfortunately our guide did not know the road. Every year in the month of August the Mongols of Tsaidam make pilgrimages to Odon-tala to offer sacrifices and pray there. Their offerings consist of seven white animals (a yak, a horse, and five sheep) decked with red ribbons and let loose in the mountains. What becomes of them afterwards is not known, but it is not impossible that they are slain by Tangutans or devoured by wolves. About seventy miles to the south of the Shuga range rises a third chain of mountains, called by the Mongols Baian-

<sup>1</sup> With the exception of 500 Tangutans encamped, as the Mongols informed us, in the valley of the Murui-ussu (Blue River), six days' journey from its confluence with the Naphitai-ulan-muren. [*Murui-Ussu* signifies in Mongol, according to Klaproth as well as Huc, 'Tortuous River.' It is the *Bri-chu* of the Tibetans, the *Brius* of Marco Polo, and as already stated the upper stream of the Yangtse.—Y.]

<sup>2</sup> This plain is two days' journey in length; to the south lie the *Soloma* mountains, forming the eastern part of the Baian-kara-ula range.

kara-ula,<sup>1</sup> and by the Tangutans *Yegrai-vola-daktsi*; they are situated on the left bank of the headwaters of the Blue River, called by the Mongols *Murui-ussu*,<sup>2</sup> and from the watershed between its basin and that of the sources of the Hoang-ho.

The general direction of this range is from east to west, but it is known by different names in its several parts. In this way its western extremity, as far as the *Napchitai-ulan-muren*,<sup>3</sup> is called *Kuku-shili*; its central part is the *Baian-kara-ula* proper, beyond these again are the *Daktsi*, and on the extreme east the *Soloma* mountains. The Mongols informed us that no part of the range attained the limits of perpetual snow. The *Kuku-shili* is about seventy miles long, the other three chains together upwards of 260 miles in extent, giving a total of about 450 miles for the length of the entire range. Its central portion follows the course of the Blue River, while on the east and west it diverges from it.

The *Baian-kara* range is distinguished from the *Burkhan Buddha* and *Shuga* mountains by its softer outline and comparatively lower elevation. On its northern side (at all events where we saw it) the range rises only 1,000 feet above the base, but the counter slope facing the south presents a bold precipitous front to the valley of the *Murui-ussu*, where

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of this name is 'rich black mountains.'

<sup>2</sup> [The 'Blue River,' as already observed, is the Yangtse-kiang.—Y.]

<sup>3</sup> This river flows from the snowy mountains of *Tsagan-nir*, and after a course of about 230 miles falls into the *Murui-ussu*. The width of its lower channel in winter is from 210 to 280 ft.; it is remarkable that its water is brackish to the taste.



the elevation is 13,000 feet above sea-level. The rocks are mostly siliceous slate and felspathic porphyry. There are hardly any cliffs or chasms on the north; water is abundant, and the southern side is beyond comparison more fertile than any part of Northern Tibet that we saw. The soil is sandy, but owing to plentiful moisture the valleys and slopes are well clothed with grass.

Between the Shuga and Baian-kara-ula chains lies a terrible desert 14,500 feet above the level of the sea,<sup>1</sup> for the most part undulating, dotted here and there with groups of hills hardly more than 1,000 feet above the plain.

The only snowy mountains are the *Gurbu-naidji* (in Tangutan *Achiun-gonchik*),<sup>2</sup> lying towards the north-west, and which would seem to form the commencement of the Kuen-lun system. For the Mongols say that a continuous succession of mountains extends hence a long way to the west, now rising above and again sinking below the snow-line. In the eastern part of this system, other snowy peaks besides the *Gurbu-naidji* rise from the groups of *Yusun-obo* and *Tsagan-nir*.

The elevated plateau between the Shuga and Baian-kara-ula chains is typical of the deserts of Northern Tibet in general. The climate and natural character of this region are simply awful. The soil is clay mixed with sand or shingle, and almost

<sup>1</sup> Lake *Bukha-nor* is 14,000 ft., and the *Heitun-shirik* swamp at the northern foot of the Baian-kara-ula, 14,900 ft. above sea-level.

<sup>2</sup> These mountains were forty miles to the west of our route.

devoid of vegetation. Here and there a tuft of grass or a patch of grey lichen may be seen covering a foot or two of the surface, which in many parts is coated with an efflorescence of salt as white as the driven snow, and seamed in all parts by deep furrows caused by the violent and constant tempests. It is only in those spots where springs rise to the surface that verdure and an approach to grass-land may be seen. But even these oases bear the death-like stamp of the surrounding desert. The grass is all of one kind of *Graminæ*,<sup>1</sup> half a foot high, as hard as wire, and so parched by the wind that it crackles like straw under foot and falls to powder.<sup>2</sup>

The exhaustion consequent on the enormous elevation affects the strongest man. A short march, or even the ascent of a slight eminence, produces languor, giddiness, trembling of the hands and feet, and vomiting. Argols burn so badly owing to the want of oxygen in the air that it is difficult to light a fire, and water boils at sixty degrees Fahrenheit below boiling point at sea-level.

The climate, too, is in complete harmony with the sterility of these wilds. The winter is bitterly cold and tempestuous; the gales in spring are accompanied by hailstorms; the summer rains are also mingled with large hailstones; and it is in autumn alone that the weather becomes clear, still, and

<sup>1</sup> As rare exceptions, some of the order of *Compositæ* may be seen.

<sup>2</sup> As a proof of the hardness of the turf in the grassy parts of these deserts, I may mention that our camels often spiked their feet till the blood flowed, notwithstanding the thick soles with which they are protected.

warm. This is the season selected by the caravans for their pilgrimages to Lhasa.<sup>1</sup> The *rendezvous* is Lake Koko-nor, where the camels, which have already accomplished a long journey, are fed up in preparation for the still longer and more arduous march before them. Here too the pilgrims are joined by Mongols of the vicinity, mounted some on yaks and some on camels. The latter travel more rapidly, averaging twenty miles a day,<sup>2</sup> and accomplish the entire distance of 1,000 miles from Tonkir to Lhasa in two months, while the progress on yaks is much slower, occupying double the time.

There is no regular road anywhere in the Tibetan deserts, nothing but the tracks of wild animals in all directions. The caravans take a straight course, guiding their march by the salient features of the country. The route is as follows: from Tonkir along the northern shore of Koko-nor, and across Tsaidam, to the Burkhan range, a journey of fifteen or sixteen days; to the Murui-ussu, ten days; ascending the course of this river, ten days more; across the Tang-la range to the Tibetan village of Napchu, five days; and thence to Lhasa, twelve days. The camels are usually left behind at Napchu, on account of the steepness of the mountains, and the journey is continued on yaks. The Mongols, however, assured us that it was possible to

<sup>1</sup> The Dungan insurrection put a stop to the pilgrimages from Northern Mongolia for eleven years, during which time caravans proceeded only from Koko-nor and Tsaidam, and this not every year.

<sup>2</sup> There are only two halting-places; one in Tsaidam at the foot of the Burkhan Buddha, and the other on the bank of the Murui-ussu.

travel to Munhu-tsu<sup>1</sup> (Lhasa) itself on camels, but that pilgrims left theirs at Napchu because no good pasturage could be found beyond.

Caravans leave Koko-nor or Tonkir early in September,<sup>2</sup> to arrive at Lhasa in the beginning of November. Here they remain two or three months, and start on the return journey in February. They are then usually accompanied by Tibetan merchants, who take cloth, lambskins, and various other commodities, to sell at Tonkir and Si-ning. In former years an envoy from the Dalai-Lama was sent every three years with presents for the Emperor at Peking, but since the outbreak of the insurrection these embassies have been discontinued.

The caravan journey across Northern Tibet in the autumn and spring of the year is never unaccompanied by danger; and casualties to men and beasts are frequent. So many of the latter perish that a large reserve of camels or yaks is always taken; but notwithstanding this precaution, the men have sometimes to abandon all they possess, and to think only of their own safety. In February 1870, a caravan which left Lhasa 300 strong, with 1,000 beasts of burden, in a violent snow-storm, followed by severe cold, lost all the animals and fifty men besides. One of the survivors related to us how, when they found

<sup>1</sup> We find in Huc and Gabet *Monghe djo*, interpreted as signifying 'Eternal Sanctuary,' applied to Lhasa. The words are misprinted *Mouhe dehot* in Huc, ii. 240.—Y.

<sup>2</sup> But rarely in winter or summer: it sometimes snows heavily in winter; and in summer no fuel is obtainable, all the argols having become damp from the constant rains.

that their beasts were dying by the score every day, they were compelled to abandon first their merchandise, and such things as were not absolutely indispensable, then part of their supplies, until they were actually reduced to trudge on foot and to carry their own food on their backs. Of the entire force of camels only three were kept alive by feeding them on barley. The argols were buried so deep beneath the snow that it was almost impossible to find them, and the travellers had to cut their clothes to pieces and burn them for fuel to keep themselves warm. Every day one of their number fell down dead, and the sick were left to their fate.

But notwithstanding their sterility and the unfavourable conditions of climate, the deserts of Northern Tibet abound with animal life. Had we not seen with our own eyes it would have been impossible to believe that in these regions, left so destitute by nature, such immense herds of wild animals should be able to exist, and find sufficient nourishment to support life by roaming from place to place. But though food is scarce, they have no fear of encountering their worst enemy, man; and far removed from his bloodthirsty pursuit, they live in peace and liberty.<sup>1</sup>

The characteristic animals belonging to the order of Mammalia, which are most numerous in the Tibetan deserts, are the wild yak (*Poëphagus grunniens*), the white-breasted argali (*Ovis Poli?*),

<sup>1</sup> The rarefied atmosphere apparently has no effect on the Tibetan animals born and bred in it.

the kuku-yaman (*Ovis Nahoar*), the antelopes called orongo and ata (*Antelope Hodgsoni* and *A. picticauda*), the kulan or wild ass (*Equus Kiang*), the grey wolf (*Lupus Chanco*). Besides which are the bear (*Ursus* sp.) the manul (*Felis manul*?),<sup>1</sup> the fox (*Canis vulpes*), the steppe fox (*Canis Corsac*), the hare (*Lepus tolai*), the marmot (*Arctomys* sp.) and two kinds of lagomys (*Lagomys* sp.).

We had already seen some of these animals in Kan-su and Koko-nor: I will, therefore, confine the following remarks to those which are peculiar to Tibet, amongst which the wild yak or long-haired ox of course takes the first place.

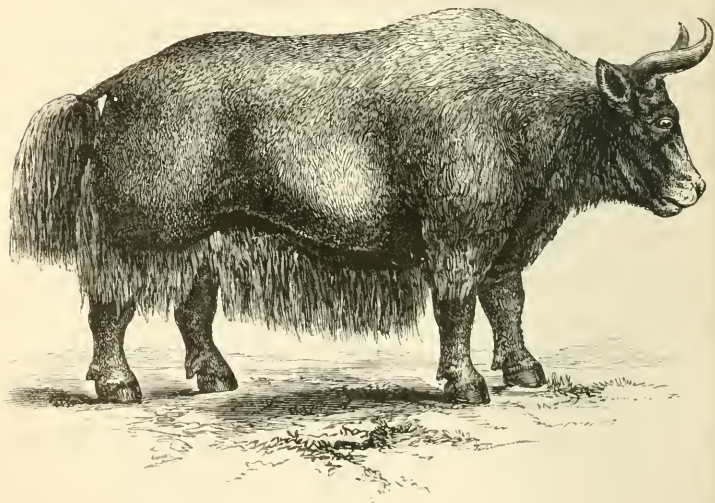
This handsome animal is of extraordinary size and beauty, measuring when full grown eleven feet in length, exclusive of its bushy tail, which is three feet long; its height at the hump is six feet; girth round the centre of the body eleven feet, and its weight ten or eleven hundredweight. The head is adorned with ponderous horns, two feet nine inches long, and one foot four inches in circumference at the root. The body is covered with thick black hair, which in the old males assumes a chestnut colour on the back and upper parts of the sides, and a deep fringe of black hair hangs down from the

<sup>1</sup> We ourselves did not see either the manul or the bear, but we were told about them by some hunters in Tsaidam; and I once saw a footprint in the snow, which the guide declared to be that of the manul. (See Supplementary Note.) Bears were dormant for the winter, but it is said they are very numerous in the Burkhan Buddha and Shuga ranges. Judging from the description given us, they must be of the same species as the bear of Kan-su.



flanks. The muzzle is partly grey, and the younger males have marks of the same colour on the upper part of the body, whilst a narrow silvery grey stripe runs down the centre of the back. The hair of young yaks is much softer than that of the older ones; they are also distinguishable by their smaller size,<sup>1</sup> and by handsomer horns with the points turned up, whereas those of the older males are turned more inwards, and are always covered near the root with dun-coloured wrinkled skin.

The females are much smaller than the males;<sup>2</sup>



THE WILD YAK (*Poïphagus grunniens*. Pall.).

and not nearly so striking in appearance; their horns

<sup>1</sup> A six-year-old bull is only  $9\frac{1}{2}$  feet long, not measuring the tail, and is altogether a smaller animal than the old one.

<sup>2</sup> An old cow-yak is 7 ft. 3 in. without the tail; height at the hump 4 ft. 9 in.; girth round the middle of the body 7 ft.; weight one half or one third that of the male.

are shorter and lighter, the hump smaller, and the tail and flanks not nearly so hairy.

But in order to have a correct idea of the yak, he should be seen in his native state, on vast plains which lie at an elevation of 15,000 feet, seamed with rocky ridges as wild and barren as the surrounding deserts, where the scanty herbage finds little encouragement to grow, owing to the constant cold and the violent storms of wind which rage throughout the greater part of the year. In these inhospitable wastes, in the midst of a desolate nature, yet far removed from pitiless man, the famous long-haired ox roams in unrestricted freedom. This animal, peculiarly characteristic of the highlands of Tibet, is also found further north, and is said to haunt in considerable numbers the mountain ranges of Kan-su near the headwaters of the Tatung and Etsina, the northernmost limit of its distribution. In Kan-su, however, it is becoming extinct, owing to the way in which it is persecuted by the native hunters.

In some physical qualities the yak is singularly inferior to other wild animals. Endowed with enormous strength and an excellent sense of smell, its sight and hearing are defective. Even on a clear day, and on perfectly level ground, it cannot distinguish a man at any great distance, and in misty weather it cannot see him when comparatively near. Again, it requires a very loud noise to attract its attention, but its sense of smell is very keen, and it will scent a man half-a mile to windward.

Its intelligence, like that of the bovine tribe in general, is of a very low order, a fact which is indicated also by the remarkably small size of its brain.

At all other times, except the rutting season, the old bulls<sup>1</sup> keep single, or in small troops of three or five; younger fully grown males (six to ten years of age) occasionally join their older companions, but are more often found in separate troops of ten or twelve, with one or two old bulls among them. The females, young bulls, and calves assemble in enormous herds of several hundred or a thousand head. In such large numbers they have difficulty in finding sufficient food, but the calves are thus best protected from the attacks of wolves.

While browsing they generally scatter over the pasture, but when reposing lie close together.<sup>2</sup> When in danger they form a phalanx, the calves in the centre, some of the full-grown males advancing to reconnoitre. If the cause of the alarm be apparent, and the hunter continue his approach, or if a shot be fired, the whole herd takes to flight at a trot or gallop, raising a cloud of dust, and the sound of their hoofs is heard a long way off. This furious pace, however, does not last long; after a flight of less than half a mile they slacken speed, and halt in the same order as before, i.e. the young in the centre, and the older males outside. If the hunter again approach, the same tactics are repeated, and once alarmed they will flee a long way.

<sup>1</sup> It is said that the wild yak lives to the age of twenty-five.

<sup>2</sup> During a violent storm the yak usually lies down.

Solitary yaks always trot, and never gallop more than a few paces from the spot whence they have been disturbed. They may be easily overtaken by a horseman, at whatever pace they may be going. They climb nimbly over the loftiest and rockiest mountains, and we have seen them in places where no other animal, unless it were the kuku-yaman, could find a footing.

In winter large herds repair to the places where pasturage is most abundant, while solitary bulls or small troops may be seen in all parts. We first saw single animals soon after crossing the Burkhan Buddha, but it was not until we came to the Baian-kara-ula, and particularly on the southern slope of this range, that we saw herds of them, and again, in the valley of the Murui-ussu; previously we had seen two small troops near the river Shuga.

The Mongols told us that in summer, when the tender young grass shoots up, large herds of yaks visit the Burkhan Buddha, roaming from place to place, but always returning for the winter to the banks of the Murui-ussu; old bulls, which dislike making long journeys, remain all the year round at the same place. Indolence is a prominent trait in their character. They feed morning and evening, passing the rest of the day in unbroken repose, either lying or standing; at such times the only sign of life they show is in chewing the cud, otherwise they are as motionless as statues, even keeping the head in one position; and this for hours together.

They always select the coldest spot they can

find for repose, or seek the shelter of some cliff where they can avoid the sun's rays, preferring to lie on the snow, or if there be none, on the bare ground, in which they scrape a hollow with their hoofs.

Their favourite resorts are thickly strewn with their dung, which is the only fuel in these deserts, and without which the journey across Tibet would be impracticable, for there are no bushes of any kind in this country.

The wild yaks require plenty of water, and their numerous tracks and droppings near the warm springs prove the frequency of their visits to them; when water is unobtainable they slake their thirst with snow. But in summer they are at no loss, for besides an abundance of streams and springs, plenty of rain water collects in the pools, by the side of which grass is abundant, and the yak, by no means a dainty feeder, after growing thin during winter, becomes fat again in autumn; this is particularly the case with young bulls and single cows.

The breeding time, which is in September, lasts a whole month, and then the character of the yak undergoes a complete change. At this season the bulls wander day and night over the plains in search of mates, and engage in sanguinary battles with one another. These fights must often be of a desperate kind, judging from the fact that nearly all those that we shot in winter bore the marks of wounds inflicted in these amorous duels, some of the scars being very large; one bull that we shot had one of

its horns broken off close to the head. I leave my readers to imagine how terrific the crash must have been to break off the huge thick horn of one of these animals. What powerful heads to receive and deliver such a blow!

The Mongols said that during the rutting season the bulls constantly uttered a grunting noise; this is most probable, because the domesticated yak grunts like a pig; but we did not hear it once; indeed, at any other season except the pairing time it is very uncommon.

The Mongols say that the calves are born in June, and that a cow will only bear every alternate year.

Gifted with enormous physical strength, the yak in its native deserts, far from the haunts of men, has no dangerous enemies, and dies generally of old age. But he is subject to a kind of mange, called in Mongolian '*homun*,' which spreads over the whole body, and causes the hair to fall off. I cannot say whether they ever recover from this complaint, or whether in time it proves fatal, but I myself shot two yaks which had lost a great deal of hair and were covered with the scab.

Wild yak-shooting is as exciting as it is dangerous, for a wounded beast, especially an old bull, will often attack his pursuer. They are the more formidable owing to the uncertainty of killing them outright, however great both skill and nerve may be. A bullet aimed at the body very seldom wounds



mortally, while one fired from a first-rate rifle fails to penetrate the skull unless it hit the brain-pan, which is small in comparison with the size of the whole head. Under these circumstances it may easily be understood how impossible it is, even at close quarters, to depend upon the sureness of your aim, and how doubtful must be the issue of the contest with this giant of the Tibetan deserts. The only security of the sportsman is in the stupidity and indecision of the yak, which, despite its ferocity, shows an unconquerable fear in the presence of a daring man. Were it not for this, the yak would be a more formidable foe than a tiger, because, as I said before, it is quite in exceptional instances that you can be sure of giving him his death-blow. Your best chance lies in the number of wounds you can inflict, and therefore you must be armed with a breech-loader. Of course I am now merely referring to old bulls; the cows and herds retreat precipitately as soon as the first shot is fired. But old bulls will not always attack the hunter, and often take to their heels even though wounded. In such a case let loose your dogs after them; they will very soon overtake a yak, seize hold of his tail and bring him to bay, and, in his fury, he will assail first one dog then another without noticing you.

It is easier and less dangerous for a mounted sportsman to follow the yak, whether single or in a herd; a good horse will soon come up with the unwieldy brutes. Unfortunately, both our steeds were so starved that they could hardly move their

legs, and consequently we never once had an opportunity of yak-hunting on horseback.

But even on foot it was fine sport! Armed with our breech-loaders, my companion and I would start from our yurta early in the morning in pursuit of the game. The huge beasts might easily be seen through a field-glass, more than a mile off, but one is very liable to take lumps of rock for so many yaks *couchant*. They were so plentiful on the Baiankara-ula and on the banks of the Murui-ussu that we could generally see them grazing within a short distance of our camp.

They are more easily stalked than any other wild animal we know, and so defective are their sight and hearing that you may get within 300 paces of them in the open without difficulty; and single bulls (but not herds) will allow the sportsman to approach nearer still, even though they have noticed him in the distance. Never having been hunted, and confident in their own strength, they show no signs of fear at the approach of a man, but look him steadily in the face, lashing their sides with their bushy tails, or curving them over their backs, to express their anger at being disturbed.

If the hunter continue to advance the yak retires, stopping every now and then to look round in the direction of its pursuer, but when once alarmed by the report of a gun, or wounded, they will run for hours without stopping.

You may occasionally get within fifty paces of

them in the mountains by going against the wind ; in the open I usually stalked them in the following way. When within three hundred paces I would drop on my knees and raise my rifle above my head with the stand inverted, so that the legs might look like horns ; my costume, too, a Siberian shooting coat made of young reindeer skin with the hair outside, helped to deceive the short-sighted animal. In this way I would crawl up to within 200 or even 150 yards, prop my rifle on its rest, place some cartridges in my cap which I laid on the ground beside me, and fire in a kneeling posture. If the first shot took effect the animal would turn and go off, followed by my bullets until it was out of range. An old bull, however, would often charge with horns lowered and tail up, but in a stupid indecisive manner, advancing a few paces, and then stopping and lashing its tail furiously ; a second shot, and it would renew the charge with a similar result, until after being pierced by perhaps a dozen bullets, when it would fall dead, without having come nearer than 100 paces. Sometimes after being hit twice or thrice it would take to flight, but on receiving another wound it would turn and again offer a fair mark for my rifle. Of all the yaks we killed, only two advanced to within 40 paces of us, and these would probably have come to closer quarters had we not killed them. I should think, however, that the nearer they are to the sportsman the more cowardly and undecided they become.

In order to give my readers a better notion of

yak-shooting I will describe how we shot one of those whose skins are in my collection.<sup>1</sup>

One evening we observed three yaks browsing in a defile not far from our yurta. I went towards them at once, and when within 200 paces aimed at the biggest and fired. All three scampered off,<sup>2</sup> but after running less than half a mile they stopped. This time I approached to about 300 paces, and fired again at the same animal as before. His companions bolted, but the huge beast, wounded for the second time, came slowly towards me. I carried my Berdan breechloader, from which I fired shot after shot, apparently producing no more effect on him than if I had been firing at a target. I could see the dust fly off his coat as the bullets struck him, nevertheless he still advanced, only now and then, as he received a more serious wound, recoiling a few paces. When he got within about 150 paces of the place where I stood, my ammunition was spent, so, leaving one cartridge in my gun in case of emergency, I ran back to camp for a fresh supply, as fast as my legs would carry me. My companion and one of the Cossacks now joined me, and we all three proceeded to the spot where I had left the yak. Here we found him prostrate on the ground, giving no signs of life except by the movement of his head, adorned with a splendid pair of horns.

<sup>1</sup> We brought home with us two bull-yak skins. Each, when dried, weighed with the horns nearly  $2\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. ; the raw hide, which is half an inch thick on the head and neck, weighs with the horns upwards of 3 cwt. 24 lbs.

<sup>2</sup> When in company the wild yak seldom charges.

It had now become dusk, and we could not see to aim. We fired a volley at one hundred yards; in a moment he was on his feet and charging us. We now continued to pepper him from all three rifles, but none the less did he still come on. A second volley, and he flourished his tail in the air and was off; not far, however, for after running 100 paces he stopped. It was now so dark that I determined to waste no more ammunition, feeling confident that he would succumb from his wounds during the night. The following morning, true enough, there he lay quite dead. We counted thirteen bullets in his body and three in his head, one having fractured the skull, which was covered with an integument half an inch thick. On another occasion I was clambering over the mountains when I suddenly caught sight of three yaks lying down; they had not observed me as I was concealed by a rock. I immediately took deliberate aim and fired. All three jumped up and seemed at a loss to know what was the matter; my second bullet killed the one I had first fired at outright. His two companions remained beside him, as usual swishing their tails. My third shot was equally successful in breaking the leg of a second, compelling him to remain stationary. I now directed my fire at the last of the trio, but he was not to be despatched so easily. After the first shot he charged, but after advancing only ten paces in my direction, began to waver. A second bullet caused him to renew the charge, and at last, when forty paces off, I killed him with my

seventh shot. I now had no difficulty in finishing the one with the broken leg, and thus secured three of these huge beasts in a few minutes without stirring from my place. On examining the slain animals more closely, I found that all seven bullets fired at the one which charged had lodged in his chest, and stuck there like a row of buttons. Knowing with what force a rifle will project a bullet at nearly point-blank range, I was amazed at the prodigious strength displayed by this animal in resisting seven such tremendous blows.

After great experience in yak-shooting I am convinced that one cannot do better than aim behind the shoulder of the left side if possible, for the bullet will go right through and lodge underneath the skin of the opposite side after touching some vital part. But a rifle bullet of small calibre, such as the Berdan, even if it touch the heart, does not of necessity instantaneously kill an old bull, who will often run for several minutes after receiving such a wound. If you aim at the head you are never certain of killing even at short ranges, and if your bullet strike obliquely, although of larger calibre,<sup>1</sup> it will not penetrate the skull. It was always my intention that, if I should ever be hard pressed by one of these animals, I would cripple him by firing at the legs.

Cows and young bulls are also exceedingly difficult to kill for another reason, viz. that they are always in troops, and you cannot single one out of

<sup>1</sup> I had a Lancaster rifle which carried a bullet of No. 16 calibre.



the herd to fire at several times. They are also more wary and difficult to stalk than solitary bulls. Out of a total of thirty-two yaks, shot by my companion and myself during our expedition in Tibet, only three were cows. The Mongols are terribly afraid of the wild yak, and we were told that if a caravan chance to come upon one lying down in a narrow defile, they will halt and not venture to continue their journey till the animal has risen. The Mongols of Tsaidam, however, often hunt the wild yak, their chief inducement being the large quantity of meat which it yields; gluttony overcoming their fears. The hunters, in parties of ten, proceed to the haunts of this animal beyond the Shuga river; afraid to attack him in the open, they get behind some ambush and deliver a volley, concealing themselves till the result of their fire has been ascertained. The wounded beast, after looking in vain for the aggressor, makes off, followed by the hunters at a respectful distance, and if severely wounded the next day he will be found dead. Of course it rarely happens that a yak is killed on the spot by a bullet fired from one of their wretched matchlocks. It sometimes happens that after being wounded in the way we have described, the infuriated beast encounters the horses of his pursuers, and gores them terribly with his formidable horns. Besides eating the yak beef, Mongols use the heart and blood of this animal, taken internally, for medicinal purposes; the hides are sent to Tonkir, and ropes are spun from the long hair of the tail and flanks.

A young fat bull or a heifer is excellent eating, though inferior to the domesticated breed (*sarlok*); but the flesh of old bulls is intolerably tough.

We left the greater number of those we shot untouched, having no use for the meat in Tibet. The carcasses soon froze into a solid mass, the tough hide resisting the vultures and wolves. On our way back from the Blue River we saw them lying exactly as we had left them.

Another remarkable animal of Northern Tibet is the *white-breasted argali* (*Ovis Poli*?), of equal



OVIS POLI after an engraving in Severtsoff's 'Turkestanskiya Jivotniya'.

size with its Mongolian congener, but differing from it in the horns, and in the white breast, which has a frill of long hairs. We first saw these sheep beyond the Burkhan Buddha, and afterwards as we penetrated farther into the country, but they are not common. The Mongols assured us that they are to be found in the South Koko-nor range, and in the Kan-su mountains near the sources of the

Etsina, but we could not discover if this were precisely the same breed. My impression, however, is that it is the same, and that the Tibetan species is also a native of Kan-su and Koko-nor.

Its habits are similar to those of the Mongolian argali. It is generally found in the more elevated plateaux, avoiding the steep and rugged mountains, and keeping to the outer slopes and hills; in Northern Tibet it may frequently be seen pasturing along with kulans and antelope in the ravines.

The senses of the *argali* are keener than those of any other animal in Tibet, and it is an exceedingly wary animal, although hardly ever hunted; the Mongols finding it useless to attempt shooting them with their matchlocks. They collect in flocks of five to fifteen, and occasionally twenty-five to thirty, accompanied by one, two, or three rams, which appear to guide and protect the ewes; the latter relying on their leaders to warn them of danger and conduct them to a place of safety. When alarmed they run for a few hundred yards and wheel round; the leader will then often climb the nearest hill or rock, in order to reconnoitre the surrounding country. In this position the ram forms a fine picture, his graceful figure standing well out from the rocks, and his snow-white breast glistening in the sun.

I often asked myself which was the finer beast of the two, the yak or the argali; and the best answer I could make was, that each of these animals was perfect in its way. The mighty size of the yak, his ponderous horns and long fringe of hair almost

touching the ground, his bushy tail and jet black colour, render him a magnificent specimen of the brute creation ! On the other hand, the gracefulness of the argali, his great curving horns, snowy breast, and proud bearing, entitled him to rank among the noblest of creatures in these deserts. In the early morning the argalis graze on the mountains, or in the valleys, but no sooner is the sun up than they seek some spot for repose, sequestered, yet commanding a view all round. Here they scrape a convenient resting place for themselves in the clay, and lie down for several hours. When a flock is reposing in this way, the rams station themselves a little to one side and keep watch ; a herd consisting entirely of rams lies close together, their heads turned outwards in different directions. Indeed they are ever vigilant and wary, and the hunter who would approach them must note the direction of the wind and stalk them very carefully. Even with the utmost caution a great deal will still depend on the accuracy of his aim and the trueness of his rifle ; for under the most favourable circumstances he cannot expect to get within 200 paces. In all our shooting excursions in Tibet we only killed eight argalis, of which three were full-grown rams.

The Mongols told us that the breeding season was late in the autumn. When we arrived in Tibet in the beginning of December it was over, and the rams were behaving peaceably, but while it lasts they have furious fights, traces of which may be seen in the numbers of broken horns strewn about in all direc-

tions. According to the same authority the ewes drop their young in June,<sup>1</sup> and the horns of old rams curve so much downwards and forwards as to prevent them from feeding, and thus sometimes cause their death by starvation. I will not vouch for the truth of this statement, and can only say that in Northern Tibet I rarely saw one of their skulls.

Another characteristic animal of the Tibetan highlands is the antelope, called by the Mongols and Tangutans *orongo* (*Antelope Hodgson*). The male is remarkably handsome; in size no bigger than a dzeren, with a beautifully shaped body set on long, slender legs, and with elegant black horns (twenty-three inches long) standing vertically above the head, slightly curved, and annulated on the anterior surface. In winter the hair on the upper part and sides of the muzzle, the sides of the breast, and fore parts of the legs are black, the neck, middle of the breast, stomach, and rump white, the back dun-coloured.<sup>2</sup> When seen at a distance it appears white. The female is much smaller than the male, and has no horns or black marks on the body. We first saw the orongo after crossing the Burkhan Buddha range, beyond which it is distributed towards the south as far as the Tang-la mountains. It loves the valleys and rolling plains, and, after the yak, is the most numerous of the animals of Northern Tibet. Like the kulan and the yak it requires water, and

<sup>1</sup> The argali of Mongolia breeds in August, and the young are dropped in March.

In summer its hair is said to be of a reddish colour like that of dzeren.

selects those parts of the desert where rivers and springs abound.

It is found in small herds from five to twenty, or forty head, rarely collecting in large troops of several hundred, and this only where the pasturage is good and plentiful. Though a few of the old bucks, usually accompanying every herd, are more cautious and experienced, the orongos generally are not wary in their habits. In their flight the males follow the herd as though to prevent straggling; whilst with the dzerens and kara-sultas this order is reversed. When in motion, either leisurely or at full speed, the orongo holds its horns erect, which adds greatly to its appearance. When trotting—its usual pace—the legs move so quickly that at a distance they are invisible, and dogs or wolves are soon left behind.

We arrived in Tibet during the breeding season of these animals, which begins late in November and lasts a month. At this time the full-grown males<sup>1</sup> are in a most excited state, taking little food and soon losing the fat which they had gained during summer. The buck soon forms his harem of ten to twenty wives, and these he jealously guards lest any of them should fall into the power of a rival. No sooner does he see an adversary approaching than he, the lawful lord of the herd, rushes to the encounter with head lowered, uttering short deep bleats. The combat is fierce, and the long sharp

<sup>1</sup> The young bucks, with small horns, and in colour exactly resembling the does, appear not to take part in this internecine warfare, but hold themselves aloof in separate herds with the does, during the rutting season.



horns inflict terrible wounds, often causing the death of both antagonists. Should one feel his strength ebbing, he takes to flight pursued by his enemy, then suddenly wheeling round receives the latter on his horns. As a proof of the fury with which they fight, I remember shooting one of the combatants, who to my surprise continued the fight for several minutes after he had received his death-wound, and then suddenly expired. If a doe chance to stray from the herd, the buck immediately gives chase, and, bleating as he goes, tries to drive her back again. While his attention is thus engaged the others give him the slip, and pursuing first one, then another, he often loses his whole harem. At last, deserted by all, he gives vent to his fury and disgust by striking the ground with his hoofs, curving his tail, lowering his horns and bleating defiance at his compeers. From morning until evening these scenes are constantly occurring, and there appears to be no bond of union between the male antelope and his does; to-day they consort with one buck, to-morrow with another.

The rutting season over, the orongos again live peaceably with one another; the males and females often collecting in separate herds. We saw a troop of about 300 does in February in the valley of the Shuga; the young are dropped in July.

The orongo is fearless and will let the hunter openly approach within 300 yards, or even nearer. The report of fire-arms or the whistle of a bullet does not alarm it; it only shows surprise by walking

quietly away, frequently stopping to look at the hunter. Like other antelope it is extremely tenacious of life and will run a long way although wounded.<sup>1</sup>

They are not difficult to shoot, for besides showing no fear they haunt rocky defiles in the mountains, where they may be easily stalked. I have fired as many as one to two hundred shots at them in the course of the day, my bag of course varying a good deal with my luck in the long shots.

The orongo is held sacred by Mongols and Tangutans, and lamas will not touch the meat, which by the way is excellent, particularly in autumn when the animal is fat. The blood is said to possess medicinal virtues, and the horns are used in charlatanism: Mongols tell fortunes and predict future events by the rings on these, and they also serve to mark out the burial places, or more commonly the circles within which the bodies of deceased lamas are exposed: these horns are carried away in large numbers by pilgrims returning from Tibet, and are sold at high prices. Mongols tell you that a whip-handle made from one will in the hands of the rider prevent his steed from tiring.

Another prevalent superstition is, that the orongo has only one horn growing vertically from the centre of the head. In Kan-su and Koko-nor we were told that unicorns were rare, one or two in a thousand;

<sup>1</sup> In all the orongo killed by us, we found under the skin of the posterior a number of the larvæ of the gadfly, which we found on no other animal of Northern Tibet.

but the Mongols in Tsaidam, who are perfectly well acquainted with the orongo, deny entirely the existence there of a one-horned antelope, though admitting that it might be found in South-western Tibet. Had we gone farther we should probably have heard that it was only to be found in India, and so on till we arrived at the one-horned rhinoceros!

Another antelope native to Northern Tibet, and called by the Mongols *ata-dzeren*, i.e. little antelope (*Antelope picticauda*), is remarkable for its diminutive size. The male is three feet four inches long (including the bend of the neck), two feet four inches high, and only weighs thirty-six pounds; the horns are long and slightly curved, with the points turned backwards, and numerous small notches in front. The prevailing colour is a dusky grey, the rump and belly white, bordered behind and on the flanks by a narrow yellow stripe. We saw this animal near the head waters of the Tatum-gol, and apparently the same species on ascending the high lands of Kan-su in the uneven plain beyond the border range.<sup>1</sup>

Like the orongo it frequents elevated plains, preferring, however, the valleys in the mountains where water is abundant. Yet its habits are very different from the orongo's, and it is without exception the most graceful and the swiftest of the antelopes of Mongolia and Northern Tibet. It generally moves in small herds of five or seven (seldom as many as twenty), though solitary males are often seen. It

<sup>1</sup> These are never found in Koko-nor and Tsaidam.

is extremely wary, specially in those districts where it has learnt to fear man ; on the banks of the Muruissu it is a little less timid. Its swiftness is amazing ; it bounds along like an india-rubber ball, and when startled seems absolutely to fly.

During their breeding season, which begins towards the close of December and lasts a month, the males chase one another from their herds, but we never saw them fighting like the orongo, nor did we ever hear them utter any sound other than a snort (like that of the kara-sulta) on seeing a man ; and the does when startled give a short loud cry very similar to that of the young pygarg. They scrape themselves trenches a foot deep, in which they lie at night (and probably during the day), and in these we found heaps of their droppings.

This little antelope is more difficult to shoot than the orongo, besides being much scarcer and extremely tenacious of life. Its ashy-grey colour, exactly resembling the soil, renders it almost invisible at a distance, and it is only by its conspicuous white rump, and its snort, that you may discover its presence. By twilight it sees badly, and suffers the hunter to approach quite close. In conclusion, we may remark that both species are swift runners over smooth ice.

The only beasts of prey that we saw in Northern Tibet were wolves and steppe-foxes, both in great numbers.

The Tibetan wolf (*Lupus Chanco*) is about the size of the common wolf (from which it only differs

in its yellowish-white colour),<sup>1</sup> and is most probably identical with the species we heard the Mongols in Kan-su call *tsobr*; but whereas it is rare in the latter country, in Northern Tibet it is very common, of course owing to the unpeopled nature of this country and the abundance of animals upon which it can prey. Here it ranges over the plains in large packs, and attacks the yak, the orongo, and the rest. Tibetan wolves are savage and impudent, but are more cowardly and less powerful than the grey species. Our dogs fought with them, and drove them away every night. They frequently attempted, in their nocturnal visits to our *yurta*, to carry off things by stealth; we could leave no dead game exposed (except yak) without its being instantly gnawed or devoured by these ravenous brutes. My companion on one occasion shot four orongo about two miles from camp, whither he went for assistance, and on returning with a camel to bring them in, found that they had been devoured in his absence.

At one place in the valley of the Shuga we made a *cache* among some loose rocks, hiding our butter there; but these horrid brutes scented it, turned up the heavy stones and devoured the store we had prepared for our return journey, actually swallowing the woollen cloth in which it was wrapped! On another occasion I left my fowling-piece in the mountains with some prepared tin cartridge cases; the following day on going to fetch it, I could find neither gun nor cartridges, which had been dragged away by

<sup>1</sup> There are no grey wolves in Tibet, although plentiful in Tsaidam.

these wolves ; the gun was lying a little distance off with one barrel exploded, the trigger having evidently struck against a rock as they hauled it along ; the cartridges were completely gone. Yet with all his impudence this wolf is so wary that he will never allow a man to come near him during the day, and recourse must be had to artifice to kill him ; for such is his tenacity of life, that unless shot through a vital part he will escape. We lost a great deal of time in trying to secure one of their skins, and at last I succeeded in killing one by lying in ambush behind the carcase of a kulan.

We tried watching at night by the side of a slain yak, but although we wounded several, they always managed to get away. In Northern Tibet, had we possessed strychnine or traps, we might have killed any number of them.

Their breeding season is January, when they are never more than ten or fifteen in a pack. They utter a short sharp bark like a dog.

The fox is rare in Northern Tibet, but the closely-allied steppe-fox (*Canis Corsac*), called by the Mongols *kiarsa*, is more common.

This sagacious animal is distributed over the whole of Mongolia, Kan-su, Koko-nor, and Tsaidam, but is most numerous on the plains round Koko-nor, where it finds an abundance of marmots,—its chief food.

Owing to its excessive wariness I was unable to study its habits. On seeing a man a long way off, it



disappears instantaneously, either by taking to flight or by crouching on the ground, a manœuvre frequently practised during the breeding season, which lasts from the end of January to the end of February. During this time their hideous cry may be heard night and morning, closely resembling the hooting of an owl. The corsac lives in burrows of its own construction. The Mongols and Tangutans catch it by setting traps at the entrances of these holes.

Turning from the mammalia of Northern Tibet to the birds, we find a general deficiency of the latter. It was, to be sure, mid-winter when we were there, and the summer birds had all flown away ; but at the best of times no great variety can be expected in this country, so variable and unfavourable are its physical conditions. During our two and a half months' stay here we saw but twenty-nine kinds, only one of which (*Cinclus* sp.) was new ; the others we had seen in Kan-su and Koko-nor. The few we saw in Northern Tibet were mostly on the border, north of the Shuga, and between this river and the Murui-ussu they were very scarce.

The most common birds of Northern Tibet are : vultures (*Vultur monachus*, *Gyps nivicola*), lammergeiers (*Gypaëtos barbatus*), and crows (*Corvus corax*), all which appear as soon as an animal is slain ; red-legged crows (*Fregilus graculus*), which collect in vast flocks during winter ; sandgrouse (*Syrrhaptes Tibetanus*), larks (*Meclanocorypha maxima*, *Alauda albigula*), linnets (*Linota brevirostra*), the last named probably only wintering here ; also the *Podoces hu-*

*milis* and the *Montifringilla* (sp.) so numerous in Koko-nor.

After this long digression on the fauna of Northern Tibet, I resume my narrative.

As I mentioned in the last chapter, we hired a guide in Tsaidam, and, accompanied by him, started for the Burkhan Buddha. In order to lighten as much as possible the loads of our camels, which carry with great difficulty the smallest pack over these enormous elevations, we left some of our supplies of barley-meal and flour in Tsaidam, and buried our spare ammunition under some stones near the summit of the Burkhan Buddha pass. Notwithstanding this our packs, filled as they were with skins of animals, were quite heavy enough, and we were compelled to bury in the sand two yak skins obtained for our collection, only taking them with us on our way back.

These two months and a half<sup>1</sup> in Northern Tibet were the most arduous of the whole of the expedition. Winter had set in with severe frosts and storms, and the want of even the bare necessaries of life, with other privations, reduced our strength; so that it became a hard struggle for life, and nothing but a consciousness of the scientific importance of our labours inspired us with strength and energy to carry out the task we had undertaken.

For better protection against the cold we took the yurta given us by the uncle of the Prince of Koko-nor; and if it gave us a great deal of additional trouble,

<sup>1</sup> Exactly eighty days from December 5, 1872, to February 22, 1873.

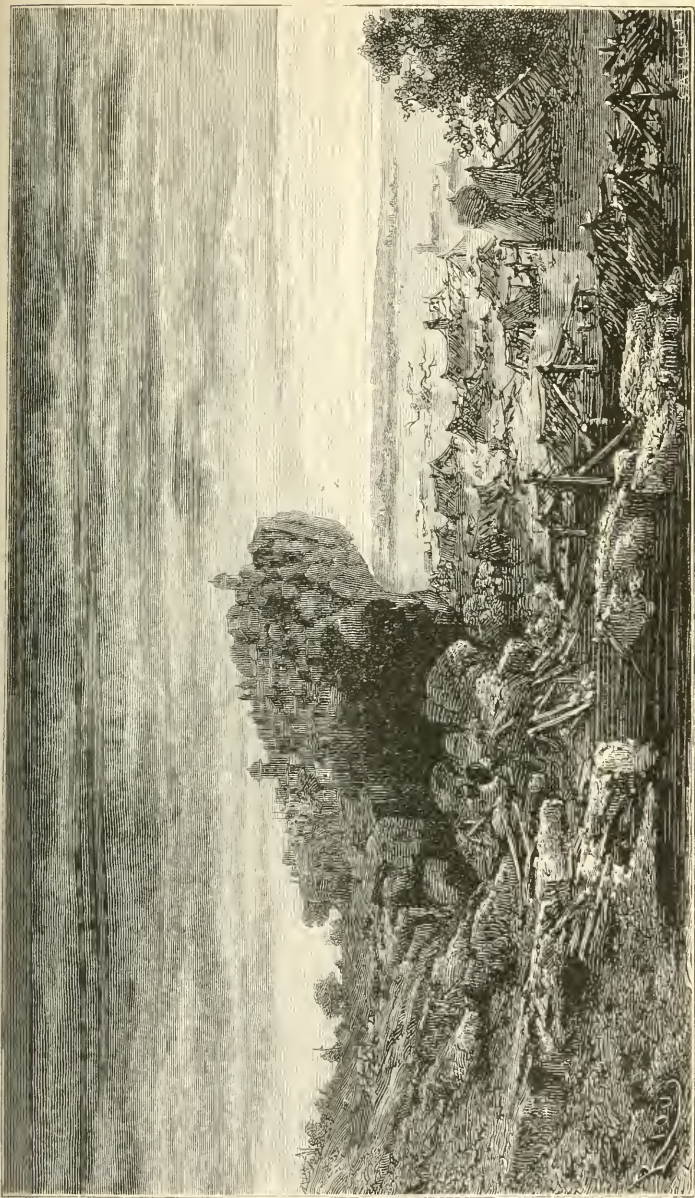
what with pitching, taking to pieces and packing, still it was a far better shelter against storms and cold than the ordinary tent.

Its dimensions were these : diameter, 11 feet ; height from the ground to the aperture in the roof, 9 feet ; the entrance was by an opening in the side, 3 feet square, through which we crept in and out ; the sides and roof were covered with three layers of felt, besides which we lined the sides with orongo skins.

The interior did not admit of much comfort : here stood two boxes (containing journals, instruments, &c.) besides felts for sleeping upon, whilst our arms were ranged round the sides, and an iron grate stood in the centre, in which argols were continually burning during the day, to cook our food and afford us some warmth. Towards evening, and particularly after undressing for the night, sundry articles of apparel might be seen suspended from the lattice woodwork of the sides, and from the rafters supporting the roof.

Such was our home during the whole of our arduous winter journey in Tibet. Two hours before daybreak every morning we rose, lighted the argols, and boiled our brick-tea, which, mixed with some barley-meal, served for our breakfast ; sometimes for a change we baked either *zaturan*<sup>1</sup> or wheaten cakes in the hot argol ashes. As soon as the day dawned

<sup>1</sup> 'Zaturan' is a favourite dish of the Cossacks of Trans-Baikalia and the Amur country. It consist of brick-tea, into which flour baked with butter and salt is added, the mess tasting much like soap.



VILLAGE ON THE SHORE OF LAKE BAIKAL (EASTERN SIBERIA) DESTROYED BY AN EARTHQUAKE.



we made preparations for the march, by taking the yurta to pieces and packing it with the other baggage on the camels. All this occupied a good hour and a half, so that by the time we were ready to start we already felt tired. Sometimes it was so cold, and the wind was so keen, that we could not sit on horse-back, yet the exertion of walking, encumbered as we were with some eighteen pounds' weight in the shape of gun and ammunition, was often too much for our strength at that terrible elevation, where every additional pound told, and we constantly suffered from those distressing symptoms caused by the extreme rarefaction of the atmosphere.

Our warm clothing, too, was so worn out by two years' use as to be a most ineffectual protection against the cold; our fur coats and trowsers being in tatters. As for boots we had none, and were reduced to sewing bits of yak-hide to old leggings, as a covering for our feet in the coldest weather.

Frequently, towards midday, the wind would increase to the violence of a hurricane, filling the air with sand and dust, and making further progress impossible while it lasted; and we would be compelled to halt, although we had gone only six or seven miles. But even in the finest weather a march of twelve miles on those lofty plains is more exhausting to the strength than double that distance at a lower elevation.

On arriving at the halting place our first duty was to unload the camels and set up the yurta, which took us another hour; the next was to collect



argols, break ice for water, and then we had to wait, hungry and tired, till the water boiled. How we used to relish the nasty compound of butter and barley-meal, glad enough even to get that!

After this meal my companion and I would start off on a shooting expedition, weather of course permitting, or I would write up my diary while the Cossacks cooked the dinner. Now the axe was again required to break the ice and chop the frozen meat before putting them into the pot, whilst that again had to be tinkered with raw hide and barley-meal paste. This utensil, which served the double purpose of saucepan and tea-kettle, had, from constant use, worn into holes, and these had to be mended every day. It was not till afterwards that we succeeded in patching it more effectually with the copper cartridge cases of our Berdan rifle.

Dinner was ready at six or seven P.M., and was a sumptuous repast, for we had now enough meat and to spare; indeed we might have supplied a regiment with the game we killed. Unfortunately, it was often frozen so hard that we could scarcely thaw enough for our soup. Moreover, the argols burnt so badly and gave out so little heat at this great elevation, and water boiled at such a low temperature ( $185^{\circ}$  Fahr.),<sup>1</sup> that it was difficult to cook the meat properly.

After this meal, which was dinner and supper combined, we had more work to do: the marshes and streams being all, with a few exceptions, ice to

<sup>1</sup> The boiling point of water at sea-level is  $212^{\circ}$  Fahr.—M.

the bottom, we had every day to melt two buckets full of water for our horses. Then followed the most tedious time of all, the long winter's night! One would have supposed that after the day's work we should have passed it quietly and slept soundly; but this was far from being the case. Our fatigue was of a more than ordinary kind, and we felt a prostration of the whole system which seemed to render sound sleep impossible. The dry rarefied air produced a choking sensation like a heavy nightmare, and our lips and mouths became parched. Our beds consisted of pieces of dusty felt of a single fold, laid on the frozen ground; on these we lay for ten consecutive hours, but unable to enjoy a really good night's rest, and so to forget for a time the hardships which encompassed us.

The days devoted to sport passed more pleasantly, but cold and wind often interfered with our shooting excursions, and sometimes quite put a stop to them. The wind blew every day, and even if not always with the force of a gale it was always sufficient to impede our movements; for, to say nothing of the cold, which obliged us to don ear-protectors, warm gloves, and fur coats, to face the wind<sup>1</sup> would fill our eyes with tears, thus seriously affecting the rapidity and accuracy of our fire. Our hands, too, became so benumbed that we had to rub them before placing a cartridge in the chamber of a breech-loader, and the metal contracted so that we had to

<sup>1</sup> When we were shooting we were always going against the wind to prevent the game from scenting us.

use ramrods to get the empty cartridge cases out of the Snider rifle. With the Berdan this never occurred, but its locks were injured by the cold and dust, and the cartridge often missed fire, only going off after a second blow of the hammer.

The climate of Northern Tibet during December and January is marked by the prevalence of severe frost, dearth of snow, and dust-storms.

Although in more southern latitudes than the warmest parts of Europe, we were often reminded here of the extreme north. At night the thermometer descended to  $-24^{\circ}$  Fahr.,<sup>1</sup> occasionally when it was cloudy rising to  $10^{\circ}$  Fahr. However, as soon as the sun was high up in the heavens the mercury rapidly rose, and on four days stood above freezing point (or  $32^{\circ}$  Fahr.) at midday.

But little snow fell,<sup>2</sup> and what there was in fine flakes, and as dry as dust; occasionally covering the surface an inch deep, but only for a short time, and vanishing with the next gale, when it became mixed up with the sand, and melted by the sun. It seldom happens during winter that these deserts are quite white,<sup>3</sup> and even on the summits of high mountains the snow only lies in small patches on the northern slopes. The dust-storms which were so frequent invariably came from the west or north-west, and

<sup>1</sup> And probably even lower, for we had no minimum thermometer, ours being broken, so we took the night temperature at sunrise.

<sup>2</sup> In December snow fell on four days, in January on eleven.

<sup>3</sup> It is said that in some years a large quantity of snow falls. However, this can hardly be the case, because if so, all the herbivorous animals of these regions would die for want of food.

always occurred in the daytime. They would begin with a moderate gale, gradually increasing in violence until midday, when they would continue to rage like a hurricane till sunset. By degrees the sky assumed a dust colour, growing thicker and thicker until the sun shone dimly, and at length was quite obscured from sight. Sand and small stones were carried through the air like hail or snow. We could neither open our eyes in the face of the wind, nor draw breath, and so charged was the air with fine dust that it could hardly pass into the lungs, and camels let loose to graze would forget their hunger and throw themselves on the ground.

But while the storm lasted, the thermometer rose to 32° Fahr., or even higher, a phenomenon which may be explained by the rapid passage through the air of the sand and dust previously warmed by the sun. Towards sunset it suddenly became calm, the dust remaining suspended in the atmosphere, often till the following morning, when a light wind had been stirring during the night.

Our travelling companion and guide in Northern Tibet was a Mongol, by name Chutun-dzamba; he was a *zanghin*, or officer of low grade, fifty-eight years of age, and had been nine times to Lhasa with caravans, so that he was well acquainted with the road. He was one of the most intelligent men in Tsaidam, and gave us a good deal of information on the countries through which we were travelling; and he would probably have imparted more if our interpreter had been better up to his work.

Like all Mongols, he was a dreadful hypocrite, and lazy to a degree. Once on his camel he would never cease muttering his prayers through the march, and would not dismount to walk for any consideration, even in the coldest weather, or on the steep descents and in other dangerous places, where it would have been safer to have tried the strength of the ice. A casual observer might have taken him for a plucky fellow, but the fact was that his excessive laziness overcame his fear.

Chutun-dzamba, however, took good care of himself, and laid in a supply of medicines for the road, with which he doctored himself daily for some imaginary complaint. He was really ill several times, but this was entirely owing to the extraordinary quantity of meat he had eaten. During dinner he ranged round him plates of frozen yak-dung, on which he placed junks of hot meat to cool, and which, as these melted, adhered to the meat, and must truly have added a fine flavour to his viands, judging from the relish with which he ate! His behaviour after dinner was equally indelicate, and in the evenings he employed himself industriously in the destruction of the parasitical insects which swarmed in his habiliments.

Another trait in his character was the passion he had for picking up and hiding in his bag all sorts of odds and ends and rubbish which we had thrown away. Thus, an old bit of leather or tin, a spoilt steel nib, a scrap of paper, empty cartridge cases, all would find their way into his travelling bag, and at

last we were obliged to throw anything away by stealth, to avoid its attracting the attention of this monomaniac.

After passing the low Baian-kara-ula<sup>1</sup> range, at length, on January 22, 1873, we reached the banks of the Yangtse-kiang or Blue River, called by the Mongols in its upper course the Murui-ussu, and by the Tangutans Di-chu.<sup>2</sup> This river rises in the Tang-la mountains, and after passing through the highlands of Northern Tibet, pursues its course to the boundaries of China Proper, where it soon swells into a mighty stream.<sup>3</sup> The current of the Murui-ussu is extremely rapid, and the width of its channel at the spot where we saw it, i.e. at its confluence with the Napchitai-ulan-muren, is 750 feet; but the whole river-bed from bank to bank is upwards of a mile wide and, as our guide assured us, is entirely covered with water during the rainy season in summer, when it sometimes even overflows the banks. In autumn, after the floods have subsided, the Murui-ussu is fordable, but only in a few places.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The pass over the Baian-kara-ula is very gradual and not high; it may even be entirely avoided by following the valley of the Napchitai-ulan-muren, as we did; Huc, however, describes it as an enormous range, dreadfully difficult to cross. The père declares that in certain places he was obliged to hold on to the tail of his horse and drive it before him up the steep incline.—*Souvenirs d'un Voyage, &c.*, ii. 216–218.

<sup>2</sup> The latter name signifies 'cows' river,' probably from the abundance of wild yak. The translation of the Mongol name is 'river-water,' 'mur' being an abbreviation of 'muren,' i.e. river, and 'ussu' meaning water. [I should greatly doubt this bit of etymology.—Y.]

<sup>3</sup> See Supplementary Note.

<sup>4</sup> The first ford, in ascending the river from the confluence of the Napchitai-ulan-muren, is 20 miles distant.



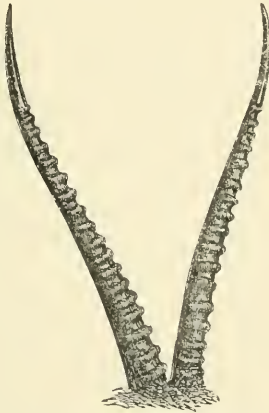
The breadth of the valley is less than a mile and a half, and in some places the mountains on either side narrow it even more. The Tibetan road ascends the river for a ten days' march to its sources in the Tang-la mountains.<sup>1</sup> Here, too, there is no population, with the exception of 500 Tangutans, who are encamped about 100 miles above the mouth of the Napchitai-ulan-muren. About 230 miles lower down there is a large agricultural population, and the climate is said to be warmer, so that probably the elevation of the country is not so great in those parts.

The banks of the Blue River were the limit of our wanderings in Inner Asia. Although we were only twenty-seven days' journey, i.e. about 500 miles from Lhasa, that goal was beyond our reach. The frightful difficulties of the Tibetan deserts had so completely exhausted our animals that three of our eleven camels had died, and the rest could scarcely move. Our pecuniary resources, too, were entirely expended, and after exchanging some camels for the return journey to Tsaidam, we had only five lans (27*s.* 6*d.*) left, with many hundred miles of road before us! Under these circumstances, we could not imperil the results already obtained by our journey, and we resolved to return to Koko-nor and Kan-su, to pass the spring there, and then to continue our journey to Ala-shan by the road we

<sup>1</sup> All caravans with camels take this road: there is another more direct road practicable for yaks, without ascending the Murui-ussu, but it crosses many steep and lofty ranges.

had come, where we should have no need for a guide.

Although this decision had been formed some time previously, it was not the less with sorrowful hearts that we bade farewell to the banks of the Yangtse-kiang. For well we knew that neither nature nor man stood in our way, and that the want of funds was the only obstacle to our reaching the capital of Tibet.



HORNS OF THE ORONGO-ANTELOPE

## CHAPTER VII.

SPRING ON LAKE KOKO-NOR AND AMONG THE KAN-SU  
MOUNTAINS.

Return to Tsaidam—Influence of its warmer climate—Spring in Tsaidam—Migratory birds—Spring in Koko-nor—Mirages—Shooting excursions—Fishing—Thaw on lake—Scarcity of birds—Departure for Chobsen—Equipment of caravan—Sale of revolvers—Humidity of Kan-su—Slippery mountain paths—Fording the Tatung-gol—Encounter with ‘Kotens’—First signs of spring—Night frosts—Gales—Atmospheric phenomena—Tardy vegetation—The great rock-partridge (*hailik*)—The snow-vulture; how to shoot it—Heavy snowfall—May in Kan-su—The long-eared pheasant (*Crossoptilon auritum*)—The marmot (*Arctomys robustus*)—The bear (*kung-guessu*)—Extraordinary reports concerning it—We see one—It escapes—Straitened finances—Last weeks in Kan-su—Its variable climate—Departure.

ABOUT the middle of February our wanderings through Northern Tibet terminated, and we returned to the plains of Tsaidam. The contrast between its climate and that of the lofty plateau of Tibet was so marked that in descending the Burkhan Buddha we felt it grow warmer at every step.

The influence of the warmth of these plains on the neighbouring highlands is apparent as far south as the Shuga range; for we had hardly recrossed this, and commenced the descent of its northern side, when the climate became sensibly milder. Though the night frosts continued with their former intensity (— 18° Fahr.), during the day the sun was powerful,

and on the 17th February we saw the first insects on the Tibetan side of the Burkhan Buddha. On our outward journey to the Murui-ussu the weather had been fine, and in the daytime warm, as far as the Shuga range, after crossing which and the Uyan-Karza rivulet, it became very cold and stormy.

Spring in Tsaidam begins early and is of a truly continental character. In the end of February the frosts at night still carried the cold down to  $-4^{\circ}$  Fahr., whilst in the day the temperature in the shade was  $59^{\circ}$  Fahr., and the ice began rapidly thawing under the influence of the sun; on the 22d of the month the first to appear among migratory birds was the widgeon, followed on the 23th by the mallard;<sup>1</sup> and the day after the goosander (*Mergus merganser*), the red-breasted thrush (*Turdus ruficollis*), and swans (*Cygnus musicus*) arrived: in the mornings were heard the notes of small birds and the call of the pheasant; in fact, Spring asserted her right to reign.

But all these harbingers of the beneficent season were again suddenly checked by the recurrence of cold weather, accompanied by snow,<sup>2</sup> and by gales of wind, generally from the west, filling the air with clouds of fine dust raised from the salt marshes, which hung like vapour over everything long after the storm had subsided. Frosts and cold winds, too,

<sup>1</sup> This duck sometimes winters in Tsaidam in the unfrozen marshes fed by springs.

<sup>2</sup> In the latter end of February snow fell in Tsaidam (in thick flakes, not in dry fine dust as in Tibet) four times, and although covering the ground an inch or two in thickness, soon thawed in the sun.

so materially retarded vegetation that its aspect differed very little at the end of the month from that which it had presented at the beginning. Although by the second week in March thirteen kinds of birds<sup>1</sup> had made their appearance, it was only singly or in small numbers; and how rapid must their flight have been over the terribly cold deserts of Northern Tibet, where they could have procured neither food nor water!

We arrived on the shores of Lake Koko-nor in the middle of March and found the season as backward as it had been in Tsaidam a month earlier. The lake was entirely frozen over, and even the rapid Pouhain-gol was only here and there free from the ice, which in winter attained a thickness of three feet. Here, too, migratory birds were even less numerous than in Tsaidam. The cause of this difference in the climate of two countries lying in such close proximity to one another is, first, the great elevation of the Koko-nor basin, and, secondly, the influence which the great expanse of its waters exercises over the surrounding country. This sufficiently accounts for the contrast in the climates, which is so marked that it is even noticed by the inhabitants.

We determined to remain by the lake till the end of April to observe the flight of birds; and with this object in view we stationed ourselves at the mouth

<sup>1</sup> They appeared in the following order: *Anas rutila*, *A. boschas*, *Linota brevirostris*, *Mergus merganser*, *Turdus ruficollis*, *Cygnus musicus*, *Anas crecca*, *Vanellus cristatus*, *Ardea alba*, *Anser cinereus*, *Anas acuta*, *Anthus pratensis*? (occasionally wintering in Tsaidam), and *Grus virgo*.

of the Pouhain-gol, pitching our yurta by a small marsh on the borders of a plain, where our horses and camels could find plenty of good grass, and the latter might feast on *gudjir* and on their favourite tamarisk bushes, which grew in the bed of the river.

The lake itself presented a very different aspect from what it had borne the previous autumn. The dark blue waters, now covered with a glittering expanse of ice, lay like a vast mirror in a framework of mountains and plains. Not a broken space was visible, and but little snow was scattered on the frozen level surface, which in places was clear as crystal and reflected the sun's rays, making it look like open water.

The plains surrounding the lake were clothed with yellow withered grass, for the most part trampled under foot by wild asses, antelope, and Tangutan cattle, whilst the monotony of the landscape was only relieved by mirages. These were so frequent and so delusive as to render it impossible to shoot any large animals with the rifle, for the game would appear to float in the air, magnified to twice its natural size.

Having encamped in a spot where there were neither Mongols nor Tangutans to interfere with us, we made daily expeditions along the shores of the lake and the banks of the Pouhain-gol. But, alas! day after day passed without the longed-for arrival of birds. Some there were certainly, but in little variety, and so few in number that we could not always shoot enough for our personal requirements,



and hardly any specimens were added to our ornithological collection, the weather continuing cold, snowy,<sup>1</sup> and tempestuous during the latter half of March.

Our fishing was far more successful ; for although we only caught one kind, the *Schizopygopsis* (nov. sp.), yet this was in such quantities that on one occasion we actually hauled out with our small thirty-one foot casting net a hundred and thirty-six of them, averaging some two feet in length and nearly three pounds in weight. These, with the birds and antelope that we shot, were our exclusive food at this time. The roe of the fish, however, proved very unwholesome, and after eating it we were all seized with violent sickness, dysentery, and pains in the stomach. Fortunately the Mongol who was with us had not touched any, and was able to make a fire, at which we prepared hot poultices, taking internally some excellent cholera drops which we found in our medicine chest, and by these means we were all right the following day.

Towards the end of March the weather became less severe, and on the 29th the lower course of the Pouhain-gol was free of ice, the lake still remaining frozen except near the mouths of streams. But the heat of the sun gradually thawed it, and on the 6th April a gale of wind suddenly sprang up and dispersed the ice. On the 7th large open spaces might be seen in all parts of the lake, whilst fragments of

<sup>1</sup> Snow fell seven times in the latter half of March ; in the first fortnight in April it neither snowed nor rained once.

ice were piled up on the shore, and on the frozen expanses that still remained unbroken.

The water now rapidly cleared, and in a week it was quite open; the floes having been partly driven by the wind into the bays on the western shore, and partly washed on to land. But night frosts continued with their usual severity, the thermometer registering  $11^{\circ}$  Fahr., and the temperature falling after sunset as rapidly as it rose on bright still mornings.

The winds, which were almost of daily occurrence, mostly blew from the east and west, the former always moderate and wafting the chilly air of the lake to its western shore, the latter, although from a warm quarter, raged with great fury,<sup>1</sup> bringing clouds of dust.

In the beginning of April migratory birds were extremely scarce. By the 13th of the month, though we had seen thirty-nine kinds (inclusive of those noted in Tsaidam),<sup>2</sup> yet no large flocks of geese, ducks, or other birds had passed over, and the shores of the lake and river were inanimate, without any of those sounds which usually accompany the

<sup>1</sup> Between the middle of March and the middle of April there were six severe gales, without, however, blowing with such violence as in Tibet, or even in South-eastern Mongolia.

<sup>2</sup> Twenty-six migratory birds appeared in Koko-nor by that date, viz. between March 13th and 22nd: *Accentor rubeculoides*, *Cinclus Kashmiriensis*, *Cygnus olor*, *Fuligula clangula*, *Larus ichthyætos*, *L. ridibundus*, *Anser Indicus*, *Fuligula cristata*, and *Milvus govinda*. Between March 22nd and April 1st: *Phalacrocorax carbo*, *Anas tadorna*, *A. clypeata*, *Numenius* sp., *Fuligula ferina*, *Avocetta recurvirostra*, and *Grus cinerea*. Between April 1st and 13th: *Anas Penelope*, *Limosa melanuroides?* *Totanus calidris?* *Eudromias* sp., *Haliaeetus Macei*, *Circus rufus*, *Motacilla* sp., *Scolopax gallinago*, *Coturnix muta*, and *Grus*.

spring flight of the feathered tribe. The mornings and evenings were almost as still and silent as in midwinter; the call of the widgeon, the cackle of geese, the cry of the sea-gull, or the noise of the duck were indeed rare sounds, and had it not been for the loud notes of the great lark (*Melanocorypha maxima*), the shores of Koko-nor had been indeed voiceless.

Spring fell far short of our expectations, and birds were not nearly so numerous as they were on Dalai-nor at the same season, two years ago. In all probability they leave Koko-nor to one side in their flight northwards, keeping to the valley of the Hoang-ho and to China Proper, and avoiding the Kan-su mountains and the deserts of Ala-shan. In proof of this, I may mention that we found many kinds of waterfowl in the northern bend of the Hoang-ho which we never saw at Koko-nor: such as *Anser cygnoides*, *A. scgetum*, *Anas falcata*, *Ardea cinerea*, *Fulica atra*, and others.

The dearth of birds induced us to abandon our intention of remaining on the shores of the lake until the end of April; so on the 13th we broke up our camp and marched towards the temple of Chob-sen by the same road that we had travelled in autumn. We might have taken the easier route<sup>1</sup> through Tonkir, but having experienced the unpleasantness of journeying through thickly populated

<sup>1</sup> After the re-capture by the Chinese troops of the towns of Si-ning and Seng-kwan.

districts, we preferred again facing the difficulties of the mountains.

During our month's stay on the Pouhain-gol we finally equipped our caravan for the march. We exchanged our felt tent for camel-saddles, of which we stood greatly in need. On returning to Tsaidam half the camels were unfit for work, and although we succeeded in obtaining others in their stead the money we had to pay in addition completely exhausted our finances, leaving us only five lans with which to supply the place of those that had perished in Tibet. We were at length driven to the last extremity of selling revolvers to the Tangutans and Mongol officials, and bartered away three out of our remaining twelve for three good camels, besides selling two for sixty-five lans (18*l.*), which enabled us to remain three spring months in Koko-nor and Kan-su.

The first step we took in Kan-su everything suddenly changed. Instead of a dry atmosphere, we had a fall of snow every day, whilst the ground was saturated with moisture like a sponge. Vegetation had not begun to develop itself under the influence of spring; the watercourses were still covered with ice, and the night frosts were still sharp. There were fewer migratory birds even than at Koko-nor, and summer visitants had not arrived in large numbers; a few solitary specimens only having made their appearance. In fact the Kan-su mountains looked just as we had left them in the end of October of the previous autumn.

The road over the mountains was now more difficult than ever, owing to the slipperiness of the paths after the night frosts ; patches of winter snow too lingered on the northern sides of the higher summits.<sup>1</sup> Our loads, increased in weight by the excess of humidity, lay heavier on the camels' backs without the slightest increase of advantage to us, and these animals, from lying on the damp ground at night, began to cough and grow thin. Our unshod horses were continually falling on the slippery paths, so that we ourselves had to go on foot ; an exercise for which the make-shift boots we had improvised out of old leggings and yak-hide were no better adapted than the thick-soled feet of the camels. To add to our troubles we had twice to ford the Tatung-gol ; the first time over the ice, which had settled to the bottom of the river, and the second time through four feet of water, in a place where the current was rapid, and the channel full of huge boulders. Had one of our camels missed its footing here, it must inevitably have been drowned, with the precious burden of our collections. Besides other work, I had now to survey the route back from the Murui-ussu, having purposely avoided doing so on the outward journey in order not to excite the suspicions of our guides.

Although the mountains were no longer infested by Dungans, we might at any time have a dis-

<sup>1</sup> The cause of the small quantity of snow on the Kan-su mountains so early in spring, is that the snowfall in winter is small, and soon thaws in the sun, which on calm, bright days, even in February, is hot.

agreeable encounter with Chinese soldiers; and this actually happened to us at the very place where the Dungans had threatened to attack us the year before. This time it was a party of 'Kotens' that met us on their way from Seng-kwan to the Tating-gol. We showed the commander of the detachment our Peking passport, but while doing so a soldier stole a revolver from one of our holsters. We protested vigorously against this, and though we could only express our sentiments by pantomimic gestures, the Chinese officer understood their meaning, and, afraid lest we should prefer our complaints at Peking, he gave orders that it should be restored to us. He then asked for gunpowder, and on receiving a dozen charges expressed himself entirely satisfied, and we parted good friends.

We reached Chobsen on the 27th April, and after a two days' stay at the temple, started for the mountains in the vicinity of Chertinton, where we had passed the previous summer.

Spring now began in earnest; on the 21st we saw the first butterflies, and on the 23rd the first flower, a species of *Ficaria*. The southern slopes were tinged with green, small birds arrived in numbers, and near Chobsen ploughing and sowing (barley and wheat) had begun, some corn being already visible above ground.

There was a thunderstorm on the 26th April, which, though accompanied by hail, reminded us of the approach of spring, for which we had so long waited. But vegetation advanced slowly owing to



constant night frosts ( $16^{\circ}$  Fahr. in the first week of May), and though by the 13th of May twelve kinds of flowers had blossomed, it was generally in very small numbers, by ones and twos under stones and bushes, where they were protected from storms. The wind and snow continued to the second week in May; indeed no rain fell, whilst snow fell on seventeen days. Moreover, the wind blew hard and incessantly by day and night, most frequently from the east or from the west; but it varied much, constantly shifting from one quarter to another, and sometimes coming in violent gusts. While these gales lasted, and for hours afterwards, the air was laden with dust from the neighbouring deserts.

Notwithstanding the abundance of the atmospheric deposits and the humidity of the soil, the watercourses contained less water than in the summer, and many were quite dry; whilst the psychrometer indicated considerable dryness in the air on those days on which it neither snowed nor rained. The first of these phenomena is probably due to the circumstance that the frozen earth imbibed a great deal of the moisture which fell; and the dryness of the atmosphere in clear weather was doubtless caused by the influence of the surrounding barren plains, which were at this time quite parched.

We had no fine spring weather. Occasionally it would clear up at midday, but the wind would again rise, bringing more snow and a lower temperature. The hottest day was the 24th April, when the mercury stood at  $68^{\circ}$  Fahr. in the shade; whilst the

year before, at the same season, the maximum temperature in the valley of the Hoang-ho was 88° Fahr., and even in South-eastern Mongolia, near Kalgan, the thermometer in April 1871 showed 79° Fahr.

From all we have said it will be apparent that spring in Kan-su is as cold and humid as the summer and autumn; in fact the whole year round there is not one entire month of fine weather, such as we are accustomed to in other countries. In spring and autumn snow falls abundantly; the summer is wet; in winter the sky is clear, but the winds are bitter and tempestuous.

On our way from Chobsen to the mountains south of the Tatung-gol we passed the early part of May in the alpine zone, which was quite inanimate. Flocks of small birds had arrived in large numbers early in May, only to rest for awhile on the meadows or near the rocks, whilst the less hurried visitants still kept to the lower and more genial valleys. Vegetation was awakening but tardily, and the *Ficaria* and *Primula* were the only flowers out. Finding them, as we often did, on the alpine meadows beside unmelted snow, we wondered how they could adapt themselves to such unfavourable conditions. I saw primulæ, gentians, and irises uninjured by the frost (8° Fahr.) or the deep snow at night; and no sooner did the sun shine out than these children of spring decked themselves as brilliantly as ever, and appeared to be hastening to

enjoy the fleeting moments of warmth before they should be overtaken by the next frost or snowfall.

In the absence of summer birds, those we saw most of in the upper alpine belts, besides jackdaws and wall-climbers, were the great rock-partridge, called by the Tangutans *hailik* (*Megaloperdix Tibetanus*) and the snow-vulture (*Gyps nivicola*).<sup>1</sup> The former is never seen in Mongolia, but is distributed through the highlands of Kan-su, Koko-nor, and Tibet. Its exclusive habitat is among the wild crags and loose rock *débris* at an elevation never below 10,000 feet above the sea; the wilder the cliffs and the more extensive the loose *débris* the better suited are they to the rock-partridge, which is equal in size to the hen capercaillie. It pairs in spring, and during the remainder of the year is found in coveys or small flocks of ten to fifteen, never in large packs.

It is a blithesome bird and may be heard all day long, enlivening the otherwise silent, weird rocks of the alpine zone with its loud note, which resembles the cluck of the hen accompanied by a long whistle and sometimes by short abrupt sounds; but these it generally utters whilst on the wing. But this partridge, like the gallinaceous tribe in general, is not fond of flying. It is so swift a runner that it will elude

<sup>1</sup> As we have stated in a note to Chapter III., this vulture is identical with *Gyps Himalayensis*, described by Hume. (See *Rough Notes*, p. 12.) The first specimen of this bird was sent to the zoological museum of the Academy of Arts and Sciences at St. Petersburg, by M. Carelin, from Alatau in the Semirechinsk division of the Russian province of Turkestan; see Severtsoff's *Turkestanskiya Životniya*, p. 111.—M.

the pursuit of the sportsman, who is often baffled by the perpendicular descents and the great extent of loose rock. Although rarely hunted by the natives it is nevertheless extremely shy and not easily seen, owing to its grey plumage closely assimilating with the colour of the rocks.

Early in the morning and towards evening it flies to the grassy knolls where it feeds. I never detected insects in its crop; its favourite food in summer consisting of the heads of wild onions which grow in abundance on the alpine meadows.

There are five to ten chicks in a brood, over which the parent birds watch with anxious solicitude. If danger be near, particularly when the young are very small, the old birds will run about twenty paces from the sportsman and try to attract his attention by feigning lameness or illness, as our partridges will often do at home. Chickless pairs, whose eggs have most likely been destroyed by the frost, are not uncommon, and the probable frequency of these mishaps may account for their comparatively small numbers in the Kan-su mountains and the ranges of Northern Tibet.<sup>1</sup>

Another characteristic bird of the alpine zone of the Kan-su mountains is the snow-vulture (*Gyps nivicola*),<sup>2</sup> resembling in its mode of life and habits other species belonging to the same family, and

<sup>1</sup> This *hailik* or *Megaloperdix* is probably the 'Great Partridge,' which Marco Polo mentions in the Great Khan's mews at Chaghan-nor, Bk. I. chap. lx.—Y.

<sup>2</sup> The black vulture (*Vultur monachus*) is but rarely seen in Kan-su.

chiefly remarkable for its powerful flight and gluttony.

Late in the morning when the sun is already warm, the snow-vultures rise from their nocturnal haunts, which are invariably amongst the most inaccessible cliffs, and fly at first low along the axis of



SNOW-VULTURE. *Gyps nivicola* (Severtsoff). *Gyps Himalayensis* (Hume).

the range, then, circling upwards, soar to untold heights. When we have been encamped at an elevation of 12,000 feet I have watched them with a good field-glass ascending until they completely disappeared from sight, as each stroke of their powerful



wings impelled them upwards. Yet from these heights the extraordinary vision of the vulture enables him to distinguish every thing that happens on earth. Now, it is a flock of crows and kites gathering round some carrion in the valley that attracts his attention, and makes him fold his mighty wings and descend by the weight of his body in a somewhat slanting direction from the clouds to earth, with a rustling noise caused by his rapid passage through the air; but before reaching the ground he opens his enormous wings and drops quietly on his prey. Warned by the manœuvres of their companion, his fellows are not slow to follow his example, and drop like stones to earth, so that before you knew of their existence a dozen or more of these huge birds are feasting on the carrion.<sup>1</sup> They then begin quarrelling among themselves, advancing with half-unfolded wings and threatening air to attack one another; but their fights are never serious. If the dead animal is still entire they tear out the entrails and liver, and then begin upon the flesh. Having gorged themselves, they retire a short distance to look on while their companions feast. The smaller birds of prey,—kites, crows, and magpies,—waiting impatiently at a little distance, dare not approach the tempting repast until these giants have eaten their fill and departed. The latter now rise heavily in the air, and betake themselves to the nearest cliffs, there to digest their food.

<sup>1</sup> Brehm describes a similar sight with African vultures. (See his *Life of Animals*, vol. iii. pp. 562-564.)



Snow-vultures are numerous in Kan-su, and we often wondered how they could find sufficient food, especially as the Mongols, Tangutans, and Chinese often eat carrion themselves, and the vultures would have but a small share of the dead domestic cattle. In summer too, when the weather is rainy and the mountains are often clothed in mists, it must be extremely difficult, sometimes impossible, to see the prey from a distance, and it is probable that at this season the vultures take very distant flights to countries where the atmosphere is clearer. A flight of a few hundred miles is no exertion to this bird, which sails all day long beneath the clouds almost without flapping its wings.

Such is their rapacity that notwithstanding their habitual wariness they return to the carrion after they have been several times fired at. Their tenacity of life is almost incredible: my companion and I once fired a dozen charges of slugs at a number of them only fifty paces off, without killing one.

They may be easily shot with ball, however, if you will take up a position in ambush near some exposed food; but you must be careful to hide yourself, and your best plan is to select a small cave, and plant its entrance with bushes. The bait should be carrion, or any offal laid on a freshly drawn hide, and disposed about seventy paces from your place of concealment, to enable you to move at your ease without fear of startling the birds. It is of no use stationing yourself before eight or nine o'clock in the morning, when the vultures leave their eyries, and

you should select the alpine belts of the mountains, to which they are more readily attracted than to the low valleys, where these cautious birds will sometimes absolutely refuse your bait, if any human habitations be near.

The sport is full of interest. Hardly have you seated yourself before the kites fly down and wheel in long low circles round the meat, but their suspicions are aroused and they take their departure. The next to appear are magpies and crows, cawing and hopping round the dainty morsels, without venturing to touch them. At last one bolder than the others seizes a piece of the meat, but, frightened at his own temerity, drops it again and retires. But the ice once broken, others soon follow suit. Here comes a raven who has been watching the proceedings from a short distance, and now with waddling gait approaches the carrion, and pauses a minute or two before thrusting his beak in and swallowing a morsel. Then magpies fall to; the kites, plucking up courage, descend from all sides, and the feast begins in earnest; such noise, such fighting and screeching!

All this time you remain perfectly still in your place of concealment, impatiently watching the expected arrival of the prize you covet. But hark! what is that rustling noise? a lammergeier has descended. Yes! it is indeed that handsome bird which, after wheeling a few times round the exposed meat, perches on yonder ledge. But where are the vultures? Perhaps they have by this time espied

the feast and are circling high up among the clouds; but you cannot look up, and therefore cannot see them from your cave. Another good hour passes. At length your patience is rewarded. A rustling of heavy wings is heard, and the snow-vulture perches on a rock beside the carrion. You are trembling with excitement, fearful of making the slightest noise by which you would frighten the wary bird away. In a little while he flies down to the ground, and, after sitting still for a few minutes, walks towards the prey, swaying his great body from side to side and hopping occasionally. In a moment the whole crew of feasters retires to make room for the giant, one solitary crow perhaps remaining on the opposite side of the carcass, but his behaviour is now more deferential. Greedily the hungry vulture begins swallowing the entrails or the meat; in another minute, however, a shot is heard and he falls lifeless on the spot.

But if you defer your fire other vultures are sure to appear, and after the first one has cautiously descended the others alight directly on the meat, and sometimes a dozen or more will collect round a large carcass, and you may if you are fortunate secure two with one bullet.

The heavy snowfall in the alpine zone obliged us to remove our camp in the second week of May, and descend to the middle forest belt. From this my companion and a Cossack started for the temple of Chertinton, to fetch the boxes containing our collections which we had left behind with some other

things in autumn. Among these was a pair of boots, of which I was very glad, for they enabled me to walk over the mountains with far greater comfort than in those I had improvised for myself. We had also stored five pounds of sugar, which was the greatest treat for us, deprived as we had been so long of every European comfort; and we bought a yak of the Tangutans which supplied us with meat for a long while.

In the middle of May the weather in Kan-su was spring-like and showery, and although night frosts continued, the heat of the sun during the day rapidly developed the vegetation. By the 27th of the month, the trees in the central zones were turning green, whilst on the lower ground they were in full leaf; the verdure looked brilliant when the sun shone,<sup>1</sup> and many of the bushes and herbaceous plants were covered with flowers. In the thick underwood on the banks of the mountain streams the wild rose, cherry, currant, gooseberry, honeysuckle, and the barberry, with its long yellow clusters of flowers, were in blossom; to these must be added the fragrant *Daphne Altaica* (?) and on the exposed slopes the hawthorn and yellow *caragana*. In the woods we saw anemones, wild hyacinths, peonies, and whole beds of wild strawberry; the valleys were gaily decked with iris, primrose, and potentilla; and the slopes of the mountains with saxifrage, *Draba*,

<sup>1</sup> The 26th was the warmest day in May; the heat, 86° Fahr., in the valley of the Tatung-gol being equal to the hottest day in July the previous year.

*Polygonatum roseum*, *Thermopsis*, *Podophyllum*, and others.

Animal life too displayed full activity, especially among the feathered visitants of the forest zone, where the voices of song-birds sounded in concert, completing the general picture of spring. The exquisite melody of the thrush, and of its congeners the *Pterorhinus Davidii* and *Trochalopteron*, the note of the cuckoo, the call of the pheasant, and of a variety of smaller birds, resounded unceasingly for days together. Even at night time, in calm weather, some might be heard too impatient to restrain their songs till daybreak. Indeed everything around gave signs of returning life and activity after the long winter's silence.

Every day we obtained a number of most interesting specimens, and made up for the poor ornithological collection of the preceding summer when most of the birds were moulting.

Amongst the rarer kinds we secured some specimens of the long-eared pheasant (*Crossoptilon auritum*), which we had seen the first year of our travels in the mountains of Ala-shan. This remarkable bird, called by the Tangutans *shiarama*, inhabits in large numbers the forest-covered mountains of Kansu, but is never found in the treeless ranges of Northern Tibet. It prefers forests on the sides of rocky mountains, and abounding in underwood, at an absolute elevation of 10,000 feet. It feeds exclusively on vegetable matter, and I found nothing but young grass, the buds and leaves of the barberry, and roots of

different kinds of herbs in its crop. While feeding its movements are stately, and it holds its magnificent tail straight out.

Late in autumn and in winter they collect in small coveys, often perching on the trees,<sup>1</sup> probably to feed on the leaf-buds. They pair in the early spring, and at such time keep to parts of the forest where the underwood is very dense, and where they rear their young ;<sup>2</sup> they lay five to seven eggs.

In winter the Tangutans shoot them sitting on the trees or snare them for the sake of the tail-feathers. The four centre ones are much worn by Chinese officials in their uniform caps ; and are worth 2*d.* apiece here.

In early spring, as soon as they have paired, the male birds may be heard calling their mates. Their notes are harsh and discordant, and those of the hen birds equally so, as far as we could judge. We also heard them utter peculiar deep notes which reminded us a little of the cooing of doves, and when startled their cry was like that of the guinea-fowl.

During the breeding season they have no regular call, like that of the common pheasant or of black game. The cocks only call at irregular intervals, generally after sunrise, although sometimes before

<sup>1</sup> In spring and summer the long-eared pheasants keep exclusively on the ground, although during the night, as the native sportsmen declare, they roost on the trees : my companion and I, however, never saw one on a tree, although we took many walks in the evening and early morning in the woods.

<sup>2</sup> By the middle of May most of the hen birds were sitting on their nests.



daybreak and at midday. In any case they are rarely heard, and one bird repeats its cry only five or six times during the morning.<sup>1</sup> The long and irregular intervals between their call-notes, and their extreme shyness, make it difficult to shoot them, at all events in spring; besides which, the uneven ground in which they are found, covered, on the northern sides of the ravines, with dense bushes of rhododendron, and on the southern slopes, with prickly bushes of barberry, hawthorn, and wild rose, added to the numerous rocks, and the fallen timber, make it most difficult sport. In such ground as this a dog is of no use, even were it able to follow its master up the steeper places. You have only your ears and eyes to assist you, and even these are not of much use, for the wary bird sees or hears you long before you can come up to it; it is a fast runner, and will never rise from the ground unless surprised. You may hear the patter of its feet a few paces off, as it disappears in some impenetrable thicket, before you have time to raise your gun, far less to shoot; and its tracks are as completely hidden as though it had dived under water. Its tenacity of life too is marvellous. I have seen them fly after receiving a whole charge of shot at fifty paces; and, if only winged, run into the bushes and escape. If by some extraordinary luck you happen to see one close by, you fire at once, as your only chance of a shot, and the charge blows the bird to pieces and spoils it for preserving. The difficulties indeed are so

<sup>1</sup> The cocks fight during the pairing time.

great, the odds against you so numerous, that nothing but the rarity of the bird induces you to try such thankless sport.

My companion and I often went in pursuit of these pheasants, repairing to the woods long before daybreak, but only succeeded in obtaining two specimens; and two of the Tangutan sportsmen, whom I hired for that purpose, climbed the mountains day after day, but only succeeded in bringing home a couple by surprising them on their nests.

The great difficulty lies in discovering the whereabouts of the bird, owing to the long, irregular intervals between its cries, whilst it is sometimes absolutely silent even on a fine bright morning. It is remarkable, too, how quietly, for so large a bird, it rises off the ground, and takes wing without your having heard it. It is slow in its flight like the capercaillie, and will not fly far.

Among the mammals we noticed the marmot (*Arctomys robustus*?), which awoke about the middle of April after lying dormant all winter. This little animal, called by the Mongols *tarabagan*, and by the Tangutans *shoo*, was never found by us in Mongolia,<sup>1</sup> and we first saw it in Kan-su, whence its range extends into Northern Tibet. It inhabits the lower valleys, as well as the alpine zone, of the Kan-su mountains, and we saw its burrows in Northern Tibet at an elevation of 15,000 feet above the sea.

<sup>1</sup> The Trans-Baikalian marmot (*Arctomys Bobac*), is only distributed as far south as seventy miles beyond Urga; where the fertile steppes terminate and this little animal disappears.

It prefers to burrow in the sides of grassy mountains, and lives in small societies, burrowing deep into the stony ground; several side-passages serve as a means of ingress and egress into the principal chamber.

Early in the morning as soon as the sun is up, and the air a little warmed, it issues out of its habitation and scampers about feeding on the grass, not returning to its burrow, unless disturbed, till about ten o'clock, where it remains till two or three in the afternoon, when it again comes out and plays and feeds till sunset. This rule of course is not without exceptions, but in rainy weather they never stir above ground, although the rain may last several days in succession.

The Kan-su marmot is sagacious and wary, especially when it is hunted by man. Before leaving its burrow it pokes its head out, and remains half an hour in this position to assure itself of safety. Then half its body may be seen, and again it listens and looks all round, and then only comes quite out and feeds on the grass. If it notice danger, however far off, it immediately makes for its burrow, sits up on its hind legs and utters a loud, prolonged whistle; then if the object of its fears approach nearer it conceals itself again below the ground. But where it is in close proximity with the Tangutan yurtas and is not molested, its behaviour is bolder, although it never quite forgets its cautious cunning.

The usual mode of killing these animals is by lying in wait for them near the burrow, hiding before

they come above ground. They are remarkably tenacious of life, and will escape to their burrows even though mortally wounded; <sup>1</sup> nothing but killing them outright will secure them for the hunter. They begin to lie dormant in the second week in October, and like the European marmot a great many will congregate in one burrow.

And now a few words about another of the mammalia of Kan-su, viz. the bear.

Before arriving in Kan-su we heard from the Mongols of some extraordinary animal which ranged through this province, and was known to the inhabitants under the name of *kung-guressu*, i.e. 'man-beast.' We were told that it had a flat face like that of a human being, and that it often walked on two legs, that its body was covered with a thick black fur, and its feet armed with enormous claws; that its strength was terrible, and that not only were hunters afraid of attacking it, but that the inhabitants removed their habitations from those parts of the country which it visited.

These accounts were corroborated by the Tangutans in Kan-su, who one and all declared that an animal answering to the above description inhabited their mountains, but that it was rare. When we questioned them if it were not a bear they shook their heads, and assured us it was not, adding that they knew well enough what a bear was like.

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Hooker mentions the extraordinary tenacity of life of the Tibetan marmot (Hooker's *Himalayan Journals*, i. 93), and gives an engraving of one of them.—M.

Upon arriving in Kan-su in the summer of 1872, we offered a reward of five lans to anyone who would show us where one of these fabulous beasts could be found. Nobody, however, came forward, to impart the desired information ; unless that the Tangutan, who was acting temporarily as our guide, did certainly say that the *kung-guressu* inhabited the rocks on Mount Gadjur. But on our repairing to that sacred mountain, in the middle of August, we saw no trace of the extraordinary animal, and almost despaired of ever seeing one, when one day I heard that a skin might be seen at a little temple about ten miles from Chertinton. Hither we proceeded after a few days, and having made a present to the superior, requested him to show us the rare skin. The request was granted, when what was my astonishment to see, instead of some extraordinary animal, a small bear-skin stuffed with straw ! All the stories we had heard were after all a pack of fables, and the narrators, after listening to my assurances that this creature was none other than a bear, declared that the *kung-guressu* never showed itself to people, and that its tracks alone were occasionally seen by huntsmen. This bear, whose skin I now saw, stood  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet high ; the muzzle protruding ; the head and forepart of the body a dirty white colour ; the back darker, and the paws almost black ; the hind feet long and narrow, and the claws about an inch long, blunt, and of a dark colour. Unfortunately I could not take more accurate mea-

surements, or examine it more closely, for fear of exciting suspicion.

In the following spring, as we were returning from Koko-nor to Chobsen, one morning, on the borders of a forest in Kan-su, we saw one of these bears wild and engaged in catching alpine hares. We went towards it ; but it made off, and although pursued by our dogs, never turned to bay. We fired several long shots after the bear, but only wounded it, and to our extreme regret it got off.

The one we saw in Koko-nor, as far as we could judge in the distance, was of the same colour as the stuffed specimen we had seen at the temple, but rather larger, and about equal in size to our *flesh-eater* ;<sup>1</sup> it seemed to have an unusual long body, and a kind of hump on its back.

The Mongols told us that they were plentiful on the Burkhan Buddha and Shuga ranges, where they inhabit the rocky parts, in summer, however, descending to the plains ; and said they had even been seen on the banks of the Murui-ussu.

After passing the latter part of May in the central forest belt, we descended to the valley of the Tatung, and remained there a week, making daily shooting excursions as before ; but our supply of small shot was soon expended, and we had to give up shooting small birds. Of eggs we obtained but a few ; many of the birds not having begun to lay,

<sup>1</sup> There are three kinds of bears in Russia : the *miasnik* or flesh-eater, so called because it attacks cattle, the *ovsiannik* or corn-eater, and the *muroved* or ant-bear.—M.



although their nests were ready. In the middle of June we could have collected any number of them in the mountains, especially in the thickets on the banks of streams; but we could not remain longer in the vicinity of Chertinton, so straitened were our finances, which were again reduced to a small lump of silver weighing only a few ounces. Owing to the density of the population, moreover, game was scarce, and we could not shoot enough to supply ourselves with food. Under these circumstances we were constrained to hurry our departure for Alashan, for which country we set out, following the same route by which we had come the year before when travelling in the company of the Tangutan caravan. Deserted villages lay by the roadside then as now, although the Chinese population had begun to reappear; and it is most probable that in a few years' time the ruined houses will be rebuilt, the deserted fields cultivated, and the inhabitants as numerous as they were before the Dungan insurrection.

The first half of June was, contrary to our expectations, again characterised by severe, changeable weather. On May 28th there was a fall of snow at night, and the following four nights it froze ( $25^{\circ}$  Fahr.). In the second week of June, the very last of our stay in Kan-su, the weather was even worse; for on the 9th of that month a violent storm continued the whole day, covering the ground to the depth of a foot with snow; towards morning there was a sharp frost ( $23^{\circ}$  Fahr.), and this occurred in

the thirty-eighth parallel, at a time when seventy-six kinds of flowers were blooming, which, however, remained uninjured by the cold, so accustomed are the plants of Kan-su to the severity of its climate. The slightest drought, on the other hand, is far more injurious to them. Rain fell on twenty-two days in May, but as it was not continuous, it was not enough for the herbaceous plants which require great moisture. We noticed this particularly on the exposed side of mountains, and in the plain to the north-east of the Chagrin-gol, where the year before, in the end of June, the flowers were more abundant and brilliant.

This only proves how elastic is the nature of these plants, and how capable they are of adapting themselves to the climate. I have myself taken up by the root the yellow alpine poppy (*Papaver alpinum*) when the earth has been so hard frozen that I could hardly cut into it with my knife, yet the plant was uninjured, whereas it would perish if it were not for the incessant rains.

We took leave of the highlands of Kan-su, having experienced to the very last their inclement, unsettled climate; still the variety and abundance of the scientific harvest that we reaped there in the vegetable and animal kingdoms make us regard our stay in that region as the best time of our whole enterprise.

## CHAPTER VIII.

RETURN TO ALA-SHAN. ROUTE TO URGA BY THE  
CENTRAL GOBI.

Departure from Ala-shan—Nearly lost in the desert—A dilemma—We follow the wrong road—A night of suspense—Looking for landmarks—The ‘obo’—Water at last!—Meeting with pilgrims—Din-yuan-ing—Letters from home—Excursion to Ala-shan mountains—Their changed appearance—Their flora and fauna—Sudden flood—Collections endangered—Caravan re-organised—Start for Urga—Terrible heat—Guide at fault—Death of ‘Faust’—Desperate situation—Saved—Grief at the loss of our dog—Route across the Gobi—Urute country—The Galpin Gobi—Wells choked by rain—Similarity between Gobi and Sahara—The Hurku range—Mountain goat (*Capra Sibirica*)—Trade routes—The desert north of the Hurku—Shortlived oases—Large and flourishing herds—Polluted water—The mirage—Migration of birds—More trade routes—Altered aspect of country—Rich pasturage—Abundance of animal life—Climate—Impatience to reach Urga—Arrival there—End of the Expedition.

THE second week in June we left the high lands of Kan-su, and crossed the threshold of the desert of Ala-shan. The sand drifts now lay before us like a boundless sea, and it was not without sundry misgivings that we entered this forbidding realm.

Without sufficient means to enable us to hire a guide, we went alone, risking all dangers and difficulties, the more imminent because the year before, while travelling with the Tangutan caravan, I could only note down by stealth, and often at haphazard, the landmarks and direction of the route. This

itinerary was of course inaccurate, but now it served as our only guide.

We were fifteen days<sup>1</sup> marching from Taging to Din-yuan-ing, and safely accomplished this difficult journey, only once nearly losing ourselves in the desert. This happened on the 21st June between Lake Serik-dolon and the well of Shangin-dalai. Having left Serik-dolon early in the morning, we marched through miles of loose sands, and at last came to an expanse of clay where the track divided. We had not noticed this spot on the outward journey, and had therefore to guess which of the two roads would lead to our destination. What made it worse was that the angle of bifurcation being acute, we could not decide, even with the aid of a compass, which we ought to take. The track to the right being more beaten, we determined to follow it, but after all we were mistaken, for having gone a few miles a number of other tracks crossed ours. This fairly puzzled us, however we still pressed forward, till at length a well-beaten road<sup>2</sup> joined the one we had first chosen. This we durst not follow, for it went we knew not whither, nor could we return to the place where the roads first branched off. Choosing the lesser of two evils, we resolved to persevere in our first route, hoping soon to see the group of hills at whose foot lies the well of Shangin-dalai.

<sup>1</sup> Including three days' halt.

<sup>2</sup> We afterwards ascertained that this cart-road led from Din-yuan-ing to the town of Dirisun-khoto (Mongol name), near the south-eastern boundary of Ala-shan.

But it was midday, and the intense heat obliged us to halt for two or three hours. On resuming our march, with the aid of the compass we steered in the same direction as before, till at length we discerned a small group of hills to our right. These we supposed to be the landmark of the Shangin-dalai, but they were still a long way off, and the dust which pervaded the atmosphere the whole day prevented our seeing their outline distinctly even with a glass.

Evening fell and we halted for the night, fully confident that these hills were indeed those we were in search of. But on projecting our line of march on the map, I became aware how far we had diverged to the right of our proper course, and doubts arose as to whether we were really in the right road or not. In the meanwhile, only five gallons of water<sup>1</sup> were left for the night; our horses had had none, and were suffering such agonies of thirst that they could hardly move their legs. The question of finding the well on the morrow became one of life and death. How can I describe our feelings as we lay down to rest! Fortunately the wind fell and the dust in the air cleared off. In the morning, with the first glimmer of light I climbed on to the top of the pile of boxes containing our collections, and carefully scanned the horizon with a glass. I could see distinctly the group of hills we had remarked the previous day,

<sup>1</sup> Water in wooden casks soon evaporates from the heat, so that a cask filled in the morning generally loses what would fill several bottles before evening.





MONGOLS WORSHIPPING 'OBO.'





but in a direction due north of our halting place ; I could also distinguish the summit of another, which might perhaps be that of Shangin-dalai. Towards which should we direct our steps ? Having taken careful bearings of the latter, and having compared its position on the map with that noted down last year, we decided to march in that direction.

In doubt and anxiety we loaded our camels and started, the hill now and then visible above the low ridges, and now and again hidden from sight. In vain we strained our eyes through the glass to see the cairn of stones ('obo') piled upon its summit ; the distance was still too great to distinguish anything so small. At length, after having gone nearly seven miles from the halting place, we descried what we sought ; with strength renewed by hope we pressed onwards ; and in a few more hours we stood by the side of the well, to which our animals, tortured with thirst, rushed eagerly forward.

On one of the marches through Southern Alashan we met a caravan of Mongol pilgrims on their way from Urga to Lhasa. Ever since the outbreak of the insurrection, i.e. for eleven years, these votaries of the Dalai-Lama had not ventured to visit his capital ; now however, since the occupation of central Kan-su by Chinese troops, a large caravan<sup>1</sup> had been equipped at Urga to proceed in search of the Kutukhtu, who had died a few years before at Bogdo-kuren, and was reported to have been re-born in Tibet. The pilgrims were marching in échelons,

<sup>1</sup> Numbering, it was reported, a thousand tents.

some distance apart, having agreed to rendezvous at Koko-nor. As the foremost files met us, they exclaimed, 'See where our brave fellows have got to!' and could hardly believe at first that we four had actually penetrated into Tibet. But what must have been the appearance of the Russian *molodtsi*?<sup>1</sup> Exhausted with fatigue, half-starved, unkempt, with ragged clothes and boots worn into holes, we were regular tatterdemalions! So completely had we lost the European aspect that when we arrived at Din-yuan-ing the natives remarked that we were the very image of their own people! i.e. of the Mongols.

At Din-yuan-ing we received a thousand lams in money, sent to us from Peking by General Vlangali. We also received letters from Russia,<sup>2</sup> with three of the last numbers of the 'Goloss' for 1872. No words could depict our pleasure at sight of these. We read with feverish impatience letters and newspapers which, although more than a year old, were new to us. Europe, our country, old times, rose up before us with startling vividness, and we became more than ever sensible of our lonely position in the midst of a people alien not in aspect alone but in every shade of character.

The Prince of Ala-shan and his sons were not at

<sup>1</sup> *Molodtsi*, i.e. brave fellows.

<sup>2</sup> I cannot refrain from mentioning an absurd incident with reference to a letter sent me from one of the governmental towns of my fatherland. The address was 'Peking, viâ Kiakhtha.' The word Peking had been erased doubtless by the postmaster, and the following words written in large letters: 'There is no such town as Peking, therefore forward this only as far as Kiakhtha.'

Din-yuan-ing, having gone to Peking, whence they would not return before the autumn.

In accordance with the plan we had previously sketched, we purposed marching straight to Urga from Din-yuan-ing, by way of the Central Gobi, a route which had never before been travelled by any European, and was therefore of the greatest scientific interest. Before starting, however, we determined to rest, and to take this opportunity of exploring more thoroughly than last time the mountains of Ala-shan.

These were not so deserted as they had been when we saw them in 1871, for, upon the cessation of brigandage, many of the Mongols had returned hither; ruined temples were being restored; and hundreds of Chinese from Ning-hia were engaged in felling timber. The difficulty was to find a ravine untenanted by some of these people, and we were obliged after all to choose one in which there was no water, preferring to be two miles away from such a necessary to abiding cheek by jowl with either Mongols or Chinamen.<sup>1</sup> We sent our camels out to grass about thirty miles from Din-yuan-ing, keeping with us only the two horses, which took it in turn to fetch water.

Here we stayed three weeks, and finally came to the conclusion that the mountains of Ala-shan are rich neither in flora nor in fauna. As regards the

<sup>1</sup> The ravine in which we were encamped is eleven miles WSW. of Din-yuan-ing.

former (at all events in the western side which we explored), the range may be divided into three belts, viz. the marginal, the tree-belt, and that of the alpine meadow-land.

The first of these, with the strip of undulating plain belonging to it,<sup>1</sup> has an argillaceous soil studded on the plain with boulders, and on the hills with blocks of fallen rock. In this section the cliffs are smaller and fewer in number than in the other two. This marginal zone or skirt of the mountains is nowhere over a mile and a half in width.

Here the only trees are occasional stunted elms; amongst the bushes we observed the yellow briar (*Rosa pimpinellifolia*), the *caragana*, and an occasional *Ephedra*, such as we had seen in Tsaidam, at the foot of the northern slope of the Burkhan Buddha; nearer the mountains the commonest kinds are the thorny convolvulus (*Convolvulus tragacanthoides*), and prickly astragalus (*Oxytropis aciphylla*). The chief herbaceous plants are the thyme (*Thymus serpyllum*), Solomon's seal (*Polygonatum officinale*), *Pegonum nigellastrum* (the last named belonged exclusively to the plain), the onion, also growing on the mountains as high as the alpine region, the

<sup>1</sup> The belt of steppe, ten to thirteen miles wide, lying at the foot of the western side of the Ala-shan range, is of a distinct character, differing from other parts of this country. Its surface is seamed with deep gorges, and it has a general and in some places a very steep slope from the mountains to the plain. Its soil is clay covered with shingle or coarse sand, and studded with small fragments of fallen rock from the neighbouring hills; springs occur in parts of it, and the vegetation is the same as that of the desert, with the addition of some mountain plants.

*Androsace* on the rocks, Siberian milkwort (*Polygala Sibirica*), clematis (*Clematis æthusæfolia*), twining through the bushes at the entrances to ravines, but seldom found on the plain, and on the border of the mountains the rhubarb,<sup>1</sup> likewise found in the tree-belt as high as the alpine region.

The upper limit of the forest zone is 10,000 feet above the sea, the western side of the range being the most densely wooded, and especially the slopes which face the north. The variety of trees, however, is not great. The prevailing kinds are the spruce (*Abies obovata*?), the poplar (*Populus tremula*), and willow, interspersed with arborescent juniper (*Juniperus communis*?), more rarely with the white birch (*Betula alba*); and, on the eastern side of the mountains, with the pine. All these trees are small and stunted, and can bear no comparison with those of Kan-su.

Amongst bushes in the Ala-shan forests we observed spiræa, white and yellow kurile tea (*Potentilla glabra*, *P. tenuifolia*), and hazel (*Ostryopsis Davidiana*) on the open hillsides facing the south, especially on the eastern side of the mountains, the honeysuckle; the juniper too is to be seen trailing its long branches over the rocks on the outskirts of the mountains.

There is more variety of bushes in the wooded ravines, where we saw syringa (*Syringa vulgaris*) like the familiar plant of our gardens, a new species of cotoneaster growing on the hillsides; two kinds

<sup>1</sup> Not the medicinal, and different from the two species of Kan-su.



of currant (*Ribes pulchellum* and another), raspberry (*Rubus Idæus*), and the climbing *Atragene alpina*.

The commonest herbs were the red lily (*Lilium tenuifolium*), French honeysuckle (also found in the lower alpine meadow-land), several kinds of *astragalus*, violets, several varieties of *pedicularis*, including one conspicuous for its pink flowers, *Rhaponticum uniflorum* and *Polygonatum Sibiricum*. Where the ground was moist we observed a greater variety of herbaceous plants; valerian, meadow-rue, the willow herb (*Epilobium angustifolium*), dandelion (*Taraxacum officinale*), columbine (*Aquilegia viridiflora*), wormwood, *Silene repens*, *Rubia cordifolia*, and *Sanguisorba alpina*, often growing in patches in the alpine meadows. The vegetation of the tree-belt is richer than either of the others, although far less luxuriant than that of Kan-su.

The alpine region, which begins at an elevation of 10,000 feet, is of comparatively small extent, more limited even than that of the Munni-ula range. Here we saw the beautiful *caragana*, covered with white and pink blossoms early in July, the meadow-sweet, the white kurile tea (the same we had seen in the forests), and a low kind of willow.

In the lower alpine belt, besides many of the flowers we have already enumerated, we observed ranunculus, larkspur, beautiful carnations (*Dianthus superbus*), onion, and corydalis. On the higher ground bushes cease altogether, the *caragana* being the only one to appear up to the very summit of Mount Bugutui; but here its proportions are dwarf-

like, and its height from the ground not above twelve inches.

The herbaceous plants diminish in variety, and the clay of the soil becomes more bare as we ascend. At the very summit of the alpine zone, the commonest plants are the *Polygonum*, *Saussurea pygmæa*, and a kind of *Hesperis*.

Indeed the alpine meadow-land does not shine in flowers. The breath of the neighbouring deserts exercises a withering influence over the vegetation in all parts of these mountains, which are far more deficient than those of Kan-su or even than the Munni-ula, yet resembling the former rather than the latter.

The fauna of the Ala-shan can boast neither number nor variety; such as it is I have given it in Volume I., Chapter VI. Birds are few, even in summer; besides those previously mentioned, I found most commonly at this season: the bullfinch (*Pyr-rhula erythrina*), two kinds of *carpodacus*, the swift (*Cypselus leucopygus*), mountain swallows (*Hirundo rupestris* and *H. lagopoda*), the cuckoo (*Cuculus canorus*), the bunting, redstarts (*Ruticilla* nov. sp., and another), the *Phyllopneuste*, and the stone-thrush (*Petrocincla saxatilis*). There are neither pheasants nor woodpeckers.

The scarcity of birds in these mountains makes them mournful even in summer when all nature is stirring; no joyful notes enliven the gloomy forests or beetling cliffs. Only an occasional song may be heard in the early morning or late evening; in the

daytime a desert-like stillness pervades everything. In conclusion, we may remark that both in flora and fauna this range has a greater affinity to the Kan-su than to the In-shan system.

In such arid mountains as these one would have supposed that we should not have incurred the slightest risk from water ; but fate willed that we should experience every misfortune which can possibly overtake the traveller in these countries, for, without giving us the slightest warning, a deluge, such as we never remember to have seen, swept suddenly down upon us.

It was on the morning of the 13th July ; the summits of the mountains were enveloped in mist, a sure indication of rain. Towards midday, however, it became perfectly clear and gave every promise of a fine day, when, three hours later, all of a sudden, clouds began to settle on the mountains, and the rain poured down in buckets. Our tent was soon soaked through, and we dug small trenches to drain off the water which made its way into the interior. This continued for an hour without showing any signs of abatement, although the sky did not look threatening. The rainfall was so great that it was more than could be absorbed by the soil or retained on the steep slopes of the mountains ; the consequence was that streams formed in every cleft and gorge, even falling from the precipitous cliffs, and uniting in the principal ravine, where our tent happened to be pitched,<sup>1</sup> descended in an impetuous

<sup>1</sup> Our ravine was two miles long and only 350 feet wide ; it was hemmed in on all sides by steep slopes and precipitous rocks.

torrent with terrific roar and speed. Dull echoes high up in the mountains warned us of its approach, and in a few minutes the deep bed of our ravine was inundated with a turbid, coffee-coloured stream, carrying with it rocks and heaps of smaller fragments, while it dashed with such violence against the sides that the very ground trembled as though with the shock of an earthquake. Above the roar of the waters we could hear the clash of great boulders as they met in their headlong course. From the loose banks and from the upper parts of the defile whole masses of smaller stones were detached by the force of the current and thrown up on either side of the channel, whilst trees were torn up by their roots and rent into splinters.

In the meanwhile the rain continued with undiminished violence, and the torrent kept ever swelling. The deep bed of the ravine was soon choked with stones, mud, and fallen timber, which forced the water out of its channel on to higher ground. Barely twenty feet from our tent rushed the torrent, destroying everything in its course. Another minute, another foot of water, and our collections, the fruit of our expedition, were irrevocably gone! The flood had been so sudden that we had not a chance of rescuing them; all we could have done would have been to save our own lives by climbing on the nearest rocks. The disaster was so unexpected, the ruin so imminent, that a feeling of apathy took possession of me, and although face to face with so terrible a misfortune I could not realise it.

Fortune, however, again befriended us. Before our tent was a small projecting ledge of rock upon which the waves threw up stones which soon formed a breakwater, and this saved us. Towards evening the rain slackened, the torrent quickly subsided, and the following morning beheld only a small stream flowing where the day before the waters of a mighty river had swept along. A bright sun lit up the scene of yesterday's destruction, and displayed so complete a change in the appearance of the valley that we could not recognise it for the same.

On returning to Din-yuan-ing we equipped our caravan, bartered away our bad camels, bought new ones, and on the morning of the 26th July started on our journey. Thanks to our Peking passport, and still more to the presents we bestowed on the *tosalakchi*, who acted as regent during the Prince's absence, we were able to hire two guides to escort us to the border of Ala-shan, where we were to obtain others, and for this purpose the yamen (or magistracy) of Ala-shan issued an official document: in this way we continued to obtain guides from one banner to another; a matter of great importance, for our road lay through the wildest part of the Gobi, in a meridional direction from Ala-shan to Urga, and we could not possibly have found our way without them.

Another long series of hardships now awaited us. We suffered most from the July heat, which at mid-day rose to 113° Fahr. in the shade, and at night was never less than 73°. No sooner did the sun

appear above the horizon than it scorched us mercilessly. In the daytime the heat enveloped us on all sides, above from the sun, below from the burning ground; the wind, instead of cooling the atmosphere, stirred the lower strata and made it even more intolerable. On these days the cloudless sky was of a dirty hue, the soil heated to  $145^{\circ}$  Fahr., and even higher where the sands were entirely bare, whilst at a depth of two feet from the surface it was  $79^{\circ}$ .

Our tent was no protection, for it was hotter within than without, although the sides were raised. We tried pouring water on it, and on the ground inside, but this was useless, in half an hour everything was as dry as before, and we knew not whither to turn for relief.

The air, too, was terribly dry;<sup>1</sup> no dew fell, and rain-clouds dispersed without sending more than a few drops to earth. We observed this interesting phenomenon several times, particularly in Southern Ala-shan near the Kan-su mountains, where the rain, as it fell, met the lower heated atmosphere and passed off in steam<sup>2</sup> before reaching the earth. Thunderstorms rarely occurred,<sup>3</sup> but the wind was incessant night and day, and sometimes blew with great violence, chiefly from the south-east and south-west. On calm days tornadoes were frequent about the middle of the day or a little later. To avoid the

<sup>1</sup> The difference between the wet and dry bulbs of the thermometer was sometimes as great as  $39^{\circ}$ , with the temperature at  $113^{\circ}$ .

<sup>2</sup> This phenomenon only occurred when the clouds were too small to cool the atmosphere sufficiently.

<sup>3</sup> Only three times in July.



heat as much as possible we rose before daybreak ; tea-drinking and loading the camels, however, took up so much time that we never got away before four or even five o'clock in the morning. We might have lightened the fatigue considerably by night-marching, but in that case we should have had to forego the survey which formed so important a part of our labours. The line on the accompanying map marking our route from Din-yuan-ing to Urga is barely over a foot long, yet it was obtained at the cost of forty-four marches, mostly accomplished in the burning midday heat of the desert.

The commencement of our journey was unpropitious, for on the sixth day after we left Din-yuan-ing, we lost our faithful friend 'Faust,' and we ourselves nearly perished in the sands.

It was on the 31st July ; we had left Djarataidabas and had taken the direction of the Khan-ula mountains ; our guide having informed us that a march of eighteen miles lay before us that day, but that we should pass two wells about five miles apart.

Having accomplished that distance, we arrived at the first, and after watering our animals, proceeded, in the full expectation of finding the second, where we intended to halt ; for though it was only seven in the morning, the heat was overpowering. So confident were we that the Cossacks proposed to throw away the supply of water that we had taken in the casks, in order not to burden our camels needlessly, but fortunately I forbade their doing this. After nearly

seven miles more, no well was to be seen, and the guide announced that we had gone out of our road. So he proceeded to the top of a hillock in the immediate neighbourhood to obtain a view over the surrounding country, and soon afterwards beckoned to us to follow. On rejoining him, he assured us that although we had missed the second well, a third, where he purposed passing the night, was scarcely four miles farther. We took the direction indicated. In the meanwhile it was near midday and the heat intolerable. A strong wind stirred the hot lower atmosphere, enveloping us in sand and saline dust. Our animals suffered frightfully; especially the dogs, obliged to walk over the burning sand. We stopped several times to give them drink, and to moisten their heads as well as our own. But the supply of water now failed! Less than a gallon remained, and this we reserved for the last extremity. 'How much farther is it?' was the question we constantly put to our guide, who invariably answered that it was near, that we should see it from the next sand hill or the one after; and so we passed on upwards of seven miles without having seen a sign of the promised well. In the meanwhile the unfortunate 'Faust' lay down and moaned, giving us to understand that he was quite unable to walk. I then told my companion and guide to ride on, charging the latter to take 'Faust' on his camel as he was completely exhausted. After they had ridden a mile in advance of the caravan the guide pointed out the spot where he said the well should be, appa-

rently about three miles off. Poor 'Faust's' doom was sealed; he was seized with fits, and Mr. Pyltseff, finding it was impossible to hurry on, and too far to ride back to the caravan for a glass of water, waited till we came up, laying 'Faust' under a clump of *saxaul* and covering him with saddle-felt. The poor dog became less conscious every minute, gasped two or three times, and expired. Placing his body on one of the packs, we moved on again, sorely doubting whether there were really any well in the place pointed out to us by the guide; for he had already deceived us more than once. Our situation at this moment was desperate. Only a few glasses of water were left, of which we took into our mouths just enough to moisten our parched tongues; our bodies seemed on fire, our heads swam, and we were close upon fainting. In this last extremity I desired a Cossack to take a small vessel and to ride as hard as he could to the well, accompanied by the guide, ordering him to fire at the latter if he attempted to run away. They were soon hidden in a cloud of dust which filled the air, and we toiled onwards in their tracks in the most anxious suspense. At length, after half an hour, the Cossack appeared. What news does he bring? and spurring our jaded horses, which could hardly move their legs to meet him, we learned with the joy of a man who has been snatched from the jaws of death, that the well had been found! After a draught of fresh water from the vesselfull that he brought, and having wet our heads, we rode in the direction pointed out, and soon reached the

well of Boro-Sondji. It was now two o'clock in the afternoon; we had, therefore, been exposed for nine consecutive hours to frightful heat, and had ridden upwards of twenty miles.

After unloading the camels, I sent a Cossack back with the Mongol for the pack which had been left on the road, by the side of which our other (Mongol) dog, who had been with us nearly two years, was laid. The poor brute had lain down underneath the pack but was still alive, and after getting a draught of water he was able to follow the men back to camp. Notwithstanding the complete prostration of our physical and moral energies, we felt the loss of 'Faust' so keenly that we could eat nothing, and slept but little all night. The following morning we dug a small grave and buried in it the remains of our faithful friend. As we discharged this last duty to him my companion and I wept like children. 'Faust' had been our friend in every sense of the word! How often in moments of trouble had we caressed and played with him, half forgetting our griefs! For nearly three years had he served us faithfully through the frost and storms of Tibet, the rain and snow of Kan-su, and the wearisome marches of many thousand miles, and at last had fallen a victim to the burning heat of the desert; this too within two months of the termination of the expedition!

The route taken by most of the caravans of pilgrims from Urga to Ala-shan on their way to Tibet, turns a little to the west at the Khan-ula

mountains, afterwards taking the direction of the Khalka country. We did not follow this road because the wells along it were not sufficiently numerous, and had been neglected since the outbreak of the rebellion.<sup>1</sup>

Our course lay due north,<sup>2</sup> and after crossing some spurs of the Kara-narin-ula entered the country of the Urutes, which lies wedge-shaped between Ala-shan and the Khalka country.

This country is considerably higher than Ala-shan, but soon begins to sink towards the Galpin Gobi plain, where the elevation is only 3,200 feet; north of this again it rises towards the Hurku mountains which form a distinct definition between the barren desert on the south and the more steppe-like region on the north. There is also a slope from the ranges bordering the valley of the Hoang-ho westward to the Galpin Gobi, which forms a depressed basin, no higher than Djaratai-dabas, extending, as we were informed by the Mongols, for twenty-five days' march from east to west.

The soil of the Galpin Gobi, in that eastern portion of it which we crossed, consists of small pebbles or of saline clay almost devoid of vegetation; the whole expanse of country to the Hurku range being

<sup>1</sup> The Urga caravan, which started in the summer of 1873 for Lhasa to find the Kutukhtu, crossed the Gobi in small échelons and by different routes. People were sent in advance along the high road, to clear out old and dig new wells; notwithstanding which there was a scarcity of water.

<sup>2</sup> There is no road here, and you may sometimes go seventy miles without seeing a track.

a desert as wild and barren as that of Ala-shan, but of a somewhat different character. The sand-drifts, so vast in the latter country, are here of comparatively small extent, and in their stead we find bare clay, shingle, and naked crumbling rocks (chiefly gneiss) scattered in low groups. Vegetation consists of stunted half-withered clumps of *saxaul*, *karmyk*, *budarhana*, and a few herbaceous plants, the chief amongst which is the *sulhir*; the elms<sup>1</sup> are the most striking features in the Urute country, forming in places small clumps; bushes of wild peach<sup>2</sup> are also occasionally met with, such as are never seen in the desert of Ala-shan. Animal life in these regions is very scant; birds and mammals are the same as in Ala-shan. You may often ride for hours together without seeing a bird, not even a stone-chat or a *kolo-djoro*; nevertheless, wherever there are wells or springs, Mongols are to be found, with a few camels, and large numbers of sheep and goats.

During our progress through this country, in the latter half of August, the heat was excessive, although never so high as in Ala-shan. Winds blew ceaselessly night and day, often increasing to the violence of a gale, and filling the air with clouds of saline dust and sand, the latter choking up many of the wells; but these were more frequently destroyed by the rains, which, although rare, came

<sup>1</sup> These trees are from 15 to 20 feet high and 2 to 4 feet thick; they are mostly met with in dry rainwater courses, probably because they find more moisture here.

<sup>2</sup> There is no wild peach in the Ala-shan mountains, or in those of Kan-su and Northern Tibet.



down with terrific force, and for an hour or two afterwards large rivers continued to flow, silting up the wells (always dug on the lower ground) with mud and sand. It would be impossible to travel here without a guide thoroughly acquainted with the country; for destruction lies in wait for you at every step. In fact this desert, like that of Ala-shan, is so terrible that, in comparison with it, the deserts of Northern Tibet may be called fruitful. There, at all events, you may often find water and good pasture-land in the valleys; here, there is neither the one nor the other, not even a single oasis; everywhere the silence of the valley of death.

The well-known Sahara<sup>1</sup> can hardly be more terrible than these deserts, which extend for many hundreds of miles in length and breadth. The Hurku hills, where we crossed, are the northern definition of the wildest and most sterile part of the Gobi, and form a distinct chain with a direction from SE. to WNW.; how far either way we could not say positively; but, according to the information we received from the natives, they are prolonged for a great distance towards the south-east, reaching the mountains bordering the valley of the Hoang-ho, while on

<sup>1</sup> In the Sahara desert we find the same diversity in composition and altitude; the same immense tracts of shingly and saline soil; the same loose drifting sands, with occasional patches of rocky ground covered with thorny scrub, while at distant intervals an oasis or islet of vegetation occurs. Such are also the characteristics of the great deserts of Persia and Arabia, which form the prolongation eastward and northward of the Sahara—'the whole tract from the Sahara to the (Gobi or) Shamo pointing at once to similarity of conditions and sameness of geological origin.' (See Page's *Physical Geography*, p. 104.)—M.

the west they extend, with a few interruptions, to other far distant mountains of no great elevation. If the latter statement may be relied upon, we may conclude that they unite with the Thian Shan, and supply, as it were, a connecting link between that range and the In-shan system; an extremely interesting fact and one worthy the attention of future explorers.

Their width where we crossed them is a little over seven miles, and their apparent height hardly above a thousand feet. The chief formation is porphyry, of which the loose *débris* scattered over their slopes is composed. Springs of water are extremely rare, and the appearance is desolate and lifeless. They are almost devoid of vegetation, except where an occasional dwarf peach, acacia, and *Sarcosygium xanthoxylon* appear, or where along the dry watercourses the *karmyk* and *dirisun*, or more rarely still the elm, is seen. There is a remarkable absence of birds, and it is only now and then that you see a vulture, a lammergeier, a kestrel, a partridge (*Perdix Chukor*), or a stone-chat (*Saxicola Isabellina*).

Yet despite their barrenness, the Hurku hills are inhabited by a large and rare animal, the mountain goat (*Capra Sibirica*), called by the Mongols *Ulan-yaman*,<sup>1</sup> which is also said to have its habitat in the Yegrai-ula mountains in the north-western angle of Ala-shan, not far from the town of Sogo.<sup>2</sup> In the

<sup>1</sup> I.e. red goat.

<sup>2</sup> This town is ten days' journey (about 170 miles) north-west of Din-yuan-ing: it was not occupied by the Dungsans.

whole course of our three years' wanderings we only found this animal in the Hurku hills, and our eagerness to secure its skin for our collection was proportionately great. But in this we were unsuccessful, for the simple reason that our make-shift boots<sup>1</sup> were unfit for climbing over the steep rocky ledges, and this caused us frequently to miss our footing, to the great risk of our guns, or still worse, of our necks. Nevertheless we climbed half a day over these hills, at times literally 'on all fours,' and after completely exhausting ourselves we were convinced that shod as we were it was impossible to slay this wary animal.

South of the Hurku lies the great trade route from Peking, *viâ* Kuku-khoto and Bautu, to Hami, Urumchi and Kulja,<sup>2</sup> branching off near the spring of Bortson, where we encamped for the night, whence one branch leads to the town of Suh-chau. We were told that before the Dungan insurrection the traffic along these roads was considerable, and wells were dug at frequent intervals; now, however, nobody goes that way.

The Hurku hills are the northernmost limit of the distribution of *saxaul*,<sup>3</sup> of the sand-martin and sparrow (*Passer ammodendri*) of Ala-shan; here too we saw for the last time *Perdix Chukor*.

<sup>1</sup> Chinese boots with felt soles are unfit for the European. We tried wearing them, but after an hour's walk rubbed our feet sore.

<sup>2</sup> The former province of Ili.

<sup>3</sup> However, Mongols say that *saxaul* grows north of the Hurku chain, in the bare sands near the trade route between Kuku-khoto and Uliassutai.

Northwards the character of the desert exhibits a marked change. The bare sand-drifts which cover so vast an expanse of the Urute country soon terminate;<sup>1</sup> and in their place we find a clay soil covered with pebbles. But the topography continues the same; level or slightly undulating plains studded with low hills, now connected in low ridges, now standing in isolated groups, composed of silicious slate, gneiss, and some of the later igneous rocks. There is scarcely any vegetation, and indeed it is also scanty on the plains. Wherever the soil is saline the *karmyk* and *budarhana* appear, as in the former tract, and where it improves a little, scrub wormwood and onion are most conspicuous, the latter being characteristic of this region, together with the *dirisun* and a few more of the *Gramineæ* composing the flora of the desert. Vegetation, however, is in every part of the Gobi mainly dependent on rains; for no sooner have these fallen, and the sun's rays exerted their influence, than the young plants shoot up with a rapidity which compensates for their long period of inactivity. Green oases quickly manifest themselves where all was desert; the *dzeren* appears, the loud song of the Mongol lark is heard; the inhabitants remove hither, and the favoured spot teems with life in the midst of surrounding desolation. But how brief a time it lasts! The powerful sun gradually evaporates all

<sup>1</sup> I should mention, however, that sand-drifts occur sporadically in all parts of the Gobi, but are less continuous here than in Ala-shan and the conterminous Urute country.

moisture and withers the grass, trampled under foot by the enormous herds of cattle; the Mongols depart; the dzerens seek other pastures; the larks fly away; and the desert remains as silent as the grave.

The elevation of the Gobi between the Hurku hills and Urga along our line of march nowhere exceeds 5,500 feet, nor falls below 4,000. No depressions occur in this tract, like those of Djaratadabas and the Galpin Gobi, or that along the Kiakhta-Kalgan road; the whole region is a lofty plateau, varying in height between these two extremes.

The Central Gobi, like the other parts of this desert, is absolutely wanting in irrigation; even wells are fewer than in the tract south of the Hurku; yet such as there are, the nomads depend entirely for their supply of water in summer on them, and on the temporary lakes formed after heavy rains, and retained on the surface of the hard clay, while in winter they satisfy their wants with snow, removing at that season to pastures which have been left untouched during summer on account of the absence of water.

The population of the Central Gobi, as in general throughout the Khalka country, is numerous and well to do. Enormous flocks of sheep roam near the encampments; camels, horses, and horned cattle in smaller numbers. Towards the end of summer all these animals become remarkably fat, a surprising circumstance if the scanty pasturage be considered. I think their good condition is mainly attributable to the freedom they enjoy, and also to the absence of

insects, which are such a grievous torment in the more fertile districts.<sup>1</sup>

On crossing the frontier of the Khalka country we entered the principality of Tushetu-khan, and hastened by forced marches to Urga, which was now the goal we were so desirous of reaching. Nearly three years of wanderings, attended by every kind of privation and hardship, had so worn us out physically and morally that we felt most anxious for a speedy termination of our journey; besides which, we were now travelling through the wildest part of the Gobi, where want of water, heat, storms of wind, in short every adverse condition, combined against us, and day by day undermined what little of our strength remained.

I need only describe the water we had to drink after crossing the Hurku hills, to give some idea of our discomforts. Shortly before we passed through this country a heavy fall of rain had choked up most of the wells and had formed temporary lakes, by the side of which Mongols were as usual encamped: some of these lakes were but a hundred yards across and two or three feet deep, yet a dozen or more yurtas would often be seen pitched by them, and their brackish water was rendered muddy and filthy in the extreme by the large herds daily driven to drink in it, the heat of the sun raising its temperature to 77°. The first sight of this water was enough

<sup>1</sup> Tsaidam is an instance of this; here cattle grow thin on good pasturage, only recovering in winter when they are relieved from their tormentors.



to disgust anyone ; but we, like the Mongols, were obliged to use it, taking care to boil it first and to add brick-tea.

The mirage, that evil genius of the desert, mocked us almost daily, and conjured up such tantalising visions of tremulous water that even the rocks of the neighbouring hills appeared as though reflected in it. Severe heat and frequent storms of wind prevented our sleeping quietly at night, much as we needed rest after the arduous day's march.

But not to us alone was the desert of Mongolia an enemy. Birds which began to make their appearance in the latter half of August suffered equally from thirst and hunger. We saw flocks of geese and ducks resting at the smallest pools, and small birds flew to our tent so exhausted with starvation as to allow us to catch them in the hand. We found several of these feathered wanderers quite dead, and in all probability numbers of them perish in their flight across the desert.

The chief migration of birds was in September,<sup>1</sup> and by the 13th of that month we had counted twenty-four varieties. From our observations the geese directed their flight not due south but south-east towards the northern bend of the Hoang-ho.

Eighty-seven miles north of the Hurku hills we crossed another trade route from Kuku-khoto to Uliassutai ;<sup>2</sup> practicable for carts although the traffic

<sup>1</sup> Especially in the latter part of the month, but we had already arrived at Urga, and were therefore beyond the confines of the desert.

<sup>2</sup> In all probability our camels were driven off by this road in 1871, when they were stolen from us near the temple of Shireti-tsu.

is mostly on camels. Since the reinforcement of the Chinese garrison at Uliassutai after its destruction by the Dungs in 1870, the trade has considerably increased; supplies for the troops are sent this way, and Chinese merchants travel with millet and merchandise to barter with the Mongols for wool, leather, and cattle.<sup>1</sup>

Another route, a hundred miles further north, is maintained for the conveyance of mails and officials, between the two above-mentioned towns. Soon after leaving Kuku-khoto this track joins the Kalgan-Urga post road, from which it again diverges at Sair-ussu<sup>2</sup> in the direction of Uliassutai.

Northwards the character of the Gobi again changes, and this time for the better. The sterile desert becomes a steppe, more and more fruitful as we advance to the north. The shingle and gravel are in turn succeeded by sand mixed in small quantities with clay. The country becomes extremely undulating. The gradual slopes of low hills<sup>3</sup> intersect one another in every possible direction, and earn for this region the Mongol name, '*Kangai*,' i.e. hilly. This continues for upwards of a hundred miles to the north of the Uliassutai post road, when the waterless steppe touches the margin of the basin of Lake Baikal; here finally, at Hangin-daban, you find yourself among groups and ridges of rocky

<sup>1</sup> Chinese petty traders ply a barter trade all through the summer in all parts of Mongolia, especially in the east and centre.

<sup>2</sup> Sair-ussu is 220 miles south-east of Urga.

<sup>3</sup> In this part of the Gobi the low hills are almost without rocks.

hills, beyond which lie the well-watered districts of Northern Mongolia.

The poor pasturage of the Central Gobi now gives place to rich meadow-land, increasing in luxuriance the nearer we approach Urga. The *karmyk*, the *budarhana*, and the onion entirely disappear, and are replaced by several kinds of grasses, vetches, *Compositæ* and carnations. Animal life, too, becomes suddenly abundant. Dzerens roam over the fat pasture-lands,<sup>1</sup> alpine hares (*Lagomys ogotono*) and marmots (*Arctomys bobac*) bask in the sunshine, and high up in the sky soars the lark, whose familiar song we had not heard since we left Kan-su.

Water, however, is still as scarce as ever; of lakes and rivers there are none, and only an occasional spring or well, at no depth below the surface. Indeed between Ala-shan and Urga we never saw a well deeper than eight feet, and water is generally obtainable at a less depth by digging for it in the right place.<sup>2</sup>

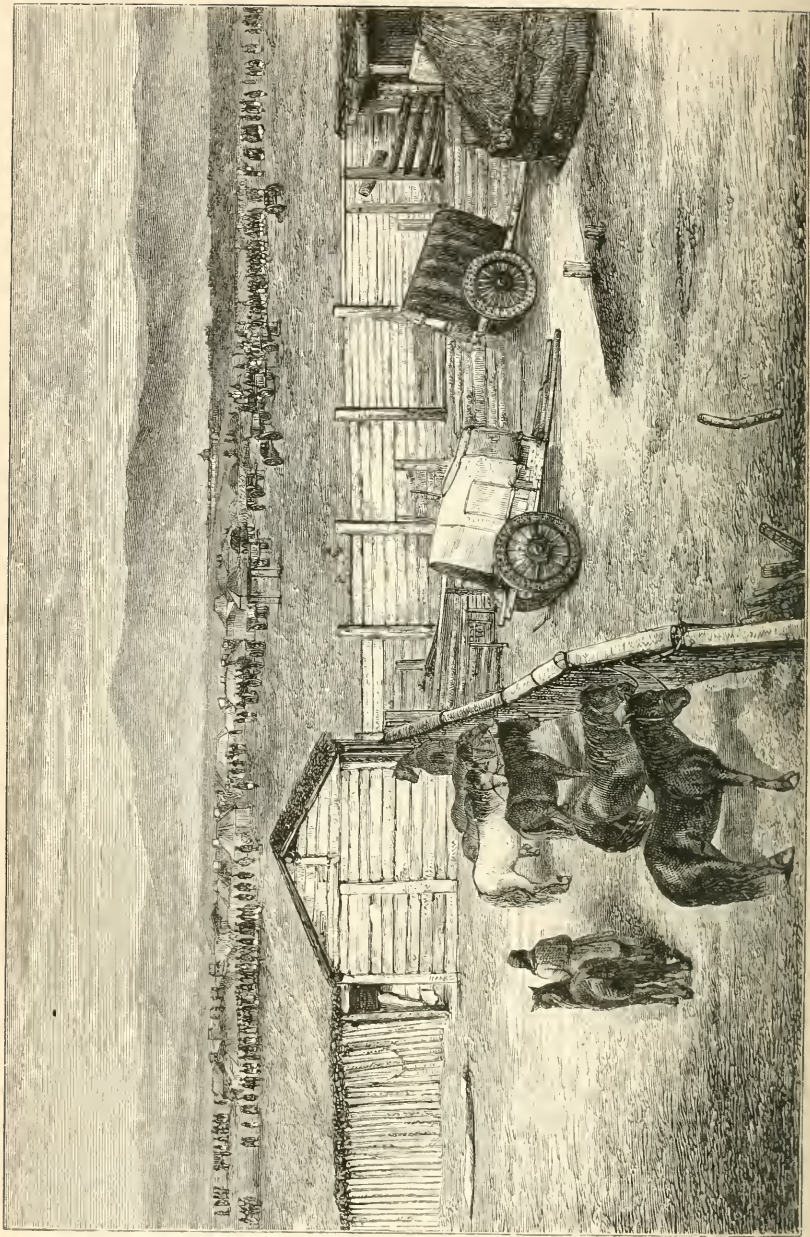
As for the climate of these last months in Mongolia, I should say that the heat in July and August is equally severe, the thermometer rising to 97° Fahr. in the shade. The nights are always warm, sometimes hot,<sup>3</sup> and the air exceedingly dry, no dew falling. We had not a single good shower, although large clouds often gathered only to send a few drops

<sup>1</sup> We saw no dzerens in the Central Gobi, but they appear there periodically, wherever pasturage is abundant.

<sup>2</sup> The wells in Ala-shan are also at no great depth from the surface.

<sup>3</sup> Only on two occasions, viz. on August 21 and 24, the temperature at sunrise fell to 43° and 41° Fahr.







of rain to earth. But, not long before our arrival in the Central Gobi in July, there was a terrific down-pour of rain, accompanied by large hail, which destroyed numbers of cattle and some people.

In August the weather was in general clear, but the winds, which frequently blew with violence, almost invariably lasted throughout the day and night, shifting several times in the twenty-four hours; westerly winds prevailed, with a northerly and southerly variation.

The beginning of September was marked by a sudden alternation from heat to cold, for on the 8th of this month at midday the thermometer stood at 79° Fahr. in the shade, whereas the next day it blew hard from the north-west with large flakes of snow, and the mercury fell to 32° Fahr. at sunrise.

Our impatience to reach Urga kept ever increasing as we approached it, and we counted the time no longer by months or weeks but by days. At length after crossing the Hangin-daban range we arrived on the banks of the Tola, the first river we had made acquaintance with in Mongolia. For 870 miles, i.e. between Kan-su and this river, we had not seen a single stream or lake, only stagnant pools of brackish rain-water. Forests now appeared, darkening the steep slopes of the Mount Khan-ola. Under these grateful circumstances we at last accomplished our final march, and on the 17th September entered Urga, where we received a warm welcome from our Consul. I will not undertake to describe the moment when we heard again our mother-tongue, when



we met again our own countrymen, and experienced once more European comforts. We enquired eagerly what was going on in the civilised world; we devoured the contents of the letters awaiting us; we gave vent to our joy like children; it was only after a few days that we came to ourselves and began to realise the luxury to which our wanderings had rendered us for so long a time strangers. The contrast between the past and the present was so great that what we had gone through appeared like a horrible dream. After resting a week at Urga, we proceeded to Kiakhta, which we reached on the 1st October 1873.

Our journey was ended. Its success had surpassed all the hopes we entertained when we crossed for the first time the borders of Mongolia. Then an uncertain future lay before us; now, as we called to mind all the difficulties and dangers we had gone through, we could not help wondering at the good fortune which had invariably attended us everywhere. Yes! in the most adverse circumstances, Fortune had been ever constant, and ensured the success of our undertaking: many a time when it hung on a thread a happy destiny rescued us, and gave us the means of accomplishing, as far as our strength would permit, the exploration of the least known and most inaccessible countries of Inner Asia.

## NOTES.

---

THE following Note, translated from the Russian, purports to be an extract from the Diary of a Chinese Exile at Urumchi. Although this place is only incidentally mentioned in the preceding narrative, I have nevertheless thought it worth while inserting, the more so, because, from a letter lately received from Colonel Prejevalsky, I learn that his next expedition, to start in March 1876, will be directed to the Eastern Thian Shan and Kuldja, whence he will try to penetrate to Lob-nor and Northern Tibet. Urumchi would, therefore, lie so near his route that doubtless it will be visited by him.

Urumchi, or Urumtsi, the *Bish-balik* of the Middle Ages, has played an important part in history. Its advantageous position at the northern foot of a chain of the Eastern Thian Shan, dividing Dzungaria from Eastern Turkestan, always enabled it to recover rapidly from the wars which destroyed its less fortunate neighbours. Its district is fertile and its water and pasturage abundant. The first mention of Urumchi dates from the period of the establishment of the Chinese empire in the extreme north-west during the Tang dynasty (A.D. 646). Its district, with that of the neighbouring Barkul, became dependent on the government of the province of Kan-su, from which, however, it was separated by the Great Desert of Gobi.

When the Uigurs forsook their homes on the banks of the Orkhon, the Tola, and the Selenga, they settled here; and the ruins still remaining in the vicinity of the town probably date from that period. After the Mongols were

driven out of China, Urumchi and the adjoining district fell into the power of the Eleuths ; but about the middle of the last century it was conquered by the Manchus and became the military centre of a district extending from Barkul to Hur-kara-ussu. In 1775, Kien-long raised it to the rank of a city of the second order, and gave it the Chinese name of Ti-hwa-chau. But it was best known under its ancient name of Bish-balik, i.e. the five cities, when it flourished under the sway of the powerful Khans of the Mongol dynasty.

The streets of this town were wide and populous, and it was visited by merchants from the surrounding countries of China, Mongolia, and Turkestan. It contained a gymnasium, two temples, one school for the town and another for the district, and, according to a Russian traveller (Putimtseff), ranked, in 1811, as the richest town in Dzungaria, and was famed for its manufactures and the industry of its inhabitants. At that time it carried on an important trade with Chuguchak, on the Chinese-Siberian frontier. The mountains on the west are reported to abound in excellent coal, and at their foot lies a great plain, 100 *li* in circumference, covered with sulphurous ashes. Still further to the west, on the borders of Urumchi and Kuldja, is a great abyss 90 *li* in circumference, covered with a surface as white as snow, which becomes so hard, after rain, that if struck with a stick it gives forth a hollow sound like the Solfatara of Pozzuoli, near Naples ; but neither man nor animal may venture beyond its edge without being irrecoverably lost. It is called the 'ash-pit.'

It was Humboldt (see 'Cosmos,' edited by Sabine, i. 232), who first called attention to the volcanic character of the Urumchi district ; and he was followed by Ritter, who adduced the testimony of travellers to prove that severe earthquakes occurred as recently as the year 1716, and the same year (according to Falk) the town of Aksu was almost entirely destroyed by a similar cause. Severtsoff denies the volcanic character of the Western Thian Shan where seen by him ; but as no travellers have, as far as I am aware.

recently explored its eastern chains, the whole subject requires further investigation. The following is the translation :—

The name Urumtsi or Urumchi is the Dzungarian for a wood suitable for a battue. Its official name, as the central place of administration for convict settlements, is Ti-hwachau, but it is better known in the commercial world by the name of Hung-miau-tsz, i.e. 'red temple,' after a pagoda outside the town painted red. Urumchi is situated at the foot of a western spur of the Bogdo-ula, whose triple peak is visible some distance off, and in whose honour sacrifices are annually offered up from a hill in the immediate vicinity of the town.

Urumchi consists of two parts : the old, or commercial, situated on the right bank of the river, on the slope of the mountain ; and the new or Manchu town, placed on low ground near some springs.

The climate is severe, less so, however, since it has been inhabited by a settled population. Rain falls very rarely, not oftener than once or twice a year, and some years not even that, but snow falls in quantities, and lies so thickly on the ground as sometimes to block the communications. The inhabitants supply themselves with water from the streams issuing from the mountains fed by the melting snows ; and from wells, which are easily dug owing to the vertical disposition of the strata. The fields are artificially irrigated. Near the town are some hot sulphur springs.

The district of Urumchi extends westward along a valley watered by the streams flowing from the Thian Shan mountains and afterwards discharging into a great marsh, whence there is no outflow. This is called *Vch-i-luu* or *Vch-i-tan*, i.e. the 'reed marsh.' It is overgrown with reeds, and is several hundred *li* in extent from east to west, forming a barrier to the north of the district. What there is to the north of this again no one can say, for nobody ever set foot there. Popular superstition has it that this is the breeding ground of the locust, although this

insect has never been seen at Urumchi. The peculiarity in the physical formation of the country favours the presumption of the existence of an extensive depression on the northern side of the Thian Shan, like that of Lob-nor on the south.

Within the district ruined sites of towns and traces of ancient cultivated fields may be seen, evidencing ancient settlements in this country ; of especial interest are the ruins near the Himus station, probably dating as far back as the Tang dynasty, and here is preserved a large stone image of Buddha, half buried in the earth ; carbonized objects found here prove, in the opinion of the author of these Notes, that this ancient city was destroyed by fire.

The population of Urumchi consists of Chinese settlers who have lived here for so many generations that they may be regarded as its original inhabitants. When the Manchus conquered Dzungaria they were desirous of consolidating their empire in this remote country, and accordingly drew up a broad scheme of colonization, in accordance with which they planted military colonies of their own dynastic subjects (Manchus, Sibos, Dahurs, Solones, Chakhars, and Eleuths), with their wives and families and a few native Chinese ; further, they encouraged voluntary emigration from China, supplying the colonists with money, provisions, and agricultural implements, and granting them arable land. In other ways, too, they endeavoured to increase the settled population in the nomadic districts.<sup>1</sup>

The military, stationed at Urumchi, consist of Manchus and native Chinese, some of the former being obligatory agriculturists, *Tsi-ho*, i.e. bannermen or Manchus ; the latter, free agriculturists or simply *Bing-hu*, i.e. military.

The common people are divided into several classes :  
1. Those who have voluntarily emigrated from China at the invitation of government, *Nim-pu*. 2. Merchants desirous of becoming agriculturists, who have inscribed them-

<sup>1</sup> About this time a colony of settlers from the towns of Turkestan, called by the Eleuths *Tariachi* (*Taranchi*), or colonists, was established near Ili.

selves among the inhabitants of the town, *Shang-lu*. 3. Chinese vagrants who have been colonized here, *An-cha-lu*. 4. Exiles, including those whose term of banishment has expired, and who have joined the class of agriculturists, *Tsian-lu*. Each class forms a separate commune with an elder, called *Tou-mu*, or *Siang-yu*, to whom reference is made in cases of official interference, whence their authority is very great.

Besides the classes we have enumerated, there are the gardeners, *Yuan-lu*, who hire land from government, but as they do not form part of the regular population, they are not included among the natives. The tradesmen and operatives mostly belong to the class of exiles, and these also supply servants for the townspeople.

The colonists do not live in villages but in detached farms, each on his own land. They never fertilise the soil with manure, but sow their crops in regular rotation. Owing to the depth to which the ground is frozen in winter no corn is sown in autumn but all in spring. Those colonists who belong to the class of exiles return to Urumchi after the harvest is over, and engage in other occupations, repairing to their fields again in spring for the sowing. The merchants often buy the growing crops of the peasants, paying for them as they come up and afterwards gathering them themselves.

Wheat and oats are chiefly cultivated at a place called *Gau-tai*; rice is also sown, but what kind of rice, the dry or the watery, the author does not mention. Oats are used for feeding cattle and distilling brandy. Oatmeal also serves the inhabitants for food. Of the vegetables produced by the gardeners, the author praises the cabbage and turnip in particular. Two kinds of poppy are also cultivated. But in its fruit and all the other produce of its soil, this country is far behind the neighbouring Turkestan.<sup>1</sup> The tobacco cultivated at Urumchi is said to be excellent. Asafœtida and madder are also among its productions, the

<sup>1</sup> This is of course Eastern Turkestan, or Kashgaria, and must not be confounded with Russian Turkestan to the west of the Pamir.



latter superior to the Chinese kind, but hitherto unused ; its root ground into powder is an antidote to the bite of the phalangium.<sup>1</sup>

The natural wealth of the Urumchi district is considerable. In the mountains south of Manas alluvial gold is found everywhere. The iron works near Urumchi are supported by government ; the ore, however, only yields 13 per cent. of metal. Saltpetre is obtained at Yan-balgasun, and several thousand pounds of it are annually sent to the gunpowder manufactories at Ili and Tarbagatai. The talc found here is of excellent quality, and serves the inhabitants instead of glass. The mountains near Urumchi yield an abundance of excellent coal of different qualities ; the best being found in the northern mountains ; this burns without smell or smoke, is easily lighted, not quickly extinguishable, and leaves a perfectly white ash. The coal from the mountains west of the town is suitable for the kitchen and burns to a red ash ; besides these there are two inferior qualities of mineral coal. The best charcoal is prepared from a tree called the *soso* ; if fired in the evening, it will burn all night ; the wood of this tree is very hard, but its root does not penetrate deep into the ground.

Salt is obtained in the lakes and is of a dark colour ; red salt is brought from Turfan.

Urumchi, like Hami, is a great *entrepôt* for trade as well as for the transport and storage of merchandise. It has communications with China (viâ Hami), Turfan, Ili, and Tarbagatai, besides a direct road across the desert to Kuku-khoto, frequented by merchants. The merchants live in the suburbs of the old town in separate communities. Thus there are communities of Suh-chau, Lan-chau, and Kuku-khoto merchants, the latter known at Urumchi as 'guests from the Trans-Ordos country' (*Peh-tau-keh*), are

<sup>1</sup> This may be the venomous spider of Eastern Turkestan described by Timkowski (i. 405). Its bite was said to cause death if remedies were not immediately applied. Miâneh, in Persia, near Tabriz, is also celebrated for a venomous kind of white bug, which is said to be dangerous to strangers.

the richest ; they are natives of the province of Shan-si, and by their superior enterprise have monopolised most of the Central Asian trade. There is also a community of Mongol merchants and Turkestan traders come from Turfan. The author gives no details concerning the trade, merely remarking that the local consumption of tobacco and brandy is enormous.

We have omitted, for the sake of brevity, the author's remarks on the peculiarities of the Urumchi country, its wonderful boars, and its snakes with tails so stumpy as to have the appearance of having been cut off. We also readily omit his sketch of the manners and morals of the inhabitants and the dissipated lives led there by the foreign merchants ; he observes, amongst other things, how easily the Chinese merchants accustom themselves to the gay life at Urumchi and forget their homes ; and how it frequently happens that the families of such persons petition government to take measures to oblige their relatives to return, and that in consequence these are summarily arrested and sent back to China under escort.

## THE RHUBARB PLANT.

P. 81.

The following Note is a translation of an article which appeared in Regel's 'Garten Flora' (January 1875), from the pen of Professor Maximovitch, of St. Petersburg, who is at present engaged in preparing for publication the botanical results of Colonel Prejevalsky's expedition, and to whose kindness I am also indebted for the illustration of the Rhubarb plant on page 82 of this volume.

By way of introduction, I give an extract from 'Purchas, his Pilgrimage,' 'a collection of travels in all parts of the world,' published in London in 1617:—

'In the same province of Tanguth is Succuir,<sup>1</sup> whose mountains are clothed with rheubarbe, from whence it is by

<sup>1</sup> i.e. Suh-chau.

marchants conveyed through the world. *Campion*<sup>1</sup> is the mother citie of the countrey, inhabited by Idolaters, with some of the Arabian and Christian nations. . . .

‘*Succuir* also is, according to his report,<sup>2</sup> ‘great and faire, beautified with many temples. Their *Rheubarbe* they would not bestow the paines to gather, but for the marchants, which from China, Persia, and other places, fetch it from them at a cheap price. Nor doe they in *Tanguth* use it for *Phisick*, as wee heere, but with other ingredients make perfumes thereof for their Idols; and in some places they burn it instead of other firing, and give it their horses to eat. They set more price by an hearbe which they call *membroni cini*, medicinable for the eyes,<sup>3</sup> and another called *Chiai Catai*, growing in *Catay*, at *Cacianfu*,<sup>4</sup> admirable against very many diseases, an ounce whereof they esteem as good as a sack of *Rheubarbe*; whose description you may see at large, according to the relation and picture of the said *Chaggi* in *Ramusius*; for (to add that also) they have many painters, and one countrey inhabited onely by them. These *Tanguthians* are bearded as men in these parts, especially some time of the yeere.’

#### RHEUM PALMATUM L. THE GENUINE RHUBARB.

Although the accounts of the true Chinese Rhubarb, collected from various travellers and writers, agree wonderfully with one another as to its native land, station, gathering, preparation, and principal place of trade; all pointing unanimously to *Kan-su*, the country of the *Tangutans*, and north-westernmost province of *China Proper*; still the only Europeans who had hitherto seen the genuine

<sup>1</sup> i.e. *Kan-chau*.

*Kan-su* itself is a name compounded of the two cities of *Kan-chau* and *Suh-chau* (Yule's ‘*Marco Polo*,’ 2d. ed. i. 222.)

<sup>2</sup> i.e. *Hajji Mahomed's*, the Persian traveller in *Ramusio's* ‘*Navigazioni*.’

<sup>3</sup> An account of this drug *mamira* was given by the late *Daniel Hanbury* in the ‘*Pharmaceutical Journal*,’ some six or seven years ago.

<sup>4</sup> Probably *Kenjanfu*, i.e. *Singanfu*, the capital of *Shen-si*, though tea does not grow there.

Rhubarb in its native land, were Marco Polo and the Jesuits, who travelled through China and surveyed it, at the end of the seventeenth and beginning of the eighteenth century, by order of the government. But as they neither brought to Europe a scientific description of the plant, nor the plant itself, nor even seed, the genuine Rhubarb ever remained unknown. At the beginning of the last century the Russian Government prepared at Kiakhtha, on the Siberian-Chinese frontier, a Rhubarb-‘Brack,’ where all the Rhubarb imported from China was subjected to a compulsory and strict examination previous to being admitted to the European market, in consequence of which that received through Russia, and called the Muscovite Rhubarb, was universally considered the best. The officers stationed at this ‘Brack,’ endeavoured in the discharge of their office to obtain fresh seed of the genuine Rhubarb through the Chinese Rhubarb importers. The jealousy of the Chinese, who would not allow so valuable a plant to leave their land, rendered this attempt at first unsuccessful. A few seeds were certainly obtained in 1740, at a high price, propagated in European gardens, and the plants raised from them considered for some time to be genuine, and even described by Linnæus under the name, *Rheum Rhubarbarum*; but this soon proved to be nothing more than the *Rhapontik R.*, which also grew in Siberia, and Linnæus accordingly altered his hastily-given name to *R. undulatum*. But about the year 1750, fresh seed was obtained from which the genuine *R. palmatum*, never before seen, was propagated. In this way, thanks to the exertions of Russia, Europe acquired the genuine Rhubarb plant; its cultivation developed rapidly, and in the eightieth year of the last century it was widely diffused through Scotland, England, and Germany; indeed, in the two first-mentioned of these countries, where the Horticultural societies in every way encouraged its culture and preparation, the root had already become an article of trade, and was found by many doctors fully equal to the Chinese in operation, and was exclusively used in practice. It was found, however, after numerous experi-

ments, that no roots under eight years' growth furnished a good drug; and that, even with these, much depended on the time of gathering, the after-treatment, and especially the drying; further, it appeared that only the parent root and not the branches furnished the strongest medicine; but as the former was liable to decay, the cultivation was difficult. Such were among the principal causes which combined to disappoint the expectations which had been formed of the garden rhubarb. An opinion, moreover, gained ground among merchants as well as among physicians, that the Chinese quality was superior. Nevertheless *R. palmatum* would have gradually made its way, had not doubts of its being the parent plant of the genuine Rhubarb soon been expressed direct from Russia. Pallas showed the Chinese in Kiakhta dried specimens of *R. palmatum*, and believed their assurances that this was not the true plant, but that it was smaller, and had an undivided leaf, besides other falsehoods.

Sievers, who travelled, between 1791-1795, along the whole Siberian-Chinese frontier, by order of the Russian Government, to study the Rhubarb question, also heard a confirmation of the same story from the Chinese in Kiakhta. Relying on these statements, they asserted that the original plant of the genuine Rhubarb was still unknown. This, doubtless, gave a severe blow to the cultivation of *R. palmatum*; and as another Indian species (*R. australe*) was about this time introduced into England, which appeared to answer better to the Chinese description, everyone turned their attention to it, and *R. palmatum* gradually disappeared from our gardens. It was soon evident that *R. australe* furnished but a bad root, and many authorities, especially Guibourt, were firm in their support of the *R. palmatum* as the only kind which at all equalled in appearance and property the genuine Chinese root; but the mischief was done and could not be easily repaired, for though the interest was still as great as ever, it had become extremely difficult to procure a fresh supply of plants.

It was reserved for Lieut.-Col. Prejevalsky to decide finally the *revata quæstio* of the parent plant of the

Kiakhta or Kan-su Rhubarb in favour of the *R. palmatum* L., he himself having gathered in Kan-su and brought a quantity of good seed to the Botanical Gardens at St. Petersburg. To the communication of Colonel Prejevalsky, (see *supra*, vol. ii. p. 82) I may add, says Professor Maximovitch, that the dried roots (about 36 lbs.) brought home by this traveller, after having been carefully analyzed and tested by our chemists and physicians, entirely agreed with the best Kiakhta Rhubarb both in internal structure as well as in the number of the crystals of oxalate of lime, the quantity of extract obtained from the root, and in the medicinal effect of the powder and other preparations. The only apparent difference between them was, that not having been subjected to a second cleaning and sorting process, small layers of rind still adhered to these samples, and the holes through which the string had passed by which they had been suspended to dry, were of smaller diameter than those of the Kiakhta Rhubarb, in which all the rind was carefully scraped off and the holes enlarged in order to remove all discoloured or bad pieces. The rules for the cultivation of Rhubarb (*R. palmatum* L.), are as follow:— Plant in light, loose black soil, in a shady situation, and not exposed to the south; leave sufficient space for each plant to develop itself (8 feet), water regularly, for it must be borne in mind that the climate of Kan-su is damp. Moreover, I think it necessary to call attention to two other conditions.

According to an analysis of the (salt) water of Koko-nor, made by Professor Schmidt of Dorpat, from samples brought by Colonel Prejevalsky, it was found to be much richer in salts of lime than other salt water; and this property Professor Schmidt attributes to the lime contained in the sweet waters which fall into the lake. But since the medicinal value of the root increases in proportion with the greater quantity of crystals of oxalate of lime contained in it, and a good root is immediately ascertained if it grate between the teeth on being chewed, it follows that hard (lime-containing) water is essential to its successful cultiva-



tion, for it supplies the plant with the lime requisite for the formation of crystals. Perhaps, it was entirely owing to the absence of these requisite conditions, that the root of the *R. palmatum*, as formerly cultivated in Europe, did not grate between the teeth, and was less powerful in operation than the Chinese Rhubarb of commerce, which it resembled in every other respect.

Another important circumstance is, that the principal root becomes so rotten under cultivation, that the less valuable lateral branches are alone retained for use ; whereas, the pieces cut from the main root are by far the most prized. Rain-water accumulates in the cavities formed by the breaking off and decaying of the flower stalks, from which it is prevented from running off by the numerous old leaf sheaths which remain round the *hilum*, or eye, and in this way causes an ever-deepening and spreading decay. How this can best be prevented must be left to further experiments to determine ; the remedies which appear to be most practical are : cutting away the old leaf sheaths and withered stalks before they have had time to decay at the root, and covering or stopping the eye of the stalk. Perhaps, it would be best not to allow the plants, in general, to bloom. Nearly all our larger kinds of Rhubarb, not excepting the *R. palmatum*, show in almost every joint of their root-leaves and of the old *stipules* numerous embryo buds, of which only the smallest come to maturity, because the plants must develop their flower-stalks. But, whilst old plants hardly ever throw out more than three flower-stalks, and their principal roots have seldom more than four or five root-heads, each of which has a corresponding stalk, or would have, were it not for the obstructing formation of the stem, which causes them to throw out numerous buds, these not only add more quickly to the size of the root but also form a number of shoots. Now it is just this which causes the marbled appearance with the irregular stellated spots in the *parenchyma*, and the more this is encouraged, so much the more will that valued structure thrive, which, as is well known, quite does away with the side branches of

the root. This difficulty in the cultivation of the *Rheum palmatum* induces me to say a few words of a newer importation—the *Rheum officinale*.

When the importation through Kiakhta ceased, the 'Brack' there was useless, and, therefore, done away with; and the Muscovite—the best Rhubarb—entirely disappeared from the market. Henceforward, the Rhubarb was shipped from the Chinese ports to Europe; and, owing to the absence of a 'Brack,' every commodity, good, bad, or indifferent, found purchasers. The consequence was, that a quantity of inferior, decayed, or badly dried roots, with an admixture of thin pieces cut from the lateral shoots, were introduced into the trade. The quantity of Kan-su Rhubarb likewise diminished in consequence of the disturbed state of that province. But, inasmuch as the need of a good article continued as great as ever, and the demand remained firm, new countries began interesting themselves in its production, and a new and excellent species from the southern provinces of China made its appearance in the markets of Europe. In 1867, the French Consul at Hankau (on the Yang-tse-kiang), M. Dabry, obtained through the Chinese several growing roots of this good Rhubarb, and these he forwarded to Paris, where they arrived certainly in a very bad condition, notwithstanding which, one plant was raised, which blossomed in 1871, and was described by Baillon under the name of *Rheum officinale*.

This plant exhibited a striking contrast to all kinds of Rheum, in that it formed ramified stalks above ground, a foot long and of great thickness, and as no water can accumulate upon it, it is easily preserved from harm. Baillon considered it an inhabitant of Eastern Tibet, and the only genuine parent-plant of the best Chinese Rhubarb; and Flückiger and Hanbury, as we have seen, hastily accepted it as such.

It is very possible that we may have in this new species a plant which may take the place of the old and less easily cultivated *R. palmatum*. But I cannot help remarking, that every *Rheum* hitherto introduced among us, as a

medicinal plant (even *R. undulatum* and *R. compactum*), at first answered admirably, but soon afterwards deteriorated. It remains then to await the issue of the further cultivation of this species hitherto propagated in but a few gardens, and in single specimens. But even admitting that we now possess two kinds which furnish excellent Rhubarb, the preference must still be given to *R. palmatum*, since its genuineness as the parent plant of the Kiakhta Rhubarb has now been established beyond all doubt, seeing that its fame dates back to the times of the Grecian and Arabian doctors, and that its earlier cultivators have decided, that, with careful treatment, its root affords an admirable drug. Let us hold firmly to *R. palmatum*, and take care that its wholesale cultivation does not die out, now that a quantity of freshly imported seed renders it once more practicable. Should the *R. officinale* prove to be an equally valuable production, we have the choice between the two, unless it be found that one plant thrives better in a different climate to the other. As ornamental plants, both have certainly a future.

#### THE MANUL (FELIS MANUL OF PALLAS).

P. 187.

This species is intermediate between the cats and the lynxes, but its tail is much longer than that of the lynx and its ears are not pencillated. It is said to possess one tearing tooth fewer than the typical cats; but still it belongs to the genus *Felis*. In its general habits it differs from all its congeners, being found in bleak and exposed places, generally among rocks, where it seeks its food by chase rather than by stratagem. That food consists chiefly of hares and other rodent animals; but, true to the habits of the genus, it preys during the night. It does not climb trees or enter forests, and, according to all the accounts we have of it, it differs greatly from the rest of the genus. It combines with the characters of the cats and lynxes some at least of the habits of the fox.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'British Cyclopædia.'

## SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

## THE TALDI.

P. 69-70.

IT is obvious that the passage of Palladius which Mr. Morgan has translated in the footnotes bears no very clear reference to the *Taldi* of Col. Prejevalsky. Mr. Ney Elias remarks on his account of them as follows:—

‘The description of these people, as also the locality in which they occur, corresponds closely with Huc’s account of the race he calls *Dchiahours*. The name of *Dalde*<sup>1</sup> may certainly have suffered in copying or printing, but I can find no approximation to it in any work treating of Western China; nor, with the exception of Huc’s, it must be added, of the *Dchiahours* either. The only specimen of *Dchiahours* that I am personally acquainted with is Huc’s old servant “Samdadchiemba,” who certainly, as regards language, corresponds to Prejevalsky’s description of the *Daldes*.’<sup>2</sup>

I transcribe Huc’s account, referred to by Mr. Elias: ‘The *Dchiahours* . . . occupy the country commonly called *San-tchouan*—“Three Valleys,”—the native district of our camel-driver Samdadchiemba. The *Dchiahours* have all the rascality and craft of the Chinaman without his civility and polished language; so they are feared and detested by all their neighbours. When they fancy their rights infringed on it is always with the dagger that they seek redress. Among them the man held in most honour is always the one who has committed most murders. They

<sup>1</sup> So it is written in Col. Prejevalsky’s original letters as published in the *Journal de St. Pétersbourg*.

<sup>2</sup> *Proc. Roy. Geog. Soc.*, xviii. 84.

speak a language of their own, which is a medley of Mongol, Chinese, and East-Tibetan. By their own account they are of Tartar origin; and if it be so it may be said that they have exceedingly well preserved the savage and independent character of their forefathers, whilst the manners of the present people of Mongolia have been singularly modified and softened.

‘Although subject to the Emperor of China, the Dchia-hours are under the immediate government of a kind of hereditary sovereign belonging to their own tribe, and bearing the title of *Tou-ssé*.’<sup>1</sup>—[Y.]

#### SILING AND TONKIR.

Pp. 107 and 119.

What the footnote at p. 107 refers to is this:—

Certain textures of shawl-wool, or resembling it, are imported from the eastward into Kashmír and Ladák under the name of *S'ling*. And certain other manufactures were found by Mr. R. B. Shaw in the markets of Kashgar, which were stated to come from a region called *Zilm*. Knowing from P. della Penna, and other sources, that Sining-fu was called by the Tibetans *Ziling* or *Jiling*, and by the Mongols *Seling Khoto*, it seemed to me almost certain that both the *S'ling* of Ladák and the *Zilm* of Kashgar, referred to the same place. Mr. Shaw doubted, from the particulars given him, if *Zilm* could be so far east; but I see by a recent letter that he now accepts the identity.<sup>2</sup>

In the footnote at p. 119, it is indicated that the Tonkir of the Russian traveller is Huc's *Tang-keu-cul*. The latter calls it ‘a small city, but very populous, and with very

<sup>1</sup> ii. 35-36.

<sup>2</sup> In the *Philos. Transactions*, vol. lxxvii. pt. ii. p. 482, in a letter from Mr. Stewart to Sir John Pringle, regarding Bogle's mission, dated March 20, 1777, mention is made of *Seling*, as a place to which the caravans traded. It is also probably the place ‘on the river Sullum,’ mentioned by Turner (see *Embassy*, p. 274).

great trade. It is a regular Babel' (ii. 54). The place is mentioned in P. Orazio della Penna's account of Tibet as *Tongor* (*J. Asiat.* 2nd S. xiv. 195). And in the Chinese 'Itinerary' already quoted, we find under the first march out of Sining-fu: 'Between this and Sining there is a large lamasery, *Denger*. In (1727) this became a trade-centre for all the Mongols west of the Hoang-ho.'—[Y.]

#### THE KYANG AND THE KULAN.

P. 146.

Some naturalists have distinguished between the *Kulan* of West Turkestan, and the *Kyang* (or *Djiggetai* of Pallas) of Tibet and Mongolia. But it appears from the text that the *Kulan* of the Turki-speaking people of Central Asia is the same as the *Kyang* of the Tibetans, and of our Trans-himalayan sportsmen. And this is confirmed by a passage in Dr. Bellew's 'Kashmir and Kashgar' (p. 400), from which it appears that a place on the Yanghi Dábán Road is called *Kulan Uldi*, 'The wild horse (ass?) died.' Now I believe there is certainly only one species in the Trans-himalayan region; indeed, I see in another place Dr. Bellew says: 'We came upon a herd of six or seven *kyang* or *culan*' (p. 182).—[Y.]

#### THE TANGUTANS.

P. 109.

Tangut was a kingdom well known by that name in the Middle Ages, and nearly corresponded to modern Kansuh in a general way. Indeed Kansuh was, under the Mongol Emperors (1260–1368) the official Chinese name of the region known to the Mongols and Western Asiatics as Tangut. It was, however, in the Middle Ages also called *Ho-si*, 'Country west of the (Yellow) River;' and in a Perso-Chinese Dictionary, made about A.D. 1400, *Tangut* is explained by *Ho-si*. The bulk of the inhabitants were of Tibetan blood, and the capital was at Ning-hia, on the



Yellow River. The country was several times overrun by Chinghiz-Khan, and on the last occasion (1227) he died in this country. The name is still, we see, in use among the Mongols, but it seems often to be applied to the whole of Tibet. There is something requiring further elucidation about this double application of the name. The Tangutans of Prejevalsky are those Eastern Tibetans who are called by the Chinese *Si-fan*, or 'Western Barbarians.' They inhabit the district of Koko-nor, and extend also along the western borders of Szechwan.<sup>1</sup>

The Sifan are divided in the Chinese accounts of the frontier states into Black Sifan (probably the *Kara-Tangut* of Prejevalsky) and Yellow Sifan; the former being derived from their custom of using tents made of black yak-hair cloth. The Yellow are stated always to have a prince at their head who becomes a cleric and wears the yellow robe. *Sifan* seems, undoubtedly, often to be employed in Chinese for people of the Tibetan race generally; and I suspect these Yellow Sifan are simply the Tibetans of Tibet, under the Grand Lama, whilst the Black Sifan are the nomadic people of Tangut.

The language of the vocabulary given by Prejevalsky at pp. 136-138 is evidently Tibetan. And this agrees with what is said in the Chinese papers translated by Grosier: 'The language of Tibet is almost the same as that of the people called Sifan, and differs only in the meaning attached to certain words, and in some peculiarities of pronunciation.'<sup>2</sup>

The difficulties of Tibetan spelling, and other uncertainties of transcription by ear, render it hard for anyone but an expert to make a thorough comparison. But the following examples will show that the language is Tibetan:—

<sup>1</sup> Kovalefsky gives '*Tanghout*; Ch. Sifan . . . . pays situé au nord et à l'occident de Chen-si province chinoise;' but also '*Tanghout-tchi*, connaisseur de la langue Tangoutaine (*tibétaine*).' Della Penna speaks of *Tibet* as being called 'Kingdom of Tangut.'

<sup>2</sup> *Desc. Gén. de la Chine*; 1785. 4to. pp. 150-152.

English.	Prejevalsky's Vocabulary of Tangutan.	Tibetan. <sup>1</sup>
Mountain . . . . .	<i>Rī</i>	<i>Ri</i>
Lake . . . . .	<i>Tsō</i>	<i>Thso</i>
Water . . . . .	<i>Chsiu</i>	<i>Ch'hu</i>
Grass . . . . .	<i>Rtsa</i>	<i>Tsa</i>
Fire . . . . .	<i>Mī</i>	<i>Me</i>
Rain . . . . .	<i>Tsiar</i>	<i>Char-bba</i>
Lightning . . . . .	<i>Tok</i>	—
Thunder . . . . .	—	<i>Tog</i>
Heat . . . . .	<i>Tsa-tchigeh</i>	<i>Cha</i>
Wind . . . . .	<i>Lung</i>	gn <i>Lung</i>
Road . . . . .	<i>Lam</i>	<i>Lam</i>
Butter . . . . .	<i>Marr</i>	<i>Mar</i>
Meat . . . . .	<i>Shā</i>	<i>ʃsha</i>
Sheep . . . . .	<i>Liuk</i>	<i>Lug</i>
Fox . . . . .	<i>Gā</i>	<i>Kwa</i>
Camel . . . . .	<i>Namung</i>	r <i>Ha-mong</i>
Tobacco . . . . .	<i>Do-twa</i>	—
Smoke . . . . .	—	<i>Du-twa</i>
Ears . . . . .	<i>Rna</i>	r <i>Na-twa</i>

*etc. etc.*

*Numerals.*

—	Prejevalsky's Tangutan.	Jaeschke's Tibetan.
1 . . . . .	Khtsik	chig
2 . . . . .	Ni	nyi (s)
3 . . . . .	Sum	sum
4 . . . . .	Bjeh	zhi
5 . . . . .	Rna	nga
6 . . . . .	Chok	{ dhug dshug <sup>2</sup>
7 . . . . .	Diun	dun
8 . . . . .	Dziat	gyad
9 . . . . .	Rgiu	gu, rgu <sup>2</sup>
10 . . . . .	Tsiu-tamba	chu, or chu-tham-pa

It may be noted that both Black and Yellow Sifan appear to have been visited by Friar Odoric as early as 1326 or thereabouts. He says, in quitting *Kansan*, i.e. Kenjan-fu or Shensi: 'I came to a great kingdom called

<sup>1</sup> Partly from Jaeschke's *Romanized Tibetan and English Dict.*, Kyelang in Lahoul, 1866; partly from Klaproth's *Asia Polyglotta*.

<sup>2</sup> *Asia Polyglotta*.

TIBET, which is on the confines of India Proper, and is subject to the Great Khan. They have in it great plenty of bread and wine as anywhere in the world. The folk of that country dwell in tents made of black felt. But the chief and royal city is all built with walls of black and white, and all its streets are very well paved. In this city no one shall dare to shed the blood of any, whether man or beast, for the reverence they bear to a certain idol which is there worshipped. In that city dwelleth the *Abassi*, i.e. in their tongue, the Pope, who is head of all the idolaters, and who has the disposal of all their benefices, such as they are, after their manner.' This is very curious, as showing that there was a Grand Lama (at Lhasa?) recognised as Pope of Lamaism many years before the period assigned to the establishment of the spiritual dynasty of the Dalai Lama as now existing.—[Y].

#### THE DUNGANS.

P. 122.

There is no need to add to what has been written about these *Tungani*, whom Russian ears apparently transform into *Dungans*. The name does not seem to be applied in any sense of race, but simply to be the popular name by which *Chinese Mahommedans* are known among the Turki-speaking people of Central Asia, and on the Russian frontier.

The earliest mention of it that I have met with is in 'Izzat Ullah's 'Itineraries,' published in the seventh volume of the 'Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society' (p. 310). The name also occurs thus in Burnes:—

'These soldiers (of the Chinese garrisons in Kashgar) are drawn from the tribe of Toonganee, who claim relationship to the army of Alexander; they are Mahommedans from the adjacent provinces, but dress as Chinese.'<sup>1</sup>

And in Mr. Wathen's 'Notes on Chinese Tartary,' derived from certain pilgrims who passed through Bombay to Mecca in 1835, we find the following:—

<sup>1</sup> *Travels to Bokhara*, 1834; ii. 229.

'The Tungani live in the country, the chief towns of which are Salar and Sairam. Alexander the Great is said to have penetrated as far as Salar, and to have left a colony of his soldiers in the country, from whom the *Tunganis* are descended. • They derive the name from several Turkish and Persian words signifying "left behind," "looking back," &c.'<sup>1</sup> This shows how old is the question of the obscure etymology of the name. The most probable seems to be that assigned by Vámbéry, from a Turki word signifying 'a convert.'—[Y.]

## RED AND YELLOW LAMAS.

P. 151.

Col. Prejevalsky's definition of the radical difference between these would better have been described as *loose*, than as 'not to be relied on.' Some notion of the distinction may be obtained by reading what is said about Tsong-kaba's reform of Lamaism, in the Introduction. Marriage of the clergy was admitted by the Red, or unreformed, Lamas in some cases, and under some restrictions. But it does not appear that it is by any means a general or present characteristic of them. Ladak, Bhutan, and Sikkim are nurseries of the Red Sect, since the predominance of the Yellow in Tibet Proper.—[Y.]

## DIFFICULTY AS TO FIRES AT GREAT ALTITUDES.

P. 183.

Marco Polo notices this in his account of Pamir; and a note on that passage (2nd ed. i. p. 187) gives some remarks on the subject by Humboldt, and some of the experience of my friend Col. Montgomerie, R.E.—[Y.]

<sup>1</sup> *Journ. As. Soc. Bengal*, iv. 655.

THE MURUI-USSU, THE TIBETAN SOURCE OF THE  
YANGTSE-KIANG.

P. 221.

The Chinese seem generally to regard the River Min, which flows through the city of Chingtu-fu, and joins the Yangtse at that of Siu-chau-fu, as the true river. But there is no question that the river which comes from Tibet is much the longer, and probably little question that it is also much the larger. The Dutchman, Samuel Van de Putte, who travelled from Lhassa to Peking in the earlier part of last century, wrote to the Italian priests at Lhassa, that when crossing the river upon that journey he started in a boat of hide one morning, passed the night upon a small island in the river, and did not achieve the completion of the passage till the middle of the following day.<sup>1</sup>

The 'Tangutan' name given as *Di-chu* in the text should probably be *Bi-chu*. *Bi-tsiu*, or *Bhri-tsiu*, 'the River of the Yak-cow,' is the Tibetan name, and this is almost certainly the origin of the name *Brius*, that Marco Polo gives to the river. The Mongol name *Murui-ussu* means, not 'River-water,' as the author says, but 'Winding River.' The Chinese name down to Siu-chau is Kinsha-Kiang or *Gold-sand River*.—[Y.]

<sup>1</sup> *Journ. Asiatique*, 2nd series, xiv. 191-192. A curious notice of this Dutch traveller has just appeared in Mr. Markham's work upon Tibet.

TABLE OF  
COLONEL PREJEVALSKY'S OBSERVATIONS,  
*Worked out by Fritsche, Director of the Russian Observatory at Peking.*

	North Lat.	Long. East of Greenwich	Date	Magnetic declination	Horizontal intensity; absolute measurement	Height above sea in feet
Peking	39° 56' 8"	116° 28' 6"	March 12, 1871	.	.	121
Ku-peh-kau	40° 41' 7"	117° 8' 6"	" 18, "	.	.	692
Fu-ning-hien	41° 22' 0"	117° 5' 3"	.	.	.	2,059
24 miles 1,480 yards SE. of Lama-miau on the Luan-ho	.	.	.	.	.	3,890
Town of Lama-miau (Dolon-nor)	42° 16' 6"	116° 19' 0"	" 28, "	.	.	3,985
Dalai-nor lake	43° 18' 0"	116° 58' 0"	April 6, "	.	.	4,168
Road on the plateau from Lama-miau to Kalgan	.	.	.	.	.	4,592
Pass 12 miles 740 yards NNW. of Kalgan	.	.	.	.	.	5,356
Suma-hada range, plain between the mountains	40° 50' 7"	114° 53' 1"	" 6, "	.	.	2,709
Munni-ula range, plain between the mountains	41° 27' 7"	112° 0' 0"	June 6, "	+ 1° 50' 5"	.	5,562
Tsaiming-nor lake in Ordos, right bank of Hoang-ho	41° 26' 0"	110° 0' 0"	April 28, 1872	.	2,7343	5,405
Shuten temple	40° 20' 7"	108° 45' 0"	Aug. 6, 1871	+ 1° 11' 0"	.	3,198
Bau-Tuhum temple, 7 miles 796 yards S. of the northern boundary of Ala-shan	41° 12' 5"	106° 30' 0"	Nov. 24, "	+ 1° 20' 0"	.	3,280 ?
Southern boundary of Ala-shan, 10 miles 980 yards ESE. of the town of Din-yuan-ing	40° 43' 9"	106° 0' 0"	Aug. 7, 1873	.	.	4,352
Din-yuan-ing	38° 49' 4"	105° 50' 0"	July 18, "	- 1° 6' 6"	2,9267	4,821
Tsagan-nor lake	39° 5' 0"	105° 46' 0"	June 12, 1872	.	.	3,421
Summit of Bayan Tsumbur in Southern Ala-shan	39° 45' 0"	105° 55' 0"	Sept. 20, 1871	.	.	10,646
Town of Ta-ying	37° 40' 0"	103° 45' 0"	June 16, 1872	.	.	5,913
Town of Ta-ying-gu	37° 39' 0"	103° 48' 0"	" 20, "	.	.	8,666
Summit of Mount Sodi-soruksum, near Chobsen	37° 3' 0"	102° 14' 0"	Sept. 15, "	- 0° 50' 0"	.	8,921
Lake Demchuk at the foot of Mount Gadjur, near Chobsen	.	.	July 21, "	.	.	13,579
24 miles 1,480 yards SE. of Chobsen	36° 35' 0"	102° 35' 0"	Aug. 10, "	.	.	13,074
			Sept. 29, "	.	3,0392	—



## COLONEL PREJEVALSKY'S OBSERVATIONS—continued.

	North Lat.	Long. East of Greenwich	Date	Magnetic declination	Horizontal intensity; absolute measurement	Height above sea in feet
Si-ning-fu . . . . .	36° 30' 0"	101° 48' 0"	Aug. 26, 1872	—	—	7,235
Temple of Chertinton in Tating valley . . . . .	37° 15' 0"	102° 50' 0"				
Lake Koko-nor, south-western shore, near the mouth of the Poubain-gol river . . . . .	37° 1' 2"	99° 18' 0"	April 9, 1873	-2° 26' 9"	3,0363	10,495
Pass over the southern Koko-nor range . . . . .			March 14, 1873			13,517
Bain-gol river in Tsaidam . . . . .			Nov. 28, 1872			8,839
Dsung-zasak, northern foot of Burkhan Buddha . . . . .	36° 16' 1"	96° 6' 0"	Dec. 3, "		3,0051	8,039
Pass over the Burkhan Buddha . . . . .			" 6, "			15,322
Highest point of this pass . . . . .			" 6, "			16,319
Nomokhun-gol river . . . . .			" 8, "			11,300
Pass over the Shuga range . . . . .			Feb. 14, 1873			15,476
Lake Houha-nor, on plateau of N. Tibet, S. of Shuga range . . . . .			Jan. 2, "			14,373
Northern foot of Bain-kara-ula range . . . . .			" 12, "			14,931
Murui-ussat river (Yangtse-kiang), near the mouth of its tributary, the Napchitai-ulan-muren . . . . .	34° 43' 1"	94° 48' 0"	" 23, "	-3° 58' 9"	3,1509	13,146
Bain-bulik spring, 2½ miles from Hurku range . . . . .	42° 35' 9"	106° 0' 0"	Aug. 21, "			4,774
Bortson spring at the southern foot of Hurku range . . . . .			" 14, "			4,232
The Galpin-Gobi . . . . .			" 28, "			3,172
Trade route between Kuku-khoto and Uliassutai . . . . .			Sept. 6, "			5,400
Uliassutai post-road . . . . .	44° 23' 9"	106° 0' 0"	" 1, "	-0° 42' 1"		4,087
Guli spring . . . . .	44° 50' 0"	106° 0' 0"	" 3, "			
Tushetu-koang Yurtia . . . . .	40° 51' 5"	106° 0' 0"	" 13, "		2,5461	
Khari-nor lake . . . . .						4,485

According to Fritsche's Observations.

Peking . . . . .	N. Lat. 39° 0'	Long. E. of Greenwich 116° 5'	Height 121 feet
Kalgan . . . . .	40° 8'	114° 9'	2,706 do.

# INDEX.

## AIM

**A**IMAK, the word, i. 84  
 Ala-shan, xxix, i. 17, 25, 28, 40, 62, 72, 121, 122, 143, 153, 174 *seq.*, 193, 221, 231-270; its mountains, i. 256-269; ii. 56, 259-266; divisions, i. 238; prince, 241 *seqq.*; ii. 2 *seqq.*, 11, 13, 34 *seqq.*; Southern, 53, 74, 78, 123; return to, 254  
 Alai steppe, xxi  
 Alatau, ii. 236  
 Alexander the Great, ii. 304 *seq.*  
 Almanack, Mongol, i. 65  
 Altai range, i. 166  
 Alin temple, ii. 104  
 Amban, or governor, i. 242 *seqq.*, 247 *seq.*; interview with, 253 *seqq.*  
 Amitâbha, xxxv, xxxvii  
*Amneh* (ancestors), the sacred peaks, ii. 76  
 Amur R. and country, i. 160, 170; ii. 57, 78, 79, 84  
 Anguli-nor, lake, i. 33  
 Antelope, steppe- (*Antilope gutturosa*), i. 20, 28; ii. 61; shooting, i. 29 *seq.*; first sight of, 31; mountain- (*A. caudata*), 156 *seq.*; black-tailed (*A. subgutturosa*), 197, 207 *seqq.*; ii. 49; orongo- (*A. Hodgsoni*), 187, 204; superstitions regarding, 207; horns of, 223; ata or little (*A. picticauda*), 187, 208 *seq.*  
 Ara-Bautu, *see* Bautu  
*Ara-mirgin-gol* R., i. 168, 173  
 Arbus-ula range, i. 221, 257  
 Argali, i. 139-142; shooting, 140 *seq.*; its range, 142; ii. 5; the white-breasted, 201 *seqq.*  
 Arnold, Matthew, xvii  
 Ata-dzeren, *see* Antelope  
 Atmosphere, dryness of, ii. 36; effects of rarefied, xvii *seqq.*, 178, 183, 305

## BOR

**B**ACTRIAN Camel, *see* Camel  
 Baga-Khatun, i. 187, 198  
 Baian-gol R., ii. 166, 171, 175  
 Baian-kara-ula range, xv, ii. 181, 221  
 Baikal lake, ii. 84, 281  
 Baldin-Sordji, i. 245 *seq.*, 249, 250, 253; ii. 1, 36, 38, 43  
*Bandi*, a rank of clergy, i. 79  
*Banik-Koksum*, ii. 152  
 Banner, legend of White, i. 204 *seq.*  
 Barkul, i. 86; ii. 69  
 Bargaining, dumb, i. 145, 284  
 Barun-kung, a territorial division, i. 144  
 Bashpa Lama, i. 280  
 Bathar-Sheilun temple, i. 155 *seq.*, 158  
*Baumsteitismus*, universal panacea, ii. 164 *seq.*  
 Bautu, town of, i. 158, 172; expedition enters, 174; military quartered at, 177; 183, 186, 187, 193, 195; ii. 3, 4, 10, 11, 276  
 Bayan Tsumbur Mt., i. 257  
 Bears, ii. 249 *seqq.*; three kinds in Russia, 251  
 Beggars, Mongol, i. 14; of Peking, 91  
 Bellew, Dr., ii. 301  
 Bergmann, referred to, i. 194  
 Birch, black, i. 7, 160; white, 7, 160, 259, 261; red-barked, ii. 78  
 Birds, *see* Ornithology  
 Blyth, the naturalist, referred to, ii. 146  
 Bodhisatvas, xxxv, i. 282  
 Bogdo-kuren, i. 8, 15  
 Bogle, i. 281, 286; ii. 300  
 Boots, of yak-hide, ii. 215  
 Boro-sondji well, ii. 271  
*Boro-tohoi*, a Mongol name for Ordos, i. 196

## BOR

- Bortson well, ii. 276  
 Botanical gardens, of St. Petersburg, i. 95, 96  
 Bread, leavened, ii. 58  
 Brehm, the naturalist, referred to, ii. 239  
*Budarhana*, a desert shrub, i. 19, 122, 235; ii. 55, 159, 269  
 Buddha, image of, i. 9, 211; ii. 71  
 Buddha-La, i. 274, 275  
 Buddhas, incarnate, xxxiii *seqq.*  
 Buddhism, xxxii *seq.*, i. 74  
 Buguk-gol R., ii. 107  
 Bugutui Mt., i. 257 *seqq.*; ii. 262  
 Bugutui-gol R., i. 258  
 Bukha-nor lake, ii. 182  
 Bulun-tokhoi, ii. 123, 126  
 Buriat, *see* Cossack  
 Burkhan-Buddha range, xv *seq.*, ii. 74, 166, 174 *seqq.*; the name, 175; 177, 201, 213, 224  
 Burnes, ii. 304  
 Bushell, Dr., referred to, xxi, i. 105, 283  
 Buzzard (*Buteo ferox*), i. 27

**CALACHAN**, *see* Ning-hia-fu

- Camels, caravans of, i. 36 *seq.*; their flesh used as food, 43; the two-humped or Bactrian, 120-131; breeds of, 121; their habits, 121 *seq.*; food, 122; endurance, 123; timidity, 124; rearing, 124; training, 125; loads, 126; rate of travel, 127; coat-shedding, 127; ailments, 128, 130; uses, 129; treatment of, 130; their aversion to water, 179; loss of, by expedition, ii. 16 *seqq.*; their sufferings from damp, 98; wild, xxvi *seqq.*, 169 *seq.*  
*Caragana*, a flowering shrub, i. 190, 259; ii. 80, 86 *seq.*, 260, 262  
 Caravan, Colonel Prejevalsky's re-organisation of, i. 133 *seq.*, 216  
 Carelin, M., ii. 236  
 Carp, ii. 32 *seq.*  
 Cart, Chinese, i. 4  
 Cattle, prices of, in Mongolia, i. 57; importance of, 149; wild, 212 *seqq.*  
 Chadau (Chatow), i. 44 *seqq.*

## CRO

- Chagan-kuren, i. 174  
*Chagan-nor*, i. 283  
 Chagrin-gol R., ii. 61, 63  
 Cha-ho R., i. 100  
 Chakhars and their country, i. 26, 32 *seq.*, 84, 117, 143 *seq.*, 152, 169, 184, 203  
 Chang-kia-kou, *see* Kalgan  
 Chebayeff, Pamphile, a Cossack, ii. 25, 67  
 Cheng-ta-fu, district of, i. 85, 103  
 Chertinton temple, ii. 67, 76, 83, 96, 233, 242  
 Chihli, *see* Pechihli  
 Chinese mob, i. 150 *seq.*, 176 *seq.*  
 Chinese swindling, i. 37  
 Chinese year and cycle, i. 278 *seq.*  
 Chinghiz-Khan, his sepulchre, i. 16, 181, 205; traditions concerning, 167, 194, 203, 216, 221, 279; ii. 302  
 Chingtu-fu, ii. 306  
 Chobsen, temple of, ii. 38 *seq.*, 47, 58, 67 *seq.*, 70 *seqq.*; militia at, 65, 72, 98; arrival at, 73, 98; dangerous position at, 100 *seq.*; departure from, 103; siege of, 127 *seq.*; return to, 230, 233  
*Chokh* or *chek* (copper coin), ii. 3  
 Chorchi, temple of, i. 137  
 Christianity in Mongolia, i. 83, 134  
*Chulkan* (assembly of tribes), i. 85  
 Chutun-dzamba, Mongol guide, ii. 172 *seq.*, 219 *seq.*  
 Clouds, rainless, ii. 267  
 Coal-beds in the Ala-shan range, i. 259  
 Compradors, i. 40 *seq.*  
*Convulvulus tragacanthoides*, a prickly shrub, i. 235  
 Conveyance in Mongolia, modes of, i. 4  
 Cookery, Chinese, i. 43  
 Cooper, T. T., xxxii  
 Copper currency, inconvenience of, i. 97 *seq.*  
 Cossacks, i. 95, 99, 123, 133, 147, 201, 217, 222, 229; ii. 25 *seqq.*  
 Cotoneaster, ii. 261  
 Cranes, flocks of, ii. 102  
*Crossoptilon auritum*, *see* Long-eared Pheasant  
 Crows of the Gobi, their rapacity, i. 21, 22

## CSO

- Csoma de Körös, i. 284  
 Cycle, of Mongols, i. 65 *seq.*  
 Czar's officer, ii. 37, 52
- D***ABAN*, the word, i. 6, 274  
 Dabry, M., ii. 297  
 Dalai Lama, xxxv *seq.*, i. 11, 12, 76  
*seq.*; stories about, 250; ii. 141,  
 150, 154, 185, 304  
 Dalai-nor lake, i. 99, 106 *seqq.*;  
 description of, 108 *seqq.*; wild  
 fowl on, 110, 115  
 Damsuk Mongols, ii. 152  
 D'Anville, his map referred to,  
 i. 102  
*Daphne Altaica*, ii. 243  
 Darhan-bil, a territorial division,  
 i. 144  
 Darhan-ula temple, i. 109  
 David, Armand, the French  
 naturalist, xx, xxxix; his dis-  
 coveries, i. 168  
 Dchiahours, ii. 299 *seq.*  
 Dead, disposal of, i. 14, 82  
 Deer, i. 261 *seq.*  
 Deguignes, referred to, i. 180, 184  
 Della Penna, O. P., ii. 300, 301, 302  
 Demchuk lake, ii. 95 *seq.*  
 Dhyâni Buddhas, xxxv  
 Di-chu, ii. 221, 306  
 Digarchi, xxxvi  
 Ding-hu, town of, xxiii, i. 183, 187,  
 196, 215; arrival at, 220 *seq.*;  
 description of, 222, 257; ii. 10  
 Din-yuan-ing, town of, xxiv; i. 238  
*seq.*; arrival at, 241; appearance  
 of, 242, 246, 269; departure  
 from, ii. 1 *seq.*, 9, 36 *seq.*, 45,  
 255, 258 *seq.*, 266 *seq.*  
*Dirisun*, kind of grass, i. 19, 122;  
 ii. 10, 12, 159  
 Dirisun-khoto, ii. 255  
 Djanji, the Gigen, ii. 47, 71  
 Djaratai-dabas, lake bed of salt,  
 ii. 2 *seqq.*, 159 *seq.*, 268  
 Djasaktu-Khan, i. 15  
 Djuldjig, Col. Prejevalsky's Mon-  
 gol guide, i. 172, 220, 222, 239  
 Djung-ling, town of, ii. 58, 63,  
 123, 134  
 Dolon-nor, xxi, i. 9, 99, 102; ar-  
 rival at, 105; its idol foundry,  
 106; height of, 104; position of,  
 105, 284; ii. 71

## FOR

- Duguni* (oratories), i. 76  
 Dulan-gol R., ii. 160  
 Dulan-kit, ii. 160, 163, 166  
 Dungans, and their insurrection,  
 i. 12, 15, 62, 82, 94, 197 *seq.*,  
 210, 222, 238, 251, 259; ii. 8  
*seq.*, 11, 40, 43 *seqq.*, 51, 60  
*seqq.*, 98 *seqq.*; encounter with,  
 105; insurrection, 122-136,  
 252; the name, 122, 276, 304 *seq.*  
*Durban-oirad*, or the Four Allies,  
 i. 231  
 Durbutes, i. 117, 144  
 Dust-storms, i. 118 *seq.*; ii. 35,  
 218 *seq.*  
*Dzamba*, or barley meal, ii. 71  
*seq.*, 73, 119 *seq.*  
*Dzara* (hedgehog), *see* *Convolvulus*  
*Dzeren*, *see* *Steppe Antelope*  
 Dzungaria, i. 61; divisions of, 84,  
 86, 232, 277

- E***AGLE*, i. 27; fishing, 197  
 Egrigaya, *see* *Ning-hia-fu*  
 Eleuths, i. 231 *seq.*, 237; four  
 clans of, 231; ii. 149, 152  
 Elias, Ney, referred to, xv, xxi,  
 xxii, i. 277, 285; ii. 126, 168, 299  
 Elms, in the Urute country, ii. 273  
 El-shi-siang-fu, ii. 134 *seq.*  
 Emperor of China, ii. 135 *seq.*  
 Ethnology, notices of, i. 47-89;  
 ii. 109-138  
 Etsina R., i. 232; ii. 53, 75, 107, 202  
 Etzina, city of, i. 232  
 Exploration in Asia, progress of,  
 ix *seqq.*

- F***ACE*, the, Tibetan custom of  
 dyeing, ii. 110 *seq.*  
 'Faust,' Colonel Prejevalsky's set-  
 ter, i. 6, 133, 150, 217, 224; ii.  
 26; death of, 268 *seqq.*  
 Fedchenko, Alexis and Olga, xxi  
 Ferries across Hoang-ho, i. 215  
 Fish in Lake Dalai, i. 109; in  
 Hoang-ho, 197, 215; in Koko-  
 nor, ii. 141  
 Flood, sudden, ii. 264  
 Floods in China, i. 271 *seq.*  
 Flora, of Munni-ula, i. 162; of  
 highlands of Kan-su, ii. 77  
 'Foreign devils,' *K'wei-tze*, epithet

## FOR

- applied by Chinese to Europeans, i. 42, 91, 230  
 Forsyth's expedition referred to, xx, i. 236  
 Fox, steppe (*Canis Corsac*), ii. 211 *seq.*  
 Fritsche's observations, i. 17, 308; ii. 307 *seq.*  
 Fuss and Bunge, their observations, 17
- G**ABET, Huc's companion, xi *seqq.*, i. 39, 185  
 Gadjur Mt., ii. 63, 76, 94 *seq.*; lake near summit of, 95; legend concerning, 96, 250  
 Galdan Khan, of Dzungaria, i. 232  
*Gandjur* (Kanjur), sacred literature of Buddhism, i. 75, 211, 272 *seq.*  
*Gast* country, ii. 168  
 Gaubil, Père, referred to, ii. 169  
*Gau-dji-tun*, Chinese settlement, i. 103  
 Geographical Society (of Russia), i. 95, 96; ii. 27  
 Gerbillon and Verbiest, Jesuit missionaries, referred to, i. 101, 183  
*Ghât*, the word, i. 275  
 Ghorkhar, wild ass of Persia, ii. 146, 148  
 Gigns, xxxviii *seq.*, i. 12, 76 *seq.*; miracles performed by, 149, 251 *seq.*, 244, 275; ii. 40, 41 *seq.*, 47  
 Gissar Khan, i. 194  
 Gmelin, the naturalist, named, i. 195  
 Goat mountain (*Capra Sibirica*), ii. 275  
 Gobi desert; the name, i. 16; height, 17; character, 18; inhabitants, 20 *seqq.*; terrors of, 194, 231 *seq.*; ii. 5 *seq.*, 74; winter in the, 22; route across, 271 *seq.*; the Galpin, 272 *seqq.*; Central, 278 *seqq.*; trade routes in, 276, 280 *seq.*  
 Gol (river), the word, i. 6  
 'Goloss' newspaper, ii. 258  
 Gordon, Colonel, ii. 133  
 Gossip, love of, i. 68  
 Grass, poisonous, ii. 81  
 Great Wall of China, i. 34, 38 *seq.*; 45, 84, 93, 100, 103, 181; ii. 56

## HOD

- Grosvenor, Hon. T., xxi  
 Grueber and Dorville, i. 282, 283  
*Guchin-gurba* sand hills, i. 107 *seq.*  
*Gudjir*, a saline efflorescence, i. 122; ii. 227  
 Guibourt, French pharmacologist, referred to, ii. 85, 294  
 Gungir-gol R., i. 109  
*Gurba-naidji*, Snowy Mts., ii. 182  
*Guressu gadzir*, Mongol name for Northern Tibet, ii. 180  
 Gushi-Khan, prince of Mongolia, ii. 152  
 Gwan-kau pass, i. 45  
*Gyps Himalayensis*, *see* Snow Vulture
- H**ADAKI, *Khata* (scarves), interchange of, i. 73, 280 *seq.*; ii. 121  
*Haliotos Macci*, *see* Fishing Eagle  
 Haliutai R., i. 153 *seq.*; ii. 4, 13  
 Hami, ii. 169, 276, 290  
 Hanbury and Flückiger, referred to, i. 191; ii. 85, 292, 297  
 Hanga-nor lake, i. 109  
 Hangin-daban, ii. 281  
 Hankau, tea plantations near, i. 35; Russian firms at, 40; ii. 267  
 Hares, i. 8, 107, 164, 197; Alpine, 8, 26 *seqq.*; ii. 251, 282  
 Heat, intense, i. 199, 217; ii. 297 *seq.*  
 Heeley, Mr. Wilfred, i. 281  
*Hehlung*, a rank of clergy, i. 79  
*Hehtsul*, a rank of clergy, i. 79  
 He-shui, *see* Shara-muren  
 Himalayas, i. 75, 77  
 Himping temple, i. 168  
 Hoang-ho (Yellow River), i. 25, 28, 39, 46, 85, 99, 137, 150, 153; first glimpse of, 154, 180; valley of, 173, 183, 189, 193, 195, 203, 206, 221, 231, 240, 271, 284; ii. 5, 8, 13; ferries across, i. 178 *seq.*; course of, 184 *seq.*, 188; described, 186 *seqq.*; channels of, 188 *seq.*; ii. 11 *seq.*; 35, 53; left bank, 10; sources, 180  
 Ho-chau, i. 184; ii. 149  
 Hodgson, Mr., now Sir Brian H., i. 273

## HOL

- Holeh-gol*, small stream, i. 109  
 Home news, ii. 258  
 Ho-nan, *see* Ordos  
 Hooker, Dr., referred to, ii. 249  
 Horns, stag's, Chinese demand for, i. 170, 261  
 Horse-racing, i. 117  
 Horses, steppe, i. 116 *seq.*; wild, xxvii, ii. 170  
 Ho-tau, i. 184  
 Huc's travels referred to, xi *seqq.*, i. 39, 70, 137, 174, 185, 210, 274, 276, 281; ii. 3, 58, 119, 121, 123, 139 *seq.*, 152, 155, 156, 158, 160, 167, 175, 178, 185, 221, 299; his veracity, xiv *seqq.*, xxxiii  
 Humboldt, Alexandervon, referred to, i. 198; ii. 286, 305  
 Hume, the naturalist, referred to, ii. 236  
 Hurku hills, ii. 272, 274, 275 *seq.*  
 Hwang-cheng, Imperial town of Peking, i. 92  
 Hwei-hwei, *see* Dungans  
 Hwen-thsang, i. 284  
 Hyacinthe, Père, referred to, i. 77, 84, 87, 92

**I**BN BATUTA, i. 285  
 Ili R., i. 232; province of, ii. 56, 290

- Images, colossal, at Urga, i. 9  
 Inns, Chinese, i. 42 *seq.*, 246  
 In-shan range, i. 153 *seqq.*, 173, 185, 186; ii. 5, 264, 275  
 Interpreter of the expedition sent back, i. 5; want of a good, xxix, 66  
*Irgai*, *Irghai*, *see* Ning-hia-fu  
 Irinchinoff, Dondok, a Cossack, ii. 25  
 Iro R., i. 7  
 Irtish R., i. 83, 231  
 Izzat Ullah's 'Itineraries,' ii. 304

**J**ACKDAWS, i. 8  
 Jaeschke's 'Tibetan Dictionary,' ii. 303  
 Japanese goatsucker, ii. 90  
 Japanese owl, i. 165  
 Jehol, summer residence of Emperor, i. 102

## KHA

- Jesuits, i. 45  
 Juniper, a sacred tree, ii. 78 *seq.*, 261  
**K**AI-FONG-FU, i. 185  
 Kalgan, ix, xxi; the word, i. 34; described, 34 *seq.*; merchants at, 40 *seq.*; road to Peking from, 42 *seqq.*; 59, 68, 99, 105, 115, 126, 133, 181; ii. 1 *seqq.*, 5; return to, 22 *seq.*, 26 *seqq.*, 41, 56  
 Kalmaks, or Kalmucks, i. 231, 237  
*Kamba*, a rank of clergy, i. 79  
 Kambi-nansu, Tibetan envoy, ii. 154  
 Kan-chau, town, i. 232; ii. 56, 59, 73, 75, 123, 292  
*Kangai*, or hilly region, ii. 281  
 Kanghi, Emperor, i. 16, 61, 106, 183, 232  
 Kanjur, *see* Gandjur  
 Kan-su, province of, i. 25, 40, 78, 79, 86, 122, 128, 130, 180, 232; ii. 38, 47, 53, 59; the mountains, 24, 55, 59 *seq.*, 74 *seqq.*, 201; climate, 76 *seq.*, 252 *seqq.*; flora, 77 *seqq.*; fauna, 87-92; boundaries, 69; inhabitants, 69; humidity, xxxi-ii, 93, 231; rebellion in, 123 *seqq.*; governors of, 151, 171; the name, 292, 301  
 Karagol R., i. 6, 7  
 Kara-kung (black folk), the common people, i. 62 *seq.*  
 Kara-Moritech, spring of, ii. 2, 4  
*Kara-muren*, *see* Hoang-ho  
 Kara-narin-ula range, i. 153 *seq.*; ii. 4 *seq.*, 7 *seq.*, 272  
 Kara-nor lake, ii. 166  
*Kara-sulta*, *see* Black-tailed Antelope  
*Kara-takia*, *see* Pheasant  
 Kara-Tangutans, ii. 149 *seqq.*  
 Karmyk, i. 235; ii. 34, 55; berries used as food, 167  
 'Karza,' Col. Prejevalsky's Mongol dog, ii. 26 *seq.*, 37  
 Kashgar, ii. 300  
 Keshikteh-murren, i. 258  
 Keshikten, principality of, i. 106, 117  
 Khalkas and their country, i. 3,



## KHA

- 15, 33, 47 *seqq.*; ii. 116; invasion of, i. 62; rate of travel, 64; language, 67; territorial divisions, 84; their horses, 117; camels, 121; the name, 232; ii. 149, 272, 278 *seq.*
- Khan-ola mount, its sanctity, i. 16, 205; ii. 283
- Khan-ula Mts. (Haldzyn-burgontu), ii. 4, 268
- Khassar, the archer, *see* Gissar Khan
- Khata*, *see* Hadaki
- Khatun-gol (Lady's River), i. 203
- Khingang range, i. 104
- Khotens, *see* Chinese Soldiers
- Khubilghân, xxxvi
- Khubina* (water casks), ii. 27
- Kiakhta, characteristics of, i. 1 *seqq.*; departure from, 6; ii. 70, 83, 284, 293 *seqq.*
- Kia-King, Emperor, i. 102; his death, 103
- Kia-yui-kwan fortress, ii. 56
- Kien-long, Emperor of China, i. 102, 273
- Kiepert's Asia referred to, ii. 123
- Kileh*, the word, ii. 143
- Kinsha-Kiang, ii. 306
- Kiri-nor, lake, i. 137
- Kitai-gorod, i. 44
- Klaproth, referred to, i. 75, 84, 272, 277; ii. 303
- Kobdo, town of, i. 59, 62; ii. 20, 123, 126
- Koepfen, referred to, xxxiii, i. 76, 275, 281 *seq.*
- Koir-Bogdo Mt., ii. 35
- Koites, ii. 149
- Koko-nor, lake and district, xv, i. 25, 28, 56, 64, 67, 72, 84, 100, 184, 269; ii. 8, 22, 24, 27, 36, 38 *seqq.*, 58, 74, 85, 100; arrival at, 107; the lake described, 139-157; the word, 139; legend of the lake, 141 *seqq.*; administration, 153; fish, 228; mountains, 158 *seq.*; the lake in spring, 225-230; water of, ii. 295
- Kolo-djoro, the bird of the desert, i. 236; ii. 159
- Kolo-sun-nur, ii. 32
- Konkir Mt., ii. 76, 107
- Korchin tribes, i. 194

## LAN

- Koshungs*, or territorial divisions, i. 84 *seq.*, 144
- Kosin lake, ii. 96
- Kovalefsky, i. 275, 276; ii. 302
- Kublai-Khan, i. 67, 106, 279, 280, 284
- Kuen-lun range, ii. 182
- Kuku-Khoto, xxii, i. 59, 85, 105, 133, 144, 153, 188; ii. 16 *seq.*, 276, 280 *seq.*, 290
- Kuku-shili Mts., ii. 181
- Kuku-yaman*, *see* Mountain Sheep
- Kulan, or wild ass, xxvii, ii. 146 *seqq.*, 167, 168, 301
- Kuliang Mt., ii. 55
- Kulja, ii. 276
- Kumbum, xiii, xxxiv, i. 79; ii. 155 *seqq.*
- Kumiss (*tarasum*), i. 54, 276
- Kunduling-gol R., ii. 13
- Kung-guressu*, i.e. 'man-beast,' *see* Bears
- Ku-peh-kau, i. 100 *seq.*; height above sea-level, 104; ii. 56
- Kurai-hundu, i. 206, 210
- Kurei-hundu, i. 206
- Kurile tea, *see* *Potentilla*
- Kutukhtu*, xxxviii; or Great Lama of Urga, i. 9, 11, 12, 13; ceremonial observed before, 75; his rank, 76; ordination by, 79; legend of, 165 *seqq.*; ii. 46 *seq.*, 257
- Kuyui-cheng*, ruins of, ii. 70
- Kuzupchi sands, i. 186, 189, 190, 192 *seqq.*, 210, 215, 220, 233; ruins in, 216
- Kwei-hwa-cheng, *see* Kuku-Khoto
- Kyang, xxvii, ii. 301
- L** ADAK, ii. 300, 305
- Lagomys Tibetanus*, ii. 88
- Lamas, at Urga, i. 11; their doctrines, 11; food, 56; service performed by, 75; clergy, or, 78 *seqq.*; Donir-, ii. 47; at Chobsen, 71 *seq.*; red and yellow sects, xxxiv *seqq.*, ii. 305
- Lamaism, i. 80 *seq.*; and Romanism, xxxiii *seq.*
- Lama-miau, or Dolon-nor, i. 105
- Lammergeier, ii. 241
- Lan (liang), value of, i. 5; ii. 3, 73

## LAN

- Lang-chau, town of, ii. 56, 75, 123  
 Lang-hwaisa ferry, i. 179  
 Larks, i. 8, 25, 197, 236; Mongol,  
 24 *seqq.*; great, ii. 145, 212, 230  
 Larvæ of gad-fly in antelope, ii. 207  
 Latitude, fatigue in determining,  
 i. 115  
*Lespedeza*, ii. 79  
 Lhasa, i. 11, 76, 78; road to, 128,  
 276; ii. 222; 47, 103, 141, 154,  
 304, 306  
 Liang, called by Col. Prejevalsky  
 lan, i. 96  
 Liang-chu mount, ii. 55, 60  
 Linnæus, ii. 293  
 Linnets, i. 8; ii. 212  
 Liquorice, i. 191  
 Li-vang-ti ferry, i. 198  
 Lizards, i. 193, 236, 237  
 Lob, xxvii, xxviii  
 Lob, Lake, xxix, i. 17; ii. 155, 166,  
 168  
 Longitude, no means of fixing, i.  
 115  
*Lonicera cærulea*, ii. 79  
 Luan-ho, *see* Shandu-gol R.

- M**ACGAHAN, author of  
 'Campaigning on the  
 Oxus' referred to, i. 234  
 Mahommedans at Kalgan, i. 35;  
 in China, ii. 124, 304; their  
 cowardice and cruelty, 126 *seq.*  
 Maidari (Maitreya), the future  
 Buddha, i. 9  
 Mailla Père, i. 271  
 Maimaicheng, i. 8  
 Manchu country, i. 232  
 Manchus, their conquest of China,  
 i. 49  
 Mandarins, interviews with, i. 174  
*seqq.*, 222 *seqq.*  
 Manhadai range, i. 7  
*Manipe*, i. 282  
 Manul, the (*Felis Manul*), ii.  
 187, 289, 298  
 Map-making, i. 114  
 Marmots, i. 164; ii. 54, 88, 247, 282  
 Martens, sand-, i. 236  
 Matches, Viennese, in China, ii.  
 94  
 Matrenitsky, Mr., i. 40  
 Maximovitch, Professor, ii. 79, 85,  
 291

## MUN

- Medicine, Tibetan, ii. 156  
 Merchants, Russian, at Kalgan,  
 i. 35  
 Miàneh, ii. 290  
 Min R. ii., 306  
 Ming dynasty, i. 232  
 Mirage, ii. 280  
 Missionaries, Protestant, i. 35;  
 Roman Catholic, 134-136  
 Missions, Russian, at Peking, i.  
 3, 92; foreign, *ib.*  
 Mohl, M. Jules, xi  
 Mongolia, rate of travel in, i. 64;  
 its boundaries, 83; divisions,  
 84; princes, 86; its population,  
 87; nobles, 88  
 Mongol, alphabet, i. 280; orien-  
 tation, 277  
 Mongols, Chinese impositions on,  
 i. 37; their costume, 49; un-  
 cleanliness, 51; domestic uten-  
 sils, 52; food and beverages,  
 52 *seqq.*; gluttony, 55, 56, 276;  
 importance of cattle to, 57 *seq.*;  
 their indolence, 58; horseman-  
 ship, 59; physical capabilities  
 and defects, 60; cowardice, 61;  
 sagacity and obtuseness, 62;  
 curiosity, 63; modes of saluta-  
 tion, 63, 72; distances, how  
 calculated by, 64; their lan-  
 guage, 66 *seq.*; songs, 69;  
 marriage customs, 69, 70;  
 domestic relations, 71; hospita-  
 lity, 72 *seq.*; religion, 74, 149;  
 superstitions, 81; disposal of  
 dead, 82; organisation, 84 *seq.*;  
 princes, 86 *seq.*; their classes,  
 87; laws, 88; military service,  
 88; venality, 144; traffic with,  
 147; their invasions of China,  
 182 *seq.*; of Ala-shan, 237 *seq.*;  
 of Koko-nor, ii. 150 *seqq.*;  
 Princess, 161  
 Montgomerie, Col., his pundits,  
 xix; ii. 305  
 Moorcroft, ii. 146  
*Moschus moschiferus*, *see* Deer  
 Moscow, i. 44  
 Mosquitoes, ii. 167  
 Mountain-ash, ii. 78  
 Mukhur range, i. 7  
 Munhu-tsu, Mongol name for  
 Lhasa, ii. 185

## MUN

- Munni-ula range, i. 153, 158-173; height, 159; its peaks, 159; trees, 160; flora, 160 *seqq.*; fauna, 164 *seq.*; legends of, 166 *seq.*; sport in, 171 *seq.*; 187 *seqq.*, 204, 212; *ii.* 11, 13, 29 *seqq.*, 36, 79, 263  
 Murui-ussu R., xv, xxix, *ii.* 180, 181, 221, 222, 306  
 Mur-wang, *ii.* 153  
 Murzasak, banner, *ii.* 100 *seq.*, 106, 107, 129

- N**AN-KAU, town, i. 45 *seq.*; range, 100  
 Nan-shan Mts., *ii.* 75, 144, 158  
 Napchitai-ulan-muren R., *ii.* 221 *seq.*  
 Napchu village, *ii.* 152, 184  
 Nei-cheng, inner town of Peking, i. 91 *seq.*  
 Ngan-si-chau, *ii.* 169  
 Nimgan, a territorial division, i. 144  
 Nim-pi, town of, *ii.* 69, 102, 134  
 Ning-hia-fu, town, i. 181, 187; identification of, 241, 257, 265; *ii.* 3, 11, 45, 259, 301  
 Nomokhun-gol R., *ii.* 175, 178  
 Nor or Nur (Lake), the word, i. 6

- ‘**O**BO,’ i. 76, 283; *ii.* 257  
 Odon-tala plain (Sing-suhai, i.e. Starry Sea), *ii.* 180  
 Odoric, Friar, *ii.* 303  
*Ogotono*, *see* Alpine Hare  
 Okkodai, son of Chinghiz-Khan, i. 61.  
 Oliutai, Prince, i. 231  
 Oliuths, *see* Eleuths  
*Om mani padmi hom*, Buddhist formula, explained, i. 75, 282 *seq.*  
 Onion heads used as tea, *ii.* 119  
 Opium-smoking, i. 178, 200 *seq.*; *ii.* 130  
 Orat, *see* Urutes  
 Ordos, and their country, i. 25, 62, 72, 85, 154, 174 *seq.*, 204; the country described, 180-195; the name, 180 *seq.*; boundaries, 180, 188; divisions, 184, 196, 204, 210; *ii.* 3, 10, 11, 13, 56, 123  
 Orkhon R., i. 7, 8, 231  
 Ornithology, notices of, i. 8, 23-

## PLA

- 26, 103, 110 *seqq.*, 164 *seq.*, 197, 236, 259, 260; *ii.* 12, 29, 31 *seqq.*, 88 *seqq.*, 168, 212, 225 *seq.*, 229, 236 *seqq.*, 244 *seq.*, 263, 276  
 Orongo, *see* Antelope  
 Ortolan, i. 25  
 Outfit of the expedition, i. 94 *seq.*  
 Ou-yam-pu, town of, *ii.* 69, 102, 134  
*Ovis argali*, *see* Argali  
*Ovis Burrehel*, *see* Mountain Sheep  
*Ovis Poli*, *ii.* 201

- P**ALLADIUS, the Archimandrite, referred to, xvi, *ii.* 124, 149, 299  
 Pallas, referred to, i. 23; *ii.* 146, 294  
 Pamir, *ii.* 305  
*Panjan Rimbochi*, or Teshoo-Lama, xxxvi *seq.*, i. 11  
*Pan-tsin-Erdeni*, i. 11, 76  
 Partridge, grey, i. 8; rock, 165; great snow, *ii.* 91; great rock, 236 *seq.*  
 Passport, Chinese, i. 2, 98, 158, 174, 269; *ii.* 24, 27, 266  
 Peach, wild in the Urute country, *ii.* 273  
 Pechihli, gulf of, i. 46, 185; province of, 103  
 Peh-cha Mt., its existence contradicted, i. 101  
 Peh-king, *see* Peking  
 Peh-kwan, northern suburb of Peking, i. 92  
 Pehling and Fanqui, the terms, i. 276  
 Peiho R., i. 100 *seq.*; *ii.* 25  
 Peking, i. 42; entrance into, 46, 65, 68, 77; described, 90 *seqq.*; departure from, 98; *ii.* 24, 36  
 Penna, P. Orazio della, *ii.* 300, 301  
 Pheasants, i. 197, 260; *Phasianus torquatus*, *ii.* 12, 92; long-eared (*Crossoptilon auritum*), 244 *seqq.*  
 ‘Phœnix the,’ referred to, i. 103  
 Pigeon-Russian, i. 41  
 Pilgrimages, stopped by Dungan insurrection, i. 78; to Lhasa, *ii.* 184 *seq.*  
*Pinus Massoniana*, *ii.* 78  
 Plain of China, i. 44

## POD

- Podoces Hendersoni*, see Kolo-djoro  
 Polo, Marco, referred to, xviii. xxiv, xxxv, i. 16, 23, 24, 56, 61, 65, 106, 185, 194, 232, 241; ii. 82, 117, 132, 146, 237, 305, 306  
 Poppy, the yellow Alpine, ii. 253  
 Post communication in Mongolia, i. 2 *seqq.*, 21  
*Potentilla anserina*, ii. 81; *P. fruticosa*, 80; *P. glabra*, 80, 261; *P. tenuifolia*, ii. 86, 261  
 Pouhain-gol R., xiv *seqq.*, ii. 140, 157 *seq.*, 226 *seqq.*  
 Provisions, ii. 50, 93, 99; scarcity of, 102 *seq.*  
*Pugionum cornutum*, a rare plant, i. 195  
 Purchas, his Pilgrimage, ii. 291  
 Putte, Samuel van de, ii. 306  
 Pygarg, i. 107, 164, 169  
 Pyltseff, Michael Alexandrovitch, Col. Prejevalsky's travelling companion, i. 1, 95, 133, 220; illness of, ii. 2, 4; 27, 43, 270
- QUARTERLY REVIEW**, referred to, i. 194  
 Quincey, T. de, referred to, i. 232  
 Quinine, fever cured by, i. 149
- RAMUSIO**, ii. 292  
*Randzamba*, the Tangutan lama, ii. 48 *seqq.*, 64, 65  
 Rangta-gol R., ii. 68  
 Rashiduddin, the Persian historian, referred to, i. 241, 242  
 Regel's Garten Flora, ii. 291  
*Rheum officinale*, ii. 85, 299; *R. palmatum*, 81 *seqq.*, 292-298; *R. Rhaponticum*, 85, 293; *R. spiciforme*, 85, 293; *R. undulatum*, 293  
 Rhododendrons, new kinds, ii. 85 *seq.*  
 Rhubarb, medicinal (*Rheum palmatum*), ii. 81 *seqq.*; mode of preparing, 84; cultivation, 84, 261, 291 *seq.*  
 Richthofen, Baron F., xx, xxxix  
 Rifles, for antelope-shooting, i. 30; and revolvers, 228, ii. 24 *seq.*; practice with, 26; sale of, 42, 231

## SHA

- Ritter, Carl von, referred to, i. 101, 102, 181, 184, 193, 205  
 Rubruk, William de, i. 276, 280
- SAHARA** desert, compared with Gobi, ii. 274  
 Sain-noin, i. 15  
 Sairam, ii. 305  
 Sair-ussu, ii. 281  
 Sakya Muni, i. 284  
 Salar, ii. 305  
 Salirs, or Salars, ii. 149  
 Salt, necessary for camels, i. 122; mode of obtaining, ii. 3; marshes, 172  
 Samdachiemba, Huc's companion, xiii, i. 135; ii. 297  
 Sanang Setzen, Schmidt's edition, referred to, i. 194, 203, 204, 205  
 Sand-grouse, i. 23, 236; ii. 145, 212  
 San-tchouan, ii. 299  
*Sarlok*, the domesticated yak, ii. 201  
 Saxaul, a tree of the desert, i. 122, 233 *seq.*; limit of, ii. 276  
 Sa-yang-cheng town, ii. 58; position of, 123  
 Scenery, impressive, i. 172, 265  
 Schlagintweit, Adolphus, xix  
 Schmidt, Prof. at Dorpat, ii. 295  
 Selenga R., i. 7, 231  
 Semenoff, the Russian geographer, referred to, i. 101, 181  
 Seng-kwan town, ii. 69, 100, 101, 136, 230, 233  
 Serik-dolon lake, ii. 255  
 Severtsoff, referred to, ii. 236, 286  
 Sha-chang, town, i. 42  
 Shamanism, traces of, i. 74  
 'Shambaling' promised land of Buddhists, i. 250 *seqq.*, 284 *seqq.*  
 Shandu-gol R., i. 102, 106  
 Shanghai trade reports, i. 191  
 Shangin-dalai well, ii. 255 *seqq.*  
 Shangtu, xxi  
 Shangtu-gol, see Shandu-gol R.  
 Shara-gol R., i. 109  
 Shara-hada range, i. 137 *seqq.*; vegetation on, 138 *seq.*  
 Shara-muren R., i. 107, 135, 153  
 Shara-oroi Mt., i. 159, 167  
 Shara-tsu temple, i. 210 *seqq.*  
 Shaw, referred to, xx, ii. 169, 170, 300

## SHE

- Sheep, a sacred animal, i. 54; mode of killing, 55; purchasing, 144 *seqq.*; mountain (*Ovis Bur-rhel*), 261, 262 *seqq.*; chase of, 264 *seqq.*; their furious fights, 264; their extraordinary jumps, 268 *seq.*
- Sheiten-ula range, i. 153 *seq.*, 210; ii. 5, 13
- Shen-si province, i. 180; ii. 303
- Shiggatzi, i. 11
- Shig, a Chinese measure, ii. 73
- Shireti-tsu, temple, ii. 16, 19, 280
- Shisomareff, consul at Urga, i. 8
- Shohoin-daban (limestone) range, i. 154; ii. 14
- Shuga range, xv, ii. 175, 178 *seqq.*, 224
- Shuga R., ii. 200
- Siberia, i. 30, 77, 162; ii. 79, 80
- Sievers, ii. 294
- Si-fan, *see* Tangutans
- Sikkim, ii. 305
- Siling-gol R., ii. 107
- Silver currency, i. 96 *seq.*; loss in exchanging, 152
- Simni, ii. 129
- Singanfu, i. 280; ii. 292
- Si-ning town, xxv, i. 79; ii. 38, 58, 68, 70, 73, 75, 83, 102, 119, 122, 123; siege of, 134 *seqq.*; capture of, 136, 139, 153; way to Lhasa from, 178; 300, 301
- Si-shan range, i. 44
- Sita River, i. 285
- Siu-chau-fu, ii. 306
- Siuen-hwa-fu, i. 44, 135
- Siue-shan, *see* Nan-shan
- Sivanzi, R. C. missionary station, i. 135
- Si-wang, *see* Sivanzi
- Siya, i. 243, 245, 247 *seq.*, 256; ii. 1, 37, 41, 44 *seq.*
- Siyinza, R. C. missionary station, i. 134 *seqq.*
- Snow-storm, ii. 7, 14
- Sodi-soruksum Mt., ii. 76; ascent of, 93 *seq.*
- Sogo, ii. 275
- Soldiers; Chinese, i. 158, 174, 175, 176, 177 *seq.*, 199, 221 *seq.*; ii. 11, 58, 60, 65, 104, 126, 127, 130 *seqq.*; their low morale, 132 *seq.*; massacre by, 136, 233

## TAN

- Solones, i. 177; ii. 57 *seq.*, 130
- Songs of Mongols, i. 69
- Sparrow (*Passer ammodendri*), ii. 276
- Spring in Mongolia, i. 118 *seqq.*; in Tsaidam, ii. 225; in Kokonor, 226 *seqq.*
- Stars, falling, i. 202
- Steppe-fire described, i. 108
- Stonechats, i. 111
- Strachey, H., x
- Suen-hwa, referred to, ii. 149
- Sugar, a luxury, ii. 243
- Suh-chau, town, ii. 56, 59, 70, 75, 123, 125; capture of, 136, 276; 290, 291, 292
- Sulhir*, kind of grass, i. 23, 233; seeds used as food, 234; ii. 177
- Suma-hada range, i. 138 *seqq.*, 152 *seq.*, 169
- Summers, Rev. J., i. 273
- Sung-shan, town, ii. 61
- Sunites, Mongol tribe, i. 144
- Superstitions among Mongols, i. 81
- Surveying, i. 111 *seqq.*
- Suspicious of natives avoided, i. 113 *seq.*
- Syringa, ii. 261
- Syrrhaptēs Paradoxus*, *see* Sandgrouse
- Szechuan province, ii. 85, 302
- T**ABASUN-NOR lake, i. 205, 210
- Taeping revolt, ii. 125
- Tahilga R., i. 200, 201, 206
- Ta-ning town, ii. 53, 57 *seqq.*, 60, 123, 255
- Taldi tribe, ii. 69 *seq.*, 299
- Taltu or Tartu, *see* Taldi
- Tamarisk bushes, i. 130; ii. 227
- Tang-keu-cul, *see* Tonkir
- Tang-la Mts., ii. 152, 176, 179, 184, 221
- Tangut kingdom, xxiv, i. 181, 242; ii. 301 *seq.*
- Tangutans, xxv; caravan of, ii. 38 *seq.*; encampment of, 66, 68 *seq.*, 72, 76, 84, 96; described, 109-122; their language, 111 *seqq.*, 302 *seq.*; dress, 113; habitations, 114; customs, 121; 301 *seqq.*



## TAR

- Tarbagatai, ii. 290  
*Tarik*, sour milk, ii. 120  
 Tarim, R, i. 284  
 Tartar manners at food, i. 276  
 Tashilunpo, xxxv, xxxvi, xxxvii, i. 11, 286  
 Ta-tsin dynasty, i. 49  
 Tatung town, ii. 73, 97, 101, 103, 104, 123, 125, 129, 136  
 Ta-yi-gu town, ii. 60  
 Tea, Brick, as a currency, i. 10 ; caravans of, 35 *seq.* ; a staple food, 52 ; drinking, ii. 12 *seq.*  
 Temples, at Urga, i. 9 ; ruined, 210 *seqq.*  
 Temujin, *see* Chinghiz-Khan  
 Temur Khan, i. 280  
 Tent inundated, i. 155  
 Tetung-gol, or Tatung R., ii. 63, 66 *seq.*, 74 *seqq.*, 83 ; valley of, 93, 94, 96, 100, 106 ; upper, 106, 116, 208, 233, 251  
 Thian Shan range, x, i. 83, 231 ; ii. 275  
 Thomson, Dr. T., x  
 Thrushes, ii. 90  
 Tibet, its submission to China, i. 77 ; its Mongol name, 277 ; Northern, ii. 178 *seq.*, 182 *seqq.*, 218, 221, 224, 304  
 Tien-tsin, i. 35, 40 ; ruined chapel, 254, 255 ; ii. 24 *seq.*  
 Timkowski, the traveller, referred to, i. 70, 75, 84, 105, 232 ; ii. 3, 290  
 Tingeri (sands), i. 233 ; ii. 53 *seq.*  
 T la R., i. 8, 16, 19, 205 ; ii. 283  
 Tolai-gol R., ii. 75  
 Tonkir, town (Tang-keu-eul), 281 ; ii. 69, 100, 119, 154, 159, 184, 230, 300  
 Tortoises, river-, i. 201 *seq.*  
 Toso-nor lake, ii. 166, 175  
 Toulain-gol, ii. 160  
 Trade, openings for, i. 249  
 Traditions and legends, i. 165 *seqq.* ; ii. 96, 141 *seqq.*, 151 *seqq.*  
 Trans-Alai, xxi  
 Trans-Baikalia, i. 26, 28 ; ii. 214  
 Trans-Ordos, or Ala-shan, i. 232  
 Trees, between Kiakhta and Urga, i. 7 ; on the way to Jehol, 102 ; on the Munni-ula, 159 *seq.* ; of Kan-su, ii. 78 ; of Ala-shan, 260 *seq.* ; of the desert, 273

## URG

- Tsagan-balgas*, ruins of, i. 106, 283  
 Tsagan-chulutai, Chinese settlement, i. 151 *seq.*  
 Tsagan-Khan (white Khan), name among Mongols for Emperor of Russia, i. 246 ; ii. 38  
 Tsagan-nor lake, i. 239  
*Tsagan-sar* (white month), i. 65  
 Tsaidam, xv, i. 84, 85, 207 ; ii. 74, 149, 166, 208 ; its inhabitants, 168, 170 *seqq.* ; its banners, 168, 279  
 Tsaideming-nor lake, i. 196, 199 *seq.* ; halt near, 206  
*Tsazak*, or proprietary chief, i. 86  
*Tserting* (festivals), i. 65  
 Tsian-men, gate of Peking, i. 92  
 Tsien, copper coin, ii. 3  
 Tsi-ming town, i. 44  
 Tsing-hai-wang, governor of Koko-nor, ii. 153, 160 *seq.*, 171  
 Tsitseng-Khan, i. 15  
 Tsong-kaba, Buddhist reformer xxxiv, ii. 155, 305  
 Tsung-zasak, ii. 172  
 Tu, a Chinese measure, ii. 73  
 Tula manufactures, ii. 130  
 Tumites, tribe of Mongols, xxii *seq.*, i. 143 ; western, 144  
 Tunyr-alhu, tomb of Chinghiz-Khan's wife, i. 203 *seq.*  
 Tungani, *see* Dungans  
 Turfan, ii. 290  
 Turguts, i. 231 *seq.*, 237 ; ii. 149  
 Turkestan, i. 234  
 Turner, his embassy referred to, i. 11, 281 ; ii. 121, 283, 300  
 Tushetu-khan principality, i. 15 ; ii. 279  
*Tu-shi-kau* pass, i. 100
- U GYN-GOL R., ii. 8  
 Uighur written character, i. 280  
 Uigurs, ii. 151  
 Ula, the word, i. 6  
 Ulan-khatun, *see* Hoang-ho  
 Ulan-sabo, i. 144  
 Uliassutai, xxii, i. 15, 59, 62, 85 ; ii. 16, 20, 123, 126, 276, 286 *seq.*  
 Unicorn, superstitions about, ii. 207  
 Urga, xxii, i. 6 ; described, 8 *seqq.* ; threatened by Dungans, 15



## URI

- seq.*, 41, 62, 79, 83; racing at, 117, 202; ii. 20, 25, 117, 257; caravan, 272; arrival at, 284  
 Uriankhai, i. 84  
 Urns, iron, to contain prayers, ii. 71  
 Urumchi, i. 86; ii. 69, 276, 285-291  
 Urundushi mountains, ii. 178, 180  
 Urutes and their country, i. 143  
*seq.*, 174, 188, 232; ii. 2, 6, 272, 277  
*Utai*, monastery, ii. 47
- V**ÁMBÉRY, ii. 305  
 Vang, banner of, i. 205  
 Vassilieff, Professor, referred to, i. 74, 101, 273  
 Vegetation, of desert, i. 19; of Munni-ula, 160; ii. 33; of Kan-su, 79 *seqq.*, 243; of Burkhan Buddha, 177; of Ala-shan mountains, 260 *seqq.*; of Central Gobi, 273 *seq.*  
 Veterinary practice, i. 130  
 Vlangali, General, xxix. i. 2, 96; ii. 24, 70, 258  
 Vocabulary, Tangutan, ii. 136 *seqq.*, 303  
 Vulture (*Vultur monachus*), i. 164, 260; ii. 89; snow, 237 *seq.*; mode of shooting, 240 *seqq.*
- W**AI-CHENG, outer town of Peking, i. 92  
 Walls, mud, ii. 73  
 War, department of, i. 95, 96  
 Water, undrinkable, i. 116; ii. 51, 279  
 Wathen, Mr. ii. 304  
 Wa-yang-pu, *see* Ning-hia-fu  
 Wei-tching-pu, *see* Din-yuan-ing  
 Wells, silted up, ii. 273 *seq.*  
 White Russia, ii. 114  
 Wild-duck, i. 101, 197  
 Wilson, Andrew, author of 'The Abode of Snow,' referred to, i. 75 *seq.*; ii. 116  
 Wolf, Tibetan (*Lupus Chanco*), ii. 209 *seqq.*

## ZOO

- Women, Mongol, i. 49, 50, 69-71; as lamas, 80; Taldi, ii. 69; Tangutan, 110, 113, 114, 121  
 Wood's journey to Oxus sources, x  
 Wormwood, i. 20, 235, 240; ii. 6

**Y**AK, the, ii. 115 *seqq.*; its uses, 117; its milk, butter, *ib.*; acclimatisation of, in Europe, *ib.*; cross-breed, 117; its wool, 118; the wild, 186-201; diseases to which it is subject, 193; shooting, 193 *seqq.*

Yakub-Beg, of Kashgar, ii. 136

*Yanghi Dábán*, i. 274; ii. 30

Yang-ho R., i. 44

Yangtse-kiang (Blue River), i. 35, 271; ii. 173, 176, 181, 221; sources of, 222, 306; upper, xv, xviii, xxviii

Yarkand, ii. 170

Yarlin-gol R., ii. 63

Yegrai-ula range, ii. 85, 174, 275

Yegurs, ii. 151 *seq.*

Yuen, or Chinghizid dynasty, i. 231

Yuen-kwan, southern suburb of Peking, i. 92

Yunan-chen, town of, ii. 76, 106, 107, 129, 136

Yunnan revolt, ii. 125

Yurta, or felt tent, i. 50 *seq.*; Col. Prejevalsky's, ii. 213 *seq.*

**Z**AK (saxaul) i. 233 *seq.*, 236; ii. 34, 55

*Zanghin*, Mongol subaltern officer, i. 85, 229; ii. 219

*Zandamoto*, or sacred tree, ii. 156  
*Zaturan*, a favourite Cossack dish, ii. 214

Zoology, between Kiakhta and Urga, i. 8; of the Gobi, 20-28; of the Munni-ula, 164 *seq.*; of the valley of the Hoang-ho, 197; of Ala-shan, 235 *seqq.*, 259 *seqq.*; ii. 263; of Kan-su, 236-251; of Hurku Hills, 275; of Northern Tibet, 186, 213







This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

REC'D LD-URL

REC'D LD-URL

LD-URL DEC 2 1966

LD-URL JUN 7 1971

AUG 1 1 1967

MAY 26 1971

LD-URL NOV 2 1967

LD-URL NOV 1 1971

PERMANENT

REC'D LD-URL

LD-URL NOV 2 1967

DEC 10 1971

DEC 6 1971

REC'D LD-URL

REC'D LD-URL  
MAR 8 1972

NOV 2 1967

MAR 1 1972

REC'D LD-URL  
MAR 5 1970

OCT 6 2003

REC'D LD-URL

APR 28 1992

INTERLIBRARY LOANS

NON-RENEWABLE

FEB 19 1970

MAR 20 1992

THREE WEEKS FROM DATE OF RECEIPT  
NON-RENEWABLE

JUL 5 '77

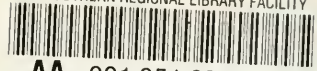
DUE 2 WKS FROM DATE RECEIVED

University of California, Los Angeles



L 006 026 031 2

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



AA 001 051 353 9

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
THIS BOOK CARD



University Research Library

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26  
GLOBE 42145-0



CALL NUMBER

300 VOL P

IN 2104



University of California  
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
305 De Neve Drive - Parking Lot 17 • Box 951388  
LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA 90095-1388

Return this material to the library from which it was borrowed.

OCT 24 2005

LIBR  
0

D

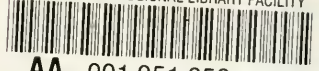
Forr

University of California, Los Angeles



L 006 026 031 2

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



AA 001 051 353 9

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
THIS BOOK CARD



University Research Library

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26  
GLOBE 42145-0



CALL NUMBER  
VOL p

105 2104 435 ME  
2

